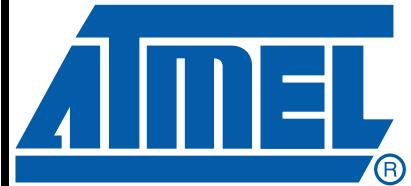


## Features

- Core
  - ARM® Cortex®-M3 revision 2.0 running at up to 48 MHz
  - Thumb®-2 instruction
  - 24-bit SysTick Counter
  - Nested Vector Interrupt Controller
- Pin-to-pin compatible with SAM7S legacy products (48- and 64-pin versions) and SAM3S (48-, 64- and 100-pin versions)
- Memories
  - From 16 to 256 Kbytes embedded Flash, 128-bit wide access, memory accelerator, single plane
  - From 4 to 24 Kbytes embedded SRAM
  - 16 Kbytes ROM with embedded bootloader routines (UART) and IAP routines
- System
  - Embedded voltage regulator for single supply operation
  - Power-on-Reset (POR), Brown-out Detector (BOD) and Watchdog for safe operation
  - Quartz or ceramic resonator oscillators: 3 to 20 MHz main power with Failure Detection and optional low power 32.768 kHz for RTC or device clock
  - High precision 8/12 MHz factory trimmed internal RC oscillator with 4 MHz default frequency for device startup. In-application trimming access for frequency adjustment
  - Slow Clock Internal RC oscillator as permanent low-power mode device clock
  - One PLL up to 130 MHz for device clock
  - Up to 10 peripheral DMA (PDC) channels
- Low Power Modes
  - Sleep and Backup modes, down to 3 µA in Backup mode
  - Ultra low power RTC
- Peripherals
  - Up to 2 USARTs with RS-485 and SPI mode support. One USART (USART0) has ISO7816, IrDA® and PDC support in addition
  - Two 2-wire UARTs
  - 2 Two Wire Interface (I2C compatible), 1 SPI
  - Up to 6 Three-Channel 16-bit Timer/Counter with capture, waveform, compare and PWM mode. Quadrature Decoder Logic and 2-bit Gray Up/Down Counter for Stepper Motor
  - 4-channel 16-bit PWM
  - 32-bit Real-time Timer and RTC with calendar and alarm features
  - Up to 16 channels, 384 KSPS 10-bit ADC
  - One 500 KSPS 10-bit DAC
- I/O
  - Up to 79 I/O lines with external interrupt capability (edge or level sensitivity), debouncing, glitch filtering and on-die Series Resistor Termination
  - Three 32-bit Parallel Input/Output Controllers
- Packages
  - 100-lead LQFP, 14 x 14 mm, pitch 0.5 mm/100-ball TFBGA, 9 x 9 mm, pitch 0.8 mm
  - 64-lead LQFP, 10 x 10 mm, pitch 0.5 mm/64-pad QFN 9x9 mm, pitch 0.5 mm
  - 48-lead LQFP, 7 x 7 mm, pitch 0.5 mm/48-pad QFN 7x7 mm, pitch 0.5 mm



## AT91SAM ARM-based Flash MCU

## ATSAM3N Series

## 1. SAM3N Description

Atmel's SAM3N series is a member of a family of Flash microcontrollers based on the high performance 32-bit ARM Cortex-M3 RISC processor. It operates at a maximum speed of 48 MHz and features up to 256 Kbytes of Flash and up to 24 Kbytes of SRAM. The peripheral set includes 2x USARTs, 2x UARTs, 2x TWIs, 3x SPI, as well as 1 PWM timer, 6x general purpose 16-bit timers, an RTC, a 10-bit ADC and a 10-bit DAC.

The SAM3N series is ready for capacitive touch thanks to the QTouch library, offering an easy way to implement buttons, wheels and sliders.

The SAM3N device is an entry-level general purpose microcontroller. That makes the SAM3N the ideal starting point to move from 8-/16-bit to 32-bit microcontrollers.

It operates from 1.62V to 3.6V and is available in 48-pin, 64-pin and 100-pin QFP, 48-pin and 64-pin QFN, and 100-pin BGA packages.

The SAM3N series is the ideal migration path from the SAM3S for applications that require a reduced BOM cost. The SAM3N series is pin-to-pin compatible with the SAM3S series. Its aggressive price point and high level of integration pushes its scope of use far into cost-sensitive, high-volume applications.

## 1.1 Configuration Summary

The SAM3N4/2/1/0/00 differ in memory size, package and features list. [Table 1-1](#) summarizes the configurations of the 9 devices.

**Table 1-1.** Configuration Summary

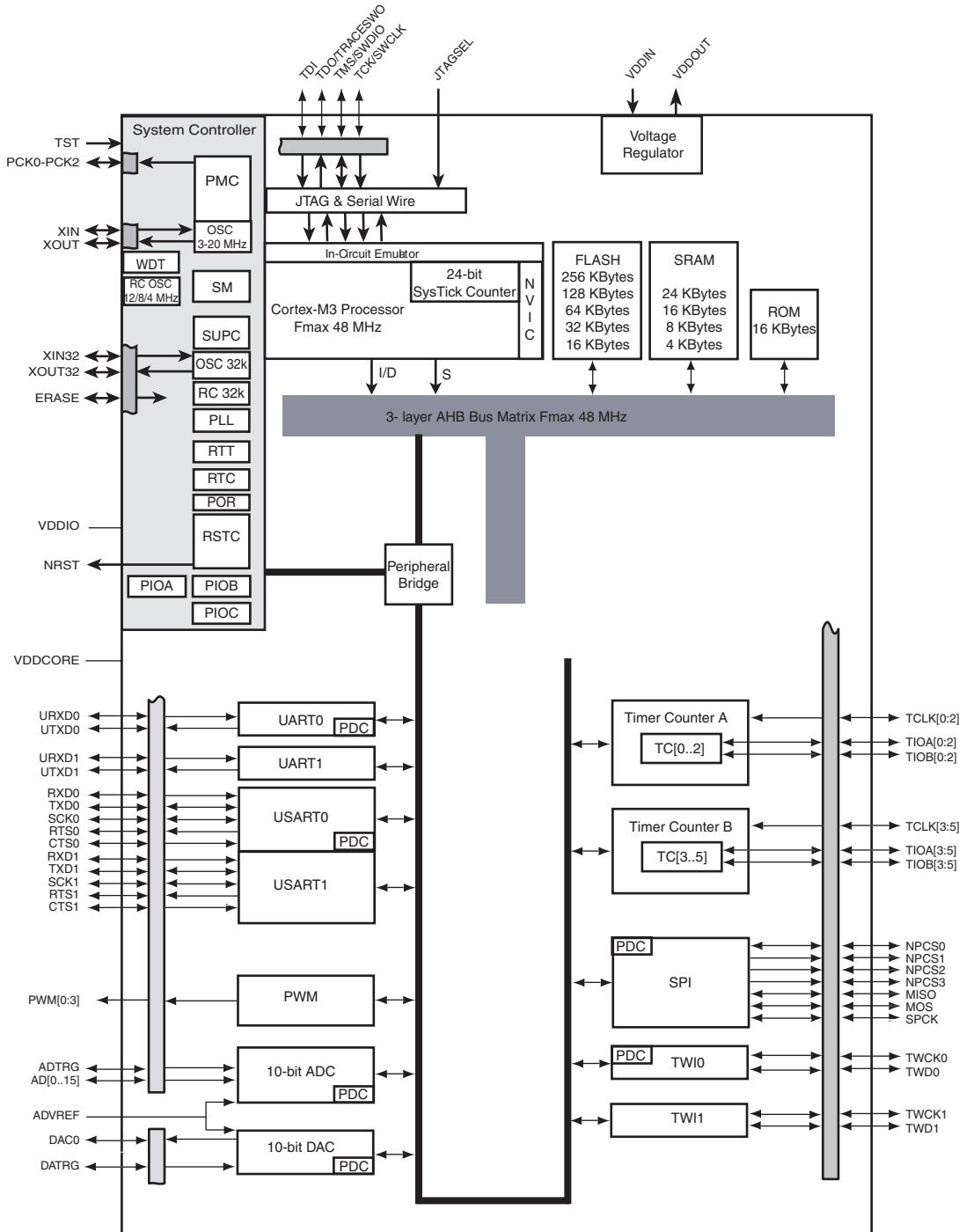
Device	Flash	SRAM	Package	Number of PIOs	ADC	Timer	PDC Channels	USART	DAC
SAM3N4A	256 Kbytes	24 Kbytes	LQFP48 QFN48	34	8 channels	6 <sup>(1)</sup>	8	1	–
SAM3N4B	256 Kbytes	24 Kbytes	LQFP64 QFN64	47	10 channels	6 <sup>(2)</sup>	10	2	1
<b>SAM3N4C</b>	<b>256 Kbytes</b>	<b>24 Kbytes</b>	<b>LQFP100 BGA100</b>	<b>79</b>	<b>16 channels</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>
SAM3N2A	128 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	LQFP48 QFN48	34	8 channels	6 <sup>(1)</sup>	8	1	–
SAM3N2B	128 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	LQFP64 QFN64	47	10 channels	6 <sup>(2)</sup>	10	2	1
SAM3N2C	128 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	LQFP100 BGA100	79	16 channels	6	10	2	1
SAM3N1A	64 Kbytes	8 Kbytes	LQFP48 QFN48	34	8 channels	6 <sup>(1)</sup>	8	1	–
SAM3N1B	64 Kbytes	8 Kbytes	LQFP64 QFN64	47	10 channels	6 <sup>(2)</sup>	10	2	1
SAM3N1C	64 Kbytes	8 Kbytes	LQFP100 BGA100	79	16 channels	6	10	2	1
SAM3N0A	32 Kbytes	8 Kbytes	LQFP48 QFN48	34	8 channels	6 <sup>(1)</sup>	8	1	–
SAM3N0B	32 Kbytes	8 Kbytes	LQFP64 QFN64	47	10 channels	6 <sup>(2)</sup>	10	2	1
SAM3N0C	32 Kbytes	8 Kbytes	LQFP100 BGA100	79	16 channels	6	10	2	1
SAM3N00A	16 Kbytes	4 KBytes	LQFP48 QFN48	34	8 channels	6 <sup>(1)</sup>	8	1	–
SAM3N00B	16 Kbytes	4 KBytes	LQFP64 QFN64	47	10 channels	6 <sup>(2)</sup>	10	2	1

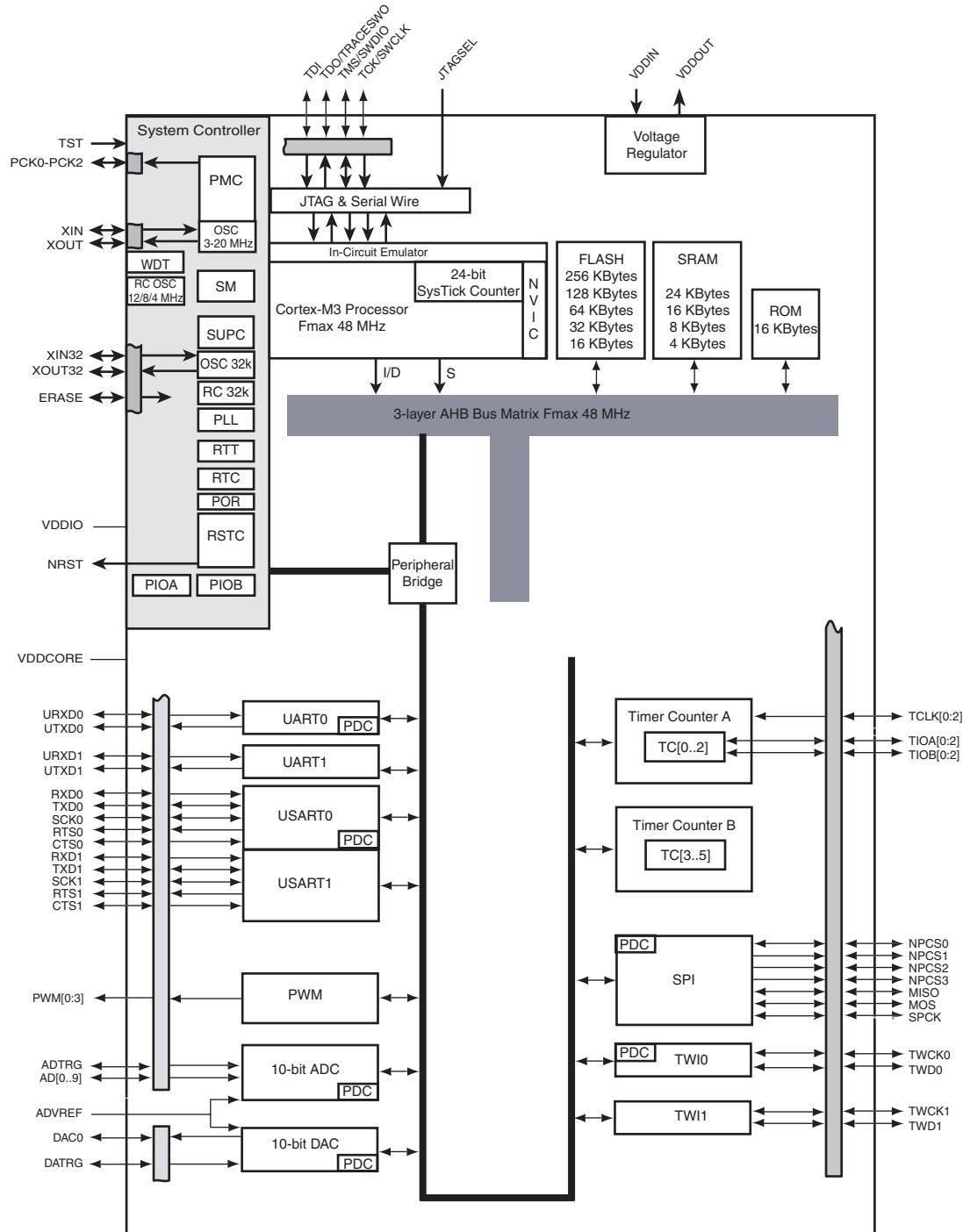
Notes:

- Only two TC channels are accessible through the PIO.
- Only three TC channels are accessible through the PIO.

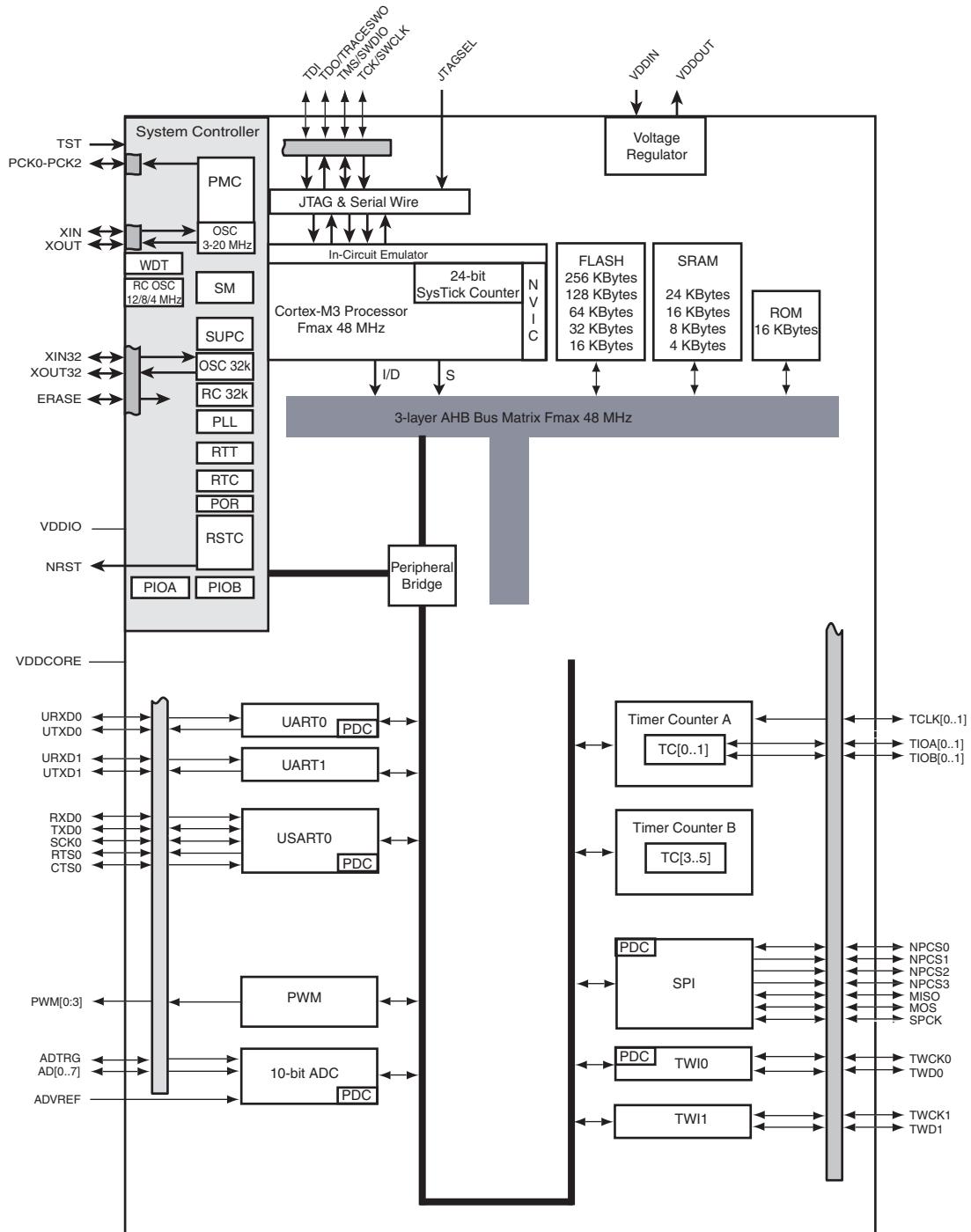
## 2. SAM3N Block Diagram

**Figure 2-1.** SAM3N 100-pin version Block Diagram



**Figure 2-2.** SAM3N 64-pin version Block Diagram

**Figure 2-3.** SAM3N 48-pin version Block Diagram



### 3. Signal Description

Table 3-1 gives details on the signal name classified by peripheral.

**Table 3-1.** Signal Description List

Signal Name	Function	Type	Active Level	Voltage Reference	Comments
<b>Power Supplies</b>					
VDDIO	Peripherals I/O Lines Power Supply	Power			1.62V to 3.6V
VDDIN	Voltage Regulator, ADC and DAC Power Supply	Power			1.8V to 3.6V <sup>(3)</sup>
VDDOUT	Voltage Regulator Output	Power			1.8V Output
VDDPLL	Oscillator and PLL Power Supply	Power			1.65 V to 1.95V
VDDCORE	Power the core, the embedded memories and the peripherals	Power			1.65V to 1.95V Connected externally to VDDOUT
GND	Ground	Ground			
<b>Clocks, Oscillators and PLLs</b>					
XIN	Main Oscillator Input	Input		VDDIO	Reset State: - PIO Input
XOUT	Main Oscillator Output	Output			- Internal Pull-up disabled <sup>(4)</sup>
XIN32	Slow Clock Oscillator Input	Input			- Schmitt Trigger enabled <sup>(1)</sup>
XOUT32	Slow Clock Oscillator Output	Output			
PCK0 - PCK2	Programmable Clock Output	Output			Reset State: - PIO Input - Internal Pull-up enabled - Schmitt Trigger enabled <sup>(1)</sup>
<b>ICE and JTAG</b>					
TCK/SWCLK	Test Clock/Serial Wire Clock	Input		VDDIO	Reset State: - SWJ-DP Mode
TDI	Test Data In	Input			- Internal pull-up disabled <sup>(1)</sup>
TDO/TRACESWO	Test Data Out/Trace Asynchronous Data Out	Output			- Schmitt Trigger enabled <sup>(1)</sup>
TMS/SWDIO	Test Mode Select /Serial Wire Input/Output	Input / I/O			
JTAGSEL	JTAG Selection	Input	High		Permanent Internal pull-down

**Table 3-1.** Signal Description List (Continued)

Signal Name	Function	Type	Active Level	Voltage Reference	Comments
<b>Flash Memory</b>					
ERASE	Flash and NVM Configuration Bits Erase Command	Input	High	VDDIO	Reset State: - Erase Input - Internal pull-down enabled - Schmitt Trigger enabled <sup>(1)</sup>
<b>Reset/Test</b>					
NRST	Microcontroller Reset	I/O	Low	VDDIO	Permanent Internal pull-up
TST	Test Mode Select	Input		VDDIO	Permanent Internal pull-down
<b>Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transceiver - USARTx</b>					
URXDx	USART Receive Data	Input			
UTXDx	USART Transmit Data	Output			
<b>PIO Controller - PIOA - PIOB - PIOC</b>					
PA0 - PA31	Parallel IO Controller A	I/O		VDDIO	Reset State: - PIO or System IOs <sup>(2)</sup> - Internal pull-up enabled - Schmitt Trigger enabled <sup>(1)</sup>
PB0 - PB14	Parallel IO Controller B	I/O			
PC0 - PC31	Parallel IO Controller C	I/O			
<b>Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter USARTx</b>					
SCKx	USARTx Serial Clock	I/O			
TXDx	USARTx Transmit Data	I/O			
RXDx	USARTx Receive Data	Input			
RTSx	USARTx Request To Send	Output			
CTSx	USARTx Clear To Send	Input			
<b>Timer/Counter - TC</b>					
TCLKx	TC Channel x External Clock Input	Input			
TIOAx	TC Channel x I/O Line A	I/O			
TIOBx	TC Channel x I/O Line B	I/O			
<b>Pulse Width Modulation Controller- PWMC</b>					
PWMx	PWM Waveform Output for channel x	Output			

**Table 3-1.** Signal Description List (Continued)

Signal Name	Function	Type	Active Level	Voltage Reference	Comments
<b>Serial Peripheral Interface - SPI</b>					
MISO	Master In Slave Out	I/O			
MOSI	Master Out Slave In	I/O			
SPCK	SPI Serial Clock	I/O			
SPI_NPCS0	SPI Peripheral Chip Select 0	I/O	Low		
SPI_NPCS1 - SPI_NPCS3	SPI Peripheral Chip Select	Output	Low		
<b>Two-Wire Interface- TWIx</b>					
TWDx	TWIx Two-wire Serial Data	I/O			
TWCKx	TWIx Two-wire Serial Clock	I/O			
<b>Analog</b>					
ADVREF	ADC and DAC Reference	Analog			
<b>10-bit Analog-to-Digital Converter - ADC</b>					
AD0 - AD15	Analog Inputs	Analog			
ADTRG	ADC Trigger	Input		VDDIO	
<b>Digital-to-Analog Converter Controller- DACC</b>					
DAC0	DACC channel analog output	Analog			
DATRG	DACC Trigger	Input		VDDIO	
<b>Fast Flash Programming Interface</b>					
PGMEN0-PGMEN2	Programming Enabling	Input		VDDIO	
PGMM0-PGMM3	Programming Mode	Input			
PGMD0-PGMD15	Programming Data	I/O			
PGMRDY	Programming Ready	Output	High		
PGMVALID	Data Direction	Output	Low		
PGMNOE	Programming Read	Input	Low		
PGMCK	Programming Clock	Input			
PGMNCMD	Programming Command	Input	Low		

- Notes:
1. Schmitt Triggers can be disabled through PIO registers.
  2. Some PIO lines are shared with System IOs.
  3. See [Section 5.3 “Typical Powering Schematics”](#) for restriction on voltage range of Analog Cells.
  4. TDO pin is set in input mode when the Cortex-M3 Core is not in debug mode. Thus the internal pull-up corresponding to this PIO line must be enabled to avoid current consumption due to floating input.

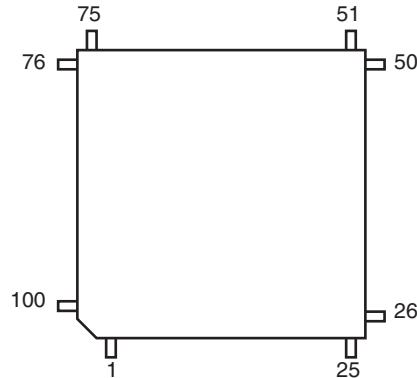
## 4. Package and Pinout

SAM3N4/2/1/0/00 series is pin-to-pin compatible with SAM3S products. Furthermore SAM3N4/2/1/0/00 devices have new functionalities referenced in italic in [Table 4-1](#), [Table 4-3](#) and [Table 4-4](#).

### 4.1 SAM3N4/2/1/0/00C Package and Pinout

#### 4.1.1 100-lead LQFP Package Outline

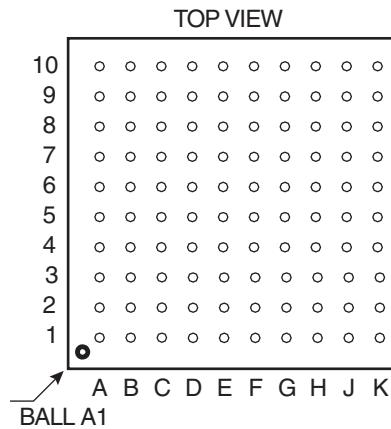
**Figure 4-1.** Orientation of the 100-lead LQFP Package



#### 4.1.2 100-ball TFBGA Package Outline

The 100-Ball TFBGA package has a 0.8 mm ball pitch and respects Green Standards. Its dimensions are 9 x 9 x 1.1 mm.

**Figure 4-2.** Orientation of the 100-ball TFBGA Package



#### 4.1.3 100-Lead LQFP Pinout

**Table 4-1.** 100-lead LQFP SAM3N4/2/1/0/00C Pinout

1	ADVREF	26	GND	51	TDI/PB4	76	TDO/TRACESWO/PB5
2	GND	27	VDDIO	52	PA6/PGMNOE	77	JTAGSEL
3	PB0/AD4	28	PA16/PGMD4	53	PA5/PGMRDY	78	PC18
4	PC29/AD13	29	PC7	54	PC28	79	TMS/SWDIO/PB6
5	PB1/AD5	30	PA15/PGMD3	55	PA4/PGMNCMD	80	PC19
6	PC30/AD14	31	PA14/PGMD2	56	VDDCORE	81	PA31
7	PB2/AD6	32	PC6	57	PA27	82	PC20
8	PC31/AD15	33	PA13/PGMD1	58	PC8	83	TCK/SWCLK/PB7
9	PB3/AD7	34	PA24	59	PA28	84	PC21
10	VDDIN	35	PC5	60	NRST	85	VDDCORE
11	VDDOUT	36	VDDCORE	61	TST	86	PC22
12	PA17/PGMD5/AD0	37	PC4	62	PC9	87	ERASE/PB12
13	PC26	38	PA25	63	PA29	88	PB10
14	PA18/PGMD6/AD1	39	PA26	64	PA30	89	PB11
15	PA21/AD8	40	PC3	65	PC10	90	PC23
16	VDDCORE	41	PA12/PGMD0	66	PA3	91	VDDIO
17	PC27	42	PA11/PGMM3	67	PA2/PGMEN2	92	PC24
18	PA19/PGMD7/AD2	43	PC2	68	PC11	93	PB13/DAC0
19	PC15/AD11	44	PA10/PGMM2	69	VDDIO	94	PC25
20	PA22/AD9	45	GND	70	GND	95	GND
21	PC13/AD10	46	PA9/PGMM1	71	PC14	96	PB8/XOUT
22	PA23	47	PC1	72	PA1/PGMEN1	97	PB9/PGMCK/XIN
23	PC12/AD12	48	PA8/XOUT32/ PGMM0	73	PC16	98	VDDIO
24	PA20/AD3	49	PA7/XIN32/ PGMNVALID	74	PA0/PGMEN0	99	PB14
25	PC0	50	VDDIO	75	PC17	100	VDDPLL

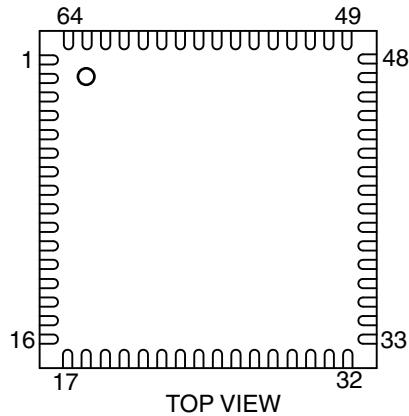
#### 4.1.4 100-ball TFBGA Pinout

**Table 4-2.** 100-ball TFBGA SAM3N4/2/1/0/00C Pinout

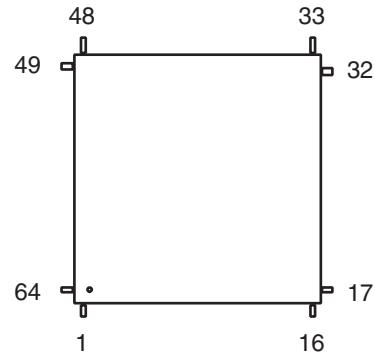
A1	PB1	C6	PB7	F1	PA18	H6	PC4
A2	PC29	C7	PC16	F2	PC26	H7	PA11
A3	VDDIO	C8	PA1	F3	VDDOUT	H8	PC1
A4	PB9	C9	PC17	F4	GND	H9	PA6
A5	PB8	C10	PA0	F5	VDDIO	H10	PB4
A6	PB13	D1	PB3	F6	PA27	J1	PC15
A7	PB11	D2	PB0	F7	PC8	J2	PC0
A8	PB10	D3	PC24	F8	PA28	J3	PA16
A9	PB6	D4	PC22	F9	TST	J4	PC6
A10	JTAGSEL	D5	GND	F10	PC9	J5	PA24
B1	PC30	D6	GND	G1	PA21	J6	PA25
B2	ADVREF	D7	VDDCORE	G2	PC27	J7	PA10
B3	GNDANA	D8	PA2	G3	PA15	J8	GND
B4	PB14	D9	PC11	G4	VDDCORE	J9	VDDCORE
B5	PC21	D10	PC14	G5	VDDCORE	J10	VDDIO
B6	PC20	E1	PA17	G6	PA26	K1	PA22
B7	PA31	E2	PC31	G7	PA12	K2	PC13
B8	PC19	E3	VDDIN	G8	PC28	K3	PC12
B9	PC18	E4	GND	G9	PA4	K4	PA20
B10	PB5	E5	GND	G10	PA5	K5	PC5
C1	PB2	E6	NRST	H1	PA19	K6	PC3
C2	VDDPLL	E7	PA29	H2	PA23	K7	PC2
C3	PC25	E8	PA30	H3	PC7	K8	PA9
C4	PC23	E9	PC10	H4	PA14	K9	PA8
C5	PB12	E10	PA3	H5	PA13	K10	PA7

## 4.2 SAM3N4/2/1/0/00B Package and Pinout

**Figure 4-3.** Orientation of the 64-pad QFN Package



**Figure 4-4.** Orientation of the 64-lead LQFP Package



#### 4.2.1 64-Lead LQFP and QFN Pinout

64-pin version SAM3N devices are pin-to-pin compatible with SAM3S products. Furthermore, SAM3N products have new functionalities shown in italic in [Table 4-3](#).

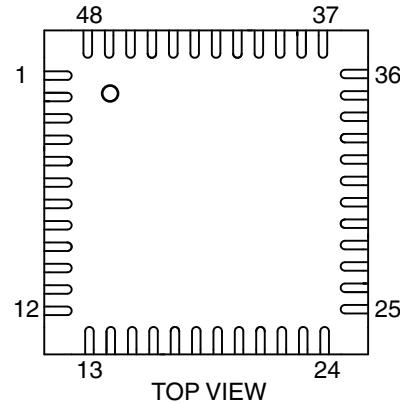
**Table 4-3.** 64-pin SAM3N4/2/1/0/00B Pinout

1	ADVREF	17	GND	33	<i>TDI/PB4</i>	49	<i>TDO/TRACESWO/PB5</i>
2	GND	18	VDDIO	34	PA6/PGMNOE	50	JTAGSEL
3	<i>PB0/AD4</i>	19	PA16/PGMD4	35	PA5/PGMRDY	51	<i>TMS/SWDIO/PB6</i>
4	<i>PB1AD5</i>	20	PA15/PGMD3	36	PA4/PGMNCMD	52	PA31
5	<i>PB2/AD6</i>	21	PA14/PGMD2	37	PA27/PGMD15	53	<i>TCK/SWCLK/PB7</i>
6	<i>PB3/AD7</i>	22	PA13/PGMD1	38	PA28	54	VDDCORE
7	VDDIN	23	PA24/PGMD12	39	NRST	55	<i>ERASE/PB12</i>
8	VDDOUT	24	VDDCORE	40	TST	56	<i>PB10</i>
9	PA17/PGMD5/AD0	25	PA25/PGMD13	41	PA29	57	<i>PB11</i>
10	PA18/PGMD6/AD1	26	PA26/PGMD14	42	PA30	58	VDDIO
11	PA21/PGMD9/AD8	27	PA12/PGMD0	43	PA3	59	<i>PB13/DAC0</i>
12	VDDCORE	28	PA11/PGMM3	44	PA2/PGMEN2	60	GND
13	PA19/PGMD7/AD2	29	PA10/PGMM2	45	VDDIO	61	<i>XOUT/PB8</i>
14	PA22/PGMD10/AD9	30	PA9/PGMM1	46	GND	62	<i>XIN/PGMCK/PB9</i>
15	PA23/PGMD11	31	PA8/XOUT32/PGMM0	47	PA1/PGMEN1	63	<i>PB14</i>
16	PA20/PGMD8/AD3	32	PA7/XIN32/XOUT32/PGMNVALID	48	PA0/PGMEN0	64	VDDPLL

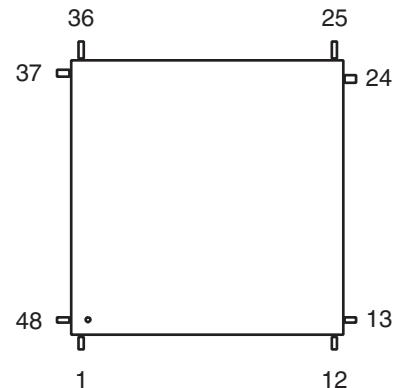
Note: The bottom pad of the QFN package must be connected to ground.

#### 4.3 SAM3N4/2/1/0/00A Package and Pinout

**Figure 4-5.** Orientation of the 48-pad QFN Package



**Figure 4-6.** Orientation of the 48-lead LQFP Package



#### 4.3.1 48-Lead LQFP and QFN Pinout

**Table 4-4.** 48-pin SAM3N4/2/1/0/00A Pinout

1	ADVREF	13	VDDIO	25	TDI/PB4	37	TDO/TRACESWO/ PB5
2	GND	14	PA16/PGMD4	26	PA6/PGMNOE	38	JTAGSEL
3	PB0/AD4	15	PA15/PGMD3	27	PA5/PGMRDY	39	TMS/SWDIO/PB6
4	PB1/AD5	16	PA14/PGMD2	28	PA4/PGMNCMD	40	TCK/SWCLK/PB7
5	PB2/AD6	17	PA13/PGMD1	29	NRST	41	VDDCORE
6	PB3/AD7	18	VDDCORE	30	TST	42	ERASE/PB12
7	VDDIN	19	PA12/PGMD0	31	PA3	43	PB10
8	VDDOUT	20	PA11/PGMM3	32	PA2/PGMEN2	44	PB11
9	PA17/PGMD5/AD0	21	PA10/PGMM2	33	VDDIO	45	XOUT/PB8
10	PA18/PGMD6/AD1	22	PA9/PGMM1	34	GND	46	XIN/P/PB9/GMCK
11	PA19/PGMD7/AD2	23	PA8/XOUT32/PG MM0	35	PA1/PGMEN1	47	VDDIO
12	PA20/AD3	24	PA7/XIN32/PGMN VALID	36	PA0/PGMEN0	48	VDDPLL

Note: The bottom pad of the QFN package must be connected to ground.

## 5. Power Considerations

### 5.1 Power Supplies

The SAM3N product has several types of power supply pins:

- VDDCORE pins: Power the core, including the processor, the embedded memories and the peripherals. Voltage ranges from 1.62V to 1.95V.
- VDDIO pins: Power the Peripherals I/O lines, Backup part, 32 kHz crystal oscillator and oscillator pads. Voltage ranges from 1.62V to 3.6V
- VDDIN pin: Voltage Regulator, ADC and DAC Power Supply. Voltage ranges from 1.8V to 3.6V for the Voltage Regulator
- VDDPLL pin: Powers the PLL, the Fast RC and the 3 to 20 MHz oscillators. Voltage ranges from 1.62V to 1.95V.

### 5.2 Voltage Regulator

The SAM3N embeds a voltage regulator that is managed by the Supply Controller.

This internal regulator is intended to supply the internal core of SAM3N. It features two different operating modes:

- In Normal mode, the voltage regulator consumes less than 700  $\mu$ A static current and draws 60 mA of output current. Internal adaptive biasing adjusts the regulator quiescent current depending on the required load current. In Wait Mode quiescent current is only 7  $\mu$ A.
- In Backup mode, the voltage regulator consumes less than 1  $\mu$ A while its output (VDDOUT) is driven internally to GND. The default output voltage is 1.80V and the start-up time to reach Normal mode is less than 100  $\mu$ s.

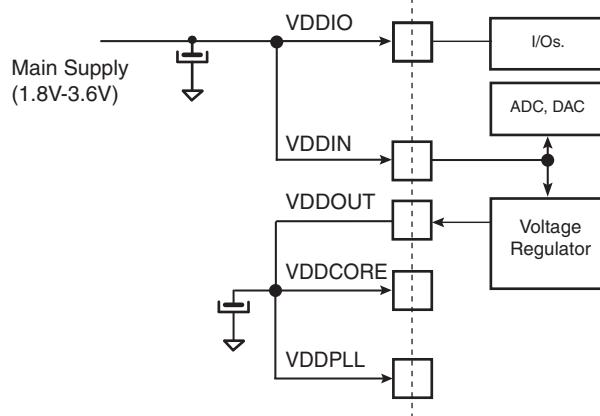
For adequate input and output power supply decoupling/bypassing, refer to "Voltage Regulator" in the "Electrical Characteristics" section of the datasheet.

### 5.3 Typical Powering Schematics

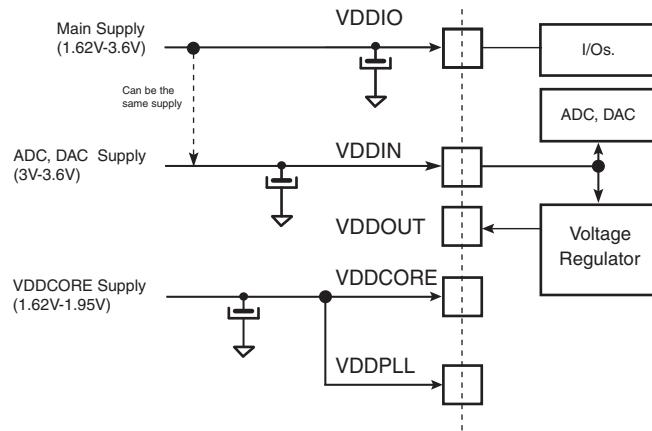
The SAM3N supports a 1.62V-3.6V single supply mode. The internal regulator input connected to the source and its output feeds VDDCORE. [Figure 5-1](#) shows the power schematics.

As VDDIN powers the voltage regulator and the ADC/DAC, when the user does not want to use the embedded voltage regulator, it can be disabled by software via the SUPC (note that it is different from Backup mode).

**Figure 5-1.** Single Supply



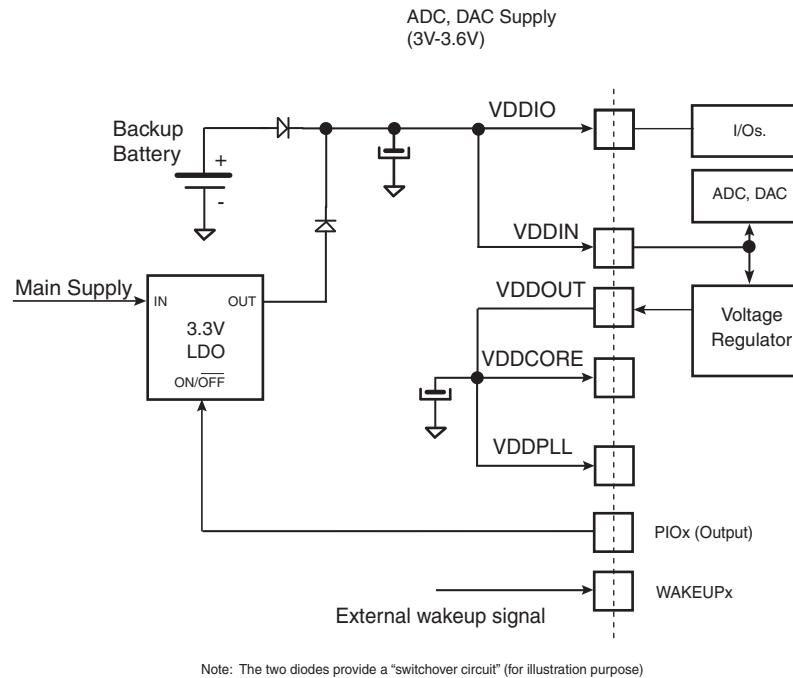
**Figure 5-2.** Core Externally Supplied



Note: Restrictions

With Main Supply < 3V, ADC and DAC are not usable.  
With Main Supply >= 3V, all peripherals are usable.

[Figure 5-3](#) below provides an example of the powering scheme when using a backup battery. Since the PIO state is preserved when in backup mode, any free PIO line can be used to switch off the external regulator by driving the PIO line at low level (PIO is input, pull-up enabled after backup reset). External wake-up of the system can be from a push button or any signal. See [Section 5.6 “Wake-up Sources”](#) for further details.

**Figure 5-3.** Core Externally Supplied (backup battery)

Note: The two diodes provide a "switchover circuit" (for illustration purpose) between the backup battery and the main supply when the system is put in backup mode.

## 5.4 Active Mode

Active mode is the normal running mode with the core clock running from the fast RC oscillator, the main crystal oscillator or the PLL. The power management controller can be used to adapt the frequency and to disable the peripheral clocks.

## 5.5 Low Power Modes

The various low-power modes of the SAM3N are described below:

### 5.5.1 Backup Mode

The purpose of backup mode is to achieve the lowest power consumption possible in a system that is performing periodic wakeups to carry out tasks but not requiring fast startup time (<0.1ms). Total current consumption is 3  $\mu$ A typical.

The Supply Controller, zero-power power-on reset, RTT, RTC, Backup registers and 32 kHz oscillator (RC or crystal oscillator selected by software in the Supply Controller) are running. The regulator and the core supply are off.

Backup mode is based on the Cortex-M3 deep sleep mode with the voltage regulator disabled.

The SAM3N can be awakened from this mode through WUP0-15 pins, the supply monitor (SM), the RTT or RTC wake-up event.

Backup mode is entered by using WFE instructions with the SLEEPDEEP bit in the System Control Register of the Cortex-M3 set to 1. (See the “Power Management” description in The ARM Cortex M3 Processor section of the product datasheet).

Exit from Backup mode happens if one of the following enable wake-up events occurs:

- WKUPEN0-15 pins (level transition, configurable debouncing)

- Supply Monitor alarm
- RTC alarm
- RTT alarm

### 5.5.2 Wait Mode

The purpose of the wait mode is to achieve very low power consumption while maintaining the whole device in a powered state for a startup time of less than 10  $\mu$ s. Current Consumption in Wait mode is typically 15  $\mu$ A (total current consumption) if the internal voltage regulator is used or 8  $\mu$ A if an external regulator is used.

In this mode, the clocks of the core, peripherals and memories are stopped. However, the core, peripherals and memories power supplies are still powered. From this mode, a fast start up is available.

This mode is entered via Wait for Event (WFE) instructions with LPM = 1 (Low Power Mode bit in PMC\_FSMR). The Cortex-M3 is able to handle external or internal events in order to wake up the core (WFE). By configuring the WUP0-15 external lines as fast startup wake-up pins (refer to [Section 5.7 “Fast Start-Up”](#)). RTC or RTT Alarm wake-up events can be used to wake up the CPU (exit from WFE).

Entering Wait Mode:

- Select the 4/8/12 MHz fast RC oscillator as Main Clock
- Set the LPM bit in the PMC Fast Startup Mode Register (PMC\_FSMR)
- Execute the Wait-For-Event (WFE) instruction of the processor

Note: Internal Main clock resynchronization cycles are necessary between the writing of MOSCRCEN bit and the effective entry in Wait mode. Depending on the user application, Waiting for MOSCRCEN bit to be cleared is recommended to ensure that the core will not execute undesired instructions.

### 5.5.3 Sleep Mode

The purpose of sleep mode is to optimize power consumption of the device versus response time. In this mode, only the core clock is stopped. The peripheral clocks can be enabled. The current consumption in this mode is application dependent.

This mode is entered via Wait for Interrupt (WFI) or Wait for Event (WFE) instructions with LPM = 0 in PMC\_FSMR.

The processor can be woke up from an interrupt if WFI instruction of the Cortex M3 is used, or from an event if the WFE instruction is used to enter this mode.

#### 5.5.4 Low Power Mode Summary Table

The modes detailed above are the main low power modes. Each part can be set to on or off separately and wake up sources can be individually configured. [Table 5-1](#) below shows a summary of the configurations of the low power modes.

**Table 5-1.** Low Power Mode Configuration Summary

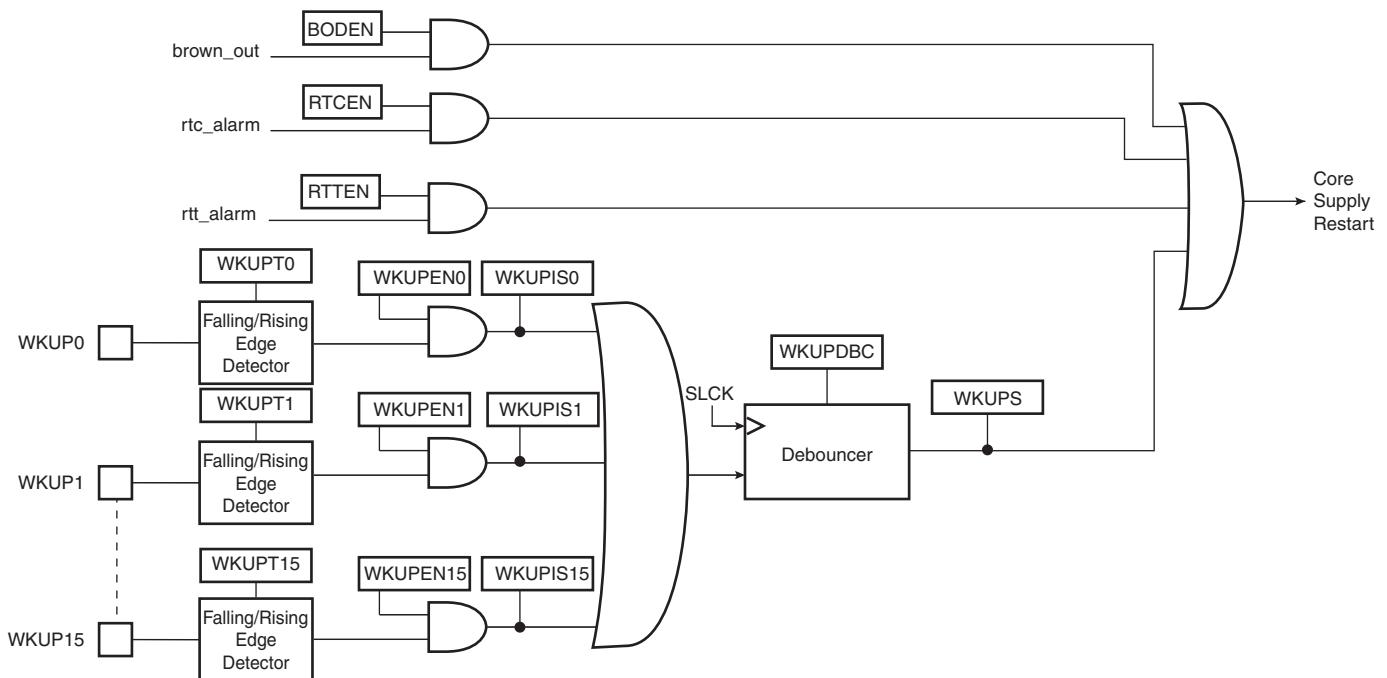
Mode	SUPC, 32 kHz Oscillator RTC RTT Backup Registers, POR (Backup Region)	Regulator	Core Memory Peripherals	Mode Entry	Potential Wake Up Sources	Core at Wake Up	PIO State while in Low Power Mode	PIO State at Wake Up	Consumption (2) (3)	Wake Up Time <sup>(1)</sup>
Backup Mode	ON	OFF	OFF (Not powered)	WFE +SLEEPDEEP bit = 1	WUP0-15 pins BOD alarm RTC alarm RTT alarm	Reset	Previous state saved	PIOA & PIOB & PIOC Inputs with pull ups	3 µA typ <sup>(4)</sup>	< 0.1 ms
Wait Mode	ON	ON	Powered (Not clocked)	WFE +SLEEPDEEP bit = 0 +LPM bit = 1	Any Event from: Fast startup through WUP0-15 pins RTC alarm RTT alarm USB wake-up	Clocked back	Previous state saved	Unchanged	5 µA/15 µA <sup>(5)</sup>	< 10 µs
Sleep Mode	ON	ON	Powered <sup>(7)</sup> (Not clocked)	WFE or WFI +SLEEPDEEP bit = 0 +LPM bit = 0	Entry mode = WFI Interrupt Only; Entry mode = WFE Any Enabled Interrupt and/or Any Event from: Fast start-up through WUP0-15 pins RTC alarm RTT alarm	Clocked back	Previous state saved	Unchanged	<sup>(6)</sup>	<sup>(6)</sup>

- Notes:
- When considering wake-up time, the time required to start the PLL is not taken into account. Once started, the device works with the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator. The user has to add the PLL start-up time if it is needed in the system. The wake-up time is defined as the time taken for wake up until the first instruction is fetched.
  - The external loads on PIOs are not taken into account in the calculation.
  - Supply Monitor current consumption is not included.
  - Total Current consumption.
  - 5 µA on VDDCORE, 15 µA for total current consumption (using internal voltage regulator), 8 µA for total current consumption (without using internal voltage regulator).
  - Depends on MCK frequency.
  - In this mode the core is supplied and not clocked but some peripherals can be clocked.

## 5.6 Wake-up Sources

The wake-up events allow the device to exit backup mode. When a wake-up event is detected, the Supply Controller performs a sequence which automatically reenables the core power supply and the SRAM power supply, if they are not already enabled.

**Figure 5-4.** Wake-up Source

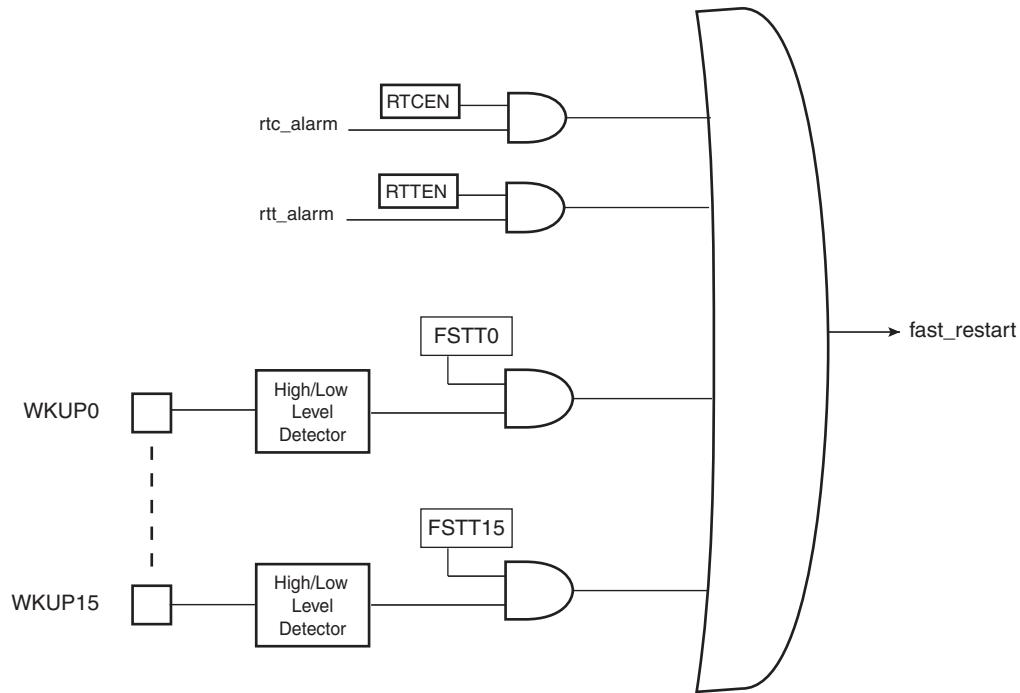


## 5.7 Fast Start-Up

The SAM3N allows the processor to restart in a few microseconds while the processor is in wait mode. A fast start up can occur upon detection of a low level on one of the 19 wake-up inputs (WKUP0 to 15 + SM + RTC + RTT).

The fast restart circuitry, as shown in [Figure 5-5](#), is fully asynchronous and provides a fast start-up signal to the Power Management Controller. As soon as the fast start-up signal is asserted, the PMC automatically restarts the embedded 4 MHz fast RC oscillator, switches the master clock on this 4 MHz clock and reenables the processor clock.

**Figure 5-5.** Fast Start-Up Sources



## 6. Input/Output Lines

The SAM3N has several kinds of input/output (I/O) lines such as general purpose I/Os (GPIO) and system I/Os. GPIOs can have alternate functionality due to multiplexing capabilities of the PIO controllers. The same PIO line can be used whether in IO mode or by the multiplexed peripheral. System I/Os include pins such as test pins, oscillators, erase or analog inputs.

### 6.1 General Purpose I/O Lines

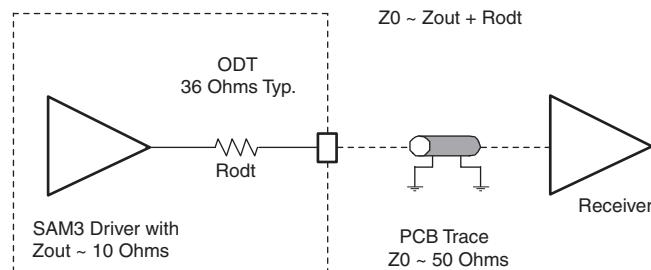
GPIO Lines are managed by PIO Controllers. All I/Os have several input or output modes such as pull-up or pull-down, input Schmitt triggers, multi-drive (open-drain), glitch filters, debouncing or input change interrupt. Programming of these modes is performed independently for each I/O line through the PIO controller user interface. For more details, refer to the product PIO controller section.

The input output buffers of the PIO lines are supplied through VDDIO power supply rail.

The SAM3N embeds high speed pads able to handle up to 45 MHz for SPI clock lines and 35 MHz on other lines. See “AC Characteristics” in the “Electrical Characteristics” section of the datasheet for more details. Typical pull-up and pull-down value is 100 kΩ for all I/Os.

Each I/O line also embeds an ODT (On-Die Termination), (see [Figure 6-1](#)). It consists of an internal series resistor termination scheme for impedance matching between the driver output (SAM3N) and the PCB trace impedance preventing signal reflection. The series resistor helps to reduce I/O switching current ( $di/dt$ ) thereby reducing in turn, EMI. It also decreases overshoot and undershoot (ringing) due to inductance of interconnect between devices or between boards. In conclusion ODT helps diminish signal integrity issues.

**Figure 6-1.** On-Die Termination



### 6.2 System I/O Lines

System I/O lines are pins used by oscillators, test mode, reset and JTAG to name but a few. Described below are the SAM3N system I/O lines shared with PIO lines:

These pins are software configurable as general purpose I/O or system pins. At startup the default function of these pins is always used.

**Table 6-1.** System I/O Configuration Pin List.

SYSTEM_IO bit number	Default function after reset	Other function	Constraints for normal start	Configuration
12	ERASE	PB12	Low Level at startup <sup>(1)</sup>	In Matrix User Interface Registers (Refer to the System I/O Configuration Register in the Bus Matrix section of the product datasheet.)
7	TCK/SWCLK	PB7	-	
6	TMS/SWDIO	PB6	-	
5	TDO/TRACESWO	PB5	-	
4	TDI	PB4	-	
-	PA7	XIN32	-	
-	PA8	XOUT32	-	
-	PB9	XIN	-	
-	PB8	XOUT	-	See footnote <sup>(3)</sup> below

Notes:

1. If PB12 is used as PIO input in user applications, a low level must be ensured at startup to prevent Flash erase before the user application sets PB12 into PIO mode.
2. In the product Datasheet Refer to: Slow Clock Generator of the Supply Controller section.
3. In the product Datasheet Refer to: 3 to 20 MHZ Crystal Oscillator information in the PMC section.

### 6.2.1 Serial Wire JTAG Debug Port (SWJ-DP) Pins

The SWJ-DP pins are TCK/SWCLK, TMS/SWDIO, TDO/SWO, TDI and commonly provided on a standard 20-pin JTAG connector defined by ARM. For more details about voltage reference and reset state, refer to [Table 3-1 on page 7](#).

At startup, SWJ-DP pins are configured in SWJ-DP mode to allow connection with debugging probe. Please refer to the “Debug and Test” section of the product datasheet.

SWJ-DP pins can be used as standard I/Os to provide users more general input/output pins when the debug port is not needed in the end application. Mode selection between SWJ-DP mode (System IO mode) and general IO mode is performed through the AHB Matrix Special Function Registers (MATRIX\_SFR). Configuration of the pad for pull-up, triggers, debouncing and glitch filters is possible regardless of the mode.

The JTAGSEL pin is used to select the JTAG boundary scan when asserted at a high level. It integrates a permanent pull-down resistor of about 15 kΩ to GND, so that it can be left unconnected for normal operations.

By default, the JTAG Debug Port is active. If the debugger host wants to switch to the Serial Wire Debug Port, it must provide a dedicated JTAG sequence on TMS/SWDIO and TCK/SWCLK which disables the JTAG-DP and enables the SW-DP. When the Serial Wire Debug Port is active, TDO/TRACESWO can be used for trace.

The asynchronous TRACE output (TRACESWO) is multiplexed with TDO. So the asynchronous trace can only be used with SW-DP, not JTAG-DP. For more information about SW-DP and JTAG-DP switching, please refer to the “Debug and Test” section.

### 6.3 Test Pin

The TST pin is used for JTAG Boundary Scan Manufacturing Test or Fast Flash programming mode of the SAM3N series. The TST pin integrates a permanent pull-down resistor of about 15 k $\Omega$  to GND, so that it can be left unconnected for normal operations. To enter fast programming mode, see the “Fast Flash Programming Interface” section of the product datasheet. For more on the manufacturing and test mode, refer to the “Debug and Test” section of the product datasheet.

### 6.4 NRST Pin

The NRST pin is bidirectional. It is handled by the on-chip reset controller and can be driven low to provide a reset signal to the external components or asserted low externally to reset the microcontroller. It will reset the Core and the peripherals except the Backup region (RTC, RTT and Supply Controller). There is no constraint on the length of the reset pulse and the reset controller can guarantee a minimum pulse length. The NRST pin integrates a permanent pull-up resistor to VDDIO of about 100 k $\Omega$ . By default, the NRST pin is configured as an input.

### 6.5 ERASE Pin

The ERASE pin is used to reinitialize the Flash content (and some of its NVM bits) to an erased state (all bits read as logic level 1). It integrates a pull-down resistor of about 100 k $\Omega$  to GND, so that it can be left unconnected for normal operations.

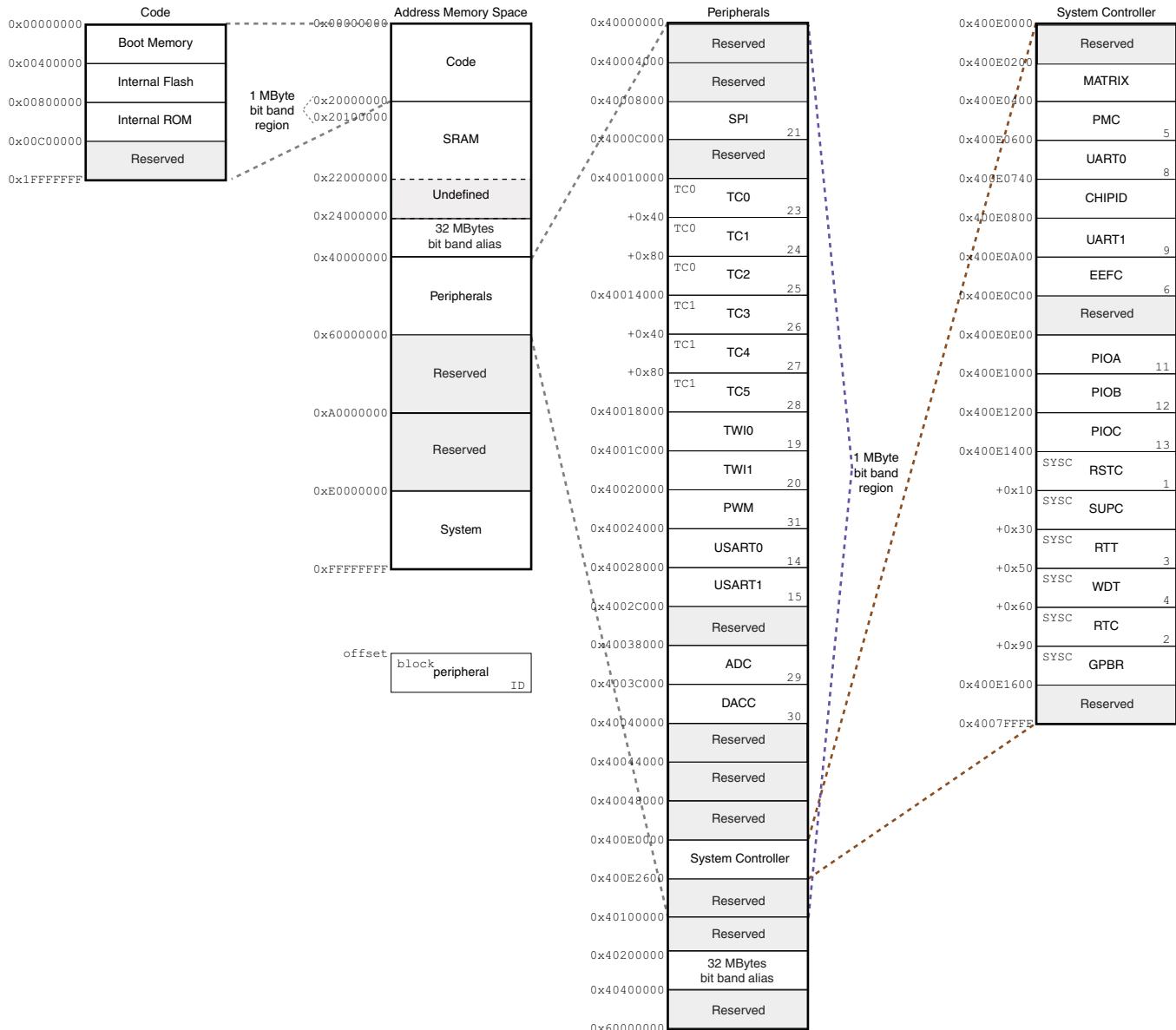
This pin is debounced by SCLK to improve the glitch tolerance. When the ERASE pin is tied high during less than 100 ms, it is not taken into account. The pin must be tied high during more than 220 ms to perform a Flash erase operation.

The ERASE pin is a system I/O pin and can be used as a standard I/O. At startup, the ERASE pin is not configured as a PIO pin. If the ERASE pin is used as a standard I/O, startup level of this pin must be low to prevent unwanted erasing. Please refer to [Section 9.3 “Peripheral Signal Multiplexing on I/O Lines” on page 35](#). Also, if the ERASE pin is used as a standard I/O output, asserting the pin to low does not erase the Flash.

## 7. Product Mapping

### 7.1 Product Mapping

**Figure 7-1.** SAM3N4/2/1/0/00 Product Mapping



## 7.2 Embedded Memories

### 7.2.1 Internal SRAM

The SAM3N4 product embeds a total of 24-Kbytes high-speed SRAM.

The SAM3N2 product embeds a total of 16-Kbytes high-speed SRAM.

The SAM3N1 product embeds a total of 8-Kbytes high-speed SRAM.

The SAM3N0 product embeds a total of 8-Kbytes high-speed SRAM.

The SAM3N00 product embeds a total of 4-Kbytes high-speed SRAM.

The SRAM is accessible over System Cortex-M3 bus at address 0x2000 0000.

The SRAM is in the bit band region. The bit band alias region is from 0x2200 0000 and 0x23FF FFFF.

RAM size must be configurable by calibration fuses.

### 7.2.2 Internal ROM

The SAM3N product embeds an Internal ROM, which contains the SAM Boot Assistant (SAM-BA), In Application Programming routines (IAP) and Fast Flash Programming Interface (FFPI).

At any time, the ROM is mapped at address 0x0080 0000.

### 7.2.3 Embedded Flash

#### 7.2.3.1 Flash Overview

The Flash of the SAM3N4 (256 Kbytes) is organized in one bank of 1024 pages of 256 bytes (Single plane).

The Flash of the SAM3N2 (128 Kbytes) is organized in one bank of 512 pages of 256 bytes (Single Plane).

The Flash of the SAM3N1 (64 Kbytes) is organized in one bank of 256 pages of 256 bytes (Single plane).

The Flash of the SAM3N0 (32 Kbytes) is organized in one bank of 128 pages of 256 bytes (Single plane).

The Flash of the SAM3N00 (16 Kbytes) is organized in one bank of 64 pages of 256 bytes (Single plane).

The Flash contains a 128-byte write buffer, accessible through a 32-bit interface.

#### 7.2.3.2 Flash Power Supply

The Flash is supplied by VDDCORE.

#### 7.2.3.3 Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller

The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) manages accesses performed by the masters of the system. It enables reading the Flash and writing the write buffer. It also contains a User Interface, mapped on the APB.

The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller ensures the interface of the Flash block with the 32-bit internal bus. Its 128-bit wide memory interface increases performance.

The user can choose between high performance or lower current consumption by selecting either 128-bit or 64-bit access. It also manages the programming, erasing, locking and unlocking sequences of the Flash using a full set of commands.

One of the commands returns the embedded Flash descriptor definition that informs the system about the Flash organization, thus making the software generic.

#### 7.2.3.4 Flash Speed

The user needs to set the number of wait states depending on the frequency used.

For more details, refer to the AC Characteristics sub section in the “Electrical Characteristics” section.

#### 7.2.3.5 Lock Regions

Several lock bits used to protect write and erase operations on lock regions. A lock region is composed of several consecutive pages, and each lock region has its associated lock bit.

**Table 7-1.** Lock bit number

Product	Number of lock bits	Lock region size
SAM3N4	16	16 kbytes (64 pages)
SAM3N2	8	16 kbytes (64 pages)
SAM3N1	4	16 kbytes (64 pages)
SAM3N0	2	16 kbytes (64 pages)
SAM3N00	1	16 kbytes (64 pages)

If a locked-region’s erase or program command occurs, the command is aborted and the EEFC triggers an interrupt.

The lock bits are software programmable through the EEFC User Interface. The command “Set Lock Bit” enables the protection. The command “Clear Lock Bit” unlocks the lock region.

Asserting the ERASE pin clears the lock bits, thus unlocking the entire Flash.

#### 7.2.3.6 Security Bit Feature

The SAM3N features a security bit, based on a specific General Purpose NVM bit (GPNVM bit 0). When the security is enabled, any access to the Flash, either through the ICE interface or through the Fast Flash Programming Interface, is forbidden. This ensures the confidentiality of the code programmed in the Flash.

This security bit can only be enabled, through the command “Set General Purpose NVM Bit 0” of the EEFC User Interface. Disabling the security bit can only be achieved by asserting the ERASE pin at 1, after a full Flash erase is performed. When the security bit is deactivated, all accesses to the Flash are permitted.

It is important to note that the assertion of the ERASE pin should always be longer than 200 ms.

As the ERASE pin integrates a permanent pull-down, it can be left unconnected during normal operation. However, it is safer to connect it directly to GND for the final application.

#### 7.2.3.7 Calibration Bits

NVM bits are used to calibrate the brownout detector and the voltage regulator. These bits are factory configured and cannot be changed by the user. The ERASE pin has no effect on the calibration bits.

#### 7.2.3.8 Unique Identifier

Each device integrates its own 128-bit unique identifier. These bits are factory configured and cannot be changed by the user. The ERASE pin has no effect on the unique identifier.

#### 7.2.3.9 Fast Flash Programming Interface

The Fast Flash Programming Interface allows programming the device through either a serial JTAG interface or through a multiplexed fully-handshaked parallel port. It allows gang programming with market-standard industrial programmers.

The FFPI supports read, page program, page erase, full erase, lock, unlock and protect commands.

The Fast Flash Programming Interface is enabled and the Fast Programming Mode is entered when TST and PA0 and PA1 are tied low.

#### 7.2.3.10 SAM-BA Boot

The SAM-BA Boot is a default Boot Program which provides an easy way to program in-situ the on-chip Flash memory.

The SAM-BA Boot Assistant supports serial communication via the UART0.

The SAM-BA Boot provides an interface with SAM-BA Graphic User Interface (GUI).

The SAM-BA Boot is in ROM and is mapped in Flash at address 0x0 when GPNVM bit 1 is set to 0.

#### 7.2.3.11 GPNVM Bits

The SAM3N features three GPNVM bits that can be cleared or set respectively through the commands “Clear GPNVM Bit” and “Set GPNVM Bit” of the EEFC User Interface.

**Table 7-2.** General-purpose Non volatile Memory Bits

GPNVMBit[#]	Function
0	Security bit
1	Boot mode selection

#### 7.2.4 Boot Strategies

The system always boots at address 0x0. To ensure a maximum boot possibilities the memory layout can be changed via GPNVM.

A general purpose NVM (GPNVM) bit is used to boot either on the ROM (default) or from the Flash.

The GPNVM bit can be cleared or set respectively through the commands “Clear General-purpose NVM Bit” and “Set General-purpose NVM Bit” of the EEFC User Interface.

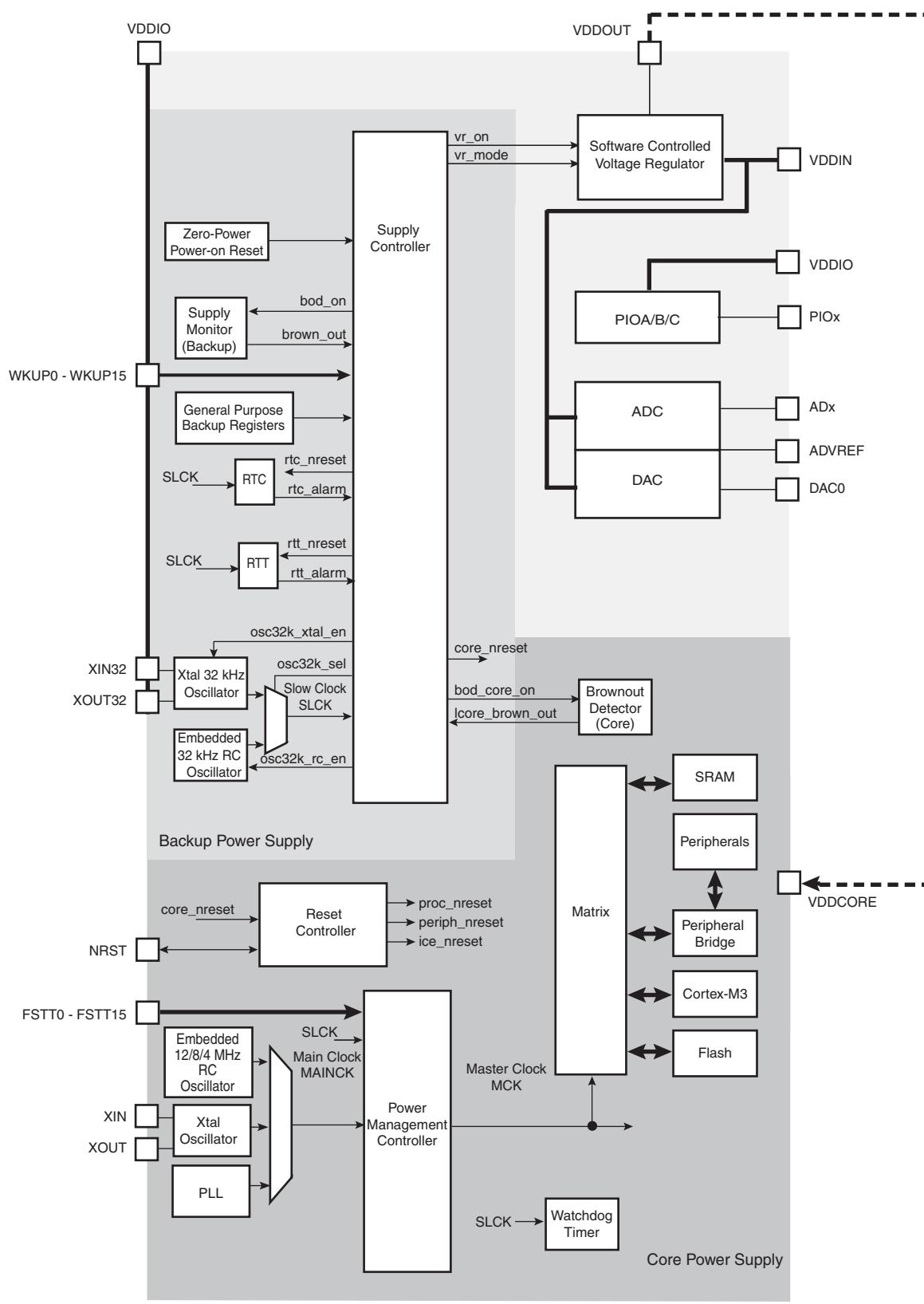
Setting the GPNVM Bit 1 selects the boot from the Flash, clearing it selects the boot from the ROM. Asserting ERASE clears the GPNVM Bit 1 and thus selects the boot from the ROM by default.

## 8. System Controller

The System Controller is a set of peripherals, which allow handling of key elements of the system, such as power, resets, clocks, time, interrupts, watchdog, etc...

See the System Controller block diagram in [Figure 8-1 on page 32](#).

**Figure 8-1.** System Controller Block Diagram



FSTT0 - FSTT15 are possible Fast Startup Sources, generated by WKUP0-WKUP15 Pins, but are not physical pins.

## 8.1 System Controller and Peripheral Mapping

Please refer to [Figure 7-1, "SAM3N4/2/1/0/00 Product Mapping" on page 27.](#)

All the peripherals are in the bit band region and are mapped in the bit band alias region.

## 8.2 Power-on-Reset, Brownout and Supply Monitor

The SAM3N embeds three features to monitor, warn and/or reset the chip:

- Power-on-Reset on VDDIO
- Brownout Detector on VDDCORE
- Supply Monitor on VDDIO

### 8.2.1 Power-on-Reset

The Power-on-Reset monitors VDDIO. It is always activated and monitors voltage at start up but also during power down. If VDDIO goes below the threshold voltage, the entire chip is reset. For more information, refer to the “Electrical Characteristics” section of the datasheet.

### 8.2.2 Brownout Detector on VDDCORE

The Brownout Detector monitors VDDCORE. It is active by default. It can be deactivated by software through the Supply Controller (SUPC\_MR). It is especially recommended to disable it during low-power modes such as wait or sleep modes.

If VDDCORE goes below the threshold voltage, the reset of the core is asserted. For more information, refer to the Supply Controller (SUPC) and Electrical Characteristics sections of the datasheet.

### 8.2.3 Supply Monitor on VDDIO

The Supply Monitor monitors VDDIO. It is inactive by default. It can be activated by software and is fully programmable with 16 steps for the threshold (between 1.9V to 3.4V). It is controlled by the Supply Controller (SUPC). A sample mode is possible. It allows to divide the supply monitor power consumption by a factor of up to 2048. For more information, refer to the Supply COntroller and Electrical Characteristics sections of the datasheet.

## 9. Peripherals

### 9.1 Peripheral Identifiers

Table 9-1 defines the Peripheral Identifiers of the SAM3N4/2/1/0/00. A peripheral identifier is required for the control of the peripheral interrupt with the Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller and for the control of the peripheral clock with the Power Management Controller.

**Table 9-1.** Peripheral Identifiers

Instance ID	Instance Name	NVIC Interrupt	PMC Clock Control	Instance Description
0	SUPC	X		Supply Controller
1	RSTC	X		Reset Controller
2	RTC	X		Real Time Clock
3	RTT	X		Real Time Timer
4	WDT	X		Watchdog Timer
5	PMC	X		Power Management Controller
6	EEFC	X		Enhanced Flash Controller
7	-	-		Reserved
8	UART0	X	X	UART 0
9	UART1	X	X	UART 1
10	-	-	-	Reserved
11	PIOA	X	X	Parallel I/O Controller A
12	PIOB	X	X	Parallel I/O Controller B
13	PIOC	X	X	Parallel I/O Controller C
14	USART0	X	X	USART 0
15	USART1	X	X	USART 1
16	-	-	-	Reserved
17	-	-	-	Reserved
18	-	-	-	Reserved
19	TWI0	X	X	Two Wire Interface 0
20	TWI1	X	X	Two Wire Interface 1
21	SPI	X	X	Serial Peripheral Interface
22	-	-	-	Reserved
23	TC0	X	X	Timer/Counter 0
24	TC1	X	X	Timer/Counter 1
25	TC2	X	X	Timer/Counter 2
26	TC3	X	X	Timer/Counter 3
27	TC4	X	X	Timer/Counter 4
28	TC5	X	X	Timer/Counter 5
29	ADC	X	X	Analog-to-Digital Converter
30	DACC	X	X	Digital-to-Analog Converter
31	PWM	X	X	Pulse Width Modulation

## 9.2 APB/AHB Bridge

The SAM3N4/2/1/0/00 product embeds one peripheral bridge:

The peripherals of the bridge are clocked by MCK.

## 9.3 Peripheral Signal Multiplexing on I/O Lines

The SAM3N product features 2 PIO controllers (48-pin and 64-pin version) or 3 PIO controllers (100-pin version), PIOA, PIOB and PIOC, that multiplex the I/O lines of the peripheral set.

The SAM3N 64-pin and 100-pin PIO Controller controls up to 32 lines (see [Table 9-2, “Multiplexing on PIO Controller A \(PIOA\),” on page 36](#)). Each line can be assigned to one of three peripheral functions: A, B or C. The multiplexing tables in the following paragraphs define how the I/O lines of the peripherals A, B and C are multiplexed on the PIO Controllers. The column “Comments” has been inserted in this table for the user’s own comments; it may be used to track how pins are defined in an application.

Note that some peripheral functions which are output only, might be duplicated within the tables.

### 9.3.1 PIO Controller A Multiplexing

**Table 9-2.** Multiplexing on PIO Controller A (PIOA)

I/O Line	Peripheral A	Peripheral B	Peripheral C	Extra Function	System Function	Comments
PA0	PWM0	TIOA0		WKUP0		High drive
PA1	PWM1	TIOB0		WKUP1		High drive
PA2	PWM2	SCK0	DATRG	WKUP2		High drive
PA3	TWD0	NPCS3				High drive
PA4	TWCK0	TCLK0		WKUP3		
PA5	RXD0	NPCS3		WKUP4		
PA6	TXD0	PCK0				
PA7	RTS0	PWM3			XIN32	
PA8	CTS0	ADTRG		WKUP5	XOUT32	
PA9	URXD0	NPCS1		WKUP6		
PA10	UTXD0	NPCS2				
PA11	NPCS0	PWM0		WKUP7		
PA12	MISO	PWM1				
PA13	MOSI	PWM2				
PA14	SPCK	PWM3		WKUP8		
PA15		TIOA1		WKUP14		
PA16		TIOB1		WKUP15		
PA17		PCK1		AD0		
PA18		PCK2		AD1		
PA19				AD2/WKUP9		
PA20				AD3/WKUP10		
PA21	RXD1	PCK1		AD8		64/100-pin versions
PA22	TXD1	NPCS3		AD9		64/100-pin versions
PA23	SCK1	PWM0				64/100-pin versions
PA24	RTS1	PWM1				64/100-pin versions
PA25	CTS1	PWM2				64/100-pin versions
PA26		TIOA2				64/100-pin versions
PA27		TIOB2				64/100-pin versions
PA28		TCLK1				64/100-pin versions
PA29		TCLK2				64/100-pin versions
PA30		NPCS2		WKUP11		64/100-pin versions
PA31	NPCS1	PCK2				64/100-pin versions

### 9.3.2 PIO Controller B Multiplexing

**Table 9-3.** Multiplexing on PIO Controller B (PIOB)

I/O Line	Peripheral A	Peripheral B	Peripheral C	Extra Function	System Function	Comments
PB0	PWM0			AD4		
PB1	PWM1			AD5		
PB2	URXD1	NPCS2		AD6/WKUP12		
PB3	UTXD1	PCK2		AD7		
PB4	TWD1	PWM2			TDI	
PB5	TWCK1			WKUP13	TDO/ TRACESWO	
PB6					TMS/SWDIO	
PB7					TCK/SWCLK	
PB8					XOUT	
PB9					XIN	
PB10						
PB11						
PB12					ERASE	
PB13		PCK0		DAC0		64/100-pin versions
PB14	NPCS1	PWM3				64/100-pin versions

### 9.3.3 PIO Controller C Multiplexing

I/O Line	Peripheral A	Peripheral B	Peripheral C	Extra Function	System Function	Comments
PC0						100-pin version
PC1						100-pin version
PC2						100-pin version
PC3						100-pin version
PC4		NPCS1				100-pin version
PC5						100-pin version
PC6						100-pin version
PC7		NPCS2				100-pin version
PC8		PWM0				100-pin version
PC9		PWM1				100-pin version
PC10		PWM2				100-pin version
PC11		PWM3				100-pin version
PC12				AD12		100-pin version
PC13				AD10		100-pin version
PC14		PCK2				100-pin version
PC15				AD11		100-pin version
PC16		PCK0				100-pin version
PC17		PCK1				100-pin version
PC18		PWM0				100-pin version
PC19		PWM1				100-pin version
PC20		PWM2				100-pin version
PC21		PWM3				100-pin version
PC22		PWM0				100-pin version
PC23		TIOA3				100-pin version
PC24		TIOB3				100-pin version
PC25		TCLK3				100-pin version
PC26		TIOA4				100-pin version
PC27		TIOB4				100-pin version
PC28		TCLK4				100-pin version
PC29		TIOA5		AD13		100-pin version
PC30		TIOB5		AD14		100-pin version
PC31		TCLK5		AD15		100-pin version

## 10. ARM Cortex® M3 Processor

### 10.1 About this section

This section provides the information required for application and system-level software development. It does not provide information on debug components, features, or operation.

This material is for microcontroller software and hardware engineers, including those who have no experience of ARM products.

**Note:** The information in this section is reproduced from source material provided to Atmel by ARM Ltd. in terms of Atmel's license for the ARM Cortex®-M3 processor core. This information is copyright ARM Ltd., 2008 - 2009.

### 10.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Version 2.0
- Thumb-2 (ISA) subset consisting of all base Thumb-2 instructions, 16-bit and 32-bit.
- Harvard processor architecture enabling simultaneous instruction fetch with data load/store.
- Three-stage pipeline.
- Single cycle 32-bit multiply.
- Hardware divide.
- Thumb and Debug states.
- Handler and Thread modes.
- Low latency ISR entry and exit.
- SysTick Timer
  - 24-bit down counter
  - Self-reload capability
  - Flexible System timer
- Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller
  - Thirty Two maskable external interrupts
  - Sixteen priority levels
  - Processor state automatically saved on interrupt entry, and restored on
  - Dynamic reprioritization of interrupts
  - Priority grouping
    - selection of pre-empting interrupt levels and non pre-empting interrupt levels
  - Support for tail-chaining and late arrival of interrupts
    - back-to-back interrupt processing without the overhead of state saving and restoration between interrupts.

Processor state automatically saved on interrupt entry and restored on interrupt exit, with no instruction overhead

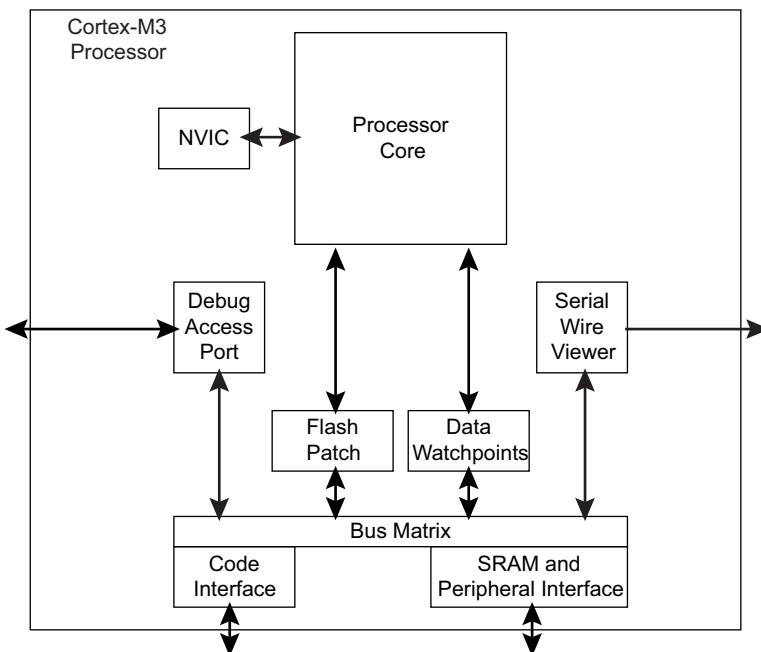
### 10.3 About the Cortex-M3 processor and core peripherals

- The Cortex-M3 processor is a high performance 32-bit processor designed for the microcontroller market. It offers significant benefits to developers, including:
- outstanding processing performance combined with fast interrupt handling



- enhanced system debug with extensive breakpoint and trace capabilities
- efficient processor core, system and memories
- ultra-low power consumption with integrated sleep modes

**Figure 10-1.** Typical Cortex-M3 Implementation



The Cortex-M3 processor is built on a high-performance processor core, with a 3-stage pipeline Harvard architecture, making it ideal for demanding embedded applications. The processor delivers exceptional power efficiency through an efficient instruction set and extensively optimized design, providing high-end processing hardware including single-cycle 32x32 multiplication and dedicated hardware division.

To facilitate the design of cost-sensitive devices, the Cortex-M3 processor implements tightly-coupled system components that reduce processor area while significantly improving interrupt handling and system debug capabilities. The Cortex-M3 processor implements a version of the Thumb® instruction set, ensuring high code density and reduced program memory requirements. The Cortex-M3 instruction set provides the exceptional performance expected of a modern 32-bit architecture, with the high code density of 8-bit and 16-bit microcontrollers.

The Cortex-M3 processor closely integrates a configurable *nested interrupt controller* (NVIC), to deliver industry-leading interrupt performance. The NVIC provides up to 16 interrupt priority levels. The tight integration of the processor core and NVIC provides fast execution of *interrupt service routines* (ISRs), dramatically reducing the interrupt latency. This is achieved through the hardware stacking of registers, and the ability to suspend load-multiple and store-multiple operations. Interrupt handlers do not require any assembler stubs, removing any code overhead from the ISRs. Tail-chaining optimization also significantly reduces the overhead when switching from one ISR to another.

To optimize low-power designs, the NVIC integrates with the sleep modes, that include a deep sleep function that enables the entire device to be rapidly powered down.

### 10.3.1 System level interface

The Cortex-M3 processor provides multiple interfaces using AMBA® technology to provide high speed, low latency memory accesses. It supports unaligned data accesses and implements atomic bit manipulation that enables faster peripheral controls, system spinlocks and thread-safe Boolean data handling.

### 10.3.2 Integrated configurable debug

The Cortex-M3 processor implements a complete hardware debug solution. This provides high system visibility of the processor and memory through either a traditional JTAG port or a 2-pin *Serial Wire Debug* (SWD) port that is ideal for microcontrollers and other small package devices.

For system trace the processor integrates an *Instrumentation Trace Macrocell* (ITM) alongside data watchpoints and a profiling unit. To enable simple and cost-effective profiling of the system events these generate, a *Serial Wire Viewer* (SWV) can export a stream of software-generated messages, data trace, and profiling information through a single pin.

### 10.3.3 Cortex-M3 processor features and benefits summary

- tight integration of system peripherals reduces area and development costs
- Thumb instruction set combines high code density with 32-bit performance
- code-patch ability for ROM system updates
- power control optimization of system components
- integrated sleep modes for low power consumption
- fast code execution permits slower processor clock or increases sleep mode time
- hardware division and fast multiplier
- deterministic, high-performance interrupt handling for time-critical applications
- extensive debug and trace capabilities:
  - Serial Wire Debug and Serial Wire Trace reduce the number of pins required for debugging and tracing.

### 10.3.4 Cortex-M3 core peripherals

These are:

#### 10.3.4.1 Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller

The *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller* (NVIC) is an embedded interrupt controller that supports low latency interrupt processing.

#### 10.3.4.2 System control block

The *System control block* (SCB) is the programmers model interface to the processor. It provides system implementation information and system control, including configuration, control, and reporting of system exceptions.

#### 10.3.4.3 System timer

The system timer, SysTick, is a 24-bit count-down timer. Use this as a Real Time Operating System (RTOS) tick timer or as a simple counter.



## 10.4 Programmers model

This section describes the Cortex-M3 programmers model. In addition to the individual core register descriptions, it contains information about the processor modes and privilege levels for software execution and stacks.

### 10.4.1 Processor mode and privilege levels for software execution

The processor *modes* are:

#### 10.4.1.1 Thread mode

Used to execute application software. The processor enters Thread mode when it comes out of reset.

#### 10.4.1.2 Handler mode

Used to handle exceptions. The processor returns to Thread mode when it has finished exception processing.

The *privilege levels* for software execution are:

#### 10.4.1.3 Unprivileged

The software:

- has limited access to the MSR and MRS instructions, and cannot use the CPS instruction
- cannot access the system timer, NVIC, or system control block
- might have restricted access to memory or peripherals.

*Unprivileged software* executes at the unprivileged level.

#### 10.4.1.4 Privileged

The software can use all the instructions and has access to all resources.

*Privileged software* executes at the privileged level.

In Thread mode, the CONTROL register controls whether software execution is privileged or unprivileged, see “[CONTROL register](#)” on page 52. In Handler mode, software execution is always privileged.

Only privileged software can write to the CONTROL register to change the privilege level for software execution in Thread mode. Unprivileged software can use the SVC instruction to make a *supervisor call* to transfer control to privileged software.

### 10.4.2 Stacks

The processor uses a full descending stack. This means the stack pointer indicates the last stacked item on the stack memory. When the processor pushes a new item onto the stack, it decrements the stack pointer and then writes the item to the new memory location. The processor implements two stacks, the *main stack* and the *process stack*, with independent copies of the stack pointer, see “[Stack Pointer](#)” on page 44.

In Thread mode, the CONTROL register controls whether the processor uses the main stack or the process stack, see “[CONTROL register](#) on page 52”. In Handler mode, the processor always uses the main stack. The options for processor operations are:

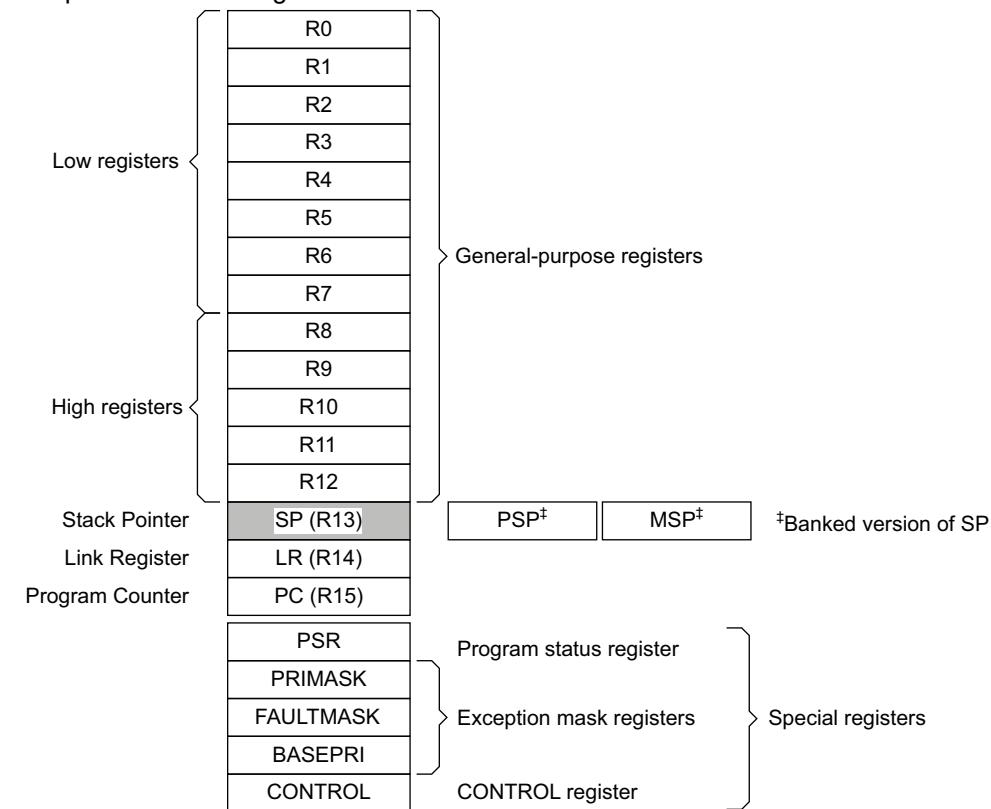
**Table 10-1.** Summary of processor mode, execution privilege level, and stack use options

Processor mode	Used to execute	Privilege level for software execution	Stack used
Thread	Applications	Privileged or unprivileged <sup>(1)</sup>	Main stack or process stack <sup>(1)</sup>
Handler	Exception handlers	Always privileged	Main stack

1. See “[CONTROL register](#)” on page 52.

#### 10.4.3 Core registers

The processor core registers are:



**Table 10-2.** Core register set summary

Name	Type (1)	Required privilege (2)	Reset value	Description
R0-R12	RW	Either	Unknown	"General-purpose registers" on page 44
MSP	RW	Privileged	See description	"Stack Pointer" on page 44
PSP	RW	Either	Unknown	"Stack Pointer" on page 44
LR	RW	Either	0xFFFFFFFF	"Link Register" on page 44
PC	RW	Either	See description	"Program Counter" on page 45
PSR	RW	Privileged	0x01000000	"Program Status Register" on page 46
ASPR	RW	Either	0x00000000	"Application Program Status Register" on page 47
IPSR	RO	Privileged	0x00000000	"Interrupt Program Status Register" on page 48
EPSR	RO	Privileged	0x01000000	"Execution Program Status Register" on page 49
PRIMASK	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	"Priority Mask Register" on page 50
FAULTMASK	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	"Fault Mask Register" on page 50
BASEPRI	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	"Base Priority Mask Register" on page 51
CONTROL	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	"CONTROL register" on page 52

1. Describes access type during program execution in thread mode and Handler mode. Debug access can differ.
2. An entry of Either means privileged and unprivileged software can access the register.

#### 10.4.3.1 General-purpose registers

R0-R12 are 32-bit general-purpose registers for data operations.

#### 10.4.3.2 Stack Pointer

The *Stack Pointer* (SP) is register R13. In Thread mode, bit[1] of the CONTROL register indicates the stack pointer to use:

- 0 = *Main Stack Pointer* (MSP). This is the reset value.
- 1 = *Process Stack Pointer* (PSP).

On reset, the processor loads the MSP with the value from address 0x00000000.

#### 10.4.3.3 Link Register

The *Link Register* (LR) is register R14. It stores the return information for subroutines, function calls, and exceptions. On reset, the processor loads the LR value 0xFFFFFFFF.

#### 10.4.3.4 Program Counter

The *Program Counter* (PC) is register R15. It contains the current program address. Bit[0] is always 0 because instruction fetches must be halfword aligned. On reset, the processor loads the PC with the value of the reset vector, which is at address 0x00000004.

#### 10.4.3.5 Program Status Register

The *Program Status Register* (PSR) combines:

- *Application Program Status Register* (APSR)
- *Interrupt Program Status Register* (IPSR)
- *Execution Program Status Register* (EPSR).

These registers are mutually exclusive bitfields in the 32-bit PSR. The bit assignments are:

- **APSR:**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
N	Z	C	V	Q	Reserved		
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
				Reserved			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
				Reserved			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				Reserved			

- **IPSR:**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
				Reserved			
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
				Reserved			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
				Reserved			ISR_NUMBER
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				ISR_NUMBER			

- **EPSR:**

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
				Reserved		ICI/IT	T
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
				Reserved			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
			ICI/IT			Reserved	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				Reserved			

The PSR bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
N	Z	C	V	Q		ICI/IT	T
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
			ICI/IT			Reserved	ISR_NUMBER
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ISR_NUMBER							

Access these registers individually or as a combination of any two or all three registers, using the register name as an argument to the MSR or MRS instructions. For example:

- read all of the registers using PSR with the MRS instruction
- write to the APSR using APSR with the MSR instruction.

The PSR combinations and attributes are:

**Table 10-3.** PSR register combinations

Register	Type	Combination
PSR	RW <sup>(1), (2)</sup>	APSR, EPSR, and IPSR
IEPSR	RO	EPSR and IPSR
IAPSR	RW <sup>(1)</sup>	APSR and IPSR
EAPSR	RW <sup>(2)</sup>	APSR and EPSR

1. The processor ignores writes to the IPSR bits.
2. Reads of the EPSR bits return zero, and the processor ignores writes to these bits.

See the instruction descriptions “[MRS](#)” on page 143 and “[MSR](#)” on page 144 for more information about how to access the program status registers.

#### 10.4.3.6 Application Program Status Register

The APSR contains the current state of the condition flags from previous instruction executions. See the register summary in [Table 10-2](#) on page 44 for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

- **N**

Negative or less than flag:

0 = operation result was positive, zero, greater than, or equal

1 = operation result was negative or less than.

- **Z**

Zero flag:

0 = operation result was not zero

1 = operation result was zero.



- **C**

Carry or borrow flag:

0 = add operation did not result in a carry bit or subtract operation resulted in a borrow bit

1 = add operation resulted in a carry bit or subtract operation did not result in a borrow bit.

- **V**

Overflow flag:

0 = operation did not result in an overflow

1 = operation resulted in an overflow.

- **Q**

Sticky saturation flag:

0 = indicates that saturation has not occurred since reset or since the bit was last cleared to zero

1 = indicates when an SSAT or USAT instruction results in saturation.

This bit is cleared to zero by software using an MRS instruction.

#### 10.4.3.7     *Interrupt Program Status Register*

The IPSR contains the exception type number of the current *Interrupt Service Routine* (ISR). See the register summary in [Table 10-2 on page 44](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

- **ISR\_NUMBER**

This is the number of the current exception:

0 = Thread mode

1 = Reserved

2 = NMI

3 = Hard fault

4 = Memory management fault

5 = Bus fault

6 = Usage fault

7-10 = Reserved

11 = SVCall

12 = Reserved for Debug

13 = Reserved

14 = PendSV

15 = SysTick

16 = IRQ0

26 = IRQ32

see “[Exception types](#)” on page 63 for more information.

#### 10.4.3.8 Execution Program Status Register

The EPSR contains the Thumb state bit, and the execution state bits for either the:

- *If-Then* (IT) instruction
- *Interruptible-Continuable Instruction* (ICI) field for an interrupted load multiple or store multiple instruction.

See the register summary in [Table 10-2 on page 44](#) for the EPSR attributes. The bit assignments are:

- **ICI**

Interruptible-continuable instruction bits, see “[Interruptible-continuable instructions](#)” on page 49.

- **IT**

Indicates the execution state bits of the IT instruction, see “[IT](#)” on page 133.

- **T**

Always set to 1.

Attempts to read the EPSR directly through application software using the MSR instruction always return zero. Attempts to write the EPSR using the MSR instruction in application software are ignored. Fault handlers can examine EPSR value in the stacked PSR to indicate the operation that is at fault. See “[Exception entry and return](#)” on page 68

#### 10.4.3.9 Interruptible-continuable instructions

When an interrupt occurs during the execution of an LDM or STM instruction, the processor:

- stops the load multiple or store multiple instruction operation temporarily
- stores the next register operand in the multiple operation to EPSR bits[15:12].

After servicing the interrupt, the processor:

- returns to the register pointed to by bits[15:12]
- resumes execution of the multiple load or store instruction.

When the EPSR holds ICI execution state, bits[26:25,11:10] are zero.

#### 10.4.3.10 If-Then block

The If-Then block contains up to four instructions following a 16-bit IT instruction. Each instruction in the block is conditional. The conditions for the instructions are either all the same, or some can be the inverse of others. See “[IT](#)” on page 133 for more information.

#### 10.4.3.11 Exception mask registers

The exception mask registers disable the handling of exceptions by the processor. Disable exceptions where they might impact on timing critical tasks.

To access the exception mask registers use the MSR and MRS instructions, or the CPS instruction to change the value of PRIMASK or FAULTMASK. See “[MRS](#)” on page 143, “[MSR](#)” on page 144, and “[CPS](#)” on page 139 for more information.

#### 10.4.3.12 Priority Mask Register

The PRIMASK register prevents activation of all exceptions with configurable priority. See the register summary in [Table 10-2 on page 44](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved							
PRIMASK							

- **PRIMASK**

0 = no effect

1 = prevents the activation of all exceptions with configurable priority.

#### 10.4.3.13 Fault Mask Register

The FAULTMASK register prevents activation of all exceptions. See the register summary in [Table 10-2 on page 44](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved							
FAULTMASK							

- **FAULTMASK**

0 = no effect

1 = prevents the activation of all exceptions.

The processor clears the FAULTMASK bit to 0 on exit from any exception handler except the NMI handler.

#### 10.4.3.14 Base Priority Mask Register

The BASEPRI register defines the minimum priority for exception processing. When BASEPRI is set to a nonzero value, it prevents the activation of all exceptions with same or lower priority level as the BASEPRI value. See the register summary in [Table 10-2 on page 44](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
BASEPRI							

- **BASEPRI**

Priority mask bits:

0x0000 = no effect

Nonzero = defines the base priority for exception processing.

The processor does not process any exception with a priority value greater than or equal to BASEPRI.

This field is similar to the priority fields in the interrupt priority registers. The processor implements only bits[7:4] of this field, bits[3:0] read as zero and ignore writes. See [“Interrupt Priority Registers” on page 158](#) for more information. Remember that higher priority field values correspond to lower exception priorities.

#### 10.4.3.15 CONTROL register

The CONTROL register controls the stack used and the privilege level for software execution when the processor is in Thread mode. See the register summary in [Table 10-2 on page 44](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved						Active Stack Pointer	Thread Mode Privilege Level

- **Active stack pointer**

Defines the current stack:

0 = MSP is the current stack pointer

1 = PSP is the current stack pointer.

In Handler mode this bit reads as zero and ignores writes.

- **Thread mode privilege level**

Defines the Thread mode privilege level:

0 = privileged

1 = unprivileged.

Handler mode always uses the MSP, so the processor ignores explicit writes to the active stack pointer bit of the CONTROL register when in Handler mode. The exception entry and return mechanisms update the CONTROL register.

In an OS environment, ARM recommends that threads running in Thread mode use the process stack and the kernel and exception handlers use the main stack.

By default, Thread mode uses the MSP. To switch the stack pointer used in Thread mode to the PSP, use the MSR instruction to set the Active stack pointer bit to 1, see [“MSR” on page 144](#).

When changing the stack pointer, software must use an ISB instruction immediately after the MSR instruction. This ensures that instructions after the ISB execute using the new stack pointer. See [“ISB” on page 142](#)

#### 10.4.4 Exceptions and interrupts

The Cortex-M3 processor supports interrupts and system exceptions. The processor and the *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller* (NVIC) prioritize and handle all exceptions. An exception changes the normal flow of software control. The processor uses handler mode to handle all exceptions except for reset. See “[Exception entry](#)” on page 69 and “[Exception return](#)” on page 70 for more information.

The NVIC registers control interrupt handling. See “[Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller](#)” on page 151 for more information.

#### 10.4.5 Data types

The processor:

- supports the following data types:
  - 32-bit words
  - 16-bit halfwords
  - 8-bit bytes
- supports 64-bit data transfer instructions.
- manages all data memory accesses as little-endian. Instruction memory and *Private Peripheral Bus* (PPB) accesses are always little-endian. See “[Memory regions, types and attributes](#)” on page 55 for more information.
- 

#### 10.4.6 The Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard

For a Cortex-M3 microcontroller system, the *Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard* (CMSIS) defines:

- a common way to:
  - access peripheral registers
  - define exception vectors
- the names of:
  - the registers of the core peripherals
  - the core exception vectors
- a device-independent interface for RTOS kernels, including a debug channel.

The CMSIS includes address definitions and data structures for the core peripherals in the Cortex-M3 processor. It also includes optional interfaces for middleware components comprising a TCP/IP stack and a Flash file system.

CMSIS simplifies software development by enabling the reuse of template code and the combination of CMSIS-compliant software components from various middleware vendors. Software vendors can expand the CMSIS to include their peripheral definitions and access functions for those peripherals.

This document includes the register names defined by the CMSIS, and gives short descriptions of the CMSIS functions that address the processor core and the core peripherals.

This document uses the register short names defined by the CMSIS. In a few cases these differ from the architectural short names that might be used in other documents.

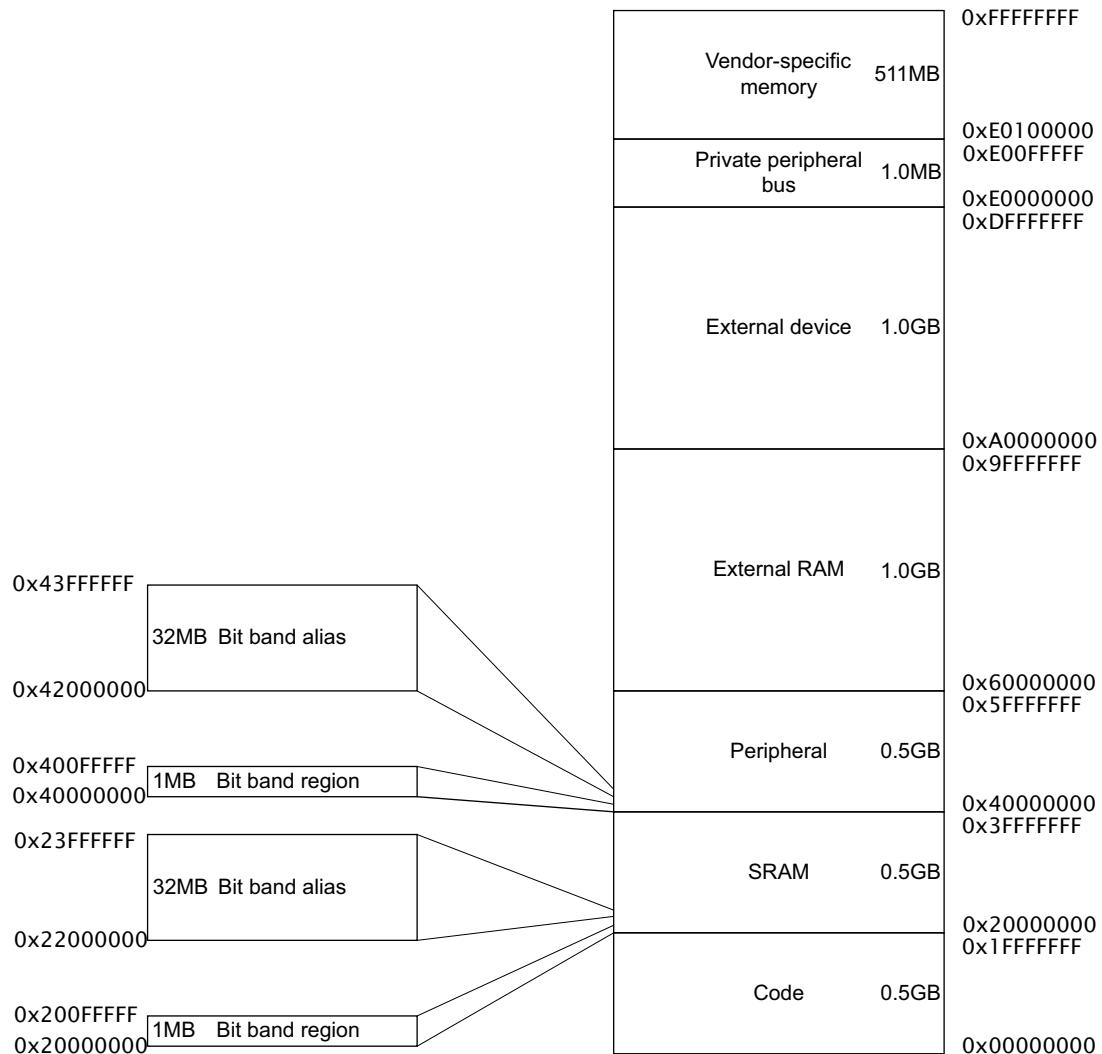
The following sections give more information about the CMSIS:



- “Power management programming hints” on page 74
- “Intrinsic functions” on page 78
- “The CMSIS mapping of the Cortex-M3 NVIC registers” on page 151
- “NVIC programming hints” on page 163.

## 10.5 Memory model

This section describes the processor memory map, the behavior of memory accesses, and the bit-banding features. The processor has a fixed memory map that provides up to 4GB of addressable memory. The memory map is:



The regions for SRAM and peripherals include bit-band regions. Bit-banding provides atomic operations to bit data, see “[Bit-banding](#)” on page 59.

The processor reserves regions of the *Private peripheral bus* (PPB) address range for core peripheral registers, see “[About the Cortex-M3 peripherals](#)” on page 150.

This memory mapping is generic to ARM Cortex-M3 products. To get the specific memory mapping of this product, refer to the Memories section of the datasheet.

### 10.5.1 Memory regions, types and attributes

The memory map split the memory map into regions. Each region has a defined memory type, and some regions have additional memory attributes. The memory type and attributes determine the behavior of accesses to the region.

The memory types are:

- 10.5.1.1 Normal**  
The processor can re-order transactions for efficiency, or perform speculative reads.
- 10.5.1.2 Device**  
The processor preserves transaction order relative to other transactions to Device or Strongly-ordered memory.
- 10.5.1.3 Strongly-ordered**  
The processor preserves transaction order relative to all other transactions.  
The different ordering requirements for Device and Strongly-ordered memory mean that the memory system can buffer a write to Device memory, but must not buffer a write to Strongly-ordered memory.  
The additional memory attributes include.
- 10.5.1.4 Shareable**  
For a shareable memory region, the memory system provides data synchronization between bus masters in a system with multiple bus masters, for example, a processor with a DMA controller.  
Strongly-ordered memory is always shareable.  
If multiple bus masters can access a non-shareable memory region, software must ensure data coherency between the bus masters.
- 10.5.1.5 Execute Never (XN)**  
Means the processor prevents instruction accesses. Any attempt to fetch an instruction from an XN region causes a memory management fault exception.

## 10.5.2 Memory system ordering of memory accesses

For most memory accesses caused by explicit memory access instructions, the memory system does not guarantee that the order in which the accesses complete matches the program order of the instructions, providing this does not affect the behavior of the instruction sequence. Normally, if correct program execution depends on two memory accesses completing in program order, software must insert a memory barrier instruction between the memory access instructions, see “[Software ordering of memory accesses](#)” on page 58.

However, the memory system does guarantee some ordering of accesses to Device and Strongly-ordered memory. For two memory access instructions A1 and A2, if A1 occurs before A2 in program order, the ordering of the memory accesses caused by two instructions is:

A1	A2	Normal access	Device access		Strongly-ordered access
			Non-shareable	Shareable	
	Normal access	-	-	-	-
	Device access, non-shareable	-	<	-	<
	Device access, shareable	-	-	<	<
	Strongly-ordered access	-	<	<	<

Where:

- Means that the memory system does not guarantee the ordering of the accesses.

< Means that accesses are observed in program order, that is, A1 is always observed before A2.

### 10.5.3 Behavior of memory accesses

The behavior of accesses to each region in the memory map is:

**Table 10-4.** Memory access behavior

Address range	Memory region	Memory type	XN	Description
0x00000000-0x1FFFFFFF	Code	Normal <sup>(1)</sup>	-	Executable region for program code. You can also put data here.
0x20000000-0x3FFFFFFF	SRAM	Normal <sup>(1)</sup>	-	Executable region for data. You can also put code here. This region includes bit band and bit band alias areas, see <a href="#">Table 10-6 on page 59</a> .
0x40000000-0x5FFFFFFF	Peripheral	Device <sup>(1)</sup>	XN	This region includes bit band and bit band alias areas, see <a href="#">Table 10-6 on page 59</a> .
0x60000000-0x9FFFFFFF	External RAM	Normal <sup>(1)</sup>	-	Executable region for data.
0xA0000000-0xDFFFFFFF	External device	Device <sup>(1)</sup>	XN	External Device memory
0xE0000000-0xE00FFFFF	Private Peripheral Bus	Strongly-ordered <sup>(1)</sup>	XN	This region includes the NVIC, System timer, and system control block.
0xE0100000-0xFFFFFFFF	Reserved	Device <sup>(1)</sup>	XN	Reserved

1. See “[Memory regions, types and attributes](#)” on page 55 for more information.

The Code, SRAM, and external RAM regions can hold programs. However, ARM recommends that programs always use the Code region. This is because the processor has separate buses that enable instruction fetches and data accesses to occur simultaneously.

#### 10.5.3.1 Additional memory access constraints for shared memory

When a system includes shared memory, some memory regions have additional access constraints, and some regions are subdivided, as [Table 10-5](#) shows:

**Table 10-5.** Memory region shareability policies

Address range	Memory region	Memory type	Shareability	
0x00000000-0x1FFFFFFF	Code	Normal <sup>(1)</sup>	-	
0x20000000-0x3FFFFFFF	SRAM	Normal <sup>(1)</sup>	-	
0x40000000-0x5FFFFFFF	Peripheral <sup>(2)</sup>	Device <sup>(1)</sup>	-	
0x60000000-0x7FFFFFFF	External RAM	Normal <sup>(1)</sup>	-	WBWA <sup>(2)</sup>
0x80000000-0x9FFFFFFF				WT <sup>(2)</sup>

**Table 10-5.** Memory region shareability policies (Continued)

Address range	Memory region	Memory type	Shareability	
0xA0000000-0xBFFFFFFF	External device	Device <sup>(1)</sup>	Shareable <sup>(1)</sup>	-
0xC0000000-0xDFFFFFFF			Non-shareable <sup>(1)</sup>	
0xE0000000-0xE0FFFFFF	Private Peripheral Bus	Strongly-ordered <sup>(1)</sup>	Shareable <sup>(1)</sup>	-
0xE0100000-0xFFFFFFF	Vendor-specific device <sup>(2)</sup>	Device <sup>(1)</sup>	-	-

1. See “Memory regions, types and attributes” on page 55 for more information.

2. The Peripheral and Vendor-specific device regions have no additional access constraints.

#### 10.5.4 Software ordering of memory accesses

The order of instructions in the program flow does not always guarantee the order of the corresponding memory transactions. This is because:

- the processor can reorder some memory accesses to improve efficiency, providing this does not affect the behavior of the instruction sequence.
- the processor has multiple bus interfaces
- memory or devices in the memory map have different wait states
- some memory accesses are buffered or speculative.

“Memory system ordering of memory accesses” on page 56 describes the cases where the memory system guarantees the order of memory accesses. Otherwise, if the order of memory accesses is critical, software must include memory barrier instructions to force that ordering. The processor provides the following memory barrier instructions:

##### 10.5.4.1 DMB

The *Data Memory Barrier* (DMB) instruction ensures that outstanding memory transactions complete before subsequent memory transactions. See “DMB” on page 140.

##### 10.5.4.2 DSB

The *Data Synchronization Barrier* (DSB) instruction ensures that outstanding memory transactions complete before subsequent instructions execute. See “DSB” on page 141.

##### 10.5.4.3 ISB

The *Instruction Synchronization Barrier* (ISB) ensures that the effect of all completed memory transactions is recognizable by subsequent instructions. See “ISB” on page 142.

Use memory barrier instructions in, for example:

- Vector table. If the program changes an entry in the vector table, and then enables the corresponding exception, use a DMB instruction between the operations. This ensures that if the exception is taken immediately after being enabled the processor uses the new exception vector.
- Self-modifying code. If a program contains self-modifying code, use an ISB instruction immediately after the code modification in the program. This ensures subsequent instruction execution uses the updated program.

- Memory map switching. If the system contains a memory map switching mechanism, use a DSB instruction after switching the memory map in the program. This ensures subsequent instruction execution uses the updated memory map.
- Dynamic exception priority change. When an exception priority has to change when the exception is pending or active, use DSB instructions after the change. This ensures the change takes effect on completion of the DSB instruction.
- Using a semaphore in multi-master system. If the system contains more than one bus master, for example, if another processor is present in the system, each processor must use a DMB instruction after any semaphore instructions, to ensure other bus masters see the memory transactions in the order in which they were executed.

Memory accesses to Strongly-ordered memory, such as the system control block, do not require the use of DMB instructions.

#### 10.5.5 Bit-banding

A bit-band region maps each word in a *bit-band alias* region to a single bit in the *bit-band region*. The bit-band regions occupy the lowest 1MB of the SRAM and peripheral memory regions.

The memory map has two 32MB alias regions that map to two 1MB bit-band regions:

- accesses to the 32MB SRAM alias region map to the 1MB SRAM bit-band region, as shown in [Table 10-6](#)
- accesses to the 32MB peripheral alias region map to the 1MB peripheral bit-band region, as shown in [Table 10-7](#).

**Table 10-6.** SRAM memory bit-banding regions

Address range	Memory region	Instruction and data accesses
0x20000000-0x200FFFFF	SRAM bit-band region	Direct accesses to this memory range behave as SRAM memory accesses, but this region is also bit addressable through bit-band alias.
0x22000000-0x23FFFFFF	SRAM bit-band alias	Data accesses to this region are remapped to bit band region. A write operation is performed as read-modify-write. Instruction accesses are not remapped.

**Table 10-7.** Peripheral memory bit-banding regions

Address range	Memory region	Instruction and data accesses
0x40000000-0x400FFFFF	Peripheral bit-band alias	Direct accesses to this memory range behave as peripheral memory accesses, but this region is also bit addressable through bit-band alias.
0x42000000-0x43FFFFFF	Peripheral bit-band region	Data accesses to this region are remapped to bit band region. A write operation is performed as read-modify-write. Instruction accesses are not permitted.

A word access to the SRAM or peripheral bit-band alias regions map to a single bit in the SRAM or peripheral bit-band region.

The following formula shows how the alias region maps onto the bit-band region:

$$\text{bit\_word\_offset} = (\text{byte\_offset} \times 32) + (\text{bit\_number} \times 4)$$



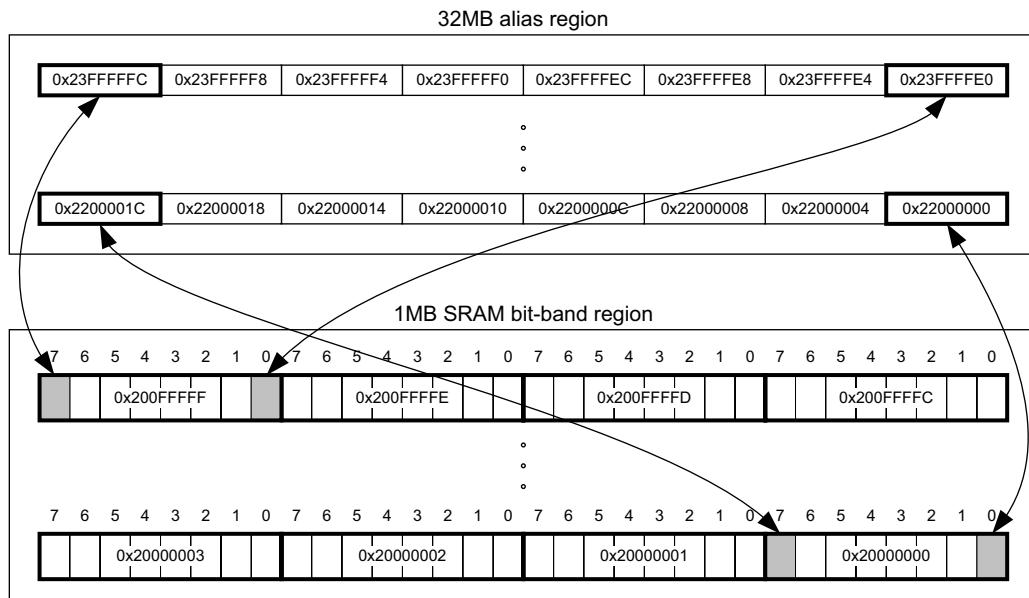
```
bit_word_addr = bit_band_base + bit_word_offset
where:
```

- Bit\_word\_offset is the position of the target bit in the bit-band memory region.
- Bit\_word\_addr is the address of the word in the alias memory region that maps to the targeted bit.
- Bit\_band\_base is the starting address of the alias region.
- Byte\_offset is the number of the byte in the bit-band region that contains the targeted bit.
- Bit\_number is the bit position, 0-7, of the targeted bit.

[Figure 10-2](#) shows examples of bit-band mapping between the SRAM bit-band alias region and the SRAM bit-band region:

- The alias word at 0x23FFFFFFE0 maps to bit[0] of the bit-band byte at 0x200FFFFF:  $0x23FFFFFFE0 = 0x22000000 + (0xFFFF * 32) + (0 * 4)$ .
- The alias word at 0x23FFFFFFC maps to bit[7] of the bit-band byte at 0x200FFFFF:  $0x23FFFFFFC = 0x22000000 + (0xFFFF * 32) + (7 * 4)$ .
- The alias word at 0x220000000 maps to bit[0] of the bit-band byte at 0x200000000:  $0x220000000 = 0x220000000 + (0 * 32) + (0 * 4)$ .
- The alias word at 0x22000001C maps to bit[7] of the bit-band byte at 0x200000000:  $0x22000001C = 0x220000000 + (0 * 32) + (7 * 4)$ .

**Figure 10-2.** Bit-band mapping



#### 10.5.5.1 Directly accessing an alias region

Writing to a word in the alias region updates a single bit in the bit-band region.

Bit[0] of the value written to a word in the alias region determines the value written to the targeted bit in the bit-band region. Writing a value with bit[0] set to 1 writes a 1 to the bit-band bit, and writing a value with bit[0] set to 0 writes a 0 to the bit-band bit.

Bits[31:1] of the alias word have no effect on the bit-band bit. Writing 0x01 has the same effect as writing 0xFF. Writing 0x00 has the same effect as writing 0x0E.

Reading a word in the alias region:

- 0x00000000 indicates that the targeted bit in the bit-band region is set to zero
- 0x00000001 indicates that the targeted bit in the bit-band region is set to 1

#### 10.5.5.2 Directly accessing a bit-band region

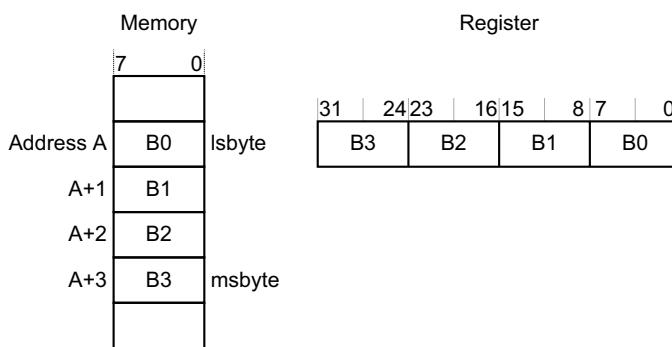
["Behavior of memory accesses" on page 57](#) describes the behavior of direct byte, halfword, or word accesses to the bit-band regions.

#### 10.5.6 Memory endianness

The processor views memory as a linear collection of bytes numbered in ascending order from zero. For example, bytes 0-3 hold the first stored word, and bytes 4-7 hold the second stored word. or ["Little-endian format"](#) describes how words of data are stored in memory.

#### 10.5.6.1 Little-endian format

In little-endian format, the processor stores the least significant byte of a word at the lowest-numbered byte, and the most significant byte at the highest-numbered byte. For example:



#### 10.5.7 Synchronization primitives

The Cortex-M3 instruction set includes pairs of *synchronization primitives*. These provide a non-blocking mechanism that a thread or process can use to obtain exclusive access to a memory location. Software can use them to perform a guaranteed read-modify-write memory update sequence, or for a semaphore mechanism.

A pair of synchronization primitives comprises:

##### 10.5.7.1 A Load-Exclusive instruction

Used to read the value of a memory location, requesting exclusive access to that location.

##### 10.5.7.2 A Store-Exclusive instruction

Used to attempt to write to the same memory location, returning a status bit to a register. If this bit is:

0: it indicates that the thread or process gained exclusive access to the memory, and the write succeeds,

1: it indicates that the thread or process did not gain exclusive access to the memory, and no write is performed,

The pairs of Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive instructions are:

- the word instructions LDREX and STREX

- the halfword instructions LDREXH and STREXH
- the byte instructions LDREXB and STREXB.

Software must use a Load-Exclusive instruction with the corresponding Store-Exclusive instruction.

To perform a guaranteed read-modify-write of a memory location, software must:

- Use a Load-Exclusive instruction to read the value of the location.
- Update the value, as required.
- Use a Store-Exclusive instruction to attempt to write the new value back to the memory location, and tests the returned status bit. If this bit is:
  - 0: The read-modify-write completed successfully,
  - 1: No write was performed. This indicates that the value returned the first step might be out of date. The software must retry the read-modify-write sequence,

Software can use the synchronization primitives to implement a semaphores as follows:

- Use a Load-Exclusive instruction to read from the semaphore address to check whether the semaphore is free.
- If the semaphore is free, use a Store-Exclusive to write the claim value to the semaphore address.
- If the returned status bit from the second step indicates that the Store-Exclusive succeeded then the software has claimed the semaphore. However, if the Store-Exclusive failed, another process might have claimed the semaphore after the software performed the first step.

The Cortex-M3 includes an exclusive access monitor, that tags the fact that the processor has executed a Load-Exclusive instruction. If the processor is part of a multiprocessor system, the system also globally tags the memory locations addressed by exclusive accesses by each processor.

The processor removes its exclusive access tag if:

- It executes a CLREX instruction
- It executes a Store-Exclusive instruction, regardless of whether the write succeeds.
- An exception occurs. This means the processor can resolve semaphore conflicts between different threads.

In a multiprocessor implementation:

- executing a CLREX instruction removes only the local exclusive access tag for the processor
- executing a Store-Exclusive instruction, or an exception. removes the local exclusive access tags, and all global exclusive access tags for the processor.

For more information about the synchronization primitive instructions, see “[LDREX and STREX](#)” on page 100 and “[CLREX](#)” on page 102.

### 10.5.8 Programming hints for the synchronization primitives

ANSI C cannot directly generate the exclusive access instructions. Some C compilers provide intrinsic functions for generation of these instructions:

**Table 10-8.** C compiler intrinsic functions for exclusive access instructions

Instruction	Intrinsic function
LDREX, LDREXH, or LDREXB	unsigned int __ldrex(volatile void *ptr)
STREX, STREXH, or STREXB	int __strex(unsigned int val, volatile void *ptr)
CLREX	void __clrex(void)

The actual exclusive access instruction generated depends on the data type of the pointer passed to the intrinsic function. For example, the following C code generates the required LDREXB operation:

```
__ldrex((volatile char *) 0xFF);
```

## 10.6 Exception model

This section describes the exception model.

### 10.6.1 Exception states

Each exception is in one of the following states:

#### 10.6.1.1 *Inactive*

The exception is not active and not pending.

#### 10.6.1.2 *Pending*

The exception is waiting to be serviced by the processor.

An interrupt request from a peripheral or from software can change the state of the corresponding interrupt to pending.

#### 10.6.1.3 *Active*

An exception that is being serviced by the processor but has not completed.

An exception handler can interrupt the execution of another exception handler. In this case both exceptions are in the active state.

#### 10.6.1.4 *Active and pending*

The exception is being serviced by the processor and there is a pending exception from the same source.

### 10.6.2 Exception types

The exception types are:

#### 10.6.2.1 *Reset*

Reset is invoked on power up or a warm reset. The exception model treats reset as a special form of exception. When reset is asserted, the operation of the processor stops, potentially at any point in an instruction. When reset is deasserted, execution restarts from the address pro-



vided by the reset entry in the vector table. Execution restarts as privileged execution in Thread mode.

#### 10.6.2.2 *Non Maskable Interrupt (NMI)*

A non maskable interrupt (NMI) can be signalled by a peripheral or triggered by software. This is the highest priority exception other than reset. It is permanently enabled and has a fixed priority of -2.

NMIs cannot be:

- Masked or prevented from activation by any other exception.
- Preempted by any exception other than Reset.

#### 10.6.2.3 *Hard fault*

A hard fault is an exception that occurs because of an error during exception processing, or because an exception cannot be managed by any other exception mechanism. Hard faults have a fixed priority of -1, meaning they have higher priority than any exception with configurable priority.

#### 10.6.2.4 *Bus fault*

A bus fault is an exception that occurs because of a memory related fault for an instruction or data memory transaction. This might be from an error detected on a bus in the memory system.

#### 10.6.2.5 *Usage fault*

A usage fault is an exception that occurs because of a fault related to instruction execution. This includes:

- an undefined instruction
- an illegal unaligned access
- invalid state on instruction execution
- an error on exception return.

The following can cause a usage fault when the core is configured to report them:

- an unaligned address on word and halfword memory access
- division by zero.

#### 10.6.2.6 *SVCall*

A *supervisor call* (SVC) is an exception that is triggered by the SVC instruction. In an OS environment, applications can use SVC instructions to access OS kernel functions and device drivers.

#### 10.6.2.7 *PendSV*

PendSV is an interrupt-driven request for system-level service. In an OS environment, use PendSV for context switching when no other exception is active.

#### 10.6.2.8 *SysTick*

A SysTick exception is an exception the system timer generates when it reaches zero. Software can also generate a SysTick exception. In an OS environment, the processor can use this exception as system tick.

## 10.6.2.9 Interrupt (IRQ)

A interrupt, or IRQ, is an exception signalled by a peripheral, or generated by a software request. All interrupts are asynchronous to instruction execution. In the system, peripherals use interrupts to communicate with the processor.

**Table 10-9.** Properties of the different exception types

Exception number <sup>(1)</sup>	IRQ number <sup>(1)</sup>	Exception type	Priority	Vector address or offset <sup>(2)</sup>	Activation
1	-	Reset	-3, the highest	0x00000004	Asynchronous
2	-14	NMI	-2	0x00000008	Asynchronous
3	-13	Hard fault	-1	0x0000000C	-
4	-12	Memory management fault	Configurable <sup>(3)</sup>	0x00000010	Synchronous
5	-11	Bus fault	Configurable <sup>(3)</sup>	0x00000014	Synchronous when precise, asynchronous when imprecise
6	-10	Usage fault	Configurable <sup>(3)</sup>	0x00000018	Synchronous
7-10	-	-	-	Reserved	-
11	-5	SVCall	Configurable <sup>(3)</sup>	0x0000002C	Synchronous
12-13	-	-	-	Reserved	-
14	-2	PendSV	Configurable <sup>(3)</sup>	0x00000038	Asynchronous
15	-1	SysTick	Configurable <sup>(3)</sup>	0x0000003C	Asynchronous
16 and above	0 and above <sup>(4)</sup>	Interrupt (IRQ)	Configurable <sup>(5)</sup>	0x00000040 and above <sup>(6)</sup>	Asynchronous

1. To simplify the software layer, the CMSIS only uses IRQ numbers and therefore uses negative values for exceptions other than interrupts. The IPSR returns the Exception number, see “[Interrupt Program Status Register](#)” on page 48.
2. See “[Vector table](#)” on page 67 for more information.
3. See “[System Handler Priority Registers](#)” on page 176.
4. See the “Peripheral Identifiers” section of the datasheet.
5. See “[Interrupt Priority Registers](#)” on page 158.
6. Increasing in steps of 4.

For an asynchronous exception, other than reset, the processor can execute another instruction between when the exception is triggered and when the processor enters the exception handler.

Privileged software can disable the exceptions that [Table 10-9 on page 65](#) shows as having configurable priority, see:

- “[System Handler Control and State Register](#)” on page 179



- “[Interrupt Clear-enable Registers](#)” on page 154.

For more information about hard faults, memory management faults, bus faults, and usage faults, see [“Fault handling” on page 70](#).

### 10.6.3 Exception handlers

The processor handles exceptions using:

#### 10.6.3.1 *Interrupt Service Routines (ISRs)*

Interrupts IRQ0 to IRQ32 are the exceptions handled by ISRs.

#### 10.6.3.2 *Fault handlers*

Hard fault, memory management fault, usage fault, bus fault are fault exceptions handled by the fault handlers.

#### 10.6.3.3 *System handlers*

NMI, PendSV, SVCall SysTick, and the fault exceptions are all system exceptions that are handled by system handlers.

### 10.6.4 Vector table

The vector table contains the reset value of the stack pointer, and the start addresses, also called exception vectors, for all exception handlers. [Figure 10-3 on page 67](#) shows the order of the exception vectors in the vector table. The least-significant bit of each vector must be 1, indicating that the exception handler is Thumb code.

**Figure 10-3.** Vector table

Exception number	IRQ number	Offset	Vector
45	29	0x00B4	IRQ29
.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.
18	2	0x004C	IRQ2
17	1	0x0048	IRQ1
16	0	0x0044	IRQ0
15	-1	0x0040	Systick
14	-2	0x003C	PendSV
13		0x0038	Reserved
12			Reserved for Debug
11	-5	0x002C	SVCall
10			Reserved
9			Usage fault
8			Bus fault
7			Memory management fault
6	-10	0x0018	Hard fault
5	-11	0x0014	Reserved
4	-12	0x0010	Reset
3	-13	0x000C	Initial SP value
2	-14	0x0008	
1		0x0004	
		0x0000	

On system reset, the vector table is fixed at address 0x00000000. Privileged software can write to the VTOR to relocate the vector table start address to a different memory location, in the range 0x00000080 to 0x3FFFFF80, see “[Vector Table Offset Register](#)” on page 170.

#### 10.6.5 Exception priorities

As [Table 10-9 on page 65](#) shows, all exceptions have an associated priority, with:

- a lower priority value indicating a higher priority
- configurable priorities for all exceptions except Reset, Hard fault.

If software does not configure any priorities, then all exceptions with a configurable priority have a priority of 0. For information about configuring exception priorities see

- “[System Handler Priority Registers](#)” on page 176
- “[Interrupt Priority Registers](#)” on page 158.

Configurable priority values are in the range 0-15. This means that the Reset, Hard fault, and NMI exceptions, with fixed negative priority values, always have higher priority than any other exception.

For example, assigning a higher priority value to IRQ[0] and a lower priority value to IRQ[1] means that IRQ[1] has higher priority than IRQ[0]. If both IRQ[1] and IRQ[0] are asserted, IRQ[1] is processed before IRQ[0].

If multiple pending exceptions have the same priority, the pending exception with the lowest exception number takes precedence. For example, if both IRQ[0] and IRQ[1] are pending and have the same priority, then IRQ[0] is processed before IRQ[1].

When the processor is executing an exception handler, the exception handler is preempted if a higher priority exception occurs. If an exception occurs with the same priority as the exception being handled, the handler is not preempted, irrespective of the exception number. However, the status of the new interrupt changes to pending.

#### 10.6.6 Interrupt priority grouping

To increase priority control in systems with interrupts, the NVIC supports priority grouping. This divides each interrupt priority register entry into two fields:

- an upper field that defines the *group priority*
- a lower field that defines a *subpriority* within the group.

Only the group priority determines preemption of interrupt exceptions. When the processor is executing an interrupt exception handler, another interrupt with the same group priority as the interrupt being handled does not preempt the handler,

If multiple pending interrupts have the same group priority, the subpriority field determines the order in which they are processed. If multiple pending interrupts have the same group priority and subpriority, the interrupt with the lowest IRQ number is processed first.

For information about splitting the interrupt priority fields into group priority and subpriority, see “[Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register](#)” on page 171.

#### 10.6.7 Exception entry and return

Descriptions of exception handling use the following terms:

##### 10.6.7.1 Preemption

When the processor is executing an exception handler, an exception can preempt the exception handler if its priority is higher than the priority of the exception being handled. See “[Interrupt priority grouping](#)” on page 68 for more information about preemption by an interrupt.

When one exception preempts another, the exceptions are called nested exceptions. See “[Exception entry](#)” on page 69 more information.

##### 10.6.7.2 Return

This occurs when the exception handler is completed, and:

- there is no pending exception with sufficient priority to be serviced
- the completed exception handler was not handling a late-arriving exception.

The processor pops the stack and restores the processor state to the state it had before the interrupt occurred. See “[Exception return](#)” on page 70 for more information.

#### 10.6.7.3 Tail-chaining

This mechanism speeds up exception servicing. On completion of an exception handler, if there is a pending exception that meets the requirements for exception entry, the stack pop is skipped and control transfers to the new exception handler.

#### 10.6.7.4 Late-arriving

This mechanism speeds up preemption. If a higher priority exception occurs during state saving for a previous exception, the processor switches to handle the higher priority exception and initiates the vector fetch for that exception. State saving is not affected by late arrival because the state saved is the same for both exceptions. Therefore the state saving continues uninterrupted. The processor can accept a late arriving exception until the first instruction of the exception handler of the original exception enters the execute stage of the processor. On return from the exception handler of the late-arriving exception, the normal tail-chaining rules apply.

#### 10.6.7.5 Exception entry

Exception entry occurs when there is a pending exception with sufficient priority and either:

- the processor is in Thread mode
- the new exception is of higher priority than the exception being handled, in which case the new exception preempts the original exception.

When one exception preempts another, the exceptions are nested.

Sufficient priority means the exception has more priority than any limits set by the mask registers, see “[Exception mask registers](#)” on page 49. An exception with less priority than this is pending but is not handled by the processor.

When the processor takes an exception, unless the exception is a tail-chained or a late-arriving exception, the processor pushes information onto the current stack. This operation is referred as *stacking* and the structure of eight data words is referred as *stack frame*. The stack frame contains the following information:

- R0-R3, R12
- Return address
- PSR
- LR.

Immediately after stacking, the stack pointer indicates the lowest address in the stack frame. Unless stack alignment is disabled, the stack frame is aligned to a double-word address. If the STKALIGN bit of the *Configuration Control Register* (CCR) is set to 1, stack align adjustment is performed during stacking.

The stack frame includes the return address. This is the address of the next instruction in the interrupted program. This value is restored to the PC at exception return so that the interrupted program resumes.

In parallel to the stacking operation, the processor performs a vector fetch that reads the exception handler start address from the vector table. When stacking is complete, the processor starts executing the exception handler. At the same time, the processor writes an EXC\_RETURN value to the LR. This indicates which stack pointer corresponds to the stack frame and what operation mode the processor was in before the entry occurred.

If no higher priority exception occurs during exception entry, the processor starts executing the exception handler and automatically changes the status of the corresponding pending interrupt to active.

If another higher priority exception occurs during exception entry, the processor starts executing the exception handler for this exception and does not change the pending status of the earlier exception. This is the late arrival case.

#### 10.6.7.6 Exception return

Exception return occurs when the processor is in Handler mode and executes one of the following instructions to load the EXC\_RETURN value into the PC:

- a POP instruction that includes the PC
- a BX instruction with any register.
- an LDR or LDM instruction with the PC as the destination.

EXC\_RETURN is the value loaded into the LR on exception entry. The exception mechanism relies on this value to detect when the processor has completed an exception handler. The lowest four bits of this value provide information on the return stack and processor mode. [Table 10-10](#) shows the EXC\_RETURN[3:0] values with a description of the exception return behavior.

The processor sets EXC\_RETURN bits[31:4] to 0xFFFFFFFF. When this value is loaded into the PC it indicates to the processor that the exception is complete, and the processor initiates the exception return sequence.

**Table 10-10.** Exception return behavior

EXC_RETURN[3:0]	Description
bXXX0	Reserved.
b0001	Return to Handler mode. Exception return gets state from MSP. Execution uses MSP after return.
b0011	Reserved.
b01X1	Reserved.
b1001	Return to Thread mode. Exception return gets state from MSP. Execution uses MSP after return.
b1101	Return to Thread mode. Exception return gets state from PSP. Execution uses PSP after return.
b1X11	Reserved.

## 10.7 Fault handling

Faults are a subset of the exceptions, see “[Exception model](#)” on page 63. The following generate a fault:

- a bus error on:
- an instruction fetch or vector table load
- a data access

- an internally-detected error such as an undefined instruction or an attempt to change state with a BX instruction
- attempting to execute an instruction from a memory region marked as *Non-Executable* (XN).

### 10.7.1 Fault types

**Table 10-11** shows the types of fault, the handler used for the fault, the corresponding fault status register, and the register bit that indicates that the fault has occurred. See “[Configurable Fault Status Register](#)” on page 181 for more information about the fault status registers.

**Table 10-11.** Faults

Fault	Handler	Bit name	Fault status register
Bus error on a vector read	Hard fault	VECTTBL	“ <a href="#">Hard Fault Status Register</a> ” on page 187
Fault escalated to a hard fault		FORCED	
Bus error:	Bus fault	-	“ <a href="#">Bus Fault Status Register</a> ” on page 183
during exception stacking		STKERR	
during exception unstacking		UNSTKERR	
during instruction prefetch		IBUSERR	
Precise data bus error		PRECISERR	
Imprecise data bus error		IMPRECISER	
Attempt to access a coprocessor		NOCP	
Undefined instruction	Usage fault	UNDEFINSTR	“ <a href="#">Usage Fault Status Register</a> ” on page 185
Attempt to enter an invalid instruction set state <sup>(1)</sup>		INVSTATE	
Invalid EXC_RETURN value		INVPC	
Illegal unaligned load or store		UNALIGNED	
Divide By 0		DIVBYZERO	

1. Attempting to use an instruction set other than the Thumb instruction set.

### 10.7.2 Fault escalation and hard faults

All faults exceptions except for hard fault have configurable exception priority, see “[System Handler Priority Registers](#)” on page 176. Software can disable execution of the handlers for these faults, see “[System Handler Control and State Register](#)” on page 179.

Usually, the exception priority, together with the values of the exception mask registers, determines whether the processor enters the fault handler, and whether a fault handler can preempt another fault handler, as described in “[Exception model](#)” on page 63.

In some situations, a fault with configurable priority is treated as a hard fault. This is called *priority escalation*, and the fault is described as *escalated to hard fault*. Escalation to hard fault occurs when:

- A fault handler causes the same kind of fault as the one it is servicing. This escalation to hard fault occurs because a fault handler cannot preempt itself because it must have the same priority as the current priority level.

- A fault handler causes a fault with the same or lower priority as the fault it is servicing. This is because the handler for the new fault cannot preempt the currently executing fault handler.
- An exception handler causes a fault for which the priority is the same as or lower than the currently executing exception.
- A fault occurs and the handler for that fault is not enabled.

If a bus fault occurs during a stack push when entering a bus fault handler, the bus fault does not escalate to a hard fault. This means that if a corrupted stack causes a fault, the fault handler executes even though the stack push for the handler failed. The fault handler operates but the stack contents are corrupted.

Only Reset and NMI can preempt the fixed priority hard fault. A hard fault can preempt any exception other than Reset, NMI, or another hard fault.

#### 10.7.3 Fault status registers and fault address registers

The fault status registers indicate the cause of a fault. For bus faults and memory management faults, the fault address register indicates the address accessed by the operation that caused the fault, as shown in [Table 10-12](#).

**Table 10-12.** Fault status and fault address registers

Handler	Status register name	Address register name	Register description
Hard fault	HFSR	-	<a href="#">“Hard Fault Status Register” on page 187</a>
Memory management fault	MMFSR	MMFAR	<a href="#">“Memory Management Fault Status Register” on page 182</a> <a href="#">“Memory Management Fault Address Register” on page 188</a>
Bus fault	BFSR	BFAR	<a href="#">“Bus Fault Status Register” on page 183</a> <a href="#">“Bus Fault Address Register” on page 189</a>
Usage fault	UFSR	-	<a href="#">“Usage Fault Status Register” on page 185</a>

#### 10.7.4 Lockup

The processor enters a lockup state if a hard fault occurs when executing the hard fault handlers. When the processor is in lockup state it does not execute any instructions. The processor remains in lockup state until:

- it is reset

### 10.8 Power management

The Cortex-M3 processor sleep modes reduce power consumption:

- Backup Mode
- Wait Mode
- Sleep Mode

The SLEEPDEEP bit of the SCR selects which sleep mode is used, see “[System Control Register](#)” on page 173. For more information about the behavior of the sleep modes see “Low Power Modes” in the PMC section of the datasheet.

This section describes the mechanisms for entering sleep mode, and the conditions for waking up from sleep mode.

### 10.8.1 Entering sleep mode

This section describes the mechanisms software can use to put the processor into sleep mode.

The system can generate spurious wakeup events, for example a debug operation wakes up the processor. Therefore software must be able to put the processor back into sleep mode after such an event. A program might have an idle loop to put the processor back to sleep mode.

#### 10.8.1.1 Wait for interrupt

The *wait for interrupt* instruction, WFI, causes immediate entry to sleep mode. When the processor executes a WFI instruction it stops executing instructions and enters sleep mode. See “[WFI](#)” on page 149 for more information.

#### 10.8.1.2 Wait for event

The *wait for event* instruction, WFE, causes entry to sleep mode conditional on the value of an one-bit event register. When the processor executes a WFE instruction, it checks this register:

- if the register is 0 the processor stops executing instructions and enters sleep mode
- if the register is 1 the processor clears the register to 0 and continues executing instructions without entering sleep mode.

See “[WFE](#)” on page 148 for more information.

#### 10.8.1.3 Sleep-on-exit

If the SLEEPONEXIT bit of the SCR is set to 1, when the processor completes the execution of an exception handler it returns to Thread mode and immediately enters sleep mode. Use this mechanism in applications that only require the processor to run when an exception occurs.

### 10.8.2 Wakeup from sleep mode

The conditions for the processor to wakeup depend on the mechanism that cause it to enter sleep mode.

#### 10.8.2.1 Wakeup from WFI or sleep-on-exit

Normally, the processor wakes up only when it detects an exception with sufficient priority to cause exception entry.

Some embedded systems might have to execute system restore tasks after the processor wakes up, and before it executes an interrupt handler. To achieve this set the PRIMASK bit to 1 and the FAULTMASK bit to 0. If an interrupt arrives that is enabled and has a higher priority than current exception priority, the processor wakes up but does not execute the interrupt handler until the processor sets PRIMASK to zero. For more information about PRIMASK and FAULTMASK see “[Exception mask registers](#)” on page 49.

#### 10.8.2.2 Wakeup from WFE

The processor wakes up if:

- it detects an exception with sufficient priority to cause exception entry



In addition, if the SEVONPEND bit in the SCR is set to 1, any new pending interrupt triggers an event and wakes up the processor, even if the interrupt is disabled or has insufficient priority to cause exception entry. For more information about the SCR see “[System Control Register](#)” on page 173.

#### 10.8.3 Power management programming hints

ANSI C cannot directly generate the WFI and WFE instructions. The CMSIS provides the following intrinsic functions for these instructions:

```
void __WFE(void) // Wait for Event  
void __WFE(void) // Wait for Interrupt
```

## 10.9 Instruction set summary

The processor implements a version of the Thumb instruction set. Table 10-13 lists the supported instructions.

In Table 10-13:

- angle brackets, <>, enclose alternative forms of the operand
- braces, {}, enclose optional operands
- the Operands column is not exhaustive
- Op2 is a flexible second operand that can be either a register or a constant
- most instructions can use an optional condition code suffix.

For more information on the instructions and operands, see the instruction descriptions.

**Table 10-13.** Cortex-M3 instructions

Mnemonic	Operands	Brief description	Flags	Page
ADC, ADCS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Add with Carry	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 105</a>
ADD, ADDS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Add	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 105</a>
ADD, ADDW	{Rd,} Rn, #imm12	Add	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 105</a>
ADR	Rd, label	Load PC-relative address	-	<a href="#">page 88</a>
AND, ANDS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Logical AND	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 108</a>
ASR, ASRS	Rd, Rm, <Rsl#n>	Arithmetic Shift Right	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 110</a>
B	label	Branch	-	<a href="#">page 130</a>
BFC	Rd, #lsb, #width	Bit Field Clear	-	<a href="#">page 126</a>
BFI	Rd, Rn, #lsb, #width	Bit Field Insert	-	<a href="#">page 126</a>
BIC, BICS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Bit Clear	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 108</a>
BKPT	#imm	Breakpoint	-	<a href="#">page 138</a>
BL	label	Branch with Link	-	<a href="#">page 130</a>
BLX	Rm	Branch indirect with Link	-	<a href="#">page 130</a>
BX	Rm	Branch indirect	-	<a href="#">page 130</a>
CBNZ	Rn, label	Compare and Branch if Non Zero	-	<a href="#">page 132</a>
CBZ	Rn, label	Compare and Branch if Zero	-	<a href="#">page 132</a>
CLREX	-	Clear Exclusive	-	<a href="#">page 102</a>
CLZ	Rd, Rm	Count leading zeros	-	<a href="#">page 112</a>
CMN, CMNS	Rn, Op2	Compare Negative	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 113</a>
CMP, CMPS	Rn, Op2	Compare	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 113</a>
CPSID	iflags	Change Processor State, Disable Interrupts	-	<a href="#">page 139</a>
CPSIE	iflags	Change Processor State, Enable Interrupts	-	<a href="#">page 139</a>
DMB	-	Data Memory Barrier	-	<a href="#">page 140</a>
DSB	-	Data Synchronization Barrier	-	<a href="#">page 141</a>
EOR, EORS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Exclusive OR	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 108</a>

**Table 10-13.** Cortex-M3 instructions (Continued)

Mnemonic	Operands	Brief description	Flags	Page
ISB	-	Instruction Synchronization Barrier	-	<a href="#">page 142</a>
IT	-	If-Then condition block	-	<a href="#">page 133</a>
LDM	Rn{!}, reglist	Load Multiple registers, increment after	-	<a href="#">page 97</a>
LDMDB, LDMEA	Rn{!}, reglist	Load Multiple registers, decrement before	-	<a href="#">page 97</a>
LDMFD, LDMIA	Rn{!}, reglist	Load Multiple registers, increment after	-	<a href="#">page 97</a>
LDR	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Load Register with word	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDRB, LDRBT	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Load Register with byte	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDRD	Rt, Rt2, [Rn, #offset]	Load Register with two bytes	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDREX	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Load Register Exclusive	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDREXB	Rt, [Rn]	Load Register Exclusive with byte	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDREXH	Rt, [Rn]	Load Register Exclusive with halfword	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDRH, LDRHT	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Load Register with halfword	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDRSB, LDRSBT	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Load Register with signed byte	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDRSH, LDRSHT	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Load Register with signed halfword	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LDRT	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Load Register with word	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
LSL, LSLS	Rd, Rm, <Rsl#n>	Logical Shift Left	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 110</a>
LSR, LSRS	Rd, Rm, <Rsl#n>	Logical Shift Right	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 110</a>
MLA	Rd, Rn, Rm, Ra	Multiply with Accumulate, 32-bit result	-	<a href="#">page 120</a>
MLS	Rd, Rn, Rm, Ra	Multiply and Subtract, 32-bit result	-	<a href="#">page 120</a>
MOV, MOVS	Rd, Op2	Move	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 114</a>
MOVT	Rd, #imm16	Move Top	-	<a href="#">page 116</a>
MOVW, MOV	Rd, #imm16	Move 16-bit constant	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 114</a>
MRS	Rd, spec_reg	Move from special register to general register	-	<a href="#">page 143</a>
MSR	spec_reg, Rm	Move from general register to special register	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 144</a>
MUL, MULS	{Rd,} Rn, Rm	Multiply, 32-bit result	N,Z	<a href="#">page 120</a>
MVN, MVNS	Rd, Op2	Move NOT	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 114</a>
NOP	-	No Operation	-	<a href="#">page 145</a>
ORN, ORNS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Logical OR NOT	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 108</a>
ORR, ORRS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Logical OR	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 108</a>
POP	reglist	Pop registers from stack	-	<a href="#">page 99</a>
PUSH	reglist	Push registers onto stack	-	<a href="#">page 99</a>

**Table 10-13.** Cortex-M3 instructions (Continued)

Mnemonic	Operands	Brief description	Flags	Page
RBIT	Rd, Rn	Reverse Bits	-	<a href="#">page 117</a>
REV	Rd, Rn	Reverse byte order in a word	-	<a href="#">page 117</a>
REV16	Rd, Rn	Reverse byte order in each halfword	-	<a href="#">page 117</a>
REVSH	Rd, Rn	Reverse byte order in bottom halfword and sign extend	-	<a href="#">page 117</a>
ROR, RORS	Rd, Rm, <Rsl#n>	Rotate Right	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 110</a>
RRX, RRXS	Rd, Rm	Rotate Right with Extend	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 110</a>
RSB, RSBS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Reverse Subtract	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 105</a>
SBC, SBCS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Subtract with Carry	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 105</a>
SBFX	Rd, Rn, #lsb, #width	Signed Bit Field Extract	-	<a href="#">page 127</a>
SDIV	{Rd,} Rn, Rm	Signed Divide	-	<a href="#">page 122</a>
SEV	-	Send Event	-	<a href="#">page 146</a>
SMLAL	RdLo, RdHi, Rn, Rm	Signed Multiply with Accumulate (32 x 32 + 64), 64-bit result	-	<a href="#">page 121</a>
SMULL	RdLo, RdHi, Rn, Rm	Signed Multiply (32 x 32), 64-bit result	-	<a href="#">page 121</a>
SSAT	Rd, #n, Rm {,shift #s}	Signed Saturate	Q	<a href="#">page 123</a>
STM	Rn{!}, reglist	Store Multiple registers, increment after	-	<a href="#">page 97</a>
STMDB, STMEA	Rn{!}, reglist	Store Multiple registers, decrement before	-	<a href="#">page 97</a>
STMFD, STMIA	Rn{!}, reglist	Store Multiple registers, increment after	-	<a href="#">page 97</a>
STR	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Store Register word	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
STRB, STRBT	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Store Register byte	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
STRD	Rt, Rt2, [Rn, #offset]	Store Register two words	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
STREX	Rd, Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Store Register Exclusive	-	<a href="#">page 100</a>
STREXB	Rd, Rt, [Rn]	Store Register Exclusive byte	-	<a href="#">page 100</a>
STREXH	Rd, Rt, [Rn]	Store Register Exclusive halfword	-	<a href="#">page 100</a>
STRH, STRHT	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Store Register halfword	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
STRT	Rt, [Rn, #offset]	Store Register word	-	<a href="#">page 92</a>
SUB, SUBS	{Rd,} Rn, Op2	Subtract	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 105</a>
SUB, SUBW	{Rd,} Rn, #imm12	Subtract	N,Z,C,V	<a href="#">page 105</a>
SVC	#imm	Supervisor Call	-	<a href="#">page 147</a>
SXTB	{Rd,} Rm {,ROR #n}	Sign extend a byte	-	<a href="#">page 128</a>
SXTH	{Rd,} Rm {,ROR #n}	Sign extend a halfword	-	<a href="#">page 128</a>
TBB	[Rn, Rm]	Table Branch Byte	-	<a href="#">page 135</a>
TBH	[Rn, Rm, LSL #1]	Table Branch Halfword	-	<a href="#">page 135</a>



**Table 10-13.** Cortex-M3 instructions (Continued)

Mnemonic	Operands	Brief description	Flags	Page
TEQ	Rn, Op2	Test Equivalence	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 118</a>
TST	Rn, Op2	Test	N,Z,C	<a href="#">page 118</a>
UBFX	Rd, Rn, #lsb, #width	Unsigned Bit Field Extract	-	<a href="#">page 127</a>
UDIV	{Rd,} Rn, Rm	Unsigned Divide	-	<a href="#">page 122</a>
UMLAL	RdLo, RdHi, Rn, Rm	Unsigned Multiply with Accumulate (32 x 32 + 64), 64-bit result	-	<a href="#">page 121</a>
UMULL	RdLo, RdHi, Rn, Rm	Unsigned Multiply (32 x 32), 64-bit result	-	<a href="#">page 121</a>
USAT	Rd, #n, Rm {,shift #s}	Unsigned Saturate	Q	<a href="#">page 123</a>
UXTB	{Rd,} Rm {,ROR #n}	Zero extend a byte	-	<a href="#">page 128</a>
UXTH	{Rd,} Rm {,ROR #n}	Zero extend a halfword	-	<a href="#">page 128</a>
WFE	-	Wait For Event	-	<a href="#">page 148</a>
WFI	-	Wait For Interrupt	-	<a href="#">page 149</a>

## 10.10 Intrinsic functions

ANSI cannot directly access some Cortex-M3 instructions. This section describes intrinsic functions that can generate these instructions, provided by the CMSIS and that might be provided by a C compiler. If a C compiler does not support an appropriate intrinsic function, you might have to use inline assembler to access some instructions.

The CMSIS provides the following intrinsic functions to generate instructions that ANSI cannot directly access:

**Table 10-14.** CMSIS intrinsic functions to generate some Cortex-M3 instructions

Instruction	CMSIS intrinsic function
CPSIE I	void __enable_irq(void)
CPSID I	void __disable_irq(void)
CPSIE F	void __enable_fault_irq(void)
CPSID F	void __disable_fault_irq(void)
ISB	void __ISB(void)
DSB	void __DSB(void)
DMB	void __DMB(void)
REV	uint32_t __REV(uint32_t int value)
REV16	uint32_t __REV16(uint32_t int value)
REVSH	uint32_t __REVSH(uint32_t int value)
RBIT	uint32_t __RBIT(uint32_t int value)
SEV	void __SEV(void)
WFE	void __WFE(void)
WFI	void __WFI(void)

The CMSIS also provides a number of functions for accessing the special registers using MRS and MSR instructions:

**Table 10-15.** CMSIS intrinsic functions to access the special registers

Special register	Access	CMSIS function
PRIMASK	Read	uint32_t __get_PRIMASK (void)
	Write	void __set_PRIMASK (uint32_t value)
FAULTMASK	Read	uint32_t __get_FAULTMASK (void)
	Write	void __set_FAULTMASK (uint32_t value)
BASEPRI	Read	uint32_t __get_BASEPRI (void)
	Write	void __set_BASEPRI (uint32_t value)
CONTROL	Read	uint32_t __get_CONTROL (void)
	Write	void __set_CONTROL (uint32_t value)
MSP	Read	uint32_t __get_MSP (void)
	Write	void __set_MSP (uint32_t TopOfMainStack)
PSP	Read	uint32_t __get_PSP (void)
	Write	void __set_PSP (uint32_t TopOfProcStack)

## 10.11 About the instruction descriptions

The following sections give more information about using the instructions:

- “Operands” on page 79
- “Restrictions when using PC or SP” on page 79
- “Flexible second operand” on page 80
- “Shift Operations” on page 81
- “Address alignment” on page 83
- “PC-relative expressions” on page 84
- “Conditional execution” on page 84
- “Instruction width selection” on page 86.

### 10.11.1 Operands

An instruction operand can be an ARM register, a constant, or another instruction-specific parameter. Instructions act on the operands and often store the result in a destination register. When there is a destination register in the instruction, it is usually specified before the operands.

Operands in some instructions are flexible in that they can either be a register or a constant. See “Flexible second operand” .

### 10.11.2 Restrictions when using PC or SP

Many instructions have restrictions on whether you can use the *Program Counter* (PC) or *Stack Pointer* (SP) for the operands or destination register. See instruction descriptions for more information.

Bit[0] of any address you write to the PC with a BX, BLX, LDM, LDR, or POP instruction must be 1 for correct execution, because this bit indicates the required instruction set, and the Cortex-M3 processor only supports Thumb instructions.

### 10.11.3 Flexible second operand

Many general data processing instructions have a flexible second operand. This is shown as *Operand2* in the descriptions of the syntax of each instruction.

*Operand2* can be a:

- “Constant”
- “Register with optional shift” on page 80

#### 10.11.3.1 Constant

You specify an *Operand2* constant in the form:

#*constant*

where *constant* can be:

- any constant that can be produced by shifting an 8-bit value left by any number of bits within a 32-bit word
- any constant of the form 0x0XY00XY
- any constant of the form 0xXY00XY00
- any constant of the form 0xXYXYXYXY.

In the constants shown above, X and Y are hexadecimal digits.

In addition, in a small number of instructions, *constant* can take a wider range of values. These are described in the individual instruction descriptions.

When an *Operand2* constant is used with the instructions MOVS, MVNS, ANDS, ORRS, ORNS, EORS, BICS, TEQ or TST, the carry flag is updated to bit[31] of the constant, if the constant is greater than 255 and can be produced by shifting an 8-bit value. These instructions do not affect the carry flag if *Operand2* is any other constant.

#### 10.11.3.2 Instruction substitution

Your assembler might be able to produce an equivalent instruction in cases where you specify a constant that is not permitted. For example, an assembler might assemble the instruction CMP *Rd*, #0xFFFFFFFF as the equivalent instruction CMN *Rd*, #0x2.

#### 10.11.3.3 Register with optional shift

You specify an *Operand2* register in the form:

*Rm* { , *shift* }

where:

*Rm* is the register holding the data for the second operand.

*shift* is an optional shift to be applied to *Rm*. It can be one of:

ASR #*n* arithmetic shift right *n* bits,  $1 \leq n \leq 32$ .

LSL #*n* logical shift left *n* bits,  $1 \leq n \leq 31$ .

LSR #n	logical shift right $n$ bits, $1 \leq n \leq 32$ .
ROR #n	rotate right $n$ bits, $1 \leq n \leq 31$ .
RRX	rotate right one bit, with extend.
-	if omitted, no shift occurs, equivalent to LSL #0.

If you omit the shift, or specify LSL #0, the instruction uses the value in  $Rm$ .

If you specify a shift, the shift is applied to the value in  $Rm$ , and the resulting 32-bit value is used by the instruction. However, the contents in the register  $Rm$  remains unchanged. Specifying a register with shift also updates the carry flag when used with certain instructions. For information on the shift operations and how they affect the carry flag, see “[Shift Operations](#)”

#### 10.11.4 Shift Operations

Register shift operations move the bits in a register left or right by a specified number of bits, the *shift length*. Register shift can be performed:

- directly by the instructions ASR, LSR, LSL, ROR, and RRX, and the result is written to a destination register
- during the calculation of *Operand2* by the instructions that specify the second operand as a register with shift, see “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80. The result is used by the instruction.

The permitted shift lengths depend on the shift type and the instruction, see the individual instruction description or “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80. If the shift length is 0, no shift occurs. Register shift operations update the carry flag except when the specified shift length is 0. The following sub-sections describe the various shift operations and how they affect the carry flag. In these descriptions,  $Rm$  is the register containing the value to be shifted, and  $n$  is the shift length.

##### 10.11.4.1 ASR

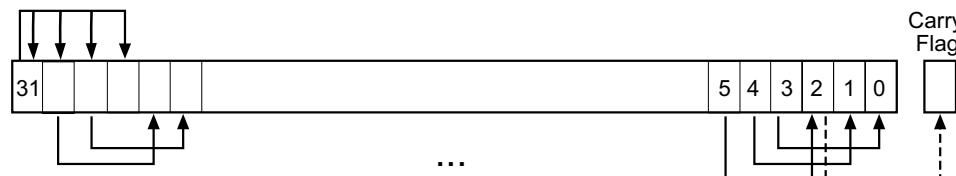
Arithmetic shift right by  $n$  bits moves the left-hand 32- $n$  bits of the register  $Rm$ , to the right by  $n$  places, into the right-hand 32- $n$  bits of the result. And it copies the original bit[31] of the register into the left-hand  $n$  bits of the result. See [Figure 10-4 on page 81](#).

You can use the ASR # $n$  operation to divide the value in the register  $Rm$  by  $2^n$ , with the result being rounded towards negative-infinity.

When the instruction is ASRS or when ASR # $n$  is used in *Operand2* with the instructions MOVS, MVNS, ANDS, ORRS, ORNS, EORS, BICS, TEQ or TST, the carry flag is updated to the last bit shifted out, bit[ $n-1$ ], of the register  $Rm$ .

- If  $n$  is 32 or more, then all the bits in the result are set to the value of bit[31] of  $Rm$ .
- If  $n$  is 32 or more and the carry flag is updated, it is updated to the value of bit[31] of  $Rm$ .

**Figure 10-4.** ASR #3



#### 10.11.4.2 LSR

Logical shift right by  $n$  bits moves the left-hand 32- $n$  bits of the register  $Rm$ , to the right by  $n$  places, into the right-hand 32- $n$  bits of the result. And it sets the left-hand  $n$  bits of the result to 0. See [Figure 10-5](#).

You can use the LSR # $n$  operation to divide the value in the register  $Rm$  by  $2^n$ , if the value is regarded as an unsigned integer.

When the instruction is LSRS or when LSR # $n$  is used in *Operand2* with the instructions MOVS, MVNS, ANDS, ORRS, ORNS, EORS, BICS, TEQ or TST, the carry flag is updated to the last bit shifted out, bit[ $n-1$ ], of the register  $Rm$ .

- If  $n$  is 32 or more, then all the bits in the result are cleared to 0.
- If  $n$  is 33 or more and the carry flag is updated, it is updated to 0.

**Figure 10-5.** LSR #3



#### 10.11.4.3 LSL

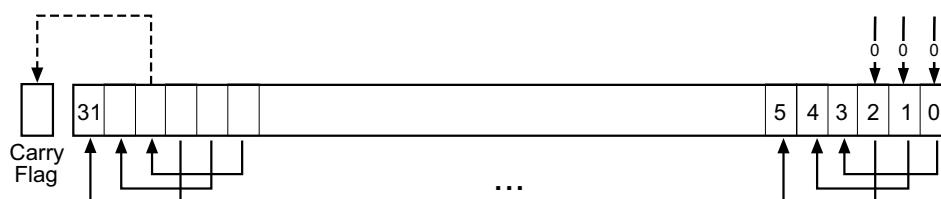
Logical shift left by  $n$  bits moves the right-hand 32- $n$  bits of the register  $Rm$ , to the left by  $n$  places, into the left-hand 32- $n$  bits of the result. And it sets the right-hand  $n$  bits of the result to 0. See [Figure 10-6 on page 82](#).

You can use the LSL # $n$  operation to multiply the value in the register  $Rm$  by  $2^n$ , if the value is regarded as an unsigned integer or a two's complement signed integer. Overflow can occur without warning.

When the instruction is LSLS or when LSL # $n$ , with non-zero  $n$ , is used in *Operand2* with the instructions MOVS, MVNS, ANDS, ORRS, ORNS, EORS, BICS, TEQ or TST, the carry flag is updated to the last bit shifted out, bit[32- $n$ ], of the register  $Rm$ . These instructions do not affect the carry flag when used with LSL #0.

- If  $n$  is 32 or more, then all the bits in the result are cleared to 0.
- If  $n$  is 33 or more and the carry flag is updated, it is updated to 0.

**Figure 10-6.** LSL #3



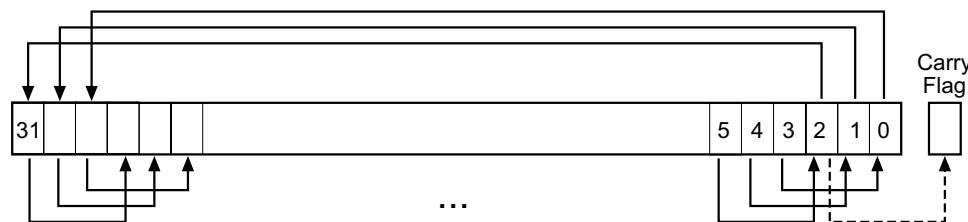
#### 10.11.4.4 ROR

Rotate right by  $n$  bits moves the left-hand  $32-n$  bits of the register  $Rm$ , to the right by  $n$  places, into the right-hand  $32-n$  bits of the result. And it moves the right-hand  $n$  bits of the register into the left-hand  $n$  bits of the result. See [Figure 10-7](#).

When the instruction is RORS or when ROR # $n$  is used in *Operand2* with the instructions MOVS, MVNS, ANDS, ORRS, ORNS, EORS, BICS, TEQ or TST, the carry flag is updated to the last bit rotation, bit[ $n-1$ ], of the register  $Rm$ .

- If  $n$  is 32, then the value of the result is same as the value in  $Rm$ , and if the carry flag is updated, it is updated to bit[31] of  $Rm$ .
- ROR with shift length,  $n$ , more than 32 is the same as ROR with shift length  $n-32$ .

**Figure 10-7.** ROR #3

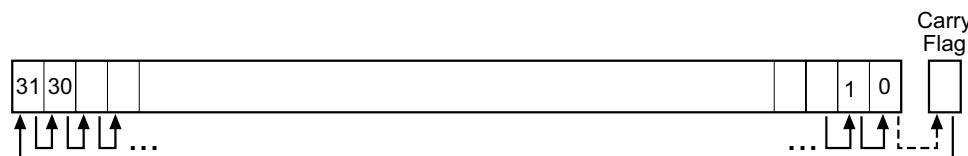


#### 10.11.4.5 RRX

Rotate right with extend moves the bits of the register  $Rm$  to the right by one bit. And it copies the carry flag into bit[31] of the result. See [Figure 10-8 on page 83](#).

When the instruction is RRXS or when RRX is used in *Operand2* with the instructions MOVS, MVNS, ANDS, ORRS, ORNS, EORS, BICS, TEQ or TST, the carry flag is updated to bit[0] of the register  $Rm$ .

**Figure 10-8.** RRX



#### 10.11.5 Address alignment

An aligned access is an operation where a word-aligned address is used for a word, dual word, or multiple word access, or where a halfword-aligned address is used for a halfword access. Byte accesses are always aligned.

The Cortex-M3 processor supports unaligned access only for the following instructions:

- LDR, LDRT
- LDRH, LDRHT
- LDRSH, LDRSHT
- STR, STRT
- STRH, STRHT

All other load and store instructions generate a usage fault exception if they perform an unaligned access, and therefore their accesses must be address aligned. For more information about usage faults see “[Fault handling](#)” on page 70.

Unaligned accesses are usually slower than aligned accesses. In addition, some memory regions might not support unaligned accesses. Therefore, ARM recommends that programmers ensure that accesses are aligned. To avoid accidental generation of unaligned accesses, use the UNALIGN\_TRP bit in the Configuration and Control Register to trap all unaligned accesses, see “[Configuration and Control Register](#)” on page 174.

#### 10.11.6 PC-relative expressions

A PC-relative expression or *label* is a symbol that represents the address of an instruction or literal data. It is represented in the instruction as the PC value plus or minus a numeric offset. The assembler calculates the required offset from the label and the address of the current instruction. If the offset is too big, the assembler produces an error.

- For B, BL, CBNZ, and CBZ instructions, the value of the PC is the address of the current instruction plus 4 bytes.
- For all other instructions that use labels, the value of the PC is the address of the current instruction plus 4 bytes, with bit[1] of the result cleared to 0 to make it word-aligned.
- Your assembler might permit other syntaxes for PC-relative expressions, such as a label plus or minus a number, or an expression of the form [PC, #number].

#### 10.11.7 Conditional execution

Most data processing instructions can optionally update the condition flags in the *Application Program Status Register* (APSR) according to the result of the operation, see “[Application Program Status Register](#)” on page 47. Some instructions update all flags, and some only update a subset. If a flag is not updated, the original value is preserved. See the instruction descriptions for the flags they affect.

You can execute an instruction conditionally, based on the condition flags set in another instruction, either:

- immediately after the instruction that updated the flags
- after any number of intervening instructions that have not updated the flags.

Conditional execution is available by using conditional branches or by adding condition code suffixes to instructions. See [Table 10-16](#) on page 85 for a list of the suffixes to add to instructions to make them conditional instructions. The condition code suffix enables the processor to test a condition based on the flags. If the condition test of a conditional instruction fails, the instruction:

- does not execute
- does not write any value to its destination register
- does not affect any of the flags
- does not generate any exception.

Conditional instructions, except for conditional branches, must be inside an If-Then instruction block. See “[IT](#)” on page 133 for more information and restrictions when using the IT instruction. Depending on the vendor, the assembler might automatically insert an IT instruction if you have conditional instructions outside the IT block.

Use the CBZ and CBNZ instructions to compare the value of a register against zero and branch on the result.

This section describes:

- “The condition flags”
- “Condition code suffixes” .

#### 10.11.7.1 The condition flags

The APSR contains the following condition flags:

N	Set to 1 when the result of the operation was negative, cleared to 0 otherwise.
Z	Set to 1 when the result of the operation was zero, cleared to 0 otherwise.
C	Set to 1 when the operation resulted in a carry, cleared to 0 otherwise.
V	Set to 1 when the operation caused overflow, cleared to 0 otherwise.

For more information about the APSR see “[Program Status Register](#)” on page 46.

A carry occurs:

- if the result of an addition is greater than or equal to  $2^{32}$
- if the result of a subtraction is positive or zero
- as the result of an inline barrel shifter operation in a move or logical instruction.

Overflow occurs if the result of an add, subtract, or compare is greater than or equal to  $2^{31}$ , or less than  $-2^{31}$ .

Most instructions update the status flags only if the S suffix is specified. See the instruction descriptions for more information.

#### 10.11.7.2 Condition code suffixes

The instructions that can be conditional have an optional condition code, shown in syntax descriptions as {cond}. Conditional execution requires a preceding IT instruction. An instruction with a condition code is only executed if the condition code flags in the APSR meet the specified condition. [Table 10-16](#) shows the condition codes to use.

You can use conditional execution with the IT instruction to reduce the number of branch instructions in code.

[Table 10-16](#) also shows the relationship between condition code suffixes and the N, Z, C, and V flags.

**Table 10-16.** Condition code suffixes

Suffix	Flags	Meaning
EQ	Z = 1	Equal
NE	Z = 0	Not equal
CS or HS	C = 1	Higher or same, unsigned $\geq$
CC or LO	C = 0	Lower, unsigned <
MI	N = 1	Negative
PL	N = 0	Positive or zero
VS	V = 1	Overflow



**Table 10-16.** Condition code suffixes (Continued)

Suffix	Flags	Meaning
VC	V = 0	No overflow
HI	C = 1 and Z = 0	Higher, unsigned >
LS	C = 0 or Z = 1	Lower or same, unsigned $\leq$
GE	N = V	Greater than or equal, signed $\geq$
LT	N ! = V	Less than, signed <
GT	Z = 0 and N = V	Greater than, signed >
LE	Z = 1 and N ! = V	Less than or equal, signed $\leq$
AL	Can have any value	Always. This is the default when no suffix is specified.

#### 10.11.7.3 Absolute value

The example below shows the use of a conditional instruction to find the absolute value of a number. R0 = ABS(R1).

```
MOVS    R0, R1      ; R0 = R1, setting flags
IT      MI          ; IT instruction for the negative condition
RSBMI   R0, R1, #0  ; If negative, R0 = -R1
```

#### 10.11.7.4 Compare and update value

The example below shows the use of conditional instructions to update the value of R4 if the signed values R0 is greater than R1 and R2 is greater than R3.

```
CMP    R0, R1      ; Compare R0 and R1, setting flags
ITT    GT          ; IT instruction for the two GT conditions
CMPGT  R2, R3      ; If 'greater than', compare R2 and R3, setting flags
MOVGT  R4, R5      ; If still 'greater than', do R4 = R5
```

#### 10.11.8 Instruction width selection

There are many instructions that can generate either a 16-bit encoding or a 32-bit encoding depending on the operands and destination register specified. For some of these instructions, you can force a specific instruction size by using an instruction width suffix. The .W suffix forces a 32-bit instruction encoding. The .N suffix forces a 16-bit instruction encoding.

If you specify an instruction width suffix and the assembler cannot generate an instruction encoding of the requested width, it generates an error.

In some cases it might be necessary to specify the .W suffix, for example if the operand is the label of an instruction or literal data, as in the case of branch instructions. This is because the assembler might not automatically generate the right size encoding.

##### 10.11.8.1 Instruction width selection

To use an instruction width suffix, place it immediately after the instruction mnemonic and condition code, if any. The example below shows instructions with the instruction width suffix.

```
BCS.W  label      ; creates a 32-bit instruction even for a short branch
ADDS.W R0, R0, R1 ; creates a 32-bit instruction even though the same
                  ; operation can be done by a 16-bit instruction
```

## 10.12 Memory access instructions

[Table 10-17](#) shows the memory access instructions:

**Table 10-17.** Memory access instructions

Mnemonic	Brief description	See
ADR	Load PC-relative address	<a href="#">“ADR” on page 88</a>
CLREX	Clear Exclusive	<a href="#">“CLREX” on page 102</a>
LDM{mode}	Load Multiple registers	<a href="#">“LDM and STM” on page 97</a>
LDR{type}	Load Register using immediate offset	<a href="#">“LDR and STR, immediate offset” on page 89</a>
LDR{type}	Load Register using register offset	<a href="#">“LDR and STR, register offset” on page 92</a>
LDR{type}T	Load Register with unprivileged access	<a href="#">“LDR and STR, unprivileged” on page 94</a>
LDR	Load Register using PC-relative address	<a href="#">“LDR, PC-relative” on page 95</a>
LDREX{type}	Load Register Exclusive	<a href="#">“LDREX and STREX” on page 100</a>
POP	Pop registers from stack	<a href="#">“PUSH and POP” on page 99</a>
PUSH	Push registers onto stack	<a href="#">“PUSH and POP” on page 99</a>
STM{mode}	Store Multiple registers	<a href="#">“LDM and STM” on page 97</a>
STR{type}	Store Register using immediate offset	<a href="#">“LDR and STR, immediate offset” on page 89</a>
STR{type}	Store Register using register offset	<a href="#">“LDR and STR, register offset” on page 92</a>
STR{type}T	Store Register with unprivileged access	<a href="#">“LDR and STR, unprivileged” on page 94</a>
STREX{type}	Store Register Exclusive	<a href="#">“LDREX and STREX” on page 100</a>

## 10.12.1 ADR

Load PC-relative address.

### 10.12.1.1 Syntax

`ADR{cond} Rd, label`

where:

- cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.
- Rd is the destination register.
- label is a PC-relative expression. See “[PC-relative expressions](#)” on page 84.

### 10.12.1.2 Operation

ADR determines the address by adding an immediate value to the PC, and writes the result to the destination register.

ADR produces position-independent code, because the address is PC-relative.

If you use ADR to generate a target address for a BX or BLX instruction, you must ensure that bit[0] of the address you generate is set to 1 for correct execution.

Values of *label* must be within the range of -4095 to +4095 from the address in the PC.

You might have to use the .W suffix to get the maximum offset range or to generate addresses that are not word-aligned. See “[Instruction width selection](#)” on page 86.

### 10.12.1.3 Restrictions

*Rd* must not be SP and must not be PC.

### 10.12.1.4 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.12.1.5 Examples

```
ADR      R1, TextMessage ; Write address value of a location labelled as  
                      ; TextMessage to R1
```

### 10.12.2 LDR and STR, immediate offset

Load and Store with immediate offset, pre-indexed immediate offset, or post-indexed immediate offset.

#### 10.12.2.1 Syntax

<code>op{type}{cond} Rt, [Rn {, #offset}]</code>	; immediate offset
<code>op{type}{cond} Rt, [Rn, #offset]!</code>	; pre-indexed
<code>op{type}{cond} Rt, [Rn], #offset</code>	; post-indexed
<code>opD{cond} Rt, Rt2, [Rn {, #offset}]</code>	; immediate offset, two words
<code>opD{cond} Rt, Rt2, [Rn, #offset]!</code>	; pre-indexed, two words
<code>opD{cond} Rt, Rt2, [Rn], #offset</code>	; post-indexed, two words

where:

op        is one of:

    LDR    Load Register.

    STR    Store Register.

type      is one of:

    B      unsigned byte, zero extend to 32 bits on loads.

    SB     signed byte, sign extend to 32 bits (LDR only).

    H      unsigned halfword, zero extend to 32 bits on loads.

    SH     signed halfword, sign extend to 32 bits (LDR only).

    -      omit, for word.

cond      is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

Rt        is the register to load or store.

Rn        is the register on which the memory address is based.

offset     is an offset from Rn. If offset is omitted, the address is the contents of Rn.

Rt2      is the additional register to load or store for two-word operations.

#### 10.12.2.2 Operation

LDR instructions load one or two registers with a value from memory.

STR instructions store one or two register values to memory.

Load and store instructions with immediate offset can use the following addressing modes:

#### 10.12.2.3 Offset addressing

The offset value is added to or subtracted from the address obtained from the register Rn. The result is used as the address for the memory access. The register Rn is unaltered. The assembly language syntax for this mode is:

`[Rn, #offset]`

#### 10.12.2.4 Pre-indexed addressing

The offset value is added to or subtracted from the address obtained from the register Rn. The result is used as the address for the memory access and written back into the register Rn. The assembly language syntax for this mode is:



[*Rn*, #*offset*]!

#### 10.12.2.5 Post-indexed addressing

The address obtained from the register *Rn* is used as the address for the memory access. The offset value is added to or subtracted from the address, and written back into the register *Rn*. The assembly language syntax for this mode is:

[*Rn*], #*offset*

The value to load or store can be a byte, halfword, word, or two words. Bytes and halfwords can either be signed or unsigned. See “[Address alignment](#)” on page 83.

[Table 10-18](#) shows the ranges of offset for immediate, pre-indexed and post-indexed forms.

**Table 10-18.** Offset ranges

Instruction type	Immediate offset	Pre-indexed	Post-indexed
Word, halfword, signed halfword, byte, or signed byte	-255 to 4095	-255 to 255	-255 to 255
Two words	multiple of 4 in the range -1020 to 1020	multiple of 4 in the range -1020 to 1020	multiple of 4 in the range -1020 to 1020

#### 10.12.2.6 Restrictions

For load instructions:

- *Rt* can be SP or PC for word loads only
- *Rt* must be different from *Rt2* for two-word loads
- *Rn* must be different from *Rt* and *Rt2* in the pre-indexed or post-indexed forms.

When *Rt* is PC in a word load instruction:

- bit[0] of the loaded value must be 1 for correct execution
- a branch occurs to the address created by changing bit[0] of the loaded value to 0
- if the instruction is conditional, it must be the last instruction in the IT block.

For store instructions:

- *Rt* can be SP for word stores only
- *Rt* must not be PC
- *Rn* must not be PC
- *Rn* must be different from *Rt* and *Rt2* in the pre-indexed or post-indexed forms.

#### 10.12.2.7 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.12.2.8 Examples

```
LDR      R8, [R10]          ; Loads R8 from the address in R10.  
LDRNE   R2, [R5, #960]!    ; Loads (conditionally) R2 from a word  
                           ; 960 bytes above the address in R5, and  
                           ; increments R5 by 960.  
STR     R2, [R9,#const-struc]; const-struc is an expression evaluating  
                           ; to a constant in the range 0-4095.  
STRH   R3, [R4], #4         ; Store R3 as halfword data into address in  
                           ; R4, then increment R4 by 4  
LDRD   R8, R9, [R3, #0x20]  ; Load R8 from a word 32 bytes above the  
                           ; address in R3, and load R9 from a word 36  
                           ; bytes above the address in R3  
STRD   R0, R1, [R8], #-16   ; Store R0 to address in R8, and store R1 to  
                           ; a word 4 bytes above the address in R8,  
                           ; and then decrement R8 by 16.
```

### 10.12.3 LDR and STR, register offset

Load and Store with register offset.

#### 10.12.3.1 Syntax

$op\{type\}\{cond\} Rt, [Rn, Rm \{, LSL \#n\}]$

where:

op        is one of:

LDR        Load Register.

STR        Store Register.

type        is one of:

B        unsigned byte, zero extend to 32 bits on loads.

SB        signed byte, sign extend to 32 bits (LDR only).

H        unsigned halfword, zero extend to 32 bits on loads.

SH        signed halfword, sign extend to 32 bits (LDR only).

-        omit, for word.

cond        is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

Rt        is the register to load or store.

Rn        is the register on which the memory address is based.

Rm        is a register containing a value to be used as the offset.

LSL #n        is an optional shift, with  $n$  in the range 0 to 3.

#### 10.12.3.2 Operation

LDR instructions load a register with a value from memory.

STR instructions store a register value into memory.

The memory address to load from or store to is at an offset from the register  $Rn$ . The offset is specified by the register  $Rm$  and can be shifted left by up to 3 bits using LSL.

The value to load or store can be a byte, halfword, or word. For load instructions, bytes and halfwords can either be signed or unsigned. See “[Address alignment](#)” on page 83.

#### 10.12.3.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- $Rn$  must not be PC
- $Rm$  must not be SP and must not be PC
- $Rt$  can be SP only for word loads and word stores
- $Rt$  can be PC only for word loads.

When  $Rt$  is PC in a word load instruction:

- bit[0] of the loaded value must be 1 for correct execution, and a branch occurs to this halfword-aligned address
- if the instruction is conditional, it must be the last instruction in the IT block.

**10.12.3.4 Condition flags**

These instructions do not change the flags.

**10.12.3.5 Examples**

```
STR    R0, [R5, R1]          ; Store value of R0 into an address equal to  
                           ; sum of R5 and R1  
LDRSB  R0, [R5, R1, LSL #1] ; Read byte value from an address equal to  
                           ; sum of R5 and two times R1, sign extended it  
                           ; to a word value and put it in R0  
STR    R0, [R1, R2, LSL #2] ; Stores R0 to an address equal to sum of R1  
                           ; and four times R2
```

#### 10.12.4 LDR and STR, unprivileged

Load and Store with unprivileged access.

##### 10.12.4.1 Syntax

*op{type}T{cond} Rt, [Rn {, #offset}] ; immediate offset*

where:

*op* is one of:

LDR Load Register.

STR Store Register.

*type* is one of:

B unsigned byte, zero extend to 32 bits on loads.

SB signed byte, sign extend to 32 bits (LDR only).

H unsigned halfword, zero extend to 32 bits on loads.

SH signed halfword, sign extend to 32 bits (LDR only).

- omit, for word.

*cond* is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#) on page 84”.

*Rt* is the register to load or store.

*Rn* is the register on which the memory address is based.

*offset* is an offset from *Rn* and can be 0 to 255.

If *offset* is omitted, the address is the value in *Rn*.

##### 10.12.4.2 Operation

These load and store instructions perform the same function as the memory access instructions with immediate offset, see “[LDR and STR, immediate offset](#) on page 89”. The difference is that these instructions have only unprivileged access even when used in privileged software.

When used in unprivileged software, these instructions behave in exactly the same way as normal memory access instructions with immediate offset.

##### 10.12.4.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- *Rn* must not be PC
- *Rt* must not be SP and must not be PC.

##### 10.12.4.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

##### 10.12.4.5 Examples

```
STRBTEQ R4, [R7]      ; Conditionally store least significant byte in
                        ; R4 to an address in R7, with unprivileged access
LDRHT    R2, [R2, #8]   ; Load halfword value from an address equal to
                        ; sum of R2 and 8 into R2, with unprivileged access
```

### 10.12.5 LDR, PC-relative

Load register from memory.

#### 10.12.5.1 Syntax

```
LDR{type}{cond} Rt, label
LDRD{cond} Rt, Rt2, label ; Load two words
```

where:

type is one of:

- B unsigned byte, zero extend to 32 bits.
- SB signed byte, sign extend to 32 bits.
- H unsigned halfword, zero extend to 32 bits.
- SH signed halfword, sign extend to 32 bits.
- omit, for word.

cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

Rt is the register to load or store.

Rt2 is the second register to load or store.

label is a PC-relative expression. See “[PC-relative expressions](#)” on page 84.

#### 10.12.5.2 Operation

LDR loads a register with a value from a PC-relative memory address. The memory address is specified by a label or by an offset from the PC.

The value to load or store can be a byte, halfword, or word. For load instructions, bytes and halfwords can either be signed or unsigned. See “[Address alignment](#)” on page 83.

*label* must be within a limited range of the current instruction. [Table 10-19](#) shows the possible offsets between *label* and the PC.

**Table 10-19.** Offset ranges

Instruction type	Offset range
Word, halfword, signed halfword, byte, signed byte	-4095 to 4095
Two words	-1020 to 1020

You might have to use the .W suffix to get the maximum offset range. See “[Instruction width selection](#)” on page 86.

#### 10.12.5.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- *Rt* can be SP or PC only for word loads
- *Rt2* must not be SP and must not be PC
- *Rt* must be different from *Rt2*.

When *Rt* is PC in a word load instruction:



- bit[0] of the loaded value must be 1 for correct execution, and a branch occurs to this halfword-aligned address
- if the instruction is conditional, it must be the last instruction in the IT block.

#### 10.12.5.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.12.5.5 Examples

```
LDR    R0, LookUpTable ; Load R0 with a word of data from an address  
                      ; labelled as LookUpTable  
LDRSB  R7, localdata  ; Load a byte value from an address labelled  
                      ; as localdata, sign extend it to a word  
                      ; value, and put it in R7
```

## 10.12.6 LDM and STM

Load and Store Multiple registers.

### 10.12.6.1 Syntax

*op{addr\_mode}{cond} Rn{!}, reglist*

where:

*op*      is one of:

    LDM      Load Multiple registers.

    STM      Store Multiple registers.

*addr\_mode*      is any one of the following:

    IA      Increment address After each access. This is the default.

    DB      Decrement address Before each access.

*cond*      is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

*Rn*      is the register on which the memory addresses are based.

!      is an optional writeback suffix.

If ! is present the final address, that is loaded from or stored to, is written back into *Rn*.

*reglist*      is a list of one or more registers to be loaded or stored, enclosed in braces. It can contain register ranges. It must be comma separated if it contains more than one register or register range, see “[Examples](#)” on page 98.

LDM and LDMFD are synonyms for LDMIA. LDMFD refers to its use for popping data from Full Descending stacks.

LDMEA is a synonym for LDMDB, and refers to its use for popping data from Empty Ascending stacks.

STM and STMEA are synonyms for STMIA. STMEA refers to its use for pushing data onto Empty Ascending stacks.

STMFD is a synonym for STMDB, and refers to its use for pushing data onto Full Descending stacks

### 10.12.6.2 Operation

LDM instructions load the registers in *reglist* with word values from memory addresses based on *Rn*.

STM instructions store the word values in the registers in *reglist* to memory addresses based on *Rn*.

For LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD, STM, STMIA, and STMEA the memory addresses used for the accesses are at 4-byte intervals ranging from *Rn* to *Rn* + 4 \* (n-1), where n is the number of registers in *reglist*. The accesses happens in order of increasing register numbers, with the lowest numbered register using the lowest memory address and the highest number register using the highest memory address. If the writeback suffix is specified, the value of *Rn* + 4 \* (n-1) is written back to *Rn*.

For LDMDB, LDMEA, STMDB, and STMFD the memory addresses used for the accesses are at 4-byte intervals ranging from *Rn* to *Rn* - 4 \* (n-1), where n is the number of registers in *reglist*.



The accesses happen in order of decreasing register numbers, with the highest numbered register using the highest memory address and the lowest number register using the lowest memory address. If the writeback suffix is specified, the value of  $Rn - 4 * (n-1)$  is written back to  $Rn$ .

The PUSH and POP instructions can be expressed in this form. See “[PUSH and POP](#)” on page [99](#) for details.

#### 10.12.6.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- $Rn$  must not be PC
- *reglist* must not contain SP
- in any STM instruction, *reglist* must not contain PC
- in any LDM instruction, *reglist* must not contain PC if it contains LR
- *reglist* must not contain  $Rn$  if you specify the writeback suffix.

When PC is in *reglist* in an LDM instruction:

- bit[0] of the value loaded to the PC must be 1 for correct execution, and a branch occurs to this halfword-aligned address
- if the instruction is conditional, it must be the last instruction in the IT block.

#### 10.12.6.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.12.6.5 Examples

```
LDM      R8,{R0,R2,R9}      ; LDMIA is a synonym for LDM  
STMDB   R1!,{R3-R6,R11,R12}
```

#### 10.12.6.6 Incorrect examples

```
STM      R5!,{R5,R4,R9} ; Value stored for R5 is unpredictable  
LDM      R2, {}          ; There must be at least one register in the list
```

### 10.12.7 PUSH and POP

Push registers onto, and pop registers off a full-descending stack.

#### 10.12.7.1 Syntax

```
PUSH{cond} reglist
POP{cond} reglist
```

where:

*cond* is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

*reglist* is a non-empty list of registers, enclosed in braces. It can contain register ranges. It must be comma separated if it contains more than one register or register range.

PUSH and POP are synonyms for STMDB and LDM (or LDMIA) with the memory addresses for the access based on SP, and with the final address for the access written back to the SP. PUSH and POP are the preferred mnemonics in these cases.

#### 10.12.7.2 Operation

PUSH stores registers on the stack in order of decreasing the register numbers, with the highest numbered register using the highest memory address and the lowest numbered register using the lowest memory address.

POP loads registers from the stack in order of increasing register numbers, with the lowest numbered register using the lowest memory address and the highest numbered register using the highest memory address.

See “[LDM and STM](#)” on page 97 for more information.

#### 10.12.7.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- *reglist* must not contain SP
- for the PUSH instruction, *reglist* must not contain PC
- for the POP instruction, *reglist* must not contain PC if it contains LR.

When PC is in *reglist* in a POP instruction:

- bit[0] of the value loaded to the PC must be 1 for correct execution, and a branch occurs to this halfword-aligned address
- if the instruction is conditional, it must be the last instruction in the IT block.

#### 10.12.7.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.12.7.5 Examples

```
PUSH    {R0,R4-R7}
PUSH    {R2,LR}
POP     {R0,R10,PC}
```



## 10.12.8 LDREX and STREX

Load and Store Register Exclusive.

### 10.12.8.1 Syntax

```
LDREX{cond} Rt, [Rn {, #offset}]
STREX{cond} Rd, Rt, [Rn {, #offset}]
LDREXB{cond} Rt, [Rn]
STREXB{cond} Rd, Rt, [Rn]
LDREXH{cond} Rt, [Rn]
STREXH{cond} Rd, Rt, [Rn]
```

where:

cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

Rd is the destination register for the returned status.

Rt is the register to load or store.

Rn is the register on which the memory address is based.

offset is an optional offset applied to the value in Rn.

If offset is omitted, the address is the value in Rn.

### 10.12.8.2 Operation

LDREX, LDREXB, and LDREXH load a word, byte, and halfword respectively from a memory address.

STREX, STREXB, and STREXH attempt to store a word, byte, and halfword respectively to a memory address. The address used in any Store-Exclusive instruction must be the same as the address in the most recently executed Load-exclusive instruction. The value stored by the Store-Exclusive instruction must also have the same data size as the value loaded by the preceding Load-exclusive instruction. This means software must always use a Load-exclusive instruction and a matching Store-Exclusive instruction to perform a synchronization operation, see “[Synchronization primitives](#)” on page 61

If an Store-Exclusive instruction performs the store, it writes 0 to its destination register. If it does not perform the store, it writes 1 to its destination register. If the Store-Exclusive instruction writes 0 to the destination register, it is guaranteed that no other process in the system has accessed the memory location between the Load-exclusive and Store-Exclusive instructions.

For reasons of performance, keep the number of instructions between corresponding Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive instruction to a minimum.

The result of executing a Store-Exclusive instruction to an address that is different from that used in the preceding Load-Exclusive instruction is unpredictable.

### 10.12.8.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- do not use PC
- do not use SP for Rd and Rt
- for STREX, Rd must be different from both Rt and Rn
- the value of offset must be a multiple of four in the range 0-1020.

#### 10.12.8.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.12.8.5 Examples

```
MOV      R1, #0x1          ; Initialize the 'lock taken' value
try
    LDREX   R0, [LockAddr]    ; Load the lock value
    CMP     R0, #0            ; Is the lock free?
    ITT     EQ                ; IT instruction for STREXEQ and CMPEQ
    STREXEQ R0, R1, [LockAddr]; Try and claim the lock
    CMPEQ   R0, #0            ; Did this succeed?
    BNE     try               ; No - try again
    ....                  ; Yes - we have the lock
```

## 10.12.9 CLREX

Clear Exclusive.

### 10.12.9.1 Syntax

CLREX{*cond*}

where:

*cond* is an optional condition code, see “Conditional execution” on page 84.

### 10.12.9.2 Operation

Use CLREX to make the next STREX, STREXB, or STREXH instruction write 1 to its destination register and fail to perform the store. It is useful in exception handler code to force the failure of the store exclusive if the exception occurs between a load exclusive instruction and the matching store exclusive instruction in a synchronization operation.

See “Synchronization primitives” on page 61 for more information.

### 10.12.9.3 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

### 10.12.9.4 Examples

CLREX

## 10.13 General data processing instructions

Table 10-20 shows the data processing instructions:

**Table 10-20.** Data processing instructions

Mnemonic	Brief description	See
ADC	Add with Carry	"ADD, ADC, SUB, SBC, and RSB" on page 105
ADD	Add	"ADD, ADC, SUB, SBC, and RSB" on page 105
ADDW	Add	"ADD, ADC, SUB, SBC, and RSB" on page 105
AND	Logical AND	"AND, ORR, EOR, BIC, and ORN" on page 108
ASR	Arithmetic Shift Right	"ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR, and RRX" on page 110
BIC	Bit Clear	"AND, ORR, EOR, BIC, and ORN" on page 108
CLZ	Count leading zeros	"CLZ" on page 112
CMN	Compare Negative	"CMP and CMN" on page 113
CMP	Compare	"CMP and CMN" on page 113
EOR	Exclusive OR	"AND, ORR, EOR, BIC, and ORN" on page 108
LSL	Logical Shift Left	"ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR, and RRX" on page 110
LSR	Logical Shift Right	"ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR, and RRX" on page 110
MOV	Move	"MOV and MVN" on page 114
MOVT	Move Top	"MOVT" on page 116
MOVW	Move 16-bit constant	"MOV and MVN" on page 114
MVN	Move NOT	"MOV and MVN" on page 114
ORN	Logical OR NOT	"AND, ORR, EOR, BIC, and ORN" on page 108
ORR	Logical OR	"AND, ORR, EOR, BIC, and ORN" on page 108
RBIT	Reverse Bits	"REV, REV16, REVSH, and RBIT" on page 117
REV	Reverse byte order in a word	"REV, REV16, REVSH, and RBIT" on page 117
REV16	Reverse byte order in each halfword	"REV, REV16, REVSH, and RBIT" on page 117
REVSH	Reverse byte order in bottom halfword and sign extend	"REV, REV16, REVSH, and RBIT" on page 117
ROR	Rotate Right	"ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR, and RRX" on page 110

**Table 10-20.** Data processing instructions (Continued)

Mnemonic	Brief description	See
RRX	Rotate Right with Extend	"ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR, and RRX" on page 110
RSB	Reverse Subtract	"ADD, ADC, SUB, SBC, and RSB" on page 105
SBC	Subtract with Carry	"ADD, ADC, SUB, SBC, and RSB" on page 105
SUB	Subtract	"ADD, ADC, SUB, SBC, and RSB" on page 105
SUBW	Subtract	"ADD, ADC, SUB, SBC, and RSB" on page 105
TEQ	Test Equivalence	"TST and TEQ" on page 118
TST	Test	"TST and TEQ" on page 118

### 10.13.1 ADD, ADC, SUB, SBC, and RSB

Add, Add with carry, Subtract, Subtract with carry, and Reverse Subtract.

#### 10.13.1.1 Syntax

```
op{S}{cond} {Rd,} Rn, Operand2
op{cond} {Rd,} Rn, #imm12 ; ADD and SUB only
```

where:

op is one of:

ADD Add.

ADC Add with Carry.

SUB Subtract.

SBC Subtract with Carry.

RSB Reverse Subtract.

S is an optional suffix. If S is specified, the condition code flags are updated on the result of the operation, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

Rd is the destination register. If Rd is omitted, the destination register is Rn.

Rn is the register holding the first operand.

Operand2 is a flexible second operand.

See “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80 for details of the options.

imm12 is any value in the range 0-4095.

#### 10.13.1.2 Operation

The ADD instruction adds the value of Operand2 or imm12 to the value in Rn.

The ADC instruction adds the values in Rn and Operand2, together with the carry flag.

The SUB instruction subtracts the value of Operand2 or imm12 from the value in Rn.

The SBC instruction subtracts the value of Operand2 from the value in Rn. If the carry flag is clear, the result is reduced by one.

The RSB instruction subtracts the value in Rn from the value of Operand2. This is useful because of the wide range of options for Operand2.

Use ADC and SBC to synthesize multiword arithmetic, see “[Multiword arithmetic examples](#)” on page 107.

See also “[ADR](#)” on page 88.

ADDW is equivalent to the ADD syntax that uses the imm12 operand. SUBW is equivalent to the SUB syntax that uses the imm12 operand.

#### 10.13.1.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- Operand2 must not be SP and must not be PC



- $Rd$  can be SP only in ADD and SUB, and only with the additional restrictions:
  - $Rn$  must also be SP
  - any shift in *Operand2* must be limited to a maximum of 3 bits using LSL
- $Rn$  can be SP only in ADD and SUB
- $Rd$  can be PC only in the ADD{cond} PC, PC, Rm instruction where:
  - you must not specify the S suffix
  - $Rm$  must not be PC and must not be SP
  - if the instruction is conditional, it must be the last instruction in the IT block
- with the exception of the ADD{cond} PC, PC, Rm instruction,  $Rn$  can be PC only in ADD and SUB, and only with the additional restrictions:
  - you must not specify the S suffix
  - the second operand must be a constant in the range 0 to 4095.
  - 
  - When using the PC for an addition or a subtraction, bits[1:0] of the PC are rounded to b00 before performing the calculation, making the base address for the calculation word-aligned.
  - If you want to generate the address of an instruction, you have to adjust the constant based on the value of the PC. ARM recommends that you use the ADR instruction instead of ADD or SUB with  $Rn$  equal to the PC, because your assembler automatically calculates the correct constant for the ADR instruction.

When  $Rd$  is PC in the ADD{cond} PC, PC, Rm instruction:

- bit[0] of the value written to the PC is ignored
- a branch occurs to the address created by forcing bit[0] of that value to 0.

#### 10.13.1.4 Condition flags

If S is specified, these instructions update the N, Z, C and V flags according to the result.

#### 10.13.1.5 Examples

```

ADD    R2, R1, R3
SUBS   R8, R6, #240      ; Sets the flags on the result
RSB    R4, R4, #1280     ; Subtracts contents of R4 from 1280
ADCHI  R11, R0, R3       ; Only executed if C flag set and Z
                           ; flag clear

```

#### 10.13.1.6 Multiword arithmetic examples

##### 10.13.1.7 64-bit addition

The example below shows two instructions that add a 64-bit integer contained in R2 and R3 to another 64-bit integer contained in R0 and R1, and place the result in R4 and R5.

```
ADDS    R4, R0, R2      ; add the least significant words  
ADC     R5, R1, R3      ; add the most significant words with carry
```

##### 10.13.1.8 96-bit subtraction

Multiword values do not have to use consecutive registers. The example below shows instructions that subtract a 96-bit integer contained in R9, R1, and R11 from another contained in R6, R2, and R8. The example stores the result in R6, R9, and R2.

```
SUBS   R6, R6, R9      ; subtract the least significant words  
SBCS   R9, R2, R1      ; subtract the middle words with carry  
SBC    R2, R8, R11     ; subtract the most significant words with carry
```

### 10.13.2 AND, ORR, EOR, BIC, and ORN

Logical AND, OR, Exclusive OR, Bit Clear, and OR NOT.

#### 10.13.2.1 Syntax

*op{S}{cond} {Rd, } Rn, Operand2*

where:

*op*      is one of:

AND      logical AND.

ORR      logical OR, or bit set.

EOR      logical Exclusive OR.

BIC      logical AND NOT, or bit clear.

ORN      logical OR NOT.

*S*      is an optional suffix. If *S* is specified, the condition code flags are updated on the result of the operation, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

*cond*      is an optional condition code, see [See “Conditional execution” on page 84..](#)

*Rd*      is the destination register.

*Rn*      is the register holding the first operand.

*Operand2*      is a flexible second operand. See “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80 for details of the options.

#### 10.13.2.2 Operation

The AND, EOR, and ORR instructions perform bitwise AND, Exclusive OR, and OR operations on the values in *Rn* and *Operand2*.

The BIC instruction performs an AND operation on the bits in *Rn* with the complements of the corresponding bits in the value of *Operand2*.

The ORN instruction performs an OR operation on the bits in *Rn* with the complements of the corresponding bits in the value of *Operand2*.

#### 10.13.2.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

#### 10.13.2.4 Condition flags

If *S* is specified, these instructions:

- update the N and Z flags according to the result
- can update the C flag during the calculation of *Operand2*, see “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80
- do not affect the V flag.

**10.13.2.5 Examples**

```
AND      R9,  R2,  #0xFF00
ORREQ   R2,  R0,  R5
ANDS    R9,  R8,  #0x19
EORS    R7,  R11, R0x18181818
BIC     R0,  R1,  #0xab
ORN     R7,  R11, R14, ROR #4
ORNS   R7,  R11, R14, ASR #32
```

### 10.13.3 ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR, and RRX

Arithmetic Shift Right, Logical Shift Left, Logical Shift Right, Rotate Right, and Rotate Right with Extend.

#### 10.13.3.1 Syntax

$op\{S\}\{cond\} Rd, Rm, Rs$

$op\{S\}\{cond\} Rd, Rm, \#n$

$RRX\{S\}\{cond\} Rd, Rm$

where:

op        is one of:

ASR      Arithmetic Shift Right.

LSL      Logical Shift Left.

LSR      Logical Shift Right.

ROR      Rotate Right.

S            is an optional suffix. If S is specified, the condition code flags are updated on the result of the operation, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

Rd          is the destination register.

Rm          is the register holding the value to be shifted.

Rs          is the register holding the shift length to apply to the value in Rm. Only the least significant byte is used and can be in the range 0 to 255.

n            is the shift length. The range of shift length depends on the instruction:

ASR      shift length from 1 to 32

LSL      shift length from 0 to 31

LSR      shift length from 1 to 32

ROR      shift length from 1 to 31.

MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm is the preferred syntax for LSL{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, #0.

#### 10.13.3.2 Operation

ASR, LSL, LSR, and ROR move the bits in the register Rm to the left or right by the number of places specified by constant n or register Rs.

RRX moves the bits in register Rm to the right by 1.

In all these instructions, the result is written to Rd, but the value in register Rm remains unchanged. For details on what result is generated by the different instructions, see “[Shift Operations](#)” on page 81.

#### 10.13.3.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

#### 10.13.3.4 Condition flags

If S is specified:

- these instructions update the N and Z flags according to the result

- the C flag is updated to the last bit shifted out, except when the shift length is 0, see “[Shift Operations](#)” on page 81.

#### 10.13.3.5 Examples

```
ASR    R7, R8, #9 ; Arithmetic shift right by 9 bits
LSLS   R1, R2, #3 ; Logical shift left by 3 bits with flag update
LSR    R4, R5, #6 ; Logical shift right by 6 bits
ROR    R4, R5, R6 ; Rotate right by the value in the bottom byte of R6
RRX    R4, R5       ; Rotate right with extend
```

## 10.13.4 CLZ

Count Leading Zeros.

### 10.13.4.1 Syntax

`CLZ{cond} Rd, Rm`

where:

- cond      is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.  
Rd        is the destination register.  
Rm        is the operand register.

### 10.13.4.2 Operation

The CLZ instruction counts the number of leading zeros in the value in *Rm* and returns the result in *Rd*. The result value is 32 if no bits are set in the source register, and zero if bit[31] is set.

### 10.13.4.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

### 10.13.4.4 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.13.4.5 Examples

`CLZ        R4,R9  
CLZNE     R2,R3`

### 10.13.5 CMP and CMN

Compare and Compare Negative.

#### 10.13.5.1 Syntax

```
CMP{cond} Rn, Operand2
CMN{cond} Rn, Operand2
```

where:

- cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.
- Rn is the register holding the first operand.
- Operand2 is a flexible second operand. See “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80 for details of the options.

#### 10.13.5.2 Operation

These instructions compare the value in a register with *Operand2*. They update the condition flags on the result, but do not write the result to a register.

The CMP instruction subtracts the value of *Operand2* from the value in *Rn*. This is the same as a SUBS instruction, except that the result is discarded.

The CMN instruction adds the value of *Operand2* to the value in *Rn*. This is the same as an ADDS instruction, except that the result is discarded.

#### 10.13.5.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- do not use PC
- *Operand2* must not be SP.

#### 10.13.5.4 Condition flags

These instructions update the N, Z, C and V flags according to the result.

#### 10.13.5.5 Examples

```
CMP      R2, R9
CMN      R0, #6400
CMPGT    SP, R7, LSL #2
```

## 10.13.6 MOV and MVN

Move and Move NOT.

### 10.13.6.1 Syntax

```
MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Operand2  
MOV{cond} Rd, #imm16  
MVN{S}{cond} Rd, Operand2
```

where:

S is an optional suffix. If S is specified, the condition code flags are updated on the result of the operation, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

Rd is the destination register.

Operand2 is a flexible second operand. See “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80 for details of the options.

imm16 is any value in the range 0-65535.

### 10.13.6.2 Operation

The MOV instruction copies the value of *Operand2* into *Rd*.

When *Operand2* in a MOV instruction is a register with a shift other than LSL #0, the preferred syntax is the corresponding shift instruction:

- ASR{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, #n is the preferred syntax for MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, ASR #n
- LSL{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, #n is the preferred syntax for MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, LSL #n if n != 0
- LSR{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, #n is the preferred syntax for MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, LSR #n
- ROR{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, #n is the preferred syntax for MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, ROR #n
- RRX{S}{cond} Rd, Rm is the preferred syntax for MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, RRX.

Also, the MOV instruction permits additional forms of *Operand2* as synonyms for shift instructions:

- MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, ASR Rs is a synonym for ASR{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, Rs
- MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, LSL Rs is a synonym for LSL{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, Rs
- MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, LSR Rs is a synonym for LSR{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, Rs
- MOV{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, ROR Rs is a synonym for ROR{S}{cond} Rd, Rm, Rs

See “[ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR, and RRX](#)” on page 110.

The MVN instruction takes the value of *Operand2*, performs a bitwise logical NOT operation on the value, and places the result into *Rd*.

The MOVW instruction provides the same function as MOV, but is restricted to using the *imm16* operand.

### 10.13.6.3 Restrictions

You can use SP and PC only in the MOV instruction, with the following restrictions:

- the second operand must be a register without shift
- you must not specify the S suffix.

When *Rd* is PC in a MOV instruction:

- bit[0] of the value written to the PC is ignored
- a branch occurs to the address created by forcing bit[0] of that value to 0.

Though it is possible to use MOV as a branch instruction, ARM strongly recommends the use of a BX or BLX instruction to branch for software portability to the ARM instruction set.

#### 10.13.6.4 Condition flags

If S is specified, these instructions:

- update the N and Z flags according to the result
- can update the C flag during the calculation of *Operand2*, see “[Flexible second operand](#)” on [page 80](#)
- do not affect the V flag.

#### 10.13.6.5 Example

```
MOVS R11, #0x000B ; Write value of 0x000B to R11, flags get updated
MOV  R1, #0xFA05   ; Write value of 0xFA05 to R1, flags are not updated
MOVS R10, R12     ; Write value in R12 to R10, flags get updated
MOV  R3, #23      ; Write value of 23 to R3
MOV  R8, SP       ; Write value of stack pointer to R8
MVNS R2, #0xF     ; Write value of 0xFFFFFFFF0 (bitwise inverse of 0xF)
                  ; to the R2 and update flags
```

## 10.13.7 MOVT

Move Top.

### 10.13.7.1 Syntax

`MOVT{cond} Rd, #imm16`

where:

- cond is an optional condition code, see “Conditional execution” on page 84.
- Rd is the destination register.
- imm16 is a 16-bit immediate constant.

### 10.13.7.2 Operation

MOVT writes a 16-bit immediate value, *imm16*, to the top halfword, *Rd*[31:16], of its destination register. The write does not affect *Rd*[15:0].

The MOV, MOVT instruction pair enables you to generate any 32-bit constant.

### 10.13.7.3 Restrictions

*Rd* must not be SP and must not be PC.

### 10.13.7.4 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.13.7.5 Examples

```
MOVT    R3, #0xF123 ; Write 0xF123 to upper halfword of R3, lower halfword  
          ; and APSR are unchanged
```

### 10.13.8 REV, REV16, REVSH, and RBIT

Reverse bytes and Reverse bits.

#### 10.13.8.1 Syntax

*op{cond} Rd, Rn*

where:

**op** is any of:

**REV** Reverse byte order in a word.

**REV16** Reverse byte order in each halfword independently.

**REVSH** Reverse byte order in the bottom halfword, and sign extend to 32 bits.

**RBIT** Reverse the bit order in a 32-bit word.

**cond** is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

**Rd** is the destination register.

**Rn** is the register holding the operand.

#### 10.13.8.2 Operation

Use these instructions to change endianness of data:

**REV** converts 32-bit big-endian data into little-endian data or 32-bit little-endian data into big-endian data.

**REV16** converts 16-bit big-endian data into little-endian data or 16-bit little-endian data into big-endian data.

**REVSH** converts either:

16-bit signed big-endian data into 32-bit signed little-endian data

16-bit signed little-endian data into 32-bit signed big-endian data.

#### 10.13.8.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

#### 10.13.8.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.13.8.5 Examples

```
REV  R3, R7 ; Reverse byte order of value in R7 and write it to R3
REV16 R0, R0 ; Reverse byte order of each 16-bit halfword in R0
REVSH R0, R5 ; Reverse Signed Halfword
REVHS R3, R7 ; Reverse with Higher or Same condition
RBIT  R7, R8 ; Reverse bit order of value in R8 and write the result to R7
```



## 10.13.9 TST and TEQ

Test bits and Test Equivalence.

### 10.13.9.1 Syntax

```
TST{cond} Rn, Operand2  
TEQ{cond} Rn, Operand2
```

where:

- cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.
- Rn is the register holding the first operand.
- Operand2 is a flexible second operand. See “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80 for details of the options.

### 10.13.9.2 Operation

These instructions test the value in a register against *Operand2*. They update the condition flags based on the result, but do not write the result to a register.

The TST instruction performs a bitwise AND operation on the value in *Rn* and the value of *Operand2*. This is the same as the ANDS instruction, except that it discards the result.

To test whether a bit of *Rn* is 0 or 1, use the TST instruction with an *Operand2* constant that has that bit set to 1 and all other bits cleared to 0.

The TEQ instruction performs a bitwise Exclusive OR operation on the value in *Rn* and the value of *Operand2*. This is the same as the EORS instruction, except that it discards the result.

Use the TEQ instruction to test if two values are equal without affecting the V or C flags.

TEQ is also useful for testing the sign of a value. After the comparison, the N flag is the logical Exclusive OR of the sign bits of the two operands.

### 10.13.9.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

### 10.13.9.4 Condition flags

These instructions:

- update the N and Z flags according to the result
- can update the C flag during the calculation of *Operand2*, see “[Flexible second operand](#)” on page 80
- do not affect the V flag.

### 10.13.9.5 Examples

```
TST      R0, #0x3F8 ; Perform bitwise AND of R0 value to 0x3F8,  
                      ; APSR is updated but result is discarded  
TEQEQQ R10, R9   ; Conditionally test if value in R10 is equal to  
                      ; value in R9, APSR is updated but result is discarded
```

## 10.14 Multiply and divide instructions

[Table 10-21](#) shows the multiply and divide instructions:

**Table 10-21.** Multiply and divide instructions

Mnemonic	Brief description	See
MLA	Multiply with Accumulate, 32-bit result	<a href="#">“MUL, MLA, and MLS” on page 120</a>
MLS	Multiply and Subtract, 32-bit result	<a href="#">“MUL, MLA, and MLS” on page 120</a>
MUL	Multiply, 32-bit result	<a href="#">“MUL, MLA, and MLS” on page 120</a>
SDIV	Signed Divide	<a href="#">“SDIV and UDIV” on page 122</a>
SMLAL	Signed Multiply with Accumulate (32x32+64), 64-bit result	<a href="#">“UMULL, UMLAL, SMULL, and SMLAL” on page 121</a>
SMULL	Signed Multiply (32x32), 64-bit result	<a href="#">“UMULL, UMLAL, SMULL, and SMLAL” on page 121</a>
UDIV	Unsigned Divide	<a href="#">“SDIV and UDIV” on page 122</a>
UMLAL	Unsigned Multiply with Accumulate (32x32+64), 64-bit result	<a href="#">“UMULL, UMLAL, SMULL, and SMLAL” on page 121</a>
UMULL	Unsigned Multiply (32x32), 64-bit result	<a href="#">“UMULL, UMLAL, SMULL, and SMLAL” on page 121</a>



### 10.14.1 MUL, MLA, and MLS

Multiply, Multiply with Accumulate, and Multiply with Subtract, using 32-bit operands, and producing a 32-bit result.

#### 10.14.1.1 Syntax

```
MUL{S}{cond} {Rd,} Rn, Rm ; Multiply
MLA{cond} Rd, Rn, Rm, Ra ; Multiply with accumulate
MLS{cond} Rd, Rn, Rm, Ra ; Multiply with subtract
```

where:

- cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.
- S is an optional suffix. If S is specified, the condition code flags are updated on the result of the operation, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.
- Rd is the destination register. If Rd is omitted, the destination register is Rn.
- Rn, Rm are registers holding the values to be multiplied.
- Ra is a register holding the value to be added or subtracted from.

#### 10.14.1.2 Operation

The MUL instruction multiplies the values from Rn and Rm, and places the least significant 32 bits of the result in Rd.

The MLA instruction multiplies the values from Rn and Rm, adds the value from Ra, and places the least significant 32 bits of the result in Rd.

The MLS instruction multiplies the values from Rn and Rm, subtracts the product from the value from Ra, and places the least significant 32 bits of the result in Rd.

The results of these instructions do not depend on whether the operands are signed or unsigned.

#### 10.14.1.3 Restrictions

In these instructions, do not use SP and do not use PC.

If you use the S suffix with the MUL instruction:

- Rd, Rn, and Rm must all be in the range R0 to R7
- Rd must be the same as Rm
- you must not use the cond suffix.

#### 10.14.1.4 Condition flags

If S is specified, the MUL instruction:

- updates the N and Z flags according to the result
- does not affect the C and V flags.

#### 10.14.1.5 Examples

```
MUL      R10, R2, R5      ; Multiply, R10 = R2 x R5
MLA      R10, R2, R1, R5 ; Multiply with accumulate, R10 = (R2 x R1) + R5
MULS    R0, R2, R2       ; Multiply with flag update, R0 = R2 x R2
MULLT   R2, R3, R2       ; Conditionally multiply, R2 = R3 x R2
MLS     R4, R5, R6, R7   ; Multiply with subtract, R4 = R7 - (R5 x R6)
```

### 10.14.2 UMULL, UMLAL, SMULL, and SMLAL

Signed and Unsigned Long Multiply, with optional Accumulate, using 32-bit operands and producing a 64-bit result.

#### 10.14.2.1 Syntax

*op{cond} RdLo, RdHi, Rn, Rm*

where:

*op*      is one of:

UMULL Unsigned Long Multiply.

UMLAL Unsigned Long Multiply, with Accumulate.

SMULL Signed Long Multiply.

SMLAL Signed Long Multiply, with Accumulate.

*cond*      is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

*RdHi, RdLo*    are the destination registers.

For UMLAL and SMLAL they also hold the accumulating value.

*Rn, Rm*      are registers holding the operands.

#### 10.14.2.2 Operation

The UMULL instruction interprets the values from *Rn* and *Rm* as unsigned integers. It multiplies these integers and places the least significant 32 bits of the result in *RdLo*, and the most significant 32 bits of the result in *RdHi*.

The UMLAL instruction interprets the values from *Rn* and *Rm* as unsigned integers. It multiplies these integers, adds the 64-bit result to the 64-bit unsigned integer contained in *RdHi* and *RdLo*, and writes the result back to *RdHi* and *RdLo*.

The SMULL instruction interprets the values from *Rn* and *Rm* as two’s complement signed integers. It multiplies these integers and places the least significant 32 bits of the result in *RdLo*, and the most significant 32 bits of the result in *RdHi*.

The SMLAL instruction interprets the values from *Rn* and *Rm* as two’s complement signed integers. It multiplies these integers, adds the 64-bit result to the 64-bit signed integer contained in *RdHi* and *RdLo*, and writes the result back to *RdHi* and *RdLo*.

#### 10.14.2.3 Restrictions

In these instructions:

- do not use SP and do not use PC
- *RdHi* and *RdLo* must be different registers.

#### 10.14.2.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not affect the condition code flags.

#### 10.14.2.5 Examples

UMULL	R0, R4, R5, R6 ; Unsigned (R4,R0) = R5 x R6
SMLAL	R4, R5, R3, R8 ; Signed (R5,R4) = (R5,R4) + R3 x R8



### 10.14.3 SDIV and UDIV

Signed Divide and Unsigned Divide.

#### 10.14.3.1 Syntax

```
SDIV{cond} {Rd,} Rn, Rm  
UDIV{cond} {Rd,} Rn, Rm
```

where:

- |      |                                                                                               |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cond | is an optional condition code, see “ <a href="#">Conditional execution</a> ” on page 84.      |
| Rd   | is the destination register. If <i>Rd</i> is omitted, the destination register is <i>Rn</i> . |
| Rn   | is the register holding the value to be divided.                                              |
| Rm   | is a register holding the divisor.                                                            |

#### 10.14.3.2 Operation

SDIV performs a signed integer division of the value in *Rn* by the value in *Rm*.

UDIV performs an unsigned integer division of the value in *Rn* by the value in *Rm*.

For both instructions, if the value in *Rn* is not divisible by the value in *Rm*, the result is rounded towards zero.

#### 10.14.3.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

#### 10.14.3.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.14.3.5 Examples

```
SDIV R0, R2, R4 ; Signed divide, R0 = R2/R4  
UDIV R8, R8, R1 ; Unsigned divide, R8 = R8/R1
```

## 10.15 Saturating instructions

This section describes the saturating instructions, SSAT and USAT.

### 10.15.1 SSAT and USAT

Signed Saturate and Unsigned Saturate to any bit position, with optional shift before saturating.

#### 10.15.1.1 Syntax

*op{cond} Rd, #n, Rm {, shift #s}*

where:

*op*      is one of:

SSAT      Saturates a signed value to a signed range.

USAT      Saturates a signed value to an unsigned range.

*cond*      is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

*Rd*      is the destination register.

*n*      specifies the bit position to saturate to:

*n* ranges from 1 to 32 for SSAT

*n* ranges from 0 to 31 for USAT.

*Rm*      is the register containing the value to saturate.

*shift #s*      is an optional shift applied to *Rm* before saturating. It must be one of the following:

ASR #s where *s* is in the range 1 to 31

LSL #s where *s* is in the range 0 to 31.

#### 10.15.1.2 Operation

These instructions saturate to a signed or unsigned *n*-bit value.

The SSAT instruction applies the specified shift, then saturates to the signed range  $-2^{n-1} \leq x \leq 2^{n-1}-1$ .

The USAT instruction applies the specified shift, then saturates to the unsigned range  $0 \leq x \leq 2^n-1$ .

For signed *n*-bit saturation using SSAT, this means that:

- if the value to be saturated is less than  $-2^{n-1}$ , the result returned is  $-2^{n-1}$
- if the value to be saturated is greater than  $2^{n-1}-1$ , the result returned is  $2^{n-1}-1$
- otherwise, the result returned is the same as the value to be saturated.

For unsigned *n*-bit saturation using USAT, this means that:

- if the value to be saturated is less than 0, the result returned is 0
- if the value to be saturated is greater than  $2^n-1$ , the result returned is  $2^n-1$
- otherwise, the result returned is the same as the value to be saturated.

If the returned result is different from the value to be saturated, it is called *saturation*. If saturation occurs, the instruction sets the Q flag to 1 in the APSR. Otherwise, it leaves the Q flag unchanged. To clear the Q flag to 0, you must use the MSR instruction, see “[MSR](#)” on page 144.

To read the state of the Q flag, use the MRS instruction, see “[MRS](#)” on page 143.



#### 10.15.1.3 *Restrictions*

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

#### 10.15.1.4 *Condition flags*

These instructions do not affect the condition code flags.

If saturation occurs, these instructions set the Q flag to 1.

#### 10.15.1.5 *Examples*

```
SSAT      R7, #16, R7, LSL #4 ; Logical shift left value in R7 by 4, then  
                                ; saturate it as a signed 16-bit value and  
                                ; write it back to R7  
USATNE   R0, #7, R5          ; Conditionally saturate value in R5 as an  
                                ; unsigned 7 bit value and write it to R0
```

## 10.16 Bitfield instructions

[Table 10-22](#) shows the instructions that operate on adjacent sets of bits in registers or bitfields:

**Table 10-22.** Packing and unpacking instructions

Mnemonic	Brief description	See
BFC	Bit Field Clear	<a href="#">“BFC and BFI” on page 126</a>
BFI	Bit Field Insert	<a href="#">“BFC and BFI” on page 126</a>
SBFX	Signed Bit Field Extract	<a href="#">“SBFX and UBFX” on page 127</a>
SXTB	Sign extend a byte	<a href="#">“SXT and UXT” on page 128</a>
SXTH	Sign extend a halfword	<a href="#">“SXT and UXT” on page 128</a>
UBFX	Unsigned Bit Field Extract	<a href="#">“SBFX and UBFX” on page 127</a>
UXTB	Zero extend a byte	<a href="#">“SXT and UXT” on page 128</a>
UXTH	Zero extend a halfword	<a href="#">“SXT and UXT” on page 128</a>

## 10.16.1 BFC and BFI

Bit Field Clear and Bit Field Insert.

### 10.16.1.1 Syntax

```
BFC{cond} Rd, #lsb, #width  
BFI{cond} Rd, Rn, #lsb, #width
```

where:

- cond        is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.  
Rd        is the destination register.  
Rn        is the source register.  
lsb        is the position of the least significant bit of the bitfield.  
            lsb must be in the range 0 to 31.  
width        is the width of the bitfield and must be in the range 1 to 32-lsb.

### 10.16.1.2 Operation

BFC clears a bitfield in a register. It clears *width* bits in *Rd*, starting at the low bit position *lsb*. Other bits in *Rd* are unchanged.

BFI copies a bitfield into one register from another register. It replaces *width* bits in *Rd* starting at the low bit position *lsb*, with *width* bits from *Rn* starting at bit[0]. Other bits in *Rd* are unchanged.

### 10.16.1.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

### 10.16.1.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not affect the flags.

### 10.16.1.5 Examples

```
BFC  R4, #8, #12      ; Clear bit 8 to bit 19 (12 bits) of R4 to 0  
BFI  R9, R2, #8, #12    ; Replace bit 8 to bit 19 (12 bits) of R9 with  
                        ; bit 0 to bit 11 from R2
```

## 10.16.2 SBFX and UBFX

Signed Bit Field Extract and Unsigned Bit Field Extract.

### 10.16.2.1 Syntax

```
SBFX{cond} Rd, Rn, #lsb, #width
UBFX{cond} Rd, Rn, #lsb, #width
```

where:

- cond is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.
- Rd is the destination register.
- Rn is the source register.
- lsb is the position of the least significant bit of the bitfield.  
*lsb* must be in the range 0 to 31.
- width is the width of the bitfield and must be in the range 1 to 32-*lsb*.

### 10.16.2.2 Operation

SBFX extracts a bitfield from one register, sign extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register.

UBFX extracts a bitfield from one register, zero extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register.

### 10.16.2.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

### 10.16.2.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not affect the flags.

### 10.16.2.5 Examples

```
SBFX R0, R1, #20, #4 ; Extract bit 20 to bit 23 (4 bits) from R1 and sign
                      ; extend to 32 bits and then write the result to R0.
UBFX R8, R11, #9, #10 ; Extract bit 9 to bit 18 (10 bits) from R11 and zero
                      ; extend to 32 bits and then write the result to R8
```

### 10.16.3 SXT and UXT

Sign extend and Zero extend.

#### 10.16.3.1 Syntax

```
SXTExtend{cond} {Rd,} Rm {, ROR #n}
UXTExtend{cond} {Rd}, Rm {, ROR #n}
```

where:

extend      is one of:

B      Extends an 8-bit value to a 32-bit value.

H      Extends a 16-bit value to a 32-bit value.

cond      is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

Rd      is the destination register.

Rm      is the register holding the value to extend.

ROR #n      is one of:

ROR #8 Value from Rm is rotated right 8 bits.

ROR #16 Value from Rm is rotated right 16 bits.

ROR #24 Value from Rm is rotated right 24 bits.

If ROR #n is omitted, no rotation is performed.

#### 10.16.3.2 Operation

These instructions do the following:

- Rotate the value from Rm right by 0, 8, 16 or 24 bits.
- Extract bits from the resulting value:

SXTB extracts bits[7:0] and sign extends to 32 bits.

UXTB extracts bits[7:0] and zero extends to 32 bits.

SXTH extracts bits[15:0] and sign extends to 32 bits.

UXTH extracts bits[15:0] and zero extends to 32 bits.

#### 10.16.3.3 Restrictions

Do not use SP and do not use PC.

#### 10.16.3.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not affect the flags.

#### 10.16.3.5 Examples

```
SXTH R4, R6, ROR #16 ; Rotate R6 right by 16 bits, then obtain the lower
; halfword of the result and then sign extend to
; 32 bits and write the result to R4.
UXTB R3, R10          ; Extract lowest byte of the value in R10 and zero
; extend it, and write the result to R3
```

## 10.17 Branch and control instructions

Table 10-23 shows the branch and control instructions:

**Table 10-23.** Branch and control instructions

Mnemonic	Brief description	See
B	Branch	"B, BL, BX, and BLX" on page 130
BL	Branch with Link	"B, BL, BX, and BLX" on page 130
BLX	Branch indirect with Link	"B, BL, BX, and BLX" on page 130
BX	Branch indirect	"B, BL, BX, and BLX" on page 130
CBNZ	Compare and Branch if Non Zero	"CBZ and CBNZ" on page 132
CBZ	Compare and Branch if Non Zero	"CBZ and CBNZ" on page 132
IT	If-Then	"IT" on page 133
TBB	Table Branch Byte	"TBB and TBH" on page 135
TBH	Table Branch Halfword	"TBB and TBH" on page 135

## 10.17.1 B, BL, BX, and BLX

Branch instructions.

### 10.17.1.1 Syntax

```
B{cond} label
BL{cond} label
BX{cond} Rm
BLX{cond} Rm
```

where:

- B is branch (immediate).
- BL is branch with link (immediate).
- BX is branch indirect (register).
- BLX is branch indirect with link (register).
- cond is an optional condition code, see “Conditional execution” on page 84.
- label is a PC-relative expression. See “PC-relative expressions” on page 84.
- Rm is a register that indicates an address to branch to. Bit[0] of the value in *Rm* must be 1, but the address to branch to is created by changing bit[0] to 0.

### 10.17.1.2 Operation

All these instructions cause a branch to *label*, or to the address indicated in *Rm*. In addition:

- The BL and BLX instructions write the address of the next instruction to LR (the link register, R14).
- The BX and BLX instructions cause a UsageFault exception if bit[0] of *Rm* is 0.

*Bcond label* is the only conditional instruction that can be either inside or outside an IT block. All other branch instructions must be conditional inside an IT block, and must be unconditional outside the IT block, see “IT” on page 133.

Table 10-24 shows the ranges for the various branch instructions.

**Table 10-24.** Branch ranges

Instruction	Branch range
B label	-16 MB to +16 MB
<i>Bcond label</i> (outside IT block)	-1 MB to +1 MB
<i>Bcond label</i> (inside IT block)	-16 MB to +16 MB
BL{cond} label	-16 MB to +16 MB
BX{cond} Rm	Any value in register
BLX{cond} Rm	Any value in register

You might have to use the .W suffix to get the maximum branch range. See “Instruction width selection” on page 86.

### 10.17.1.3 Restrictions

The restrictions are:

- do not use PC in the BLX instruction
- for BX and BLX, bit[0] of *Rm* must be 1 for correct execution but a branch occurs to the target address created by changing bit[0] to 0
- when any of these instructions is inside an IT block, it must be the last instruction of the IT block.

*Bcond* is the only conditional instruction that is not required to be inside an IT block. However, it has a longer branch range when it is inside an IT block.

#### 10.17.1.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.17.1.5 Examples

```

B      loopA ; Branch to loopA
BLE    ng     ; Conditionally branch to label ng
B.W    target ; Branch to target within 16MB range
BEQ    target ; Conditionally branch to target
BEQ.W   target ; Conditionally branch to target within 1MB
BL     funC   ; Branch with link (Call) to function funC, return address
          ; stored in LR
BX     LR     ; Return from function call
BXNE   R0     ; Conditionally branch to address stored in R0
BLX    R0     ; Branch with link and exchange (Call) to a address stored
          ; in R0

```

## 10.17.2 CBZ and CBNZ

Compare and Branch on Zero, Compare and Branch on Non-Zero.

### 10.17.2.1 Syntax

```
CBZ Rn, label  
CBNZ Rn, label
```

where:

- Rn is the register holding the operand.
- label is the branch destination.

### 10.17.2.2 Operation

Use the CBZ or CBNZ instructions to avoid changing the condition code flags and to reduce the number of instructions.

CBZ Rn, label does not change condition flags but is otherwise equivalent to:

```
CMP Rn, #0  
BEQ label
```

CBNZ Rn, label does not change condition flags but is otherwise equivalent to:

```
CMP Rn, #0  
BNE label
```

### 10.17.2.3 Restrictions

The restrictions are:

- Rn must be in the range of R0 to R7
- the branch destination must be within 4 to 130 bytes after the instruction
- these instructions must not be used inside an IT block.

### 10.17.2.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

### 10.17.2.5 Examples

```
CBZ R5, target ; Forward branch if R5 is zero  
CBNZ R0, target ; Forward branch if R0 is not zero
```

### 10.17.3 IT

If-Then condition instruction.

#### 10.17.3.1 Syntax

`IT{x{y{z}} } cond`

where:

- x specifies the condition switch for the second instruction in the IT block.
- y specifies the condition switch for the third instruction in the IT block.
- z specifies the condition switch for the fourth instruction in the IT block.
- cond specifies the condition for the first instruction in the IT block.

The condition switch for the second, third and fourth instruction in the IT block can be either:

- T Then. Applies the condition *cond* to the instruction.
- E Else. Applies the inverse condition of *cond* to the instruction.

It is possible to use AL (the *always* condition) for *cond* in an IT instruction. If this is done, all of the instructions in the IT block must be unconditional, and each of x, y, and z must be T or omitted but not E.

#### 10.17.3.2 Operation

The IT instruction makes up to four following instructions conditional. The conditions can be all the same, or some of them can be the logical inverse of the others. The conditional instructions following the IT instruction form the *IT block*.

The instructions in the IT block, including any branches, must specify the condition in the {*cond*} part of their syntax.

Your assembler might be able to generate the required IT instructions for conditional instructions automatically, so that you do not need to write them yourself. See your assembler documentation for details.

A BKPT instruction in an IT block is always executed, even if its condition fails.

Exceptions can be taken between an IT instruction and the corresponding IT block, or within an IT block. Such an exception results in entry to the appropriate exception handler, with suitable return information in LR and stacked PSR.

Instructions designed for use for exception returns can be used as normal to return from the exception, and execution of the IT block resumes correctly. This is the only way that a PC-modifying instruction is permitted to branch to an instruction in an IT block.

#### 10.17.3.3 Restrictions

The following instructions are not permitted in an IT block:

- IT
- CBZ and CBNZ
- CPSID and CPSIE.

Other restrictions when using an IT block are:



- a branch or any instruction that modifies the PC must either be outside an IT block or must be the last instruction inside the IT block. These are:
  - ADD PC, PC, Rm
  - MOV PC, Rm
  - B, BL, BX, BLX
  - any LDM, LDR, or POP instruction that writes to the PC
  - TBB and TBH
- do not branch to any instruction inside an IT block, except when returning from an exception handler
- all conditional instructions except *Bcond* must be inside an IT block. *Bcond* can be either outside or inside an IT block but has a larger branch range if it is inside one
- each instruction inside the IT block must specify a condition code suffix that is either the same or logical inverse as for the other instructions in the block.

Your assembler might place extra restrictions on the use of IT blocks, such as prohibiting the use of assembler directives within them.

#### 10.17.3.4 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

#### 10.17.3.5 Example

```

ITTE NE          ; Next 3 instructions are conditional
ANDNE R0, R0, R1 ; ANDNE does not update condition flags
ADDSNE R2, R2, #1 ; ADDSNE updates condition flags
MOVEQ R2, R3      ; Conditional move

CMP   R0, #9      ; Convert R0 hex value (0 to 15) into ASCII
                  ; ('0'-'9', 'A'-'F')
ITE   GT          ; Next 2 instructions are conditional
ADDGT R1, R0, #55 ; Convert 0xA -> 'A'
ADDLE R1, R0, #48 ; Convert 0x0 -> '0'

IT    GT          ; IT block with only one conditional instruction
ADDGT R1, R1, #1  ; Increment R1 conditionally

ITTEE EQ          ; Next 4 instructions are conditional
MOVEQ R0, R1      ; Conditional move
ADDEQ R2, R2, #10 ; Conditional add
ANDNE R3, R3, #1  ; Conditional AND
BNE.W dloop       ; Branch instruction can only be used in the last
                  ; instruction of an IT block

IT    NE          ; Next instruction is conditional
ADD   R0, R0, R1  ; Syntax error: no condition code used in IT block

```

## 10.17.4 TBB and TBH

Table Branch Byte and Table Branch Halfword.

### 10.17.4.1 Syntax

```
TBB [Rn, Rm]
TBH [Rn, Rm, LSL #1]
```

where:

Rn is the register containing the address of the table of branch lengths. If Rn is PC, then the address of the table is the address of the byte immediately following the TBB or TBH instruction.

Rm is the index register. This contains an index into the table. For halfword tables, LSL #1 doubles the value in Rm to form the right offset into the table.

### 10.17.4.2 Operation

These instructions cause a PC-relative forward branch using a table of single byte offsets for TBB, or halfword offsets for TBH. Rn provides a pointer to the table, and Rm supplies an index into the table. For TBB the branch offset is twice the unsigned value of the byte returned from the table, and for TBH the branch offset is twice the unsigned value of the halfword returned from the table. The branch occurs to the address at that offset from the address of the byte immediately after the TBB or TBH instruction.

### 10.17.4.3 Restrictions

The restrictions are:

- Rn must not be SP
- Rm must not be SP and must not be PC
- when any of these instructions is used inside an IT block, it must be the last instruction of the IT block.

### 10.17.4.4 Condition flags

These instructions do not change the flags.

#### 10.17.4.5 Examples

```
ADR.W R0, BranchTable_Byte
TBB [R0, R1]           ; R1 is the index, R0 is the base address of the
                         ; branch table

Case1
; an instruction sequence follows
Case2
; an instruction sequence follows
Case3
; an instruction sequence follows
BranchTable_Byte
DCB 0                  ; Case1 offset calculation
DCB ((Case2-Case1)/2)   ; Case2 offset calculation
DCB ((Case3-Case1)/2)   ; Case3 offset calculation
TBH [PC, R1, LSL #1]    ; R1 is the index, PC is used as base of the
                         ; branch table

BranchTable_H
DCI ((CaseA - BranchTable_H)/2) ; CaseA offset calculation
DCI ((CaseB - BranchTable_H)/2) ; CaseB offset calculation
DCI ((CaseC - BranchTable_H)/2) ; CaseC offset calculation

CaseA
; an instruction sequence follows
CaseB
; an instruction sequence follows
CaseC
; an instruction sequence follows
```

## 10.18 Miscellaneous instructions

[Table 10-25](#) shows the remaining Cortex-M3 instructions:

**Table 10-25.** Miscellaneous instructions

Mnemonic	Brief description	See
BKPT	Breakpoint	<a href="#">“BKPT” on page 138</a>
CPSID	Change Processor State, Disable Interrupts	<a href="#">“CPS” on page 139</a>
CPSIE	Change Processor State, Enable Interrupts	<a href="#">“CPS” on page 139</a>
DMB	Data Memory Barrier	<a href="#">“DMB” on page 140</a>
DSB	Data Synchronization Barrier	<a href="#">“DSB” on page 141</a>
ISB	Instruction Synchronization Barrier	<a href="#">“ISB” on page 142</a>
MRS	Move from special register to register	<a href="#">“MRS” on page 143</a>
MSR	Move from register to special register	<a href="#">“MSR” on page 144</a>
NOP	No Operation	<a href="#">“NOP” on page 145</a>
SEV	Send Event	<a href="#">“SEV” on page 146</a>
SVC	Supervisor Call	<a href="#">“SVC” on page 147</a>
WFE	Wait For Event	<a href="#">“WFE” on page 148</a>
WFI	Wait For Interrupt	<a href="#">“WFI” on page 149</a>

## 10.18.1 BKPT

Breakpoint.

### 10.18.1.1 Syntax

BKPT #imm

where:

imm is an expression evaluating to an integer in the range 0-255 (8-bit value).

### 10.18.1.2 Operation

The BKPT instruction causes the processor to enter Debug state. Debug tools can use this to investigate system state when the instruction at a particular address is reached.

imm is ignored by the processor. If required, a debugger can use it to store additional information about the breakpoint.

The BKPT instruction can be placed inside an IT block, but it executes unconditionally, unaffected by the condition specified by the IT instruction.

### 10.18.1.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.1.4 Examples

```
BKPT 0xAB ; Breakpoint with immediate value set to 0xAB (debugger can  
; extract the immediate value by locating it using the PC)
```

## 10.18.2 CPS

Change Processor State.

### 10.18.2.1 Syntax

*CPS*effect iflags**

where:

*effect*      is one of:

IE      Clears the special purpose register.

ID      Sets the special purpose register.

*iflags*      is a sequence of one or more flags:

i      Set or clear PRIMASK.

f      Set or clear FAULTMASK.

### 10.18.2.2 Operation

CPS changes the PRIMASK and FAULTMASK special register values. See “[Exception mask registers](#)” on page 49 for more information about these registers.

### 10.18.2.3 Restrictions

The restrictions are:

- use CPS only from privileged software, it has no effect if used in unprivileged software
- CPS cannot be conditional and so must not be used inside an IT block.

### 10.18.2.4 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the condition flags.

### 10.18.2.5 Examples

```
CPSID i ; Disable interrupts and configurable fault handlers (set PRIMASK)
CPSID f ; Disable interrupts and all fault handlers (set FAULTMASK)
CPSIE i ; Enable interrupts and configurable fault handlers (clear PRIMASK)
CPSIE f ; Enable interrupts and fault handlers (clear FAULTMASK)
```

### 10.18.3 DMB

Data Memory Barrier.

#### 10.18.3.1 Syntax

DMB {*cond*}

where:

*cond* is an optional condition code, see “Conditional execution” on page 84.

#### 10.18.3.2 Operation

DMB acts as a data memory barrier. It ensures that all explicit memory accesses that appear, in program order, before the DMB instruction are completed before any explicit memory accesses that appear, in program order, after the DMB instruction. DMB does not affect the ordering or execution of instructions that do not access memory.

#### 10.18.3.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

#### 10.18.3.4 Examples

DMB ; Data Memory Barrier

## 10.18.4 DSB

Data Synchronization Barrier.

### 10.18.4.1 Syntax

DSB{*cond*}

where:

*cond* is an optional condition code, see “Conditional execution” on page 84.

### 10.18.4.2 Operation

DSB acts as a special data synchronization memory barrier. Instructions that come after the DSB, in program order, do not execute until the DSB instruction completes. The DSB instruction completes when all explicit memory accesses before it complete.

### 10.18.4.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.4.4 Examples

DSB ; Data Synchronisation Barrier

## 10.18.5 ISB

Instruction Synchronization Barrier.

### 10.18.5.1 Syntax

ISB{*cond*}

where:

*cond* is an optional condition code, see “Conditional execution” on page 84.

### 10.18.5.2 Operation

ISB acts as an instruction synchronization barrier. It flushes the pipeline of the processor, so that all instructions following the ISB are fetched from memory again, after the ISB instruction has been completed.

### 10.18.5.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.5.4 Examples

```
ISB ; Instruction Synchronisation Barrier
```

## 10.18.6 MRS

Move the contents of a special register to a general-purpose register.

### 10.18.6.1 Syntax

`MRS {cond} Rd, spec_reg`

where:

`cond` is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

`Rd` is the destination register.

`spec_reg` can be any of: APSR, IPSR, EPSR, IEPSR, IAPSR, EAPSR, PSR, MSP, PSP, PRIMASK, BASEPRI, BASEPRI\_MAX, FAULTMASK, or CONTROL.

### 10.18.6.2 Operation

Use MRS in combination with MSR as part of a read-modify-write sequence for updating a PSR, for example to clear the Q flag.

In process swap code, the programmers model state of the process being swapped out must be saved, including relevant PSR contents. Similarly, the state of the process being swapped in must also be restored. These operations use MRS in the state-saving instruction sequence and MSR in the state-restoring instruction sequence.

BASEPRI\_MAX is an alias of BASEPRI when used with the MRS instruction.

See “[MSR](#)” on page 144.

### 10.18.6.3 Restrictions

`Rd` must not be SP and must not be PC.

### 10.18.6.4 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.6.5 Examples

```
MRS R0, PRIMASK ; Read PRIMASK value and write it to R0
```

## 10.18.7 MSR

Move the contents of a general-purpose register into the specified special register.

### 10.18.7.1 Syntax

`MSR{cond} spec_reg, Rn`

where:

`cond` is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

`Rn` is the source register.

`spec_reg` can be any of: APSR, IPSR, EPSR, IEPSR, IAPSR, EAPSR, PSR, MSP, PSP, PRIMASK, BASEPRI, BASEPRI\_MAX, FAULTMASK, or CONTROL.

### 10.18.7.2 Operation

The register access operation in MSR depends on the privilege level. Unprivileged software can only access the APSR, see “[Application Program Status Register](#)” on page 47. Privileged software can access all special registers.

In unprivileged software writes to unallocated or execution state bits in the PSR are ignored.

When you write to BASEPRI\_MAX, the instruction writes to BASEPRI only if either:

- `Rn` is non-zero and the current BASEPRI value is 0
- `Rn` is non-zero and less than the current BASEPRI value.

See “[MRS](#)” on page 143.

### 10.18.7.3 Restrictions

`Rn` must not be SP and must not be PC.

### 10.18.7.4 Condition flags

This instruction updates the flags explicitly based on the value in `Rn`.

### 10.18.7.5 Examples

```
MSR CONTROL, R1 ; Read R1 value and write it to the CONTROL register
```

## 10.18.8 NOP

No Operation.

### 10.18.8.1 Syntax

`NOP {cond}`

where:

`cond` is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

### 10.18.8.2 Operation

NOP does nothing. NOP is not necessarily a time-consuming NOP. The processor might remove it from the pipeline before it reaches the execution stage.

Use NOP for padding, for example to place the following instruction on a 64-bit boundary.

### 10.18.8.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.8.4 Examples

`NOP ; No operation`

## 10.18.9 SEV

Send Event.

### 10.18.9.1 Syntax

SEV{*cond*}

where:

*cond* is an optional condition code, see “Conditional execution” on page 84.

### 10.18.9.2 Operation

SEV is a hint instruction that causes an event to be signaled to all processors within a multiprocessor system. It also sets the local event register to 1, see “Power management” on page 72.

### 10.18.9.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.9.4 Examples

SEV ; Send Event

## 10.18.10 SVC

Supervisor Call.

### 10.18.10.1 Syntax

SVC{*cond*} #*imm*

where:

*cond* is an optional condition code, see “Conditional execution” on page 84.

*imm* is an expression evaluating to an integer in the range 0-255 (8-bit value).

### 10.18.10.2 Operation

The SVC instruction causes the SVC exception.

*imm* is ignored by the processor. If required, it can be retrieved by the exception handler to determine what service is being requested.

### 10.18.10.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.10.4 Examples

```
SVC 0x32 ; Supervisor Call (SVC handler can extract the immediate value  
; by locating it via the stacked PC)
```

## 10.18.11 WFE

Wait For Event.

### 10.18.11.1 Syntax

`WFE {cond}`

where:

`cond` is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

### 10.18.11.2 Operation

WFE is a hint instruction.

If the event register is 0, WFE suspends execution until one of the following events occurs:

- an exception, unless masked by the exception mask registers or the current priority level
- an exception enters the Pending state, if SEVONPEND in the System Control Register is set
- a Debug Entry request, if Debug is enabled
- an event signaled by a peripheral or another processor in a multiprocessor system using the SEV instruction.

If the event register is 1, WFE clears it to 0 and returns immediately.

For more information see “[Power management](#)” on page 72.

### 10.18.11.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.11.4 Examples

```
WFE ; Wait for event
```

## 10.18.12 WFI

Wait for Interrupt.

### 10.18.12.1 Syntax

`WFI {cond}`

where:

`cond` is an optional condition code, see “[Conditional execution](#)” on page 84.

### 10.18.12.2 Operation

WFI is a hint instruction that suspends execution until one of the following events occurs:

- an exception
- a Debug Entry request, regardless of whether Debug is enabled.

### 10.18.12.3 Condition flags

This instruction does not change the flags.

### 10.18.12.4 Examples

`WFI ; Wait for interrupt`

## 10.19 About the Cortex-M3 peripherals

The address map of the *Private peripheral bus* (PPB) is:

**Table 10-26.** Core peripheral register regions

Address	Core peripheral	Description
0xE000E008-0xE000E00F	System control block	<a href="#">Table 10-30 on page 164</a>
0xE000E010-0xE000E01F	System timer	<a href="#">Table 10-33 on page 191</a>
0xE000E100-0xE000E4EF	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller	<a href="#">Table 10-27 on page 151</a>
0xE000ED00-0xE000ED3F	System control block	<a href="#">Table 10-30 on page 164</a>
0xE000ED90-0xE000ED93	MPU Type Register	Reads as zero, indicating no MPU is implemented <sup>(1)</sup>
0xE000EF00-0xE000EF03	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller	<a href="#">Table 10-27 on page 151</a>

1. Software can read the MPU Type Register at 0xE000ED90 to test for the presence of a *memory protection unit* (MPU).

In register descriptions:

- the register *type* is described as follows:

RW     Read and write.  
 RO     Read-only.  
 WO     Write-only.

- the *required privilege* gives the privilege level required to access the register, as follows:

Privileged	Only privileged software can access the register.
Unprivileged	Both unprivileged and privileged software can access the register.

## 10.20 Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller

This section describes the Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC) and the registers it uses. The NVIC supports:

- 1 to 33 interrupts.
- A programmable priority level of 0-15 for each interrupt. A higher level corresponds to a lower priority, so level 0 is the highest interrupt priority.
- Level and pulse detection of interrupt signals.
- Dynamic reprioritization of interrupts.
- Grouping of priority values into group priority and subpriority fields.
- Interrupt tail-chaining.

The processor automatically stacks its state on exception entry and unstacks this state on exception exit, with no instruction overhead. This provides low latency exception handling. The hardware implementation of the NVIC registers is:

**Table 10-27.** NVIC register summary

Address	Name	Type	Required privilege	Reset value	Description
0xE000E100	ISER0	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Interrupt Set-enable Registers” on page 153</a>
0xE000E180	ICER0	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Interrupt Clear-enable Registers” on page 154</a>
0xE000E200	ISPR0	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Interrupt Set-pending Registers” on page 155</a>
0xE000E280	ICPR0	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Interrupt Clear-pending Registers” on page 156</a>
0xE000E300	IABR0	RO	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Interrupt Active Bit Registers” on page 157</a>
0xE000E400-0xE000E41C	IPR0-IPR8	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Interrupt Priority Registers” on page 158</a>
0xE000EF00	STIR	WO	Configurable <sup>(1)</sup>	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Software Trigger Interrupt Register” on page 161</a>

1. See the register description for more information.

### 10.20.1 The CMSIS mapping of the Cortex-M3 NVIC registers

To improve software efficiency, the CMSIS simplifies the NVIC register presentation. In the CMSIS:

- the Set-enable, Clear-enable, Set-pending, Clear-pending and Active Bit registers map to arrays of 32-bit integers, so that:
  - the array ISER[0] corresponds to the registers ISER0
  - the array ICER[0] corresponds to the registers ICER0
  - the array ISPR[0] corresponds to the registers ISPR0
  - the array ICPR[0] corresponds to the registers ICPR0
  - the array IABR[0] corresponds to the registers IABR0



- the 4-bit fields of the Interrupt Priority Registers map to an array of 4-bit integers, so that the array IP[0] to IP[32] corresponds to the registers IPR0-IPR8, and the array entry IP[n] holds the interrupt priority for interrupt  $n$ .

The CMSIS provides thread-safe code that gives atomic access to the Interrupt Priority Registers. For more information see the description of the NVIC\_SetPriority function in ["NVIC programming hints" on page 163](#). Table 10-28 shows how the interrupts, or IRQ numbers, map onto the interrupt registers and corresponding CMSIS variables that have one bit per interrupt.

**Table 10-28.** Mapping of interrupts to the interrupt variables

Interrupts	CMSIS array elements <sup>(1)</sup>				
	Set-enable	Clear-enable	Set-pending	Clear-pending	Active Bit
0-32	ISER[0]	ICER[0]	ISPR[0]	ICPR[0]	IABR[0]

1. Each array element corresponds to a single NVIC register, for example the element ICER[0] corresponds to the ICER0 register.

### 10.20.2 Interrupt Set-enable Registers

The ISER0 register enables interrupts, and show which interrupts are enabled. See:

- the register summary in [Table 10-27 on page 151](#) for the register attributes
- [Table 10-28 on page 152](#) for which interrupts are controlled by each register.

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
SETENA bits							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
SETENA bits							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
SETENA bits							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SETENA bits							

- **SETENA**

Interrupt set-enable bits.

Write:

0 = no effect

1 = enable interrupt.

Read:

0 = interrupt disabled

1 = interrupt enabled.

If a pending interrupt is enabled, the NVIC activates the interrupt based on its priority. If an interrupt is not enabled, asserting its interrupt signal changes the interrupt state to pending, but the NVIC never activates the interrupt, regardless of its priority.

### 10.20.3 Interrupt Clear-enable Registers

The ICER0 register disables interrupts, and shows which interrupts are enabled. See:

- the register summary in [Table 10-27 on page 151](#) for the register attributes
- [Table 10-28 on page 152](#) for which interrupts are controlled by each register

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
CLRENA							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
CLRENA							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CLRENA							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CLRENA							

- **CLRENA**

Interrupt clear-enable bits.

Write:

0 = no effect

1 = disable interrupt.

Read:

0 = interrupt disabled

1 = interrupt enabled.

#### 10.20.4 Interrupt Set-pending Registers

The ISPR0 register forces interrupts into the pending state, and shows which interrupts are pending. See:

- the register summary in [Table 10-27 on page 151](#) for the register attributes
- [Table 10-28 on page 152](#) for which interrupts are controlled by each register.

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
SETPEND							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
SETPEND							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
SETPEND							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SETPEND							

- **SETPEND**

Interrupt set-pending bits.

Write:

0 = no effect.

1 = changes interrupt state to pending.

Read:

0 = interrupt is not pending.

1 = interrupt is pending.

Writing 1 to the ISPR bit corresponding to:

- an interrupt that is pending has no effect
- a disabled interrupt sets the state of that interrupt to pending

### 10.20.5 Interrupt Clear-pending Registers

The ICPR0 register removes the pending state from interrupts, and show which interrupts are pending. See:

- the register summary in [Table 10-27 on page 151](#) for the register attributes
- [Table 10-28 on page 152](#) for which interrupts are controlled by each register.

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
CLRPEND							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
CLRPEND							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CLRPEND							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CLRPEND							

- **CLRPEND**

Interrupt clear-pending bits.

Write:

0 = no effect.

1 = removes pending state an interrupt.

Read:

0 = interrupt is not pending.

1 = interrupt is pending.

Writing 1 to an ICPR bit does not affect the active state of the corresponding interrupt.

### 10.20.6 Interrupt Active Bit Registers

The IABR0 register indicates which interrupts are active. See:

- the register summary in [Table 10-27 on page 151](#) for the register attributes
- [Table 10-28 on page 152](#) for which interrupts are controlled by each register.

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
ACTIVE							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
ACTIVE							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
ACTIVE							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ACTIVE							

- **ACTIVE**

Interrupt active flags:

0 = interrupt not active

1 = interrupt active.

A bit reads as one if the status of the corresponding interrupt is active or active and pending.

### 10.20.7 Interrupt Priority Registers

The IPR0-IPR8 registers provide a 4-bit priority field for each interrupt (See the “Peripheral Identifiers” section of the datasheet for more details). These registers are byte-accessible. See the register summary in [Table 10-27 on page 151](#) for their attributes. Each register holds four priority fields, that map up to four elements in the CMSIS interrupt priority array IP[0] to IP[32], as shown:

#### 10.20.7.1 IPRm

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
IP[4m+3]							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
IP[4m+2]							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
IP[4m+1]							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
IP[4m]							

#### 10.20.7.2 IPR4

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
IP[19]							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
IP[18]							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

#### 10.20.7.3 IPR3

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
IP[15]							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
IP[14]							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
IP[13]							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
IP[12]							

## 10.20.7.4 IPR2

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
IP[11]							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
IP[10]							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
IP[9]							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
IP[8]							

## 10.20.7.5 IPR1

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
IP[6]							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
IP[5]							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
IP[4]							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

## 10.20.7.6 IPR0

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
IP[3]							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
IP[2]							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
IP[1]							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
IP[0]							

- Priority, byte offset 3
- Priority, byte offset 2
- Priority, byte offset 1
- Priority, byte offset 0

Each priority field holds a priority value, 0-15. The lower the value, the greater the priority of the corresponding interrupt. The processor implements only bits[7:4] of each field, bits[3:0] read as zero and ignore writes.

See “[The CMSIS mapping of the Cortex-M3 NVIC registers](#)” on page 151 for more information about the IP[0] to IP[32] interrupt priority array, that provides the software view of the interrupt priorities.

Find the IPR number and byte offset for interrupt  $N$  as follows:

- the corresponding IPR number,  $M$ , is given by  $M = N \text{ DIV } 4$
- the byte offset of the required Priority field in this register is  $N \text{ MOD } 4$ , where:
  - byte offset 0 refers to register bits[7:0]
  - byte offset 1 refers to register bits[15:8]
  - byte offset 2 refers to register bits[23:16]
  - byte offset 3 refers to register bits[31:24].

### 10.20.8 Software Trigger Interrupt Register

Write to the STIR to generate a *Software Generated Interrupt* (SGI). See the register summary in [Table 10-27 on page 151](#) for the STIR attributes.

When the USERSETPEND bit in the SCR is set to 1, unprivileged software can access the STIR, see [“System Control Register” on page 173](#).

Only privileged software can enable unprivileged access to the STIR.

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							INTID
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
INTID							

- **INTID**

Interrupt ID of the required SGI, in the range 0-239. For example, a value of b000000011 specifies interrupt IRQ3.

## 10.20.9 Level-sensitive interrupts

The processor supports level-sensitive interrupts.

A level-sensitive interrupt is held asserted until the peripheral deasserts the interrupt signal. Typically this happens because the ISR accesses the peripheral, causing it to clear the interrupt request.

When the processor enters the ISR, it automatically removes the pending state from the interrupt, see “[Hardware and software control of interrupts](#)” . For a level-sensitive interrupt, if the signal is not deasserted before the processor returns from the ISR, the interrupt becomes pending again, and the processor must execute its ISR again. This means that the peripheral can hold the interrupt signal asserted until it no longer needs servicing.

### 10.20.9.1 *Hardware and software control of interrupts*

The Cortex-M3 latches all interrupts. A peripheral interrupt becomes pending for one of the following reasons:

- the NVIC detects that the interrupt signal is HIGH and the interrupt is not active
- the NVIC detects a rising edge on the interrupt signal
- software writes to the corresponding interrupt set-pending register bit, see “[Interrupt Set-pending Registers](#)” on page 155, or to the STIR to make an SGI pending, see “[Software Trigger Interrupt Register](#)” on page 161.

A pending interrupt remains pending until one of the following:

The processor enters the ISR for the interrupt. This changes the state of the interrupt from pending to active. Then:

- For a level-sensitive interrupt, when the processor returns from the ISR, the NVIC samples the interrupt signal. If the signal is asserted, the state of the interrupt changes to pending, which might cause the processor to immediately re-enter the ISR. Otherwise, the state of the interrupt changes to inactive.
- If the interrupt signal is not pulsed while the processor is in the ISR, when the processor returns from the ISR the state of the interrupt changes to inactive.
- Software writes to the corresponding interrupt clear-pending register bit.

For a level-sensitive interrupt, if the interrupt signal is still asserted, the state of the interrupt does not change. Otherwise, the state of the interrupt changes to inactive.

### 10.20.10 NVIC design hints and tips

Ensure software uses correctly aligned register accesses. The processor does not support unaligned accesses to NVIC registers. See the individual register descriptions for the supported access sizes.

A interrupt can enter pending state even it is disabled.

Before programming VTOR to relocate the vector table, ensure the vector table entries of the new vector table are setup for fault handlers and all enabled exception like interrupts. For more information see “[Vector Table Offset Register](#)” on page 170.

#### 10.20.10.1 NVIC programming hints

Software uses the CPSIE I and CPSID I instructions to enable and disable interrupts. The CMSIS provides the following intrinsic functions for these instructions:

```
void __disable_irq(void) // Disable Interrupts
void __enable_irq(void) // Enable Interrupts
```

In addition, the CMSIS provides a number of functions for NVIC control, including:

**Table 10-29.** CMSIS functions for NVIC control

CMSIS interrupt control function	Description
void NVIC_SetPriorityGrouping(uint32_t priority_grouping)	Set the priority grouping
void NVIC_EnableIRQ(IRQn_t IRQn)	Enable IRQn
void NVIC_DisableIRQ(IRQn_t IRQn)	Disable IRQn
uint32_t NVIC_GetPendingIRQ (IRQn_t IRQn)	Return true if IRQn is pending
void NVIC_SetPendingIRQ (IRQn_t IRQn)	Set IRQn pending
void NVIC_ClearPendingIRQ (IRQn_t IRQn)	Clear IRQn pending status
uint32_t NVIC_GetActive (IRQn_t IRQn)	Return the IRQ number of the active interrupt
void NVIC_SetPriority (IRQn_t IRQn, uint32_t priority)	Set priority for IRQn
uint32_t NVIC_GetPriority (IRQn_t IRQn)	Read priority of IRQn
void NVIC_SystemReset (void)	Reset the system

For more information about these functions see the CMSIS documentation.

## 10.21 System control block

The *System control block* (SCB) provides system implementation information, and system control. This includes configuration, control, and reporting of the system exceptions. The system control block registers are:

**Table 10-30.** Summary of the system control block registers

Address	Name	Type	Required privilege	Reset value	Description
0xE000E008	ACTLR	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Auxiliary Control Register” on page 165</a>
0xE000ED00	CPUID	RO	Privileged	0x412FC230	<a href="#">“CPUID Base Register” on page 166</a>
0xE000ED04	ICSR	RW <sup>(1)</sup>	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Interrupt Control and State Register” on page 167</a>
0xE000ED08	VTOR	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Vector Table Offset Register” on page 170</a>
0xE000ED0C	AIRCR	RW <sup>(1)</sup>	Privileged	0xFA050000	<a href="#">“Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register” on page 171</a>
0xE000ED10	SCR	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“System Control Register” on page 173</a>
0xE000ED14	CCR	RW	Privileged	0x00000200	<a href="#">“Configuration and Control Register” on page 174</a>
0xE000ED18	SHPR1	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“System Handler Priority Register 1” on page 177</a>
0xE000ED1C	SHPR2	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“System Handler Priority Register 2” on page 178</a>
0xE000ED20	SHPR3	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“System Handler Priority Register 3” on page 178</a>
0xE000ED24	SHCRS	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“System Handler Control and State Register” on page 179</a>
0xE000ED28	CFSR	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Configurable Fault Status Register” on page 181</a>
0xE000ED28	MMSR <sup>(2)</sup>	RW	Privileged	0x00	<a href="#">“Memory Management Fault Address Register” on page 188</a>
0xE000ED29	BFSR <sup>(2)</sup>	RW	Privileged	0x00	<a href="#">“Bus Fault Status Register” on page 183</a>
0xE000ED2A	UFSR <sup>(2)</sup>	RW	Privileged	0x0000	<a href="#">“Usage Fault Status Register” on page 185</a>
0xE000ED2C	HFSR	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“Hard Fault Status Register” on page 187</a>
0xE000ED34	MMAR	RW	Privileged	Unknown	<a href="#">“Memory Management Fault Address Register” on page 188</a>
0xE000ED38	BFAR	RW	Privileged	Unknown	<a href="#">“Bus Fault Address Register” on page 189</a>

Notes: 1. See the register description for more information.

2. A subregister of the CFSR.

### 10.21.1 The CMSIS mapping of the Cortex-M3 SCB registers

To improve software efficiency, the CMSIS simplifies the SCB register presentation. In the CMSIS, the byte array SHP[0] to SHP[12] corresponds to the registers SHPR1-SHPR3.

### 10.21.2 Auxiliary Control Register

The ACTLR provides disable bits for the following processor functions:

- IT folding
- write buffer use for accesses to the default memory map
- interruption of multi-cycle instructions.

See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for the ACTLR attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved				DISFOLD	DISDEFWBUF	DISMCYCINT	

- **DISFOLD**

When set to 1, disables IT folding. see [“About IT folding” on page 165](#) for more information.

- **DISDEFWBUF**

When set to 1, disables write buffer use during default memory map accesses. This causes all bus faults to be precise bus faults but decreases performance because any store to memory must complete before the processor can execute the next instruction.

This bit only affects write buffers implemented in the Cortex-M3 processor.

- **DISMCYCINT**

When set to 1, disables interruption of load multiple and store multiple instructions. This increases the interrupt latency of the processor because any LDM or STM must complete before the processor can stack the current state and enter the interrupt handler.

#### 10.21.2.1 About IT folding

In some situations, the processor can start executing the first instruction in an IT block while it is still executing the IT instruction. This behavior is called IT folding, and improves performance. However, IT folding can cause jitter in looping. If a task must avoid jitter, set the DISFOLD bit to 1 before executing the task, to disable IT folding.

### 10.21.3 CPUID Base Register

The CPUID register contains the processor part number, version, and implementation information. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Implementer							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Variant				Constant			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
PartNo							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PartNo				Revision			

- **Implementer**

Implementer code:

0x41 = ARM

- **Variant**

Variant number, the r value in the *rnpn* product revision identifier:

0x2 = r2p0

- **Constant**

Reads as 0xF

- **PartNo**

Part number of the processor:

0xC23 = Cortex-M3

- **Revision**

Revision number, the p value in the *rnpn* product revision identifier:

0x0 = r2p0

#### 10.21.4 Interrupt Control and State Register

The ICSR:

- provides:
  - set-pending and clear-pending bits for the PendSV and SysTick exceptions
- indicates:
  - the exception number of the exception being processed
  - whether there are preempted active exceptions
  - the exception number of the highest priority pending exception
  - whether any interrupts are pending.

See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#), and the Type descriptions in [Table 10-33 on page 191](#), for the ICSR attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved	Reserved	PENDSVSET	PENDSVCLR	PENDSTSET	PENDSTCLR	Reserved	Reserved
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved for Debug	ISR PENDING		VECTPENDING				
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
	VECTPENDING		RETTTOBASE		Reserved		VECTACTIVE
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		VECTACTIVE					

- **PENDSVSET**

RW

PendSV set-pending bit.

Write:

0 = no effect

1 = changes PendSV exception state to pending.

Read:

0 = PendSV exception is not pending

1 = PendSV exception is pending.

Writing 1 to this bit is the only way to set the PendSV exception state to pending.

- **PENDSVCLR**

WO

PendSV clear-pending bit.

Write:

0 = no effect

1 = removes the pending state from the PendSV exception.



- **PENDSTSET**

RW

SysTick exception set-pending bit.

Write:

0 = no effect

1 = changes SysTick exception state to pending.

Read:

0 = SysTick exception is not pending

1 = SysTick exception is pending.

- **PENDSTCLR**

WO

SysTick exception clear-pending bit.

Write:

0 = no effect

1 = removes the pending state from the SysTick exception.

This bit is WO. On a register read its value is Unknown.

- **Reserved for Debug use**

RO

This bit is reserved for Debug use and reads-as-zero when the processor is not in Debug.

- **ISRPENDING**

RO

Interrupt pending flag, excluding Faults:

0 = interrupt not pending

1 = interrupt pending.

- **VECTPENDING**

RO

Indicates the exception number of the highest priority pending enabled exception:

0 = no pending exceptions

Nonzero = the exception number of the highest priority pending enabled exception.

The value indicated by this field includes the effect of the BASEPRI and FAULTMASK registers, but not any effect of the PRIMASK register.

- **RETTOBASE**

RO

Indicates whether there are preempted active exceptions:

0 = there are preempted active exceptions to execute

1 = there are no active exceptions, or the currently-executing exception is the only active exception.

- **VECTACTIVE**

RO

Contains the active exception number:

0 = Thread mode

Nonzero = The exception number <sup>(1)</sup> of the currently active exception.

Subtract 16 from this value to obtain the IRQ number required to index into the Interrupt Clear-Enable, Set-Enable, Clear-Pending, Set-Pending, or Priority Registers, see “[Interrupt Program Status Register](#)” on page 48.

When you write to the ICSR, the effect is Unpredictable if you:

- write 1 to the PENDSVSET bit and write 1 to the PENDSVCLR bit
- write 1 to the PENDSTSET bit and write 1 to the PENDSTCLR bit.

Note: 1. This is the same value as IPSR bits [8:0] see “[Interrupt Program Status Register](#)” on page 48.

### 10.21.5 Vector Table Offset Register

The VTOR indicates the offset of the vector table base address from memory address 0x00000000. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for its attributes.

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved		TBLOFF					
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
		TBLOFF					
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
		TBLOFF					
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TBLOFF		Reserved					

- **TBLOFF**

Vector table base offset field. It contains bits[29:7] of the offset of the table base from the bottom of the memory map.

Bit[29] determines whether the vector table is in the code or SRAM memory region:

0 = code

1 = SRAM.

Bit[29] is sometimes called the TBLBASE bit.

When setting TBLOFF, you must align the offset to the number of exception entries in the vector table. The minimum alignment is 32 words, enough for up to 16 interrupts. For more interrupts, adjust the alignment by rounding up to the next power of two. For example, if you require 21 interrupts, the alignment must be on a 64-word boundary because the required table size is 37 words, and the next power of two is 64.

Table alignment requirements mean that bits[6:0] of the table offset are always zero.

### 10.21.6 Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register

The AIRCR provides priority grouping control for the exception model, endian status for data accesses, and reset control of the system. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) and [Table 10-33 on page 191](#) for its attributes.

To write to this register, you must write 0x05FA to the VECTKEY field, otherwise the processor ignores the write.

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
On Read: VECTKEYSTAT, On Write: VECTKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
On Read: VECTKEYSTAT, On Write: VECTKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
ENDIANESS	Reserved				PRIGROUP		
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved				SYSRESETREQ	VECTCLR-ACTIVE	VECTRESET	

- **VECTKEYSTAT**

Register Key:

Reads as 0xFA05

- **VECTKEY**

Register key:

On writes, write 0x5FA to VECTKEY, otherwise the write is ignored.

- **ENDIANESS**

RO

Data endianness bit:

0 = Little-endian

ENDIANESS is set from the **BIGEND** configuration signal during reset.

- **PRIGROUP**

R/W

Interrupt priority grouping field. This field determines the split of group priority from subpriority, see “[Binary point](#)” on page [172](#).

- **SYSRESETREQ**

WO

System reset request:

0 = no effect

1 = asserts a proc\_reset\_signal.

This is intended to force a large system reset of all major components except for debug.

This bit reads as 0.



- **VECTCLRACTIVE**

WO

Reserved for Debug use. This bit reads as 0. When writing to the register you must write 0 to this bit, otherwise behavior is Unpredictable.

- **VECTRESET**

WO

Reserved for Debug use. This bit reads as 0. When writing to the register you must write 0 to this bit, otherwise behavior is Unpredictable.

#### 10.21.6.1 *Binary point*

The PRIGROUP field indicates the position of the binary point that splits the PRI<sub>n</sub> fields in the Interrupt Priority Registers into separate *group priority* and *subpriority* fields. [Table 10-31](#) shows how the PRIGROUP value controls this split.

**Table 10-31.** Priority grouping

PRIGROUP	Interrupt priority level value, PRI <sub>n</sub> [7:0]			Number of	
	Binary point <sup>(1)</sup>	Group priority bits	Subpriority bits	Group priorities	Subpriorities
b011	bxxxx.0000	[7:4]	None	16	1
b100	bxxx.y0000	[7:5]	[4]	8	2
b101	bxx.yy0000	[7:6]	[5:4]	4	4
b110	bx.yyy0000	[7]	[6:4]	2	8
b111	b.yyyy0000	None	[7:4]	1	16

1. PRI<sub>n</sub>[7:0] field showing the binary point. x denotes a group priority field bit, and y denotes a subpriority field bit.

Determining preemption of an exception uses only the group priority field, see “[Interrupt priority grouping](#)” on page 68.

### 10.21.7 System Control Register

The SCR controls features of entry to and exit from low power state. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved		SEVONPEND		Reserved		SLEEPDEEP	
Reserved		SLEEPONEXIT		Reserved		Reserved	

- **SEVONPEND**

Send Event on Pending bit:

0 = only enabled interrupts or events can wakeup the processor, disabled interrupts are excluded

1 = enabled events and all interrupts, including disabled interrupts, can wakeup the processor.

When an event or interrupt enters pending state, the event signal wakes up the processor from WFE. If the processor is not waiting for an event, the event is registered and affects the next WFE.

The processor also wakes up on execution of an SEV instruction or an external event.

- **SLEEPDEEP**

Controls whether the processor uses sleep or deep sleep as its low power mode:

0 = sleep

1 = deep sleep.

- **SLEEPONEXIT**

Indicates sleep-on-exit when returning from Handler mode to Thread mode:

0 = do not sleep when returning to Thread mode.

1 = enter sleep, or deep sleep, on return from an ISR.

Setting this bit to 1 enables an interrupt driven application to avoid returning to an empty main application.

### 10.21.8 Configuration and Control Register

The CCR controls entry to Thread mode and enables:

- the handlers for hard fault and faults escalated by FAULTMASK to ignore bus faults
- trapping of divide by zero and unaligned accesses
- access to the STIR by unprivileged software, see “[Software Trigger Interrupt Register](#)” on [page 161](#).

See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for the CCR attributes.

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved						STKALIGN	BFHFNMIGN
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved		DIV_0_TRP	UNALIGN_T RP	Reserved		USERSETM PEND	NONBASET HRDENA

- STKALIGN**

Indicates stack alignment on exception entry:

0 = 4-byte aligned

1 = 8-byte aligned.

On exception entry, the processor uses bit[9] of the stacked PSR to indicate the stack alignment. On return from the exception it uses this stacked bit to restore the correct stack alignment.

- BFHFNMIGN**

Enables handlers with priority -1 or -2 to ignore data bus faults caused by load and store instructions. This applies to the hard fault and FAULTMASK escalated handlers:

0 = data bus faults caused by load and store instructions cause a lock-up

1 = handlers running at priority -1 and -2 ignore data bus faults caused by load and store instructions.

Set this bit to 1 only when the handler and its data are in absolutely safe memory. The normal use of this bit is to probe system devices and bridges to detect control path problems and fix them.

- DIV\_0\_TRP**

Enables faulting or halting when the processor executes an SDIV or UDIV instruction with a divisor of 0:

0 = do not trap divide by 0

1 = trap divide by 0.

When this bit is set to 0, a divide by zero returns a quotient of 0.

- UNALIGN\_TRP**

Enables unaligned access traps:

0 = do not trap unaligned halfword and word accesses

1 = trap unaligned halfword and word accesses.

If this bit is set to 1, an unaligned access generates a usage fault.

Unaligned LDM, STM, LDRD, and STRD instructions always fault irrespective of whether UNALIGN\_TRP is set to 1.

- **USERSETMPEND**

Enables unprivileged software access to the STIR, see “[Software Trigger Interrupt Register](#)” on page 161:

0 = disable

1 = enable.

- **NONEBASETHRDENA**

Indicates how the processor enters Thread mode:

0 = processor can enter Thread mode only when no exception is active.

1 = processor can enter Thread mode from any level under the control of an EXC\_RETURN value, see “[Exception return](#)” on page 70.

### 10.21.9 System Handler Priority Registers

The SHPR1-SHPR3 registers set the priority level, 0 to 15 of the exception handlers that have configurable priority.

SHPR1-SHPR3 are byte accessible. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for their attributes.

The system fault handlers and the priority field and register for each handler are:

**Table 10-32.** System fault handler priority fields

Handler	Field	Register description
Memory management fault	PRI_4	<a href="#">"System Handler Priority Register 1" on page 177</a>
Bus fault	PRI_5	
Usage fault	PRI_6	
SVCALL	PRI_11	<a href="#">"System Handler Priority Register 2" on page 178</a>
PendSV	PRI_14	<a href="#">"System Handler Priority Register 3" on page 178</a>
SysTick	PRI_15	

Each PRI\_N field is 8 bits wide, but the processor implements only bits[7:4] of each field, and bits[3:0] read as zero and ignore writes.

#### 10.21.9.1 System Handler Priority Register 1

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
PRI_7: Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
PRI_6							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
PRI_5							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PRI_4							

- **PRI\_7**

Reserved

- **PRI\_6**

Priority of system handler 6, usage fault

- **PRI\_5**

Priority of system handler 5, bus fault

- **PRI\_4**

Priority of system handler 4, memory management fault

#### 10.21.9.2 System Handler Priority Register 2

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
PRI_11							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved							

- **PRI\_11**

Priority of system handler 11, SVCall

#### 10.21.9.3 System Handler Priority Register 3

The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
PRI_15							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
PRI_14							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved							

- **PRI\_15**

Priority of system handler 15, SysTick exception

- **PRI\_14**

Priority of system handler 14, PendSV

### 10.21.10 System Handler Control and State Register

The SHCSR enables the system handlers, and indicates:

- the pending status of the bus fault, memory management fault, and SVC exceptions
- the active status of the system handlers.

See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for the SHCSR attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
SVCALLPENDED	BUSFAULTPENDED	MEMFAULTPENDED	USGFAULTPENDED	SYSTICKACT	PENDSVACT	Reserved	MONITORACT
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SVCALLVACT	Reserved			USGFAULTACT	Reserved	BUSFAULTACT	MEMFAULTACT

#### • USGFAULTENA

Usage fault enable bit, set to 1 to enable <sup>(1)</sup>

#### • BUSFAULTENA

Bus fault enable bit, set to 1 to enable <sup>(3)</sup>

#### • MEMFAULTENA

Memory management fault enable bit, set to 1 to enable <sup>(3)</sup>

#### • SVCALLPENDED

SVC call pending bit, reads as 1 if exception is pending <sup>(2)</sup>

#### • BUSFAULTPENDED

Bus fault exception pending bit, reads as 1 if exception is pending <sup>(2)</sup>

#### • MEMFAULTPENDED

Memory management fault exception pending bit, reads as 1 if exception is pending <sup>(2)</sup>

#### • USGFAULTPENDED

Usage fault exception pending bit, reads as 1 if exception is pending <sup>(2)</sup>

#### • SYSTICKACT

SysTick exception active bit, reads as 1 if exception is active <sup>(3)</sup>

#### • PENDSVACT

PendSV exception active bit, reads as 1 if exception is active

1. Enable bits, set to 1 to enable the exception, or set to 0 to disable the exception.
2. Pending bits, read as 1 if the exception is pending, or as 0 if it is not pending. You can write to these bits to change the pending status of the exceptions.
3. Active bits, read as 1 if the exception is active, or as 0 if it is not active. You can write to these bits to change the active status of the exceptions, but see the Caution in this section.



- **MONITORACT**

Debug monitor active bit, reads as 1 if Debug monitor is active

- **SVCALLACT**

SVC call active bit, reads as 1 if SVC call is active

- **USGFAULTACT**

Usage fault exception active bit, reads as 1 if exception is active

- **BUSFAULTACT**

Bus fault exception active bit, reads as 1 if exception is active

- **MEMFAULTACT**

Memory management fault exception active bit, reads as 1 if exception is active

If you disable a system handler and the corresponding fault occurs, the processor treats the fault as a hard fault.

You can write to this register to change the pending or active status of system exceptions. An OS kernel can write to the active bits to perform a context switch that changes the current exception type.

- Software that changes the value of an active bit in this register without correct adjustment to the stacked content can cause the processor to generate a fault exception. Ensure software that writes to this register retains and subsequently restores the current active status.
- After you have enabled the system handlers, if you have to change the value of a bit in this register you must use a read-modify-write procedure to ensure that you change only the required bit.

### 10.21.11 Configurable Fault Status Register

The CFSR indicates the cause of a memory management fault, bus fault, or usage fault. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Usage Fault Status Register: UFSR							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Usage Fault Status Register: UFSR							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Bus Fault Status Register: BCSR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Memory Management Fault Status Register: MMFSR							

The following subsections describe the subregisters that make up the CFSR:

- [“Memory Management Fault Status Register” on page 182](#)
- [“Bus Fault Status Register” on page 183](#)
- [“Usage Fault Status Register” on page 185.](#)

The CFSR is byte accessible. You can access the CFSR or its subregisters as follows:

- access the complete CFSR with a word access to 0xE000ED28
- access the MMFSR with a byte access to 0xE000ED28
- access the MMFSR and BCSR with a halfword access to 0xE000ED28
- access the BCSR with a byte access to 0xE000ED29
- access the UFSR with a halfword access to 0xE000ED2A.

#### 10.21.11.1 Memory Management Fault Status Register

The flags in the MMFSR indicate the cause of memory access faults. The bit assignments are:

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
MMARVALID	Reserved		MSTKERR	MUNSTKERR	Reserved	DACCVIOL	IACCVIOL

- **MMARVALID**

*Memory Management Fault Address Register (MMAR) valid flag:*

0 = value in MMAR is not a valid fault address

1 = MMAR holds a valid fault address.

If a memory management fault occurs and is escalated to a hard fault because of priority, the hard fault handler must set this bit to 0. This prevents problems on return to a stacked active memory management fault handler whose MMAR value has been overwritten.

- **MSTKERR**

*Memory manager fault on stacking for exception entry:*

0 = no stacking fault

1 = stacking for an exception entry has caused one or more access violations.

When this bit is 1, the SP is still adjusted but the values in the context area on the stack might be incorrect. The processor has not written a fault address to the MMAR.

- **MUNSTKERR**

*Memory manager fault on unstacking for a return from exception:*

0 = no unstacking fault

1 = unstack for an exception return has caused one or more access violations.

This fault is chained to the handler. This means that when this bit is 1, the original return stack is still present. The processor has not adjusted the SP from the failing return, and has not performed a new save. The processor has not written a fault address to the MMAR.

- **DACCVIOL**

*Data access violation flag:*

0 = no data access violation fault

1 = the processor attempted a load or store at a location that does not permit the operation.

When this bit is 1, the PC value stacked for the exception return points to the faulting instruction. The processor has loaded the MMAR with the address of the attempted access.

- **IACCVIOL**

*Instruction access violation flag:*

0 = no instruction access violation fault

1 = the processor attempted an instruction fetch from a location that does not permit execution.

When this bit is 1, the PC value stacked for the exception return points to the faulting instruction. The processor has not written a fault address to the MMAR.

### 10.21.11.2 Bus Fault Status Register

The flags in the BCSR indicate the cause of a bus access fault. The bit assignments are:

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
BFRVALID	Reserved		STKERR	UNSTKERR	IMPRECISERR	PRECISERR	IBUSERR

- **BFRVALID**

*Bus Fault Address Register (BFAR) valid flag:*

0 = value in BFAR is not a valid fault address

1 = BFAR holds a valid fault address.

The processor sets this bit to 1 after a bus fault where the address is known. Other faults can set this bit to 0, such as a memory management fault occurring later.

If a bus fault occurs and is escalated to a hard fault because of priority, the hard fault handler must set this bit to 0. This prevents problems if returning to a stacked active bus fault handler whose BFAR value has been overwritten.

- **STKERR**

*Bus fault on stacking for exception entry:*

0 = no stacking fault

1 = stacking for an exception entry has caused one or more bus faults.

When the processor sets this bit to 1, the SP is still adjusted but the values in the context area on the stack might be incorrect. The processor does not write a fault address to the BFAR.

- **UNSTKERR**

*Bus fault on unstacking for a return from exception:*

0 = no unstacking fault

1 = unstack for an exception return has caused one or more bus faults.

This fault is chained to the handler. This means that when the processor sets this bit to 1, the original return stack is still present. The processor does not adjust the SP from the failing return, does not perform a new save, and does not write a fault address to the BFAR.

- **IMPRECISERR**

*Imprecise data bus error:*

0 = no imprecise data bus error

1 = a data bus error has occurred, but the return address in the stack frame is not related to the instruction that caused the error.

When the processor sets this bit to 1, it does not write a fault address to the BFAR.

This is an asynchronous fault. Therefore, if it is detected when the priority of the current process is higher than the bus fault priority, the bus fault becomes pending and becomes active only when the processor returns from all higher priority processes. If a precise fault occurs before the processor enters the handler for the imprecise bus fault, the handler detects both IMPRECISERR set to 1 and one of the precise fault status bits set to 1.

- **PRECISERR**

Precise data bus error:

0 = no precise data bus error

1 = a data bus error has occurred, and the PC value stacked for the exception return points to the instruction that caused the fault.

When the processor sets this bit is 1, it writes the faulting address to the BFAR.

- **IBUSERR**

Instruction bus error:

0 = no instruction bus error

1 = instruction bus error.

The processor detects the instruction bus error on prefetching an instruction, but it sets the IBUSERR flag to 1 only if it attempts to issue the faulting instruction.

When the processor sets this bit is 1, it does not write a fault address to the BFAR.

### 10.21.11.3 Usage Fault Status Register

The UFSR indicates the cause of a usage fault. The bit assignments are:

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved						DIVBYZERO	UNALIGNED
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved						NOCP	INVPC
INVSTATE						UNDEFINSTR	

- **DIVBYZERO**

Divide by zero usage fault:

0 = no divide by zero fault, or divide by zero trapping not enabled

1 = the processor has executed an SDIV or UDIV instruction with a divisor of 0.

When the processor sets this bit to 1, the PC value stacked for the exception return points to the instruction that performed the divide by zero.

Enable trapping of divide by zero by setting the DIV\_0\_TRP bit in the CCR to 1, see “[Configuration and Control Register](#)” on page 174.

- **UNALIGNED**

Unaligned access usage fault:

0 = no unaligned access fault, or unaligned access trapping not enabled

1 = the processor has made an unaligned memory access.

Enable trapping of unaligned accesses by setting the UNALIGN\_TRP bit in the CCR to 1, see “[Configuration and Control Register](#)” on page 174.

Unaligned LDM, STM, LDRD, and STRD instructions always fault irrespective of the setting of UNALIGN\_TRP.

- **NOCP**

No coprocessor usage fault. The processor does not support coprocessor instructions:

0 = no usage fault caused by attempting to access a coprocessor

1 = the processor has attempted to access a coprocessor.

- **INVPC**

Invalid PC load usage fault, caused by an invalid PC load by EXC\_RETURN:

0 = no invalid PC load usage fault

1 = the processor has attempted an illegal load of EXC\_RETURN to the PC, as a result of an invalid context, or an invalid EXC\_RETURN value.

When this bit is set to 1, the PC value stacked for the exception return points to the instruction that tried to perform the illegal load of the PC.

- **INVSTATE**

Invalid state usage fault:

0 = no invalid state usage fault

1 = the processor has attempted to execute an instruction that makes illegal use of the EPSR.



When this bit is set to 1, the PC value stacked for the exception return points to the instruction that attempted the illegal use of the EPSR.

This bit is not set to 1 if an undefined instruction uses the EPSR.

- **UNDEFINSTR**

Undefined instruction usage fault:

0 = no undefined instruction usage fault

1 = the processor has attempted to execute an undefined instruction.

When this bit is set to 1, the PC value stacked for the exception return points to the undefined instruction.

An undefined instruction is an instruction that the processor cannot decode.

The UFSR bits are sticky. This means as one or more fault occurs, the associated bits are set to 1. A bit that is set to 1 is cleared to 0 only by writing 1 to that bit, or by a reset.

### 10.21.12 Hard Fault Status Register

The HFSR gives information about events that activate the hard fault handler. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for its attributes.

This register is read, write to clear. This means that bits in the register read normally, but writing 1 to any bit clears that bit to 0. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
DEBUGEV	FORCED			Reserved			
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
				Reserved			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
				Reserved			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				Reserved		VECTTBL	Reserved

- **DEBUGEV**

Reserved for Debug use. When writing to the register you must write 0 to this bit, otherwise behavior is Unpredictable.

- **FORCED**

Indicates a forced hard fault, generated by escalation of a fault with configurable priority that cannot be handles, either because of priority or because it is disabled:

0 = no forced hard fault

1 = forced hard fault.

When this bit is set to 1, the hard fault handler must read the other fault status registers to find the cause of the fault.

- **VECTTBL**

Indicates a bus fault on a vector table read during exception processing:

0 = no bus fault on vector table read

1 = bus fault on vector table read.

This error is always handled by the hard fault handler.

When this bit is set to 1, the PC value stacked for the exception return points to the instruction that was preempted by the exception.

The HFSR bits are sticky. This means as one or more fault occurs, the associated bits are set to 1. A bit that is set to 1 is cleared to 0 only by writing 1 to that bit, or by a reset.



### 10.21.13 Memory Management Fault Address Register

The MMFAR contains the address of the location that generated a memory management fault. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
ADDRESS							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
ADDRESS							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
ADDRESS							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ADDRESS							

- **ADDRESS**

When the MMARVALID bit of the MMFSR is set to 1, this field holds the address of the location that generated the memory management fault.

When an unaligned access faults, the address is the actual address that faulted. Because a single read or write instruction can be split into multiple aligned accesses, the fault address can be any address in the range of the requested access size.

Flags in the MMFSR indicate the cause of the fault, and whether the value in the MMFAR is valid. See [“Memory Management Fault Status Register” on page 182](#).

#### 10.21.14 Bus Fault Address Register

The BFAR contains the address of the location that generated a bus fault. See the register summary in [Table 10-30 on page 164](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
ADDRESS							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
ADDRESS							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
ADDRESS							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ADDRESS							

- **ADDRESS**

When the BFARVALID bit of the BFSR is set to 1, this field holds the address of the location that generated the bus fault.

When an unaligned access faults the address in the BFAR is the one requested by the instruction, even if it is not the address of the fault.

Flags in the BFSR indicate the cause of the fault, and whether the value in the BFAR is valid. See “[Bus Fault Status Register](#)” on page 183.

#### 10.21.15 System control block design hints and tips

Ensure software uses aligned accesses of the correct size to access the system control block registers:

- except for the CFSR and SHPR1-SHPR3, it must use aligned word accesses
- for the CFSR and SHPR1-SHPR3 it can use byte or aligned halfword or word accesses.

The processor does not support unaligned accesses to system control block registers.

In a fault handler, to determine the true faulting address:

- Read and save the MMFAR or BFAR value.
- Read the MMARVALID bit in the MMFSR, or the BFARVALID bit in the BFSR. The MMFAR or BFAR address is valid only if this bit is 1.

Software must follow this sequence because another higher priority exception might change the MMFAR or BFAR value. For example, if a higher priority handler preempts the current fault handler, the other fault might change the MMFAR or BFAR value.

## 10.22 System timer, SysTick

The processor has a 24-bit system timer, SysTick, that counts down from the reload value to zero, reloads (wraps to) the value in the LOAD register on the next clock edge, then counts down on subsequent clocks.

When the processor is halted for debugging the counter does not decrement.

The system timer registers are:

**Table 10-33.** System timer registers summary

Address	Name	Type	Required privilege	Reset value	Description
0xE000E010	CTRL	RW	Privileged	0x00000004	<a href="#">“SysTick Control and Status Register” on page 192</a>
0xE000E014	LOAD	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“SysTick Reload Value Register” on page 193</a>
0xE000E018	VAL	RW	Privileged	0x00000000	<a href="#">“SysTick Current Value Register” on page 194</a>
0xE000E01C	CALIB	RO	Privileged	0x0002904 <sup>(1)</sup>	<a href="#">“SysTick Calibration Value Register” on page 195</a>

- SysTick calibration value.

### 10.22.1 SysTick Control and Status Register

The SysTick CTRL register enables the SysTick features. See the register summary in [Table 10-33 on page 191](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Reserved							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Reserved							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved				CLKSOURCE		TICKINT	ENABLE

- **COUNTFLAG**

Returns 1 if timer counted to 0 since last time this was read.

- **CLKSOURCE**

Indicates the clock source:

0 = MCK/8

1 = MCK

- **TICKINT**

Enables SysTick exception request:

0 = counting down to zero does not assert the SysTick exception request

1 = counting down to zero asserts the SysTick exception request.

Software can use COUNTFLAG to determine if SysTick has ever counted to zero.

- **ENABLE**

Enables the counter:

0 = counter disabled

1 = counter enabled.

When ENABLE is set to 1, the counter loads the RELOAD value from the LOAD register and then counts down. On reaching 0, it sets the COUNTFLAG to 1 and optionally asserts the SysTick depending on the value of TICKINT. It then loads the RELOAD value again, and begins counting.

### 10.22.2 SysTick Reload Value Register

The LOAD register specifies the start value to load into the VAL register. See the register summary in [Table 10-33 on page 191](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
RELOAD							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RELOAD							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-RELOAD							

- **RELOAD**

Value to load into the VAL register when the counter is enabled and when it reaches 0, see [“Calculating the RELOAD value”](#).

#### 10.22.2.1 *Calculating the RELOAD value*

The RELOAD value can be any value in the range 0x00000001-0x00FFFFFF. A start value of 0 is possible, but has no effect because the SysTick exception request and COUNTFLAG are activated when counting from 1 to 0.

The RELOAD value is calculated according to its use:

- To generate a multi-shot timer with a period of N processor clock cycles, use a RELOAD value of N-1. For example, if the SysTick interrupt is required every 100 clock pulses, set RELOAD to 99.
- To deliver a single SysTick interrupt after a delay of N processor clock cycles, use a RELOAD of value N. For example, if a SysTick interrupt is required after 400 clock pulses, set RELOAD to 400.

### 10.22.3 SysTick Current Value Register

The VAL register contains the current value of the SysTick counter. See the register summary in [Table 10-33 on page 191](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Reserved							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
CURRENT							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CURRENT							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CURRENT							

- **CURRENT**

Reads return the current value of the SysTick counter.

A write of any value clears the field to 0, and also clears the SysTick CTRL.COUNTFLAG bit to 0.

#### 10.22.4 SysTick Calibration Value Register

The CALIB register indicates the SysTick calibration properties. See the register summary in [Table 10-33 on page 191](#) for its attributes. The bit assignments are:

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
NOREF	SKEW			Reserved			
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
				TENMS			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
				TENMS			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				TENMS			

- **NOREF**

Reads as zero.

- **SKEW**

Reads as zero

- **TENMS**

Read as 0x0002904. The SysTick calibration value is fixed at 0x0002904 (10500), which allows the generation of a time base of 1 ms with SysTick clock at 6 MHz ( $48/8 = 6$  MHz)

#### 10.22.5 SysTick design hints and tips

The SysTick counter runs on the processor clock. If this clock signal is stopped for low power mode, the SysTick counter stops.

Ensure software uses aligned word accesses to access the SysTick registers.

## 10.23 Glossary

This glossary describes some of the terms used in technical documents from ARM.

### Abort

A mechanism that indicates to a processor that the value associated with a memory access is invalid. An abort can be caused by the external or internal memory system as a result of attempting to access invalid instruction or data memory.

### Aligned

A data item stored at an address that is divisible by the number of bytes that defines the data size is said to be aligned. Aligned words and halfwords have addresses that are divisible by four and two respectively. The terms word-aligned and halfword-aligned therefore stipulate addresses that are divisible by four and two respectively.

### Banked register

A register that has multiple physical copies, where the state of the processor determines which copy is used. The Stack Pointer, SP (R13) is a banked register.

### Base register

In instruction descriptions, a register specified by a load or store instruction that is used to hold the base value for the instruction's address calculation. Depending on the instruction and its addressing mode, an offset can be added to or subtracted from the base register value to form the address that is sent to memory.

*See also “Index register”*

[“Little-endian \(LE\)”](#) *See also “Little-endian memory” .Breakpoint*

A breakpoint is a mechanism provided by debuggers to identify an instruction at which program execution is to be halted. Breakpoints are inserted by the programmer to enable inspection of register contents, memory locations, variable values at fixed points in the program execution to test that the program is operating correctly. Breakpoints are removed after the program is successfully tested.

.

### Condition field

A four-bit field in an instruction that specifies a condition under which the instruction can execute.

### Conditional execution

If the condition code flags indicate that the corresponding condition is true when the instruction starts executing, it executes normally. Otherwise, the instruction does nothing.

### Context

The environment that each process operates in for a multitasking operating system. In ARM processors, this is limited to mean the physical address range that it can access in memory and the associated memory access permissions.

### Coprocessor

A processor that supplements the main processor. Cortex-M3 does not support any coprocessors.

**Debugger**

A debugging system that includes a program, used to detect, locate, and correct software faults, together with custom hardware that supports software debugging.

**Direct Memory Access (DMA)**

An operation that accesses main memory directly, without the processor performing any accesses to the data concerned.

**Doubleword**

A 64-bit data item. The contents are taken as being an unsigned integer unless otherwise stated.

**Doubleword-aligned**

A data item having a memory address that is divisible by eight.

**Endianness**

Byte ordering. The scheme that determines the order that successive bytes of a data word are stored in memory. An aspect of the system's memory mapping.

*See also “[Little-endian \(LE\)](#)”*

**Exception**

An event that interrupts program execution. When an exception occurs, the processor suspends the normal program flow and starts execution at the address indicated by the corresponding exception vector. The indicated address contains the first instruction of the handler for the exception.

An exception can be an interrupt request, a fault, or a software-generated system exception. Faults include attempting an invalid memory access, attempting to execute an instruction in an invalid processor state, and attempting to execute an undefined instruction.

**Exception service routine**

*See “[Interrupt handler](#)” .*

**Exception vector**

*See “[Interrupt vector](#)” .*

**Flat address mapping**

A system of organizing memory in which each physical address in the memory space is the same as the corresponding virtual address.

**Halfword**

A 16-bit data item.

**Illegal instruction**

An instruction that is architecturally Undefined.

**Implementation-defined**

The behavior is not architecturally defined, but is defined and documented by individual implementations.

**Implementation-specific**

The behavior is not architecturally defined, and does not have to be documented by individual implementations. Used when there are a number of implementation options available and the option chosen does not affect software compatibility.

#### Index register

In some load and store instruction descriptions, the value of this register is used as an offset to be added to or subtracted from the base register value to form the address that is sent to memory. Some addressing modes optionally enable the index register value to be shifted prior to the addition or subtraction.

*See also “[Base register](#)”*

#### Instruction cycle count

The number of cycles that an instruction occupies the Execute stage of the pipeline.

#### Interrupt handler

A program that control of the processor is passed to when an interrupt occurs.

#### Interrupt vector

One of a number of fixed addresses in low memory, or in high memory if high vectors are configured, that contains the first instruction of the corresponding interrupt handler.

#### Little-endian (LE)

Byte ordering scheme in which bytes of increasing significance in a data word are stored at increasing addresses in memory.

*See also ““[Little-endian \(LE\)](#)” See also “[Little-endian memory](#)” .[Breakpoint](#)” , “.[.](#)” , “[Endianness](#)” .*

#### Little-endian memory

##### Memory in which:

a byte or halfword at a word-aligned address is the least significant byte or halfword within the word at that address

a byte at a halfword-aligned address is the least significant byte within the halfword at that address.

.

#### Load/store architecture

A processor architecture where data-processing operations only operate on register contents, not directly on memory contents.

#### Prefetching

In pipelined processors, the process of fetching instructions from memory to fill up the pipeline before the preceding instructions have finished executing. Prefetching an instruction does not mean that the instruction has to be executed.

#### Read

Reads are defined as memory operations that have the semantics of a load. Reads include the Thumb instructions LDM, LDR, LDRSH, LDRH, LDRSB, LDRB, and POP.

**Region**

A partition of memory space.

**Reserved**

A field in a control register or instruction format is reserved if the field is to be defined by the implementation, or produces Unpredictable results if the contents of the field are not zero. These fields are reserved for use in future extensions of the architecture or are implementation-specific. All reserved bits not used by the implementation must be written as 0 and read as 0.

**Should Be One (SBO)**

Write as 1, or all 1s for bit fields, by software. Writing as 0 produces Unpredictable results.

**Should Be Zero (SBZ)**

Write as 0, or all 0s for bit fields, by software. Writing as 1 produces Unpredictable results.

**Should Be Zero or Preserved (SBZP)**

Write as 0, or all 0s for bit fields, by software, or preserved by writing the same value back that has been previously read from the same field on the same processor.

**Thread-safe**

In a multi-tasking environment, thread-safe functions use safeguard mechanisms when accessing shared resources, to ensure correct operation without the risk of shared access conflicts.

**Thumb instruction**

One or two halfwords that specify an operation for a processor to perform. Thumb instructions must be halfword-aligned.

**Unaligned**

A data item stored at an address that is not divisible by the number of bytes that defines the data size is said to be unaligned. For example, a word stored at an address that is not divisible by four.

**Undefined**

Indicates an instruction that generates an Undefined instruction exception.

**Unpredictable (UNP)**

You cannot rely on the behavior. Unpredictable behavior must not represent security holes. Unpredictable behavior must not halt or hang the processor, or any parts of the system.

**Warm reset**

Also known as a core reset. Initializes the majority of the processor excluding the debug controller and debug logic. This type of reset is useful if you are using the debugging features of a processor.

**Word**

A 32-bit data item.

**Write**

Writes are defined as operations that have the semantics of a store. Writes include the Thumb instructions STM, STR, STRH, STRB, and PUSH.





200

**SAM3N**



11011B-ATARM-21-Feb-12

## 11. Debug and Test Features

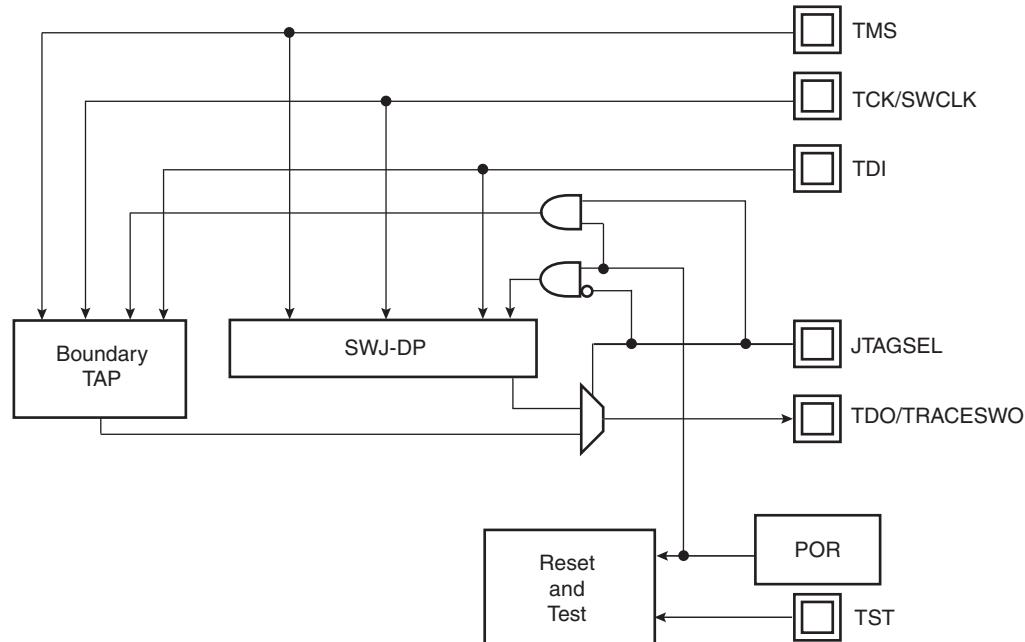
### 11.1 Description

The SAM3 Series Microcontrollers feature a number of complementary debug and test capabilities. The Serial Wire/JTAG Debug Port (SWJ-DP) combining a Serial Wire Debug Port (SW-DP) and JTAG Debug(JTAG-DP) port is used for standard debugging functions, such as downloading code and single-stepping through programs. It also embeds a serial wire trace.

### 11.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Debug access to all memory and registers in the system, including Cortex-M3 register bank when the core is running, halted, or held in reset.
- Serial Wire Debug Port (SW-DP) and Serial Wire JTAG Debug Port (SWJ-DP) debug access
- Flash Patch and Breakpoint (FPB) unit for implementing breakpoints and code patches
- Data Watchpoint and Trace (DWT) unit for implementing watchpoints, data tracing, and system profiling
- Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM) for support of printf style debugging
- IEEE1149.1 JTAG Boundary-can on All Digital Pins

**Figure 11-1.** Debug and Test Block Diagram

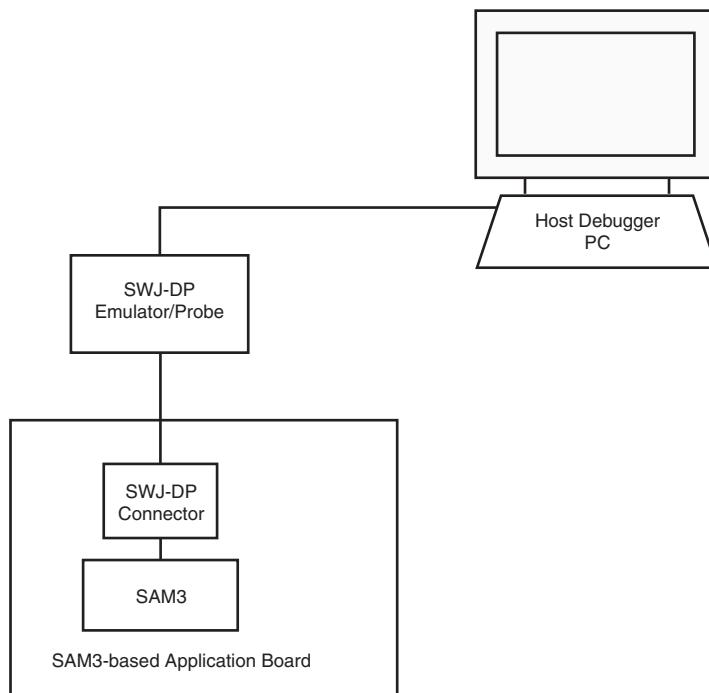


## 11.3 Application Examples

### 11.3.1 Debug Environment

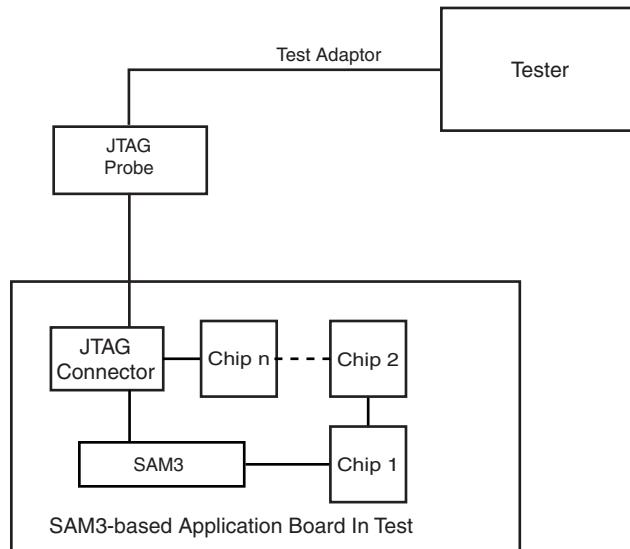
[Figure 11-2](#) shows a complete debug environment example. The SWJ-DP interface is used for standard debugging functions, such as downloading code and single-stepping through the program and viewing core and peripheral registers.

**Figure 11-2.** Application Debug Environment Example



### 11.3.2 Test Environment

[Figure 11-3](#) shows a test environment example (JTAG Boundary scan). Test vectors are sent and interpreted by the tester. In this example, the “board in test” is designed using a number of JTAG-compliant devices. These devices can be connected to form a single scan chain.

**Figure 11-3.** Application Test Environment Example

## 11.4 Debug and Test Pin Description

**Table 11-1.** Debug and Test Signal List

Signal Name	Function	Type	Active Level
<b>Reset/Test</b>			
NRST	Microcontroller Reset	Input/Output	Low
TST	Test Select	Input	
<b>SWD/JTAG</b>			
TCK/SWCLK	Test Clock/Serial Wire Clock	Input	
TDI	Test Data In	Input	
TDO/TRACESWO	Test Data Out/Trace Asynchronous Data Out	Output	(1)
TMS/SWDIO	Test Mode Select/Serial Wire Input/Output	Input	
JTAGSEL	JTAG Selection	Input	High

1.TDO pin is set in input mode when the Cortex-M3 Core is not in debug mode. Thus the internal pull-up corresponding to this PIO line must be enabled to avoid current consumption due to floating input.

## 11.5 Functional Description

### 11.5.1 Test Pin

One dedicated pin, TST, is used to define the device operating mode. When this pin is at low level during power-up, the device is in normal operating mode. When at high level, the device is in test mode or FFPI mode. The TST pin integrates a permanent pull-down resistor of about 15 kΩ so that it can be left unconnected for normal operation. Note that when setting the TST pin to low or high level at power up, it must remain in the same state during the duration of the whole operation.

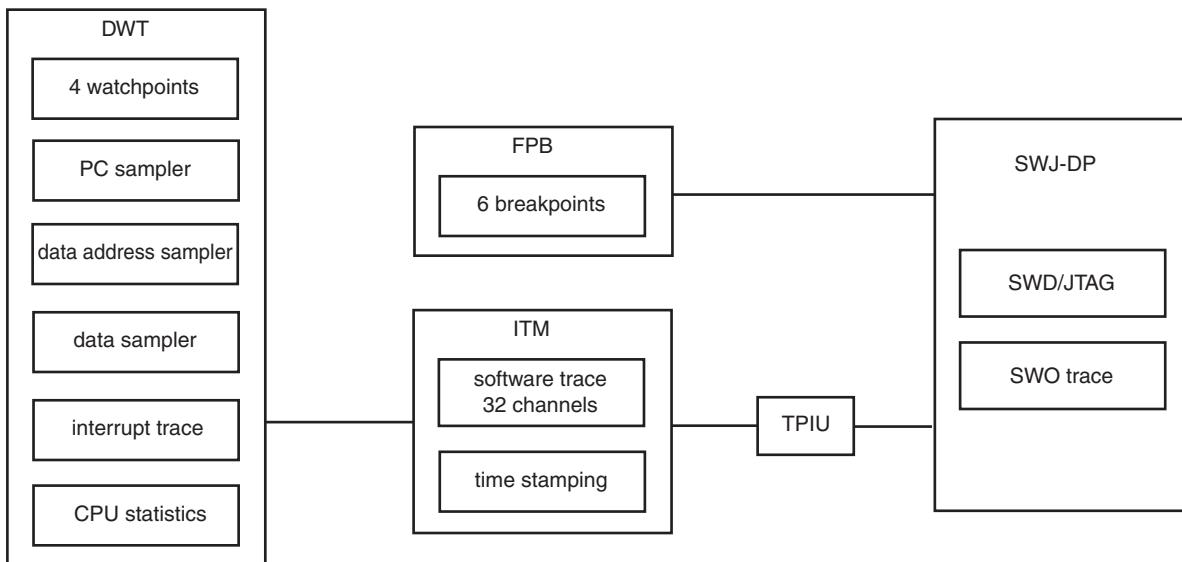
### 11.5.2 Debug Architecture

[Figure 11-4](#) shows the Debug Architecture used in the SAM3. The Cortex-M3 embeds four functional units for debug:

- SWJ-DP (Serial Wire/JTAG Debug Port)
- FPB (Flash Patch Breakpoint)
- DWT (Data Watchpoint and Trace)
- ITM (Instrumentation Trace Macrocell)
- TPIU (Trace Port Interface Unit)

The debug architecture information that follows is mainly dedicated to developers of SWJ-DP Emulators/Probes and debugging tool vendors for Cortex M3-based microcontrollers. For further details on SWJ-DP see the Cortex M3 technical reference manual.

**Figure 11-4.** Debug Architecture



### 11.5.3 Serial Wire/JTAG Debug Port (SWJ-DP)

The Cortex-M3 embeds a SWJ-DP Debug port which is the standard CoreSight™ debug port. It combines Serial Wire Debug Port (SW-DP), from 2 to 3 pins and JTAG debug Port(JTAG-DP), 5 pins.

By default, the JTAG Debug Port is active. If the host debugger wants to switch to the Serial Wire Debug Port, it must provide a dedicated JTAG sequence on TMS/SWDIO and TCK/SWCLK which disables JTAG-DP and enables SW-DP.

When the Serial Wire Debug Port is active, TDO/TRACESWO can be used for trace. The asynchronous TRACE output (TRACESWO) is multiplexed with TDO. So the asynchronous trace can only be used with SW-DP, not JTAG-DP.

**Table 11-2.** SWJ-DP Pin List

Pin Name	JTAG Port	Serial Wire Debug Port
TMS/SWDIO	TMS	SWDIO
TCK/SWCLK	TCK	SWCLK
TDI	TDI	-
TDO/TRACESWO	TDO	TRACESWO (optional: trace)

SW-DP or JTAG-DP mode is selected when JTAGSEL is low. It is not possible to switch directly between SWJ-DP and JTAG boundary scan operations. A chip reset must be performed after JTAGSEL is changed.

#### 11.5.3.1 SW-DP and JTAG-DP Selection Mechanism

Debug port selection mechanism is done by sending specific **SWDIOTMS** sequence. The JTAG-DP is selected by default after reset.

- Switch from JTAG-DP to SW-DP. The sequence is:
  - Send more than 50 **SWCLKTCK** cycles with **SWDIOTMS** = 1
  - Send the 16-bit sequence on **SWDIOTMS** = 0111100111100111 (0x79E7 MSB first)
  - Send more than 50 **SWCLKTCK** cycles with **SWDIOTMS** = 1
- Switch from SWD to JTAG. The sequence is:
  - Send more than 50 **SWCLKTCK** cycles with **SWDIOTMS** = 1
  - Send the 16-bit sequence on **SWDIOTMS** = 0011110011100111 (0x3CE7 MSB first)
  - Send more than 50 **SWCLKTCK** cycles with **SWDIOTMS** = 1

#### 11.5.4 FPB (Flash Patch Breakpoint)

The FPB:

- Implements hardware breakpoints
- Patches code and data from code space to system space.

The FPB unit contains:

- Two literal comparators for matching against literal loads from Code space, and remapping to a corresponding area in System space.
- Six instruction comparators for matching against instruction fetches from Code space and remapping to a corresponding area in System space.
- Alternatively, comparators can also be configured to generate a Breakpoint instruction to the processor core on a match.

#### 11.5.5 DWT (Data Watchpoint and Trace)

The DWT contains four comparators which can be configured to generate the following:

- PC sampling packets at set intervals
- PC or Data watchpoint packets



- Watchpoint event to halt core

The DWT contains counters for the items that follow:

- Clock cycle (CYCCNT)
- Folded instructions
- Load Store Unit (LSU) operations
- Sleep Cycles
- CPI (all instruction cycles except for the first cycle)
- Interrupt overhead

### 11.5.6 ITM (Instrumentation Trace Macrocell)

The ITM is an application driven trace source that supports printf style debugging to trace Operating System (OS) and application events, and emits diagnostic system information. The ITM emits trace information as packets which can be generated by three different sources with several priority levels:

- **Software trace:** Software can write directly to ITM stimulus registers. This can be done thanks to the “printf” function. For more information, refer to [Section 11.5.6.1 “How to Configure the ITM”](#).
- **Hardware trace:** The ITM emits packets generated by the DWT.
- **Time stamping:** Timestamps are emitted relative to packets. The ITM contains a 21-bit counter to generate the timestamp.

#### 11.5.6.1 How to Configure the ITM

The following example describes how to output trace data in asynchronous trace mode.

- Configure the TPIU for asynchronous trace mode (refer to [Section 11.5.6.3 “5.4.3. How to Configure the TPIU”](#))
- Enable the write accesses into the ITM registers by writing “0xC5ACCE55” into the Lock Access Register (Address: 0xE0000FB0)
- Write 0x00010015 into the Trace Control Register:
  - Enable ITM
  - Enable Synchronization packets
  - Enable SWO behavior
  - Fix the ATB ID to 1
- Write 0x1 into the Trace Enable Register:
  - Enable the Stimulus port 0
- Write 0x1 into the Trace Privilege Register:
  - Stimulus port 0 only accessed in privileged mode (Clearing a bit in this register will result in the corresponding stimulus port being accessible in user mode.)
- Write into the Stimulus port 0 register: TPIU (Trace Port Interface Unit)

The TPIU acts as a bridge between the on-chip trace data and the Instruction Trace Macrocell (ITM).

The TPIU formats and transmits trace data off-chip at frequencies asynchronous to the core.

### 11.5.6.2 Asynchronous Mode

The TPIU is configured in asynchronous mode, trace data are output using the single TRACESWO pin. The TRACESWO signal is multiplexed with the TDO signal of the JTAG Debug Port. As a consequence, asynchronous trace mode is only available when the Serial Wire Debug mode is selected since TDO signal is used in JTAG debug mode.

Two encoding formats are available for the single pin output:

- Manchester encoded stream. This is the reset value.
- NRZ\_based UART byte structure

### 11.5.6.3 5.4.3. How to Configure the TPIU

This example only concerns the asynchronous trace mode.

- Set the TRCENA bit to 1 into the Debug Exception and Monitor Register (0xE000EDFC) to enable the use of trace and debug blocks.
- Write 0x2 into the Selected Pin Protocol Register
  - Select the Serial Wire Output – NRZ
- Write 0x100 into the Formatter and Flush Control Register
- Set the suitable clock prescaler value into the Async Clock Prescaler Register to scale the baud rate of the asynchronous output (this can be done automatically by the debugging tool).

## 11.5.7 IEEE® 1149.1 JTAG Boundary Scan

IEEE 1149.1 JTAG Boundary Scan allows pin-level access independent of the device packaging technology.

IEEE 1149.1 JTAG Boundary Scan is enabled when TST, is tied to low while JTAG SEL is high during power-up and must be kept in this state during the whole boundary scan operation. The SAMPLE,EXTEST and BYPASS functions are implemented. In SWD/JTAG debug mode, the ARM processor responds with a non-JTAG chip ID that identifies the processor. This is not IEEE 1149.1 JTAG-compliant.

It is not possible to switch directly between JTAG Boundary Scan and SWJ Debug Port operations. A chip reset must be performed after JTAGSEL is changed. A Boundary-scan Descriptor Language (BSDL) file is provided on [Atmel's web site](#) site to set up the test.

### 11.5.7.1 JTAG Boundary-scan Register

The Boundary-scan Register (BSR) contains a number of bits which correspond to active pins and associated control signals.

Each SAM3 input/output pin corresponds to a 3-bit register in the BSR. The OUTPUT bit contains data that can be forced on the pad. The INPUT bit facilitates the observability of data applied to the pad. The CONTROL bit selects the direction of the pad.

For more information, please refer to BDSL files available for the SAM3 Series.

### 11.5.8 ID Code Register

Access: Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
VERSION				PART NUMBER			
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
PART NUMBER							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
PART NUMBER				MANUFACTURER IDENTITY			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
MANUFACTURER IDENTITY							

- **VERSION[31:28]: Product Version Number**

Set to 0x0.

- **PART NUMBER[27:12]: Product Part Number**

Chip Name	Chip ID
SAM3N	0x05B2E

- **MANUFACTURER IDENTITY[11:1]**

Set to 0x01F.

- **Bit[0] Required by IEEE Std. 1149.1.**

Set to 0x1.

Chip Name	JTAG ID Code
SAM3N	0x05B2E03F

## 12. Reset Controller (RSTC)

### 12.1 Description

The Reset Controller (RSTC), based on power-on reset cells, handles all the resets of the system without any external components. It reports which reset occurred last.

The Reset Controller also drives independently or simultaneously the external reset and the peripheral and processor resets.

### 12.2 Embedded Characteristics

The Reset Controller is based on a Power-on-Reset cell, and a Supply Monitor on VDDCORE.

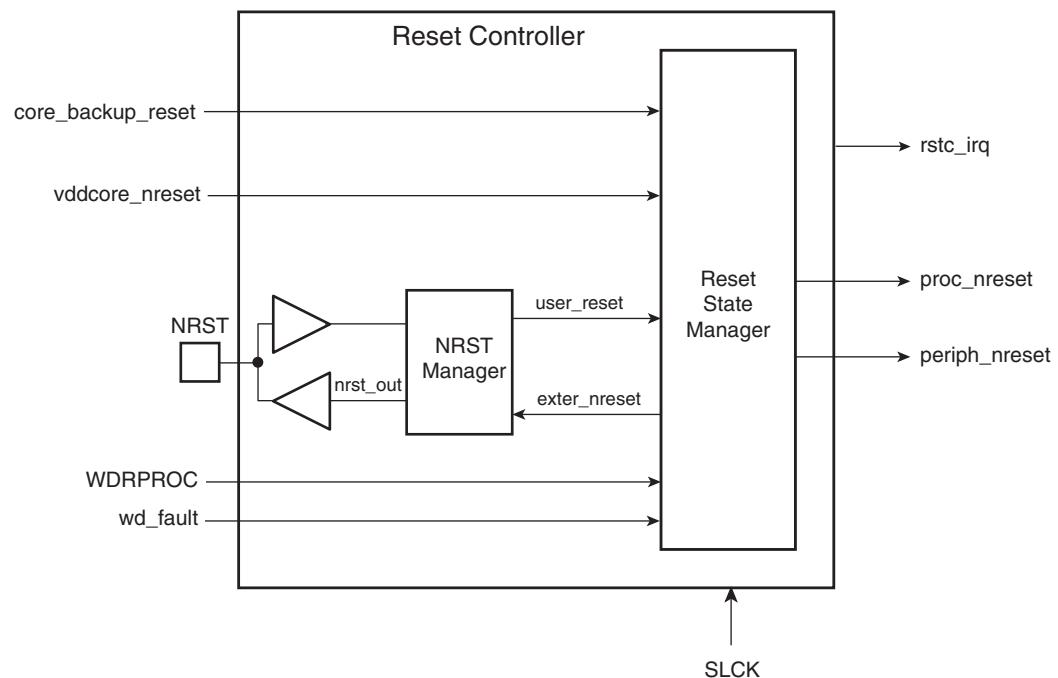
The Reset Controller is capable to return to the software the source of the last reset, either a general reset, a wake-up reset, a software reset, a user reset or a watchdog reset.

The Reset Controller controls the internal resets of the system and the NRST pin input/output. It is capable to shape a reset signal for the external devices, simplifying to a minimum connection of a push-button on the NRST pin to implement a manual reset.

The configuration of the Reset Controller is saved as supplied on VDDIO.

### 12.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 12-1.** Reset Controller Block Diagram



## 12.4 Functional Description

#### **12.4.1 Reset Controller Overview**

The Reset Controller is made up of an NRST Manager and a Reset State Manager. It runs at Slow Clock and generates the following reset signals:

- proc\_nreset: Processor reset line. It also resets the Watchdog Timer.
  - periph\_nreset: Affects the whole set of embedded peripherals.
  - nrst\_out: Drives the NRST pin.

These reset signals are asserted by the Reset Controller, either on external events or on software action. The Reset State Manager controls the generation of reset signals and provides a signal to the NRST Manager when an assertion of the NRST pin is required.

The NRST Manager shapes the NRST assertion during a programmable time, thus controlling external device resets.

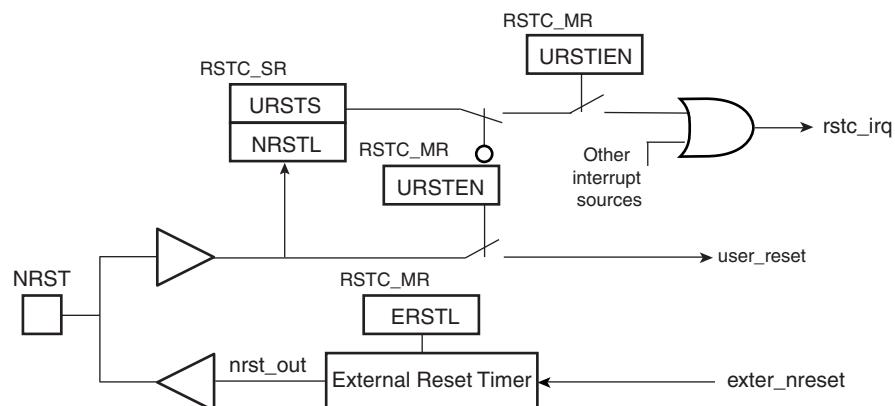
The Reset Controller Mode Register (RSTC\_MR), allowing the configuration of the Reset Controller, is powered with VDDIO, so that its configuration is saved as long as VDDIO is on.

#### **12.4.2 NRST Manager**

After power-up, NRST is an output during the ERSTL time period defined in the RSTC\_MR. When ERSTL has elapsed, the pin behaves as an input and all the system is held in reset if NRST is tied to GND by an external signal.

The NRST Manager samples the NRST input pin and drives this pin low when required by the Reset State Manager. [Figure 12-2](#) shows the block diagram of the NRST Manager.

**Figure 12-2.** NRST Manager



#### **12.4.2.1 NRST Signal or Interrupt**

The NRST Manager samples the NRST pin at Slow Clock speed. When the line is detected low, a User Reset is reported to the Reset State Manager.

However, the NRST Manager can be programmed to not trigger a reset when an assertion of NRST occurs. Writing the bit URSTEN at 0 in RSTC\_MR disables the User Reset trigger.

The level of the pin NRST can be read at any time in the bit NRSTL (NRST level) in RSTC\_SR. As soon as the pin NRST is asserted, the bit URSTS in RSTC\_SR is set. This bit clears only when RSTC\_SR is read.

The Reset Controller can also be programmed to generate an interrupt instead of generating a reset. To do so, the bit URSTIEN in RSTC\_MR must be written at 1.

#### 12.4.2.2 NRST External Reset Control

The Reset State Manager asserts the signal ext\_nreset to assert the NRST pin. When this occurs, the “nrst\_out” signal is driven low by the NRST Manager for a time programmed by the field ERSTL in RSTC\_MR. This assertion duration, named EXTERNAL\_RESET\_LENGTH, lasts  $2^{(ERSTL+1)}$  Slow Clock cycles. This gives the approximate duration of an assertion between 60  $\mu$ s and 2 seconds. Note that ERSTL at 0 defines a two-cycle duration for the NRST pulse.

This feature allows the Reset Controller to shape the NRST pin level, and thus to guarantee that the NRST line is driven low for a time compliant with potential external devices connected on the system reset.

As the ERSTL field is within RSTC\_MR register, which is backed-up, it can be used to shape the system power-up reset for devices requiring a longer startup time than the Slow Clock Oscillator.

#### 12.4.3 Brownout Manager

The Brownout manager is embedded within the Supply Controller, please refer to the product Supply Controller section for a detailed description.

#### 12.4.4 Reset States

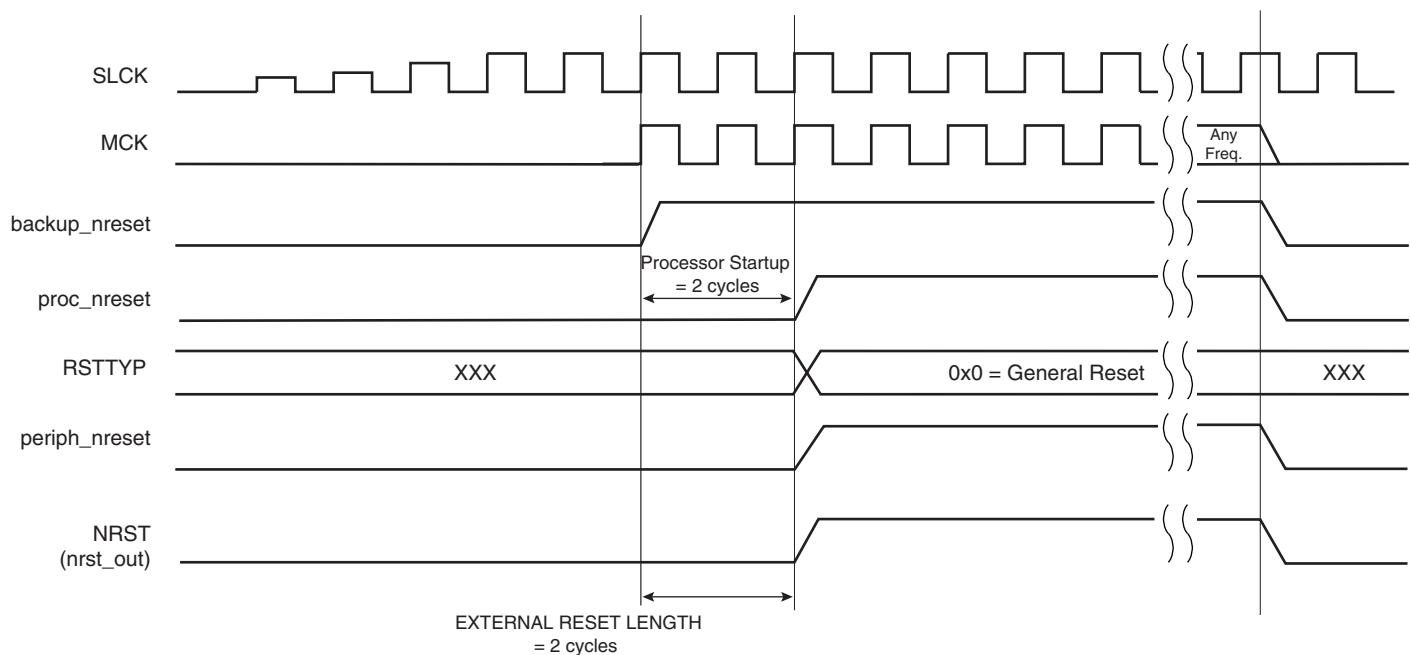
The Reset State Manager handles the different reset sources and generates the internal reset signals. It reports the reset status in the field RSTTYP of the Status Register (RSTC\_SR). The update of the field RSTTYP is performed when the processor reset is released.

##### 12.4.4.1 General Reset

A general reset occurs when a Power-on-reset is detected, a Brownout or a Voltage regulation loss is detected by the Supply controller. The vddcore\_nreset signal is asserted by the Supply Controller when a general reset occurs.

All the reset signals are released and the field RSTTYP in RSTC\_SR reports a General Reset. As the RSTC\_MR is reset, the NRST line rises 2 cycles after the vddcore\_nreset, as ERSTL defaults at value 0x0.

[Figure 12-3](#) shows how the General Reset affects the reset signals.

**Figure 12-3.** General Reset State

#### 12.4.4.2 Backup Reset

A Backup reset occurs when the chip returns from Backup mode. The core\_backup\_reset signal is asserted by the Supply Controller when a Backup reset occurs.

The field RSTTYP in RSTC\_SR is updated to report a Backup Reset.

#### 12.4.4.3 User Reset

The User Reset is entered when a low level is detected on the NRST pin and the bit URSTEN in RSTC\_MR is at 1. The NRST input signal is resynchronized with SLCK to insure proper behavior of the system.

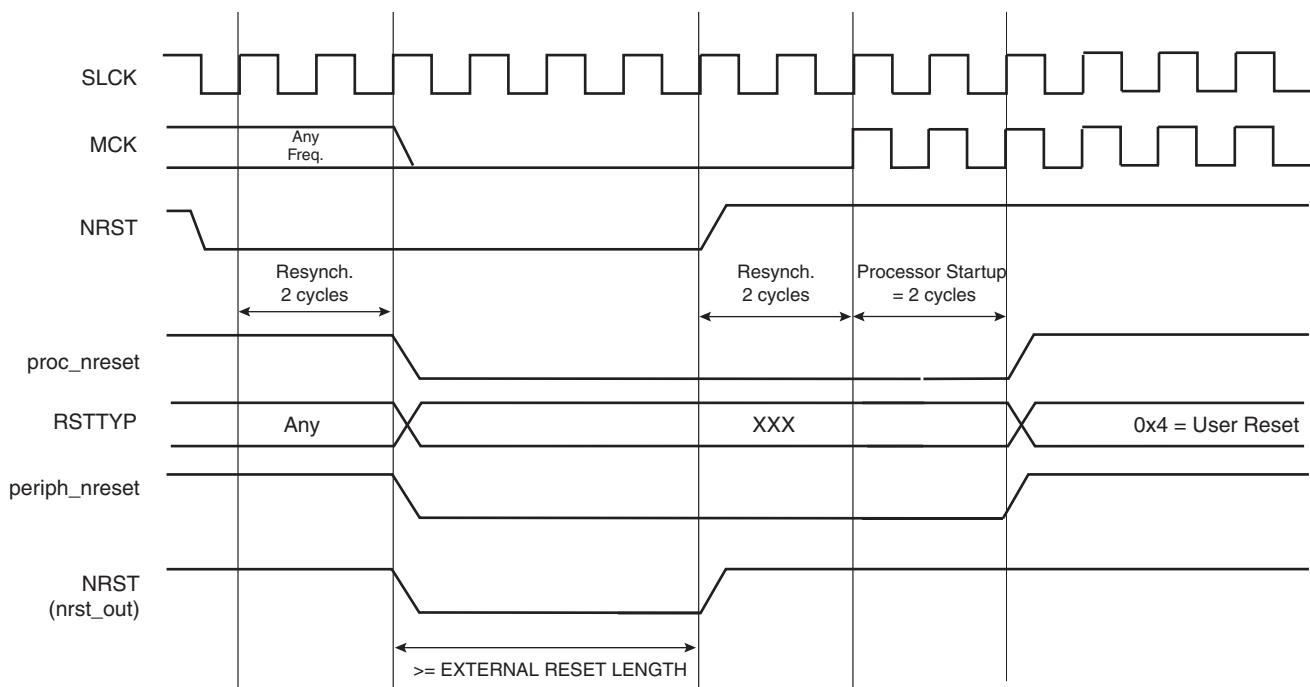
The User Reset is entered as soon as a low level is detected on NRST. The Processor Reset and the Peripheral Reset are asserted.

The User Reset is left when NRST rises, after a two-cycle resynchronization time and a 3-cycle processor startup. The processor clock is re-enabled as soon as NRST is confirmed high.

When the processor reset signal is released, the RSTTYP field of the Status Register (RSTC\_SR) is loaded with the value 0x4, indicating a User Reset.

The NRST Manager guarantees that the NRST line is asserted for EXTERNAL\_RESET\_LENGTH Slow Clock cycles, as programmed in the field ERSTL. However, if NRST does not rise after EXTERNAL\_RESET\_LENGTH because it is driven low externally, the internal reset lines remain asserted until NRST actually rises.

**Figure 12-4.** User Reset State



#### 12.4.4.4 Software Reset

The Reset Controller offers several commands used to assert the different reset signals. These commands are performed by writing the Control Register (RSTC\_CR) with the following bits at 1:

- PROCRST: Writing PROCRST at 1 resets the processor and the watchdog timer.
- PERRST: Writing PERRST at 1 resets all the embedded peripherals, including the memory system, and, in particular, the Remap Command. The Peripheral Reset is generally used for debug purposes.  
Except for debug purposes , PERRST must always be used in conjunction with PROCRST (PERRST and PROCRST set both at 1 simultaneously).
- EXTRST: Writing EXTRST at 1 asserts low the NRST pin during a time defined by the field ERSTL in the Mode Register (RSTC\_MR).

The software reset is entered if at least one of these bits is set by the software. All these commands can be performed independently or simultaneously. The software reset lasts 3 Slow Clock cycles.

The internal reset signals are asserted as soon as the register write is performed. This is detected on the Master Clock (MCK). They are released when the software reset is left, i.e.; synchronously to SLCK.

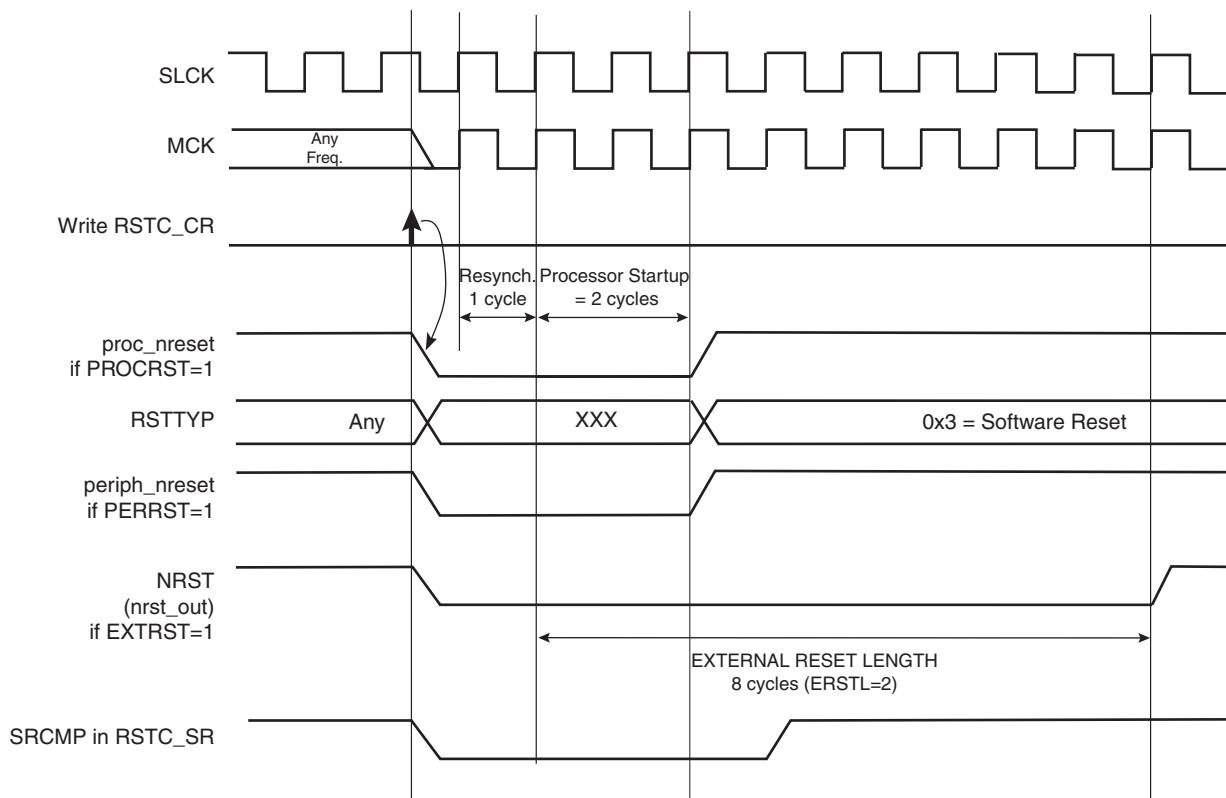
If EXTRST is set, the nrst\_out signal is asserted depending on the programming of the field ERSTL. However, the resulting falling edge on NRST does not lead to a User Reset.

If and only if the PROCRST bit is set, the Reset Controller reports the software status in the field RSTTYP of the Status Register (RSTC\_SR). Other Software Resets are not reported in RSTTYP.

As soon as a software operation is detected, the bit SRCMP (Software Reset Command in Progress) is set in the Status Register (RSTC\_SR). It is cleared as soon as the software reset is left.

No other software reset can be performed while the SRCMP bit is set, and writing any value in RSTC\_CR has no effect.

**Figure 12-5.** Software Reset



#### 12.4.4.5 Watchdog Reset

The Watchdog Reset is entered when a watchdog fault occurs. This state lasts 3 Slow Clock cycles.

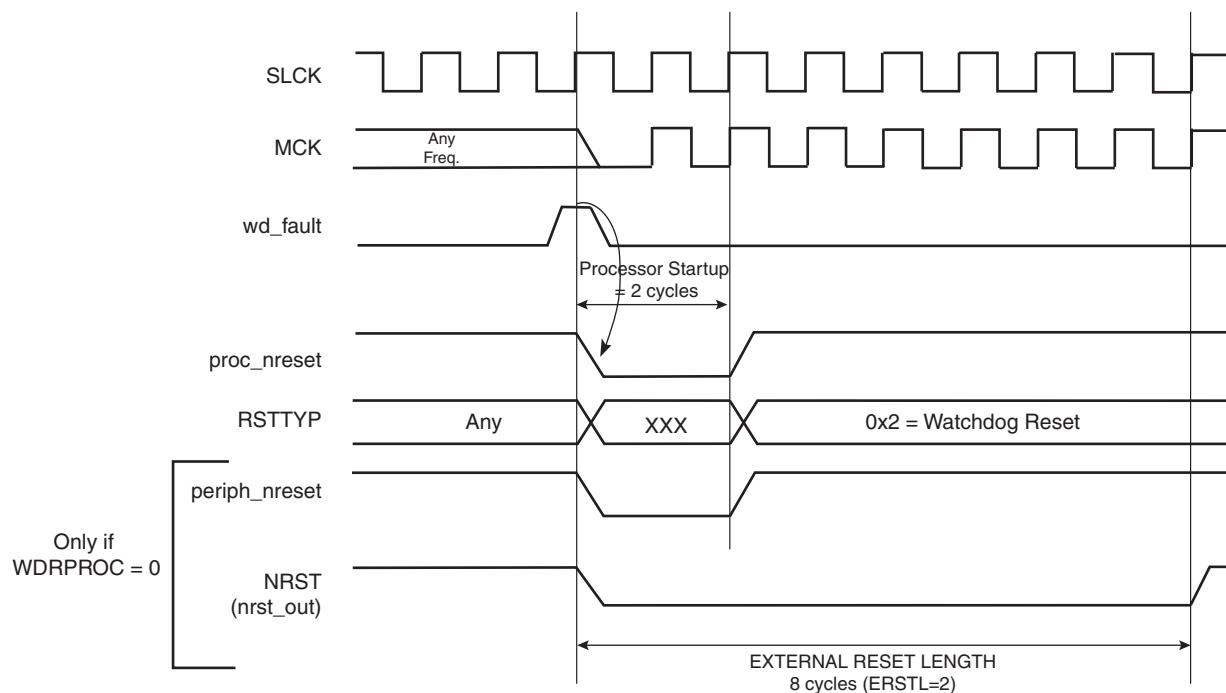
When in Watchdog Reset, assertion of the reset signals depends on the WDRPROC bit in WDT\_MR:

- If WDRPROC is 0, the Processor Reset and the Peripheral Reset are asserted. The NRST line is also asserted, depending on the programming of the field ERSTL. However, the resulting low level on NRST does not result in a User Reset state.
- If WDRPROC = 1, only the processor reset is asserted.

The Watchdog Timer is reset by the proc\_nreset signal. As the watchdog fault always causes a processor reset if WDRSTEN is set, the Watchdog Timer is always reset after a Watchdog Reset, and the Watchdog is enabled by default and with a period set to a maximum.

When the WDRSTEN in WDT\_MR bit is reset, the watchdog fault has no impact on the reset controller.

**Figure 12-6.** Watchdog Reset



#### 12.4.5 Reset State Priorities

The Reset State Manager manages the following priorities between the different reset sources, given in descending order:

- General Reset
- Backup Reset
- Watchdog Reset
- Software Reset
- User Reset

Particular cases are listed below:

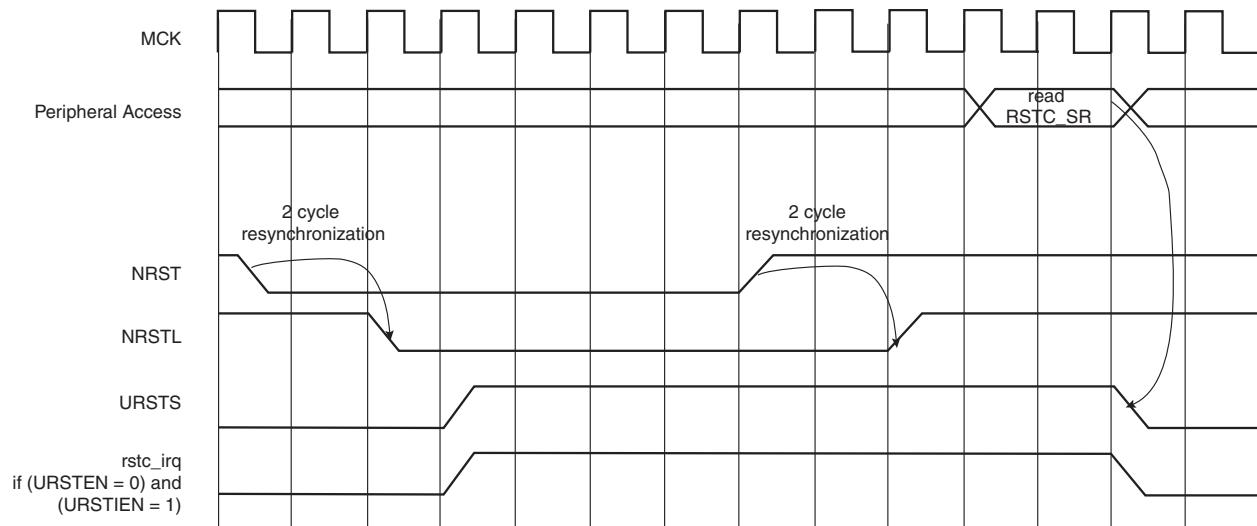
- When in User Reset:
  - A watchdog event is impossible because the Watchdog Timer is being reset by the proc\_nreset signal.
  - A software reset is impossible, since the processor reset is being activated.
- When in Software Reset:
  - A watchdog event has priority over the current state.
  - The NRST has no effect.
- When in Watchdog Reset:
  - The processor reset is active and so a Software Reset cannot be programmed.
  - A User Reset cannot be entered.

#### 12.4.6 Reset Controller Status Register

The Reset Controller status register (RSTC\_SR) provides several status fields:

- RSTTYP field: This field gives the type of the last reset, as explained in previous sections.
- SRCMP bit: This field indicates that a Software Reset Command is in progress and that no further software reset should be performed until the end of the current one. This bit is automatically cleared at the end of the current software reset.
- NRSTL bit: The NRSTL bit of the Status Register gives the level of the NRST pin sampled on each MCK rising edge.
- URSTS bit: A high-to-low transition of the NRST pin sets the URSTS bit of the RSTC\_SR register. This transition is also detected on the Master Clock (MCK) rising edge (see [Figure 12-7](#)). If the User Reset is disabled (URSTEN = 0) and if the interruption is enabled by the URSTIEN bit in the RSTC\_MR register, the URSTS bit triggers an interrupt. Reading the RSTC\_SR status register resets the URSTS bit and clears the interrupt.

**Figure 12-7.** Reset Controller Status and Interrupt



## 12.5 Reset Controller (RSTC) User Interface

**Table 12-1.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Control Register	RSTC_CR	Write-only	-
0x04	Status Register	RSTC_SR	Read-only	0x0000_0000
0x08	Mode Register	RSTC_MR	Read-write	0x0000 0001

### 12.5.1 Reset Controller Control Register

**Name:** RSTC\_CR

**Address:** 0x400E1400

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
KEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	EXTRST	PERRST	—	PROCRST

- **PROCRST: Processor Reset**

0 = No effect.

1 = If KEY is correct, resets the processor.

- **PERRST: Peripheral Reset**

0 = No effect.

1 = If KEY is correct, resets the peripherals.

- **EXTRST: External Reset**

0 = No effect.

1 = If KEY is correct, asserts the NRST pin.

- **KEY: Password**

Should be written at value 0xA5. Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation.

### 12.5.2 Reset Controller Status Register

**Name:** RSTC\_SR

**Address:** 0x400E1404

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	—	—	—	SRCMP	NRSTL
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	—	—	—	—	—	RSTTYP	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	URSTS

- **URSTS: User Reset Status**

0 = No high-to-low edge on NRST happened since the last read of RSTC\_SR.

1 = At least one high-to-low transition of NRST has been detected since the last read of RSTC\_SR.

- **RSTTYP: Reset Type**

Reports the cause of the last processor reset. Reading this RSTC\_SR does not reset this field.

RSTTYP			Reset Type	Comments
0	0	0	General Reset	First power-up Reset
0	0	1	Backup Reset	Return from Backup mode
0	1	0	Watchdog Reset	Watchdog fault occurred
0	1	1	Software Reset	Processor reset required by the software
1	0	0	User Reset	NRST pin detected low

- **NRSTL: NRST Pin Level**

Registers the NRST Pin Level at Master Clock (MCK).

- **SRCMP: Software Reset Command in Progress**

0 = No software command is being performed by the reset controller. The reset controller is ready for a software command.

1 = A software reset command is being performed by the reset controller. The reset controller is busy.

### 12.5.3 Reset Controller Mode Register

**Name:** RSTC\_MR

**Address:** 0x400E1408

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
KEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	—	—	—	ERSTL			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	URSTIEN	—	—	—	URSTEN

- **URSTEN: User Reset Enable**

0 = The detection of a low level on the pin NRST does not generate a User Reset.

1 = The detection of a low level on the pin NRST triggers a User Reset.

- **URSTIEN: User Reset Interrupt Enable**

0 = USRTS bit in RSTC\_SR at 1 has no effect on rstc\_irq.

1 = USRTS bit in RSTC\_SR at 1 asserts rstc\_irq if URSTEN = 0.

- **ERSTL: External Reset Length**

This field defines the external reset length. The external reset is asserted during a time of  $2^{(ERSTL+1)}$  Slow Clock cycles. This allows assertion duration to be programmed between 60 µs and 2 seconds.

- **KEY: Password**

Should be written at value 0xA5. Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation.

## 13. Real-time Timer (RTT)

### 13.1 Description

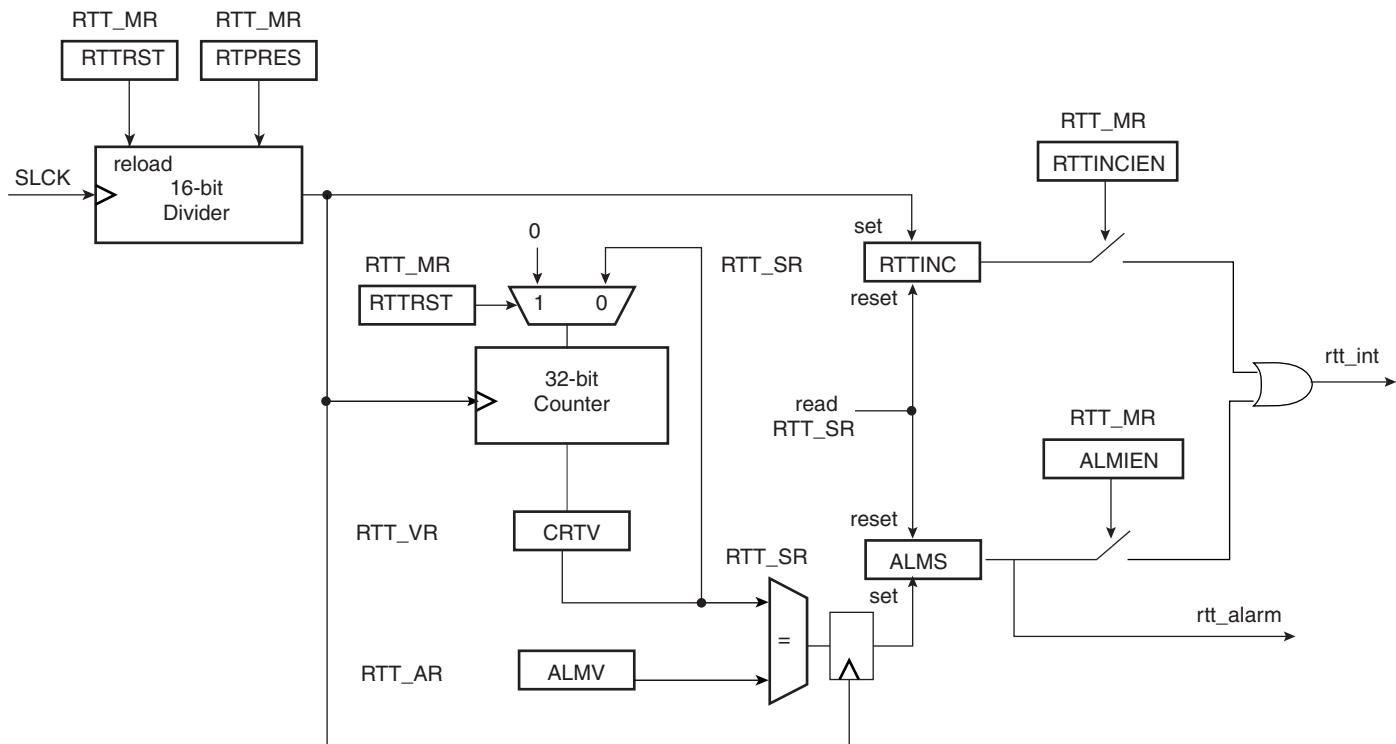
The Real-time Timer is built around a 32-bit counter used to count roll-over events of the programmable 16-bit prescaler which enables counting elapsed seconds from a 32 kHz slow clock source. It generates a periodic interrupt and/or triggers an alarm on a programmed value.

### 13.2 Embedded Characteristics

- 32-bit Free-running Counter on prescaled slow clock
- 16-bit Configurable Prescaler
- Interrupt on Alarm

### 13.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 13-1.** Real-time Timer



## 13.4 Functional Description

The Real-time Timer can be used to count elapsed seconds. It is built around a 32-bit counter fed by Slow Clock divided by a programmable 16-bit value. The value can be programmed in the field RTPRES of the Real-time Mode Register (RTT\_MR).

Programming RTPRES at 0x00008000 corresponds to feeding the real-time counter with a 1 Hz signal (if the Slow Clock is 32.768 kHz). The 32-bit counter can count up to  $2^{32}$  seconds, corresponding to more than 136 years, then roll over to 0.

The Real-time Timer can also be used as a free-running timer with a lower time-base. The best accuracy is achieved by writing RTPRES to 3. Programming RTPRES to 1 or 2 is possible, but may result in losing status events because the status register is cleared two Slow Clock cycles after read. Thus if the RTT is configured to trigger an interrupt, the interrupt occurs during 2 Slow Clock cycles after reading RTT\_SR. To prevent several executions of the interrupt handler, the interrupt must be disabled in the interrupt handler and re-enabled when the status register is clear.

The Real-time Timer value (CRTV) can be read at any time in the register RTT\_VR (Real-time Value Register). As this value can be updated asynchronously from the Master Clock, it is advisable to read this register twice at the same value to improve accuracy of the returned value.

The current value of the counter is compared with the value written in the alarm register RTT\_AR (Real-time Alarm Register). If the counter value matches the alarm, the bit ALMS in RTT\_SR is set. The alarm register is set to its maximum value, corresponding to 0xFFFF\_FFFF, after a reset.

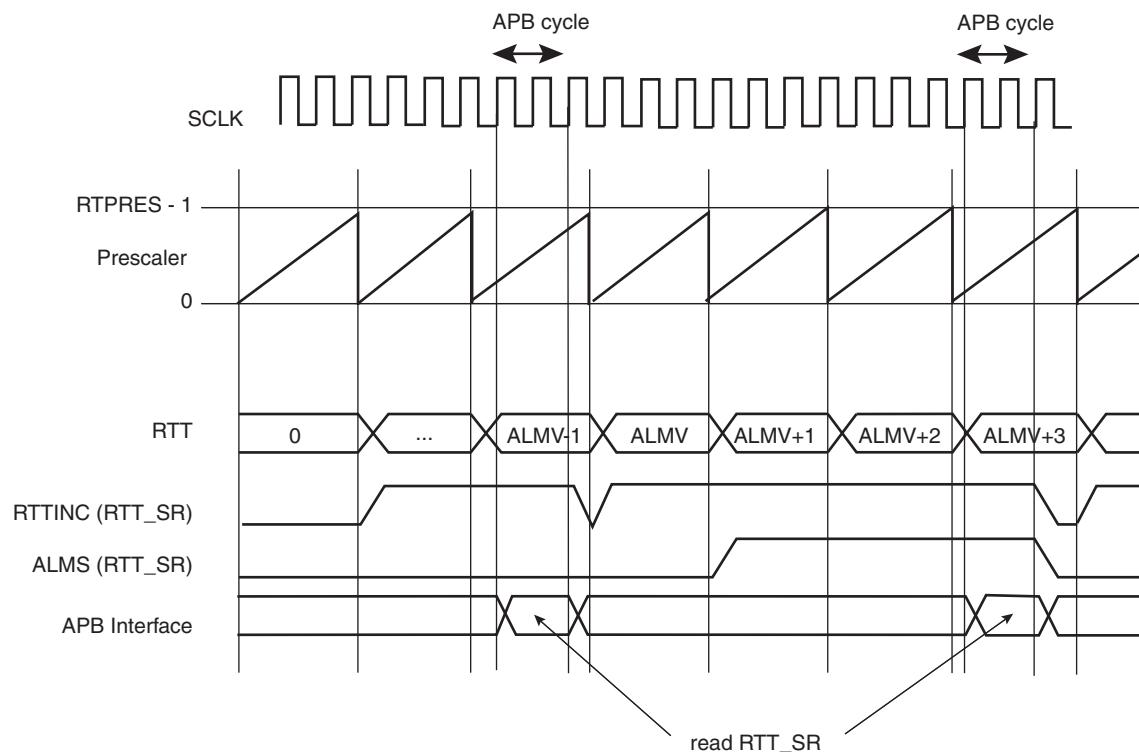
The bit RTTINC in RTT\_SR is set each time the Real-time Timer counter is incremented. This bit can be used to start a periodic interrupt, the period being one second when the RTPRES is programmed with 0x8000 and Slow Clock equal to 32.768 Hz.

Reading the RTT\_SR status register resets the RTTINC and ALMS fields.

Writing the bit RTTRST in RTT\_MR immediately reloads and restarts the clock divider with the new programmed value. This also resets the 32-bit counter.

Note: Because of the asynchronism between the Slow Clock (SCLK) and the System Clock (MCK):

- 1) The restart of the counter and the reset of the RTT\_VR current value register is effective only 2 slow clock cycles after the write of the RTTRST bit in the RTT\_MR register.
- 2) The status register flags reset is taken into account only 2 slow clock cycles after the read of the RTT\_SR (Status Register).

**Figure 13-2.** RTT Counting

## 13.5 Real-time Timer (RTT) User Interface

**Table 13-1.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Mode Register	RTT_MR	Read-write	0x0000_8000
0x04	Alarm Register	RTT_AR	Read-write	0xFFFF_FFFF
0x08	Value Register	RTT_VR	Read-only	0x0000_0000
0x0C	Status Register	RTT_SR	Read-only	0x0000_0000

### 13.5.1 Real-time Timer Mode Register

**Register Name:** RTT\_MR

**Address:** 0x400E1430

**Access Type:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	RTTRST	RTTINCIEN	ALMIEN
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RTPRES							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RTPRES							

- **RTPRES: Real-time Timer Prescaler Value**

Defines the number of SLCK periods required to increment the Real-time timer. RTPRES is defined as follows:

RTPRES = 0: The prescaler period is equal to  $2^{16} * \text{SCLK}$  period.

RTPRES ≠ 0: The prescaler period is equal to RTPRES \* SCLK period.

- **ALMIEN: Alarm Interrupt Enable**

0 = The bit ALMS in RTT\_SR has no effect on interrupt.

1 = The bit ALMS in RTT\_SR asserts interrupt.

- **RTTINCIEN: Real-time Timer Increment Interrupt Enable**

0 = The bit RTTINC in RTT\_SR has no effect on interrupt.

1 = The bit RTTINC in RTT\_SR asserts interrupt.

- **RTTRST: Real-time Timer Restart**

0 = No effect.

1 = Reloads and restarts the clock divider with the new programmed value. This also resets the 32-bit counter.

### 13.5.2 Real-time Timer Alarm Register

**Register Name:** RTT\_AR

**Address:** 0x400E1434

**Access Type:** Read/Write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
ALMV							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
ALMV							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
ALMV							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ALMV							

- **ALMV: Alarm Value**

Defines the alarm value (ALMV+1) compared with the Real-time Timer.

### 13.5.3 Real-time Timer Value Register

**Register Name:** RTT\_VR

**Address:** 0x400E1438

**Access Type:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
CRTV							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
CRTV							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CRTV							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CRTV							

- **CRTV: Current Real-time Value**

Returns the current value of the Real-time Timer.

### 13.5.4 Real-time Timer Status Register

**Register Name:** RTT\_SR

**Address:** 0x400E143C

**Access Type:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	RTTINC	ALMS

- **ALMS: Real-time Alarm Status**

0 = The Real-time Alarm has not occurred since the last read of RTT\_SR.

1 = The Real-time Alarm occurred since the last read of RTT\_SR.

- **RTTINC: Real-time Timer Increment**

0 = The Real-time Timer has not been incremented since the last read of the RTT\_SR.

1 = The Real-time Timer has been incremented since the last read of the RTT\_SR.

## 14. Real Time Clock (RTC)

### 14.1 Description

The Real-time Clock (RTC) peripheral is designed for very low power consumption.

It combines a complete time-of-day clock with alarm and a two-hundred-year Gregorian calendar, complemented by a programmable periodic interrupt. The alarm and calendar registers are accessed by a 32-bit data bus.

The time and calendar values are coded in binary-coded decimal (BCD) format. The time format can be 24-hour mode or 12-hour mode with an AM/PM indicator.

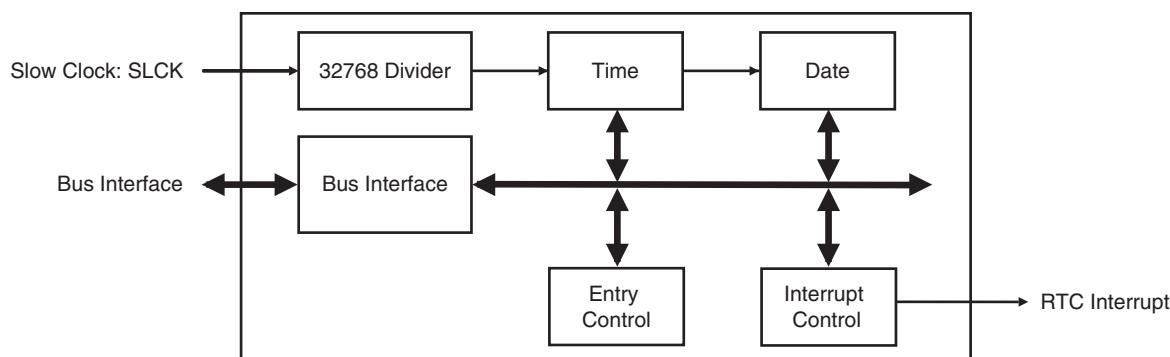
Updating time and calendar fields and configuring the alarm fields are performed by a parallel capture on the 32-bit data bus. An entry control is performed to avoid loading registers with incompatible BCD format data or with an incompatible date according to the current month/year/century.

### 14.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Low Power Consumption
- Full asynchronous design
- Two hundred year calendar
- Programmable Periodic Interrupt
- Alarm and update parallel load
- Control of alarm and update Time/Calendar Data In

### 14.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 14-1.** RTC Block Diagram



## 14.4 Product Dependencies

### 14.4.1 Power Management

The Real-time Clock is continuously clocked at 32768 Hz. The Power Management Controller has no effect on RTC behavior.

### 14.4.2 Interrupt

RTC interrupt line is connected on one of the internal sources of the interrupt controller. RTC interrupt requires the interrupt controller to be programmed first.

## 14.5 Functional Description

The RTC provides a full binary-coded decimal (BCD) clock that includes century (19/20), year (with leap years), month, date, day, hours, minutes and seconds.

The valid year range is 1900 to 2099 in Gregorian mode, a two-hundred-year calendar.

The RTC can operate in 24-hour mode or in 12-hour mode with an AM/PM indicator.

Corrections for leap years are included (all years divisible by 4 being leap years). This is correct up to the year 2099.

### 14.5.1 Reference Clock

The reference clock is Slow Clock (SLCK). It can be driven internally or by an external 32.768 kHz crystal.

During low power modes of the processor, the oscillator runs and power consumption is critical. The crystal selection has to take into account the current consumption for power saving and the frequency drift due to temperature effect on the circuit for time accuracy.

### 14.5.2 Timing

The RTC is updated in real time at one-second intervals in normal mode for the counters of seconds, at one-minute intervals for the counter of minutes and so on.

Due to the asynchronous operation of the RTC with respect to the rest of the chip, to be certain that the value read in the RTC registers (century, year, month, date, day, hours, minutes, seconds) are valid and stable, it is necessary to read these registers twice. If the data is the same both times, then it is valid. Therefore, a minimum of two and a maximum of three accesses are required.

### 14.5.3 Alarm

The RTC has five programmable fields: month, date, hours, minutes and seconds.

Each of these fields can be enabled or disabled to match the alarm condition:

- If all the fields are enabled, an alarm flag is generated (the corresponding flag is asserted and an interrupt generated if enabled) at a given month, date, hour/minute/second.
- If only the “seconds” field is enabled, then an alarm is generated every minute.

Depending on the combination of fields enabled, a large number of possibilities are available to the user ranging from minutes to 365/366 days.

#### 14.5.4 Error Checking

Verification on user interface data is performed when accessing the century, year, month, date, day, hours, minutes, seconds and alarms. A check is performed on illegal BCD entries such as illegal date of the month with regard to the year and century configured.

If one of the time fields is not correct, the data is not loaded into the register/counter and a flag is set in the validity register. The user can not reset this flag. It is reset as soon as an acceptable value is programmed. This avoids any further side effects in the hardware. The same procedure is done for the alarm.

The following checks are performed:

1. Century (check if it is in range 19 - 20 )
2. Year (BCD entry check)
3. Date (check range 01 - 31)
4. Month (check if it is in BCD range 01 - 12, check validity regarding "date")
5. Day (check range 1 - 7)
6. Hour (BCD checks: in 24-hour mode, check range 00 - 23 and check that AM/PM flag is not set if RTC is set in 24-hour mode; in 12-hour mode check range 01 - 12)
7. Minute (check BCD and range 00 - 59)
8. Second (check BCD and range 00 - 59)

Note: If the 12-hour mode is selected by means of the RTC\_MODE register, a 12-hour value can be programmed and the returned value on RTC\_TIME will be the corresponding 24-hour value. The entry control checks the value of the AM/PM indicator (bit 22 of RTC\_TIME register) to determine the range to be checked.

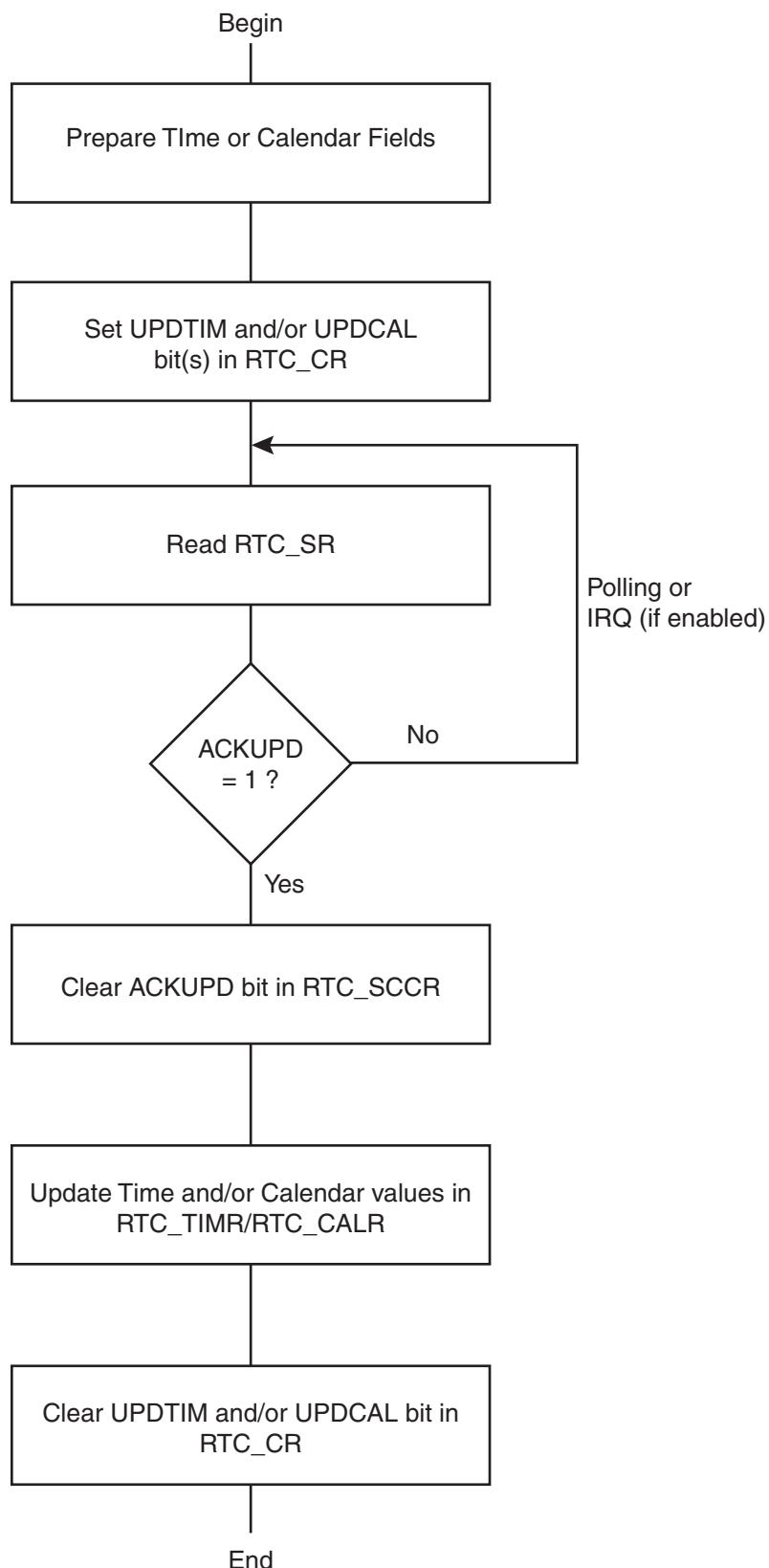
#### 14.5.5 Updating Time/Calendar

To update any of the time/calendar fields, the user must first stop the RTC by setting the corresponding field in the Control Register. Bit UPDTIM must be set to update time fields (hour, minute, second) and bit UPDCAL must be set to update calendar fields (century, year, month, date, day).

Then the user must poll or wait for the interrupt (if enabled) of bit ACKUPD in the Status Register. Once the bit reads 1, it is mandatory to clear this flag by writing the corresponding bit in RTC\_SCCR. The user can now write to the appropriate Time and Calendar register.

Once the update is finished, the user must reset (0) UPDTIM and/or UPDCAL in the Control

When entering programming mode of the calendar fields, the time fields remain enabled. When entering the programming mode of the time fields, both time and calendar fields are stopped. This is due to the location of the calendar logic circuitry (downstream for low-power considerations). It is highly recommended to prepare all the fields to be updated before entering programming mode. In successive update operations, the user must wait at least one second after resetting the UPDTIM/UPDCAL bit in the RTC\_CR (Control Register) before setting these bits again. This is done by waiting for the SEC flag in the Status Register before setting UPDTIM/UPDCAL bit. After resetting UPDTIM/UPDCAL, the SEC flag must also be cleared.

**Figure 14-2.** Update Sequence

## 14.6 Real Time Clock (RTC) User Interface

**Table 14-1.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Control Register	RTC_CR	Read-write	0x0
0x04	Mode Register	RTC_MR	Read-write	0x0
0x08	Time Register	RTC_TIMR	Read-write	0x0
0x0C	Calendar Register	RTC_CALR	Read-write	0x01210720
0x10	Time Alarm Register	RTC_TIMALR	Read-write	0x0
0x14	Calendar Alarm Register	RTC_CALALR	Read-write	0x01010000
0x18	Status Register	RTC_SR	Read-only	0x0
0x1C	Status Clear Command Register	RTC_SCCR	Write-only	–
0x20	Interrupt Enable Register	RTC_IER	Write-only	–
0x24	Interrupt Disable Register	RTC_IDR	Write-only	–
0x28	Interrupt Mask Register	RTC_IMR	Read-only	0x0
0x2C	Valid Entry Register	RTC_VER	Read-only	0x0
0x30–0xE0	Reserved Register	–	–	–
0xE4	Write Protect Mode Register	RTC_WPMR	Read-write	0x00000000
0xE8–0xF8	Reserved Register	–	–	–
0xFC	Reserved Register	–	–	–

Note: if an offset is not listed in the table it must be considered as reserved.

#### 14.6.1 RTC Control Register

**Name:** RTC\_CR

**Address:** 0x400E1460

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	CALEVSEL
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	TIMEVSEL
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	UPDCAL UPDTIM

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[RTC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 246.

- **UPDTIM: Update Request Time Register**

0 = No effect.

1 = Stops the RTC time counting.

Time counting consists of second, minute and hour counters. Time counters can be programmed once this bit is set and acknowledged by the bit ACKUPD of the Status Register.

- **UPDCAL: Update Request Calendar Register**

0 = No effect.

1 = Stops the RTC calendar counting.

Calendar counting consists of day, date, month, year and century counters. Calendar counters can be programmed once this bit is set.

- **TIMEVSEL: Time Event Selection**

The event that generates the flag TIMEV in RTC\_SR (Status Register) depends on the value of TIMEVSEL.

Value	Name	Description
0	MINUTE	Minute change
1	HOUR	Hour change
2	MIDNIGHT	Every day at midnight
3	NOON	Every day at noon

- **CALEVSEL: Calendar Event Selection**

The event that generates the flag CALEV in RTC\_SR depends on the value of CALEVSEL

Value	Name	Description
0	WEEK	Week change (every Monday at time 00:00:00)
1	MONTH	Month change (every 01 of each month at time 00:00:00)
2	YEAR	Year change (every January 1 at time 00:00:00)
3	-	

#### 14.6.2 RTC Mode Register

**Name:** RTC\_MR

**Address:** 0x400E1464

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	HRMOD

- **HRMOD: 12-/24-hour Mode**

0 = 24-hour mode is selected.

1 = 12-hour mode is selected.

All non-significant bits read zero.

#### 14.6.3 RTC Time Register

**Name:** RTC\_TIMR

**Address:** 0x400E1468

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	AMPM				HOUR		
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-				MIN			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-				SEC			

- **SEC: Current Second**

The range that can be set is 0 - 59 (BCD).

The lowest four bits encode the units. The higher bits encode the tens.

- **MIN: Current Minute**

The range that can be set is 0 - 59 (BCD).

The lowest four bits encode the units. The higher bits encode the tens.

- **HOUR: Current Hour**

The range that can be set is 1 - 12 (BCD) in 12-hour mode or 0 - 23 (BCD) in 24-hour mode.

- **AMPM: Ante Meridiem Post Meridiem Indicator**

This bit is the AM/PM indicator in 12-hour mode.

0 = AM.

1 = PM.

All non-significant bits read zero.

#### 14.6.4 RTC Calendar Register

**Name:** RTC\_CALR

**Address:** 0x400E146C

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	DATE					
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
DAY			MONTH				
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
YEAR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	CENT						

- **CENT: Current Century**

The range that can be set is 19 - 20 (BCD).

The lowest four bits encode the units. The higher bits encode the tens.

- **YEAR: Current Year**

The range that can be set is 00 - 99 (BCD).

The lowest four bits encode the units. The higher bits encode the tens.

- **MONTH: Current Month**

The range that can be set is 01 - 12 (BCD).

The lowest four bits encode the units. The higher bits encode the tens.

- **DAY: Current Day in Current Week**

The range that can be set is 1 - 7 (BCD).

The coding of the number (which number represents which day) is user-defined as it has no effect on the date counter.

- **DATE: Current Day in Current Month**

The range that can be set is 01 - 31 (BCD).

The lowest four bits encode the units. The higher bits encode the tens.

All non-significant bits read zero.

#### 14.6.5 RTC Time Alarm Register

**Name:** RTC\_TIMALR

**Address:** 0x400E1470

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
HOUREN	AMPM	HOUR					
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
MINEN		MIN					
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SECEN		SEC					

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[RTC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 246.

- **SEC: Second Alarm**

This field is the alarm field corresponding to the BCD-coded second counter.

- **SECEN: Second Alarm Enable**

0 = The second-matching alarm is disabled.

1 = The second-matching alarm is enabled.

- **MIN: Minute Alarm**

This field is the alarm field corresponding to the BCD-coded minute counter.

- **MINEN: Minute Alarm Enable**

0 = The minute-matching alarm is disabled.

1 = The minute-matching alarm is enabled.

- **HOUR: Hour Alarm**

This field is the alarm field corresponding to the BCD-coded hour counter.

- **AMPM: AM/PM Indicator**

This field is the alarm field corresponding to the BCD-coded hour counter.

- **HOUREN: Hour Alarm Enable**

0 = The hour-matching alarm is disabled.

1 = The hour-matching alarm is enabled.

#### 14.6.6 RTC Calendar Alarm Register

**Name:** RTC\_CALALR

**Address:** 0x400E1474

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
DATEEN	–				DATE		
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
MTHEN	–	–			MONTH		
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[RTC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 246.

- **MONTH: Month Alarm**

This field is the alarm field corresponding to the BCD-coded month counter.

- **MTHEN: Month Alarm Enable**

0 = The month-matching alarm is disabled.

1 = The month-matching alarm is enabled.

- **DATE: Date Alarm**

This field is the alarm field corresponding to the BCD-coded date counter.

- **DATEEN: Date Alarm Enable**

0 = The date-matching alarm is disabled.

1 = The date-matching alarm is enabled.

#### 14.6.7 RTC Status Register

**Name:** RTC\_SR

**Address:** 0x400E1478

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	CALEV	TIMEV	SEC	ALARM	ACKUPD

- **ACKUPD: Acknowledge for Update**

0 = Time and calendar registers cannot be updated.

1 = Time and calendar registers can be updated.

- **ALARM: Alarm Flag**

0 = No alarm matching condition occurred.

1 = An alarm matching condition has occurred.

- **SEC: Second Event**

0 = No second event has occurred since the last clear.

1 = At least one second event has occurred since the last clear.

- **TIMEV: Time Event**

0 = No time event has occurred since the last clear.

1 = At least one time event has occurred since the last clear.

The time event is selected in the TIMEVSEL field in RTC\_CR (Control Register) and can be any one of the following events: minute change, hour change, noon, midnight (day change).

- **CALEV: Calendar Event**

0 = No calendar event has occurred since the last clear.

1 = At least one calendar event has occurred since the last clear.

The calendar event is selected in the CALEVSEL field in RTC\_CR and can be any one of the following events: week change, month change and year change.

#### 14.6.8 RTC Status Clear Command Register

**Name:** RTC\_SCCR

**Address:** 0x400E147C

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	CALCLR	TIMCLR	SECCLR	ALRCLR	ACKCLR

- **ACKCLR: Acknowledge Clear**

0 = No effect.

1 = Clears corresponding status flag in the Status Register (RTC\_SR).

- **ALRCLR: Alarm Clear**

0 = No effect.

1 = Clears corresponding status flag in the Status Register (RTC\_SR).

- **SECCLR: Second Clear**

0 = No effect.

1 = Clears corresponding status flag in the Status Register (RTC\_SR).

- **TIMCLR: Time Clear**

0 = No effect.

1 = Clears corresponding status flag in the Status Register (RTC\_SR).

- **CALCLR: Calendar Clear**

0 = No effect.

1 = Clears corresponding status flag in the Status Register (RTC\_SR).

#### 14.6.9 RTC Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** RTC\_IER

**Address:** 0x400E1480

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	CALEN	TIMEN	SECEN	ALREN	ACKEN

- **ACKEN: Acknowledge Update Interrupt Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The acknowledge for update interrupt is enabled.

- **ALREN: Alarm Interrupt Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The alarm interrupt is enabled.

- **SECEN: Second Event Interrupt Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The second periodic interrupt is enabled.

- **TIMEN: Time Event Interrupt Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The selected time event interrupt is enabled.

- **CALEN: Calendar Event Interrupt Enable**

0 = No effect.

- 1 = The selected calendar event interrupt is enabled.

#### 14.6.10 RTC Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** RTC\_IDR

**Address:** 0x400E1484

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	CALDIS	TIMDIS	SECDIS	ALRDIS	ACKDIS

- **ACKDIS: Acknowledge Update Interrupt Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The acknowledge for update interrupt is disabled.

- **ALRDIS: Alarm Interrupt Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The alarm interrupt is disabled.

- **SECDIS: Second Event Interrupt Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The second periodic interrupt is disabled.

- **TIMDIS: Time Event Interrupt Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The selected time event interrupt is disabled.

- **CALDIS: Calendar Event Interrupt Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The selected calendar event interrupt is disabled.

#### 14.6.11 RTC Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** RTC\_IMR

**Address:** 0x400E1488

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	CAL	TIM	SEC	ALR	ACK

- **ACK: Acknowledge Update Interrupt Mask**

0 = The acknowledge for update interrupt is disabled.

1 = The acknowledge for update interrupt is enabled.

- **ALR: Alarm Interrupt Mask**

0 = The alarm interrupt is disabled.

1 = The alarm interrupt is enabled.

- **SEC: Second Event Interrupt Mask**

0 = The second periodic interrupt is disabled.

1 = The second periodic interrupt is enabled.

- **TIM: Time Event Interrupt Mask**

0 = The selected time event interrupt is disabled.

1 = The selected time event interrupt is enabled.

- **CAL: Calendar Event Interrupt Mask**

0 = The selected calendar event interrupt is disabled.

1 = The selected calendar event interrupt is enabled.

#### 14.6.12 RTC Valid Entry Register

**Name:** RTC\_VER

**Address:** 0x400E148C

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	NVCALALR	NVTIMALR	NVCAL	NVTIM

- **NVTIM: Non-valid Time**

0 = No invalid data has been detected in RTC\_TIMR (Time Register).

1 = RTC\_TIMR has contained invalid data since it was last programmed.

- **NVCAL: Non-valid Calendar**

0 = No invalid data has been detected in RTC\_CALR (Calendar Register).

1 = RTC\_CALR has contained invalid data since it was last programmed.

- **NVTIMALR: Non-valid Time Alarm**

0 = No invalid data has been detected in RTC\_TIMALR (Time Alarm Register).

1 = RTC\_TIMALR has contained invalid data since it was last programmed.

- **NVCALALR: Non-valid Calendar Alarm**

0 = No invalid data has been detected in RTC\_CALALR (Calendar Alarm Register).

1 = RTC\_CALALR has contained invalid data since it was last programmed.

#### 14.6.13 RTC Write Protect Mode Register

**Name:** RTC\_WPMR

**Address:** 0x400E1544

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPEN

- **WPEN: Write Protect Enable**

0 = Disables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x525443 (“RTC” in ASCII).

1 = Enables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x525443 (“RTC” in ASCII).

Protects the registers:

[“RTC Mode Register”](#)

[“RTC Mode Register”](#)

[“RTC Time Alarm Register”](#)

[“RTC Calendar Alarm Register”](#)

## 15. Watchdog Timer (WDT)

### 15.1 Description

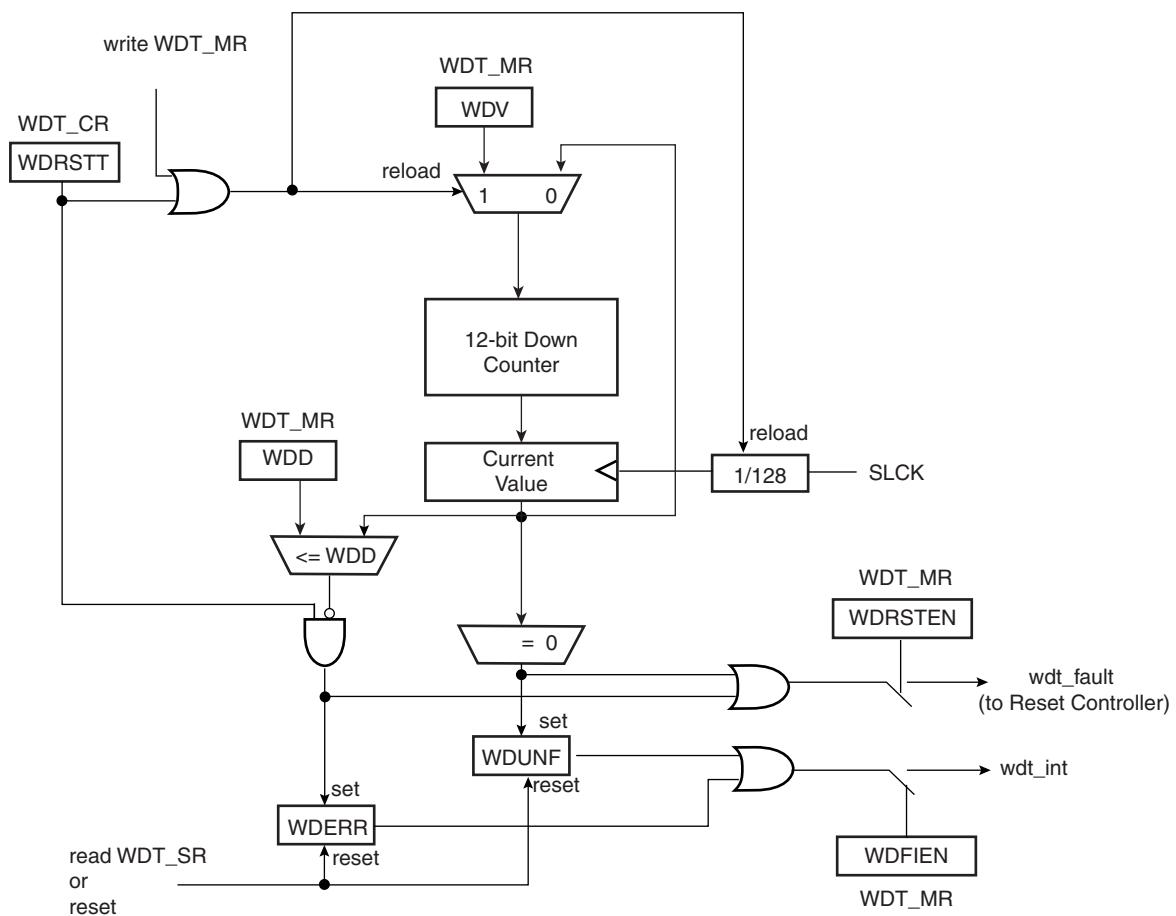
The Watchdog Timer can be used to prevent system lock-up if the software becomes trapped in a deadlock. It features a 12-bit down counter that allows a watchdog period of up to 16 seconds (slow clock at 32.768 kHz). It can generate a general reset or a processor reset only. In addition, it can be stopped while the processor is in debug mode or idle mode.

### 15.2 Embedded Characteristics

- 16-bit key-protected only-once-Programmable Counter
- Windowed, prevents the processor to be in a dead-lock on the watchdog access.

### 15.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 15-1.** Watchdog Timer Block Diagram



## 15.4 Functional Description

The Watchdog Timer can be used to prevent system lock-up if the software becomes trapped in a deadlock. It is supplied with VDDCORE. It restarts with initial values on processor reset.

The Watchdog is built around a 12-bit down counter, which is loaded with the value defined in the field WDV of the Mode Register (WDT\_MR). The Watchdog Timer uses the Slow Clock divided by 128 to establish the maximum Watchdog period to be 16 seconds (with a typical Slow Clock of 32.768 kHz).

After a Processor Reset, the value of WDV is 0xFFFF, corresponding to the maximum value of the counter with the external reset generation enabled (field WDRSTEN at 1 after a Backup Reset). This means that a default Watchdog is running at reset, i.e., at power-up. The user must either disable it (by setting the WDDIS bit in WDT\_MR) if he does not expect to use it or must reprogram it to meet the maximum Watchdog period the application requires.

The Watchdog Mode Register (WDT\_MR) can be written only once. Only a processor reset resets it. Writing the WDT\_MR register reloads the timer with the newly programmed mode parameters.

In normal operation, the user reloads the Watchdog at regular intervals before the timer underflow occurs, by writing the Control Register (WDT\_CR) with the bit WDRSTT to 1. The Watchdog counter is then immediately reloaded from WDT\_MR and restarted, and the Slow Clock 128 divider is reset and restarted. The WDT\_CR register is write-protected. As a result, writing WDT\_CR without the correct hard-coded key has no effect. If an underflow does occur, the “wdt\_fault” signal to the Reset Controller is asserted if the bit WDRSTEN is set in the Mode Register (WDT\_MR). Moreover, the bit WDUNF is set in the Watchdog Status Register (WDT\_SR).

To prevent a software deadlock that continuously triggers the Watchdog, the reload of the Watchdog must occur while the Watchdog counter is within a window between 0 and WDD, WDD is defined in the WatchDog Mode Register WDT\_MR.

Any attempt to restart the Watchdog while the Watchdog counter is between WDV and WDD results in a Watchdog error, even if the Watchdog is disabled. The bit WDERR is updated in the WDT\_SR and the “wdt\_fault” signal to the Reset Controller is asserted.

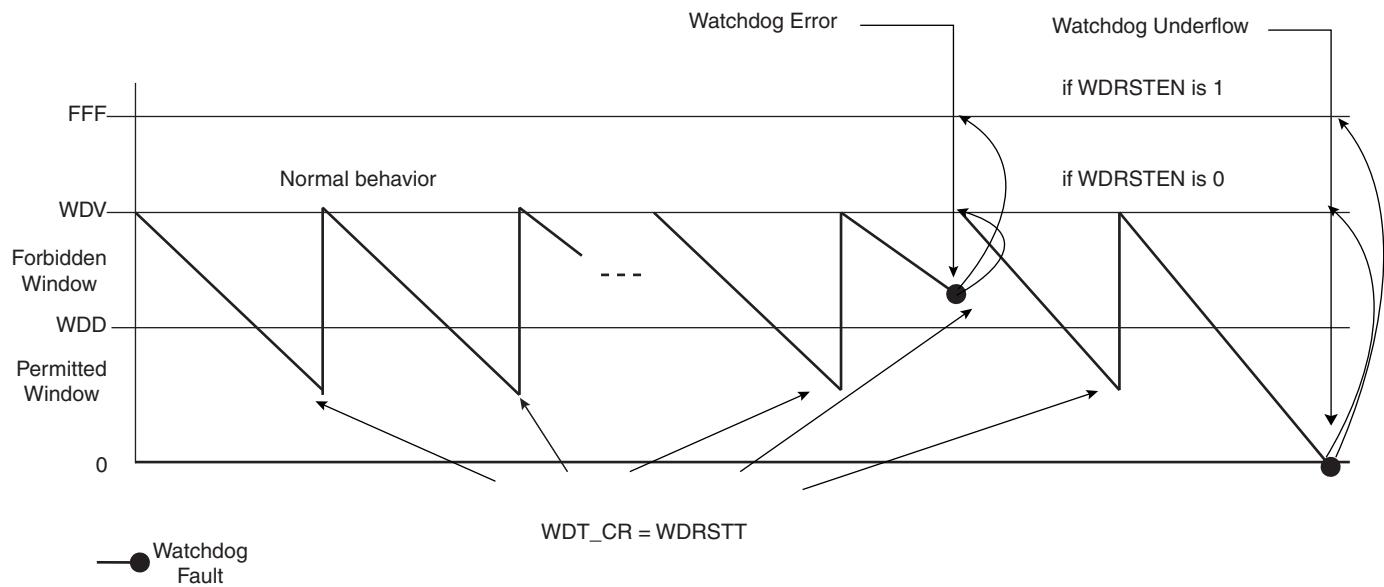
Note that this feature can be disabled by programming a WDD value greater than or equal to the WDV value. In such a configuration, restarting the Watchdog Timer is permitted in the whole range [0; WDV] and does not generate an error. This is the default configuration on reset (the WDD and WDV values are equal).

The status bits WDUNF (Watchdog Underflow) and WDERR (Watchdog Error) trigger an interrupt, provided the bit WDFIEN is set in the mode register. The signal “wdt\_fault” to the reset controller causes a Watchdog reset if the WDRSTEN bit is set as already explained in the reset controller programmer Datasheet. In that case, the processor and the Watchdog Timer are reset, and the WDERR and WDUNF flags are reset.

If a reset is generated or if WDT\_SR is read, the status bits are reset, the interrupt is cleared, and the “wdt\_fault” signal to the reset controller is deasserted.

Writing the WDT\_MR reloads and restarts the down counter.

While the processor is in debug state or in idle mode, the counter may be stopped depending on the value programmed for the bits WDIDLEHLT and WDDBGHLT in the WDT\_MR.

**Figure 15-2.** Watchdog Behavior

## 15.5 Watchdog Timer (WDT) User Interface

**Table 15-1.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Control Register	WDT_CR	Write-only	-
0x04	Mode Register	WDT_MR	Read-write Once	0x3FFF_2FFF
0x08	Status Register	WDT_SR	Read-only	0x0000_0000

### 15.5.1 Watchdog Timer Control Register

**Name:** WDT\_CR

**Address:** 0x400E1450

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
KEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	WDRSTT

- **WDRSTT: Watchdog Restart**

0: No effect.

1: Restarts the Watchdog.

- **KEY: Password**

Should be written at value 0xA5. Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation.

### 15.5.2 Watchdog Timer Mode Register

**Name:** WDT\_MR

**Address:** 0x400E1454

**Access:** Read-write Once

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
		WDIDLEHLT	WDBGHLT			WDD	
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
				WDD			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WDDIS	WDRPROC	WDRSTEN	WDFIEN			WDV	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				WDV			

- **WDV: Watchdog Counter Value**

Defines the value loaded in the 12-bit Watchdog Counter.

- **WDFIEN: Watchdog Fault Interrupt Enable**

0: A Watchdog fault (underflow or error) has no effect on interrupt.

1: A Watchdog fault (underflow or error) asserts interrupt.

- **WDRSTEN: Watchdog Reset Enable**

0: A Watchdog fault (underflow or error) has no effect on the resets.

1: A Watchdog fault (underflow or error) triggers a Watchdog reset.

- **WDRPROC: Watchdog Reset Processor**

0: If WDRSTEN is 1, a Watchdog fault (underflow or error) activates all resets.

1: If WDRSTEN is 1, a Watchdog fault (underflow or error) activates the processor reset.

- **WDD: Watchdog Delta Value**

Defines the permitted range for reloading the Watchdog Timer.

If the Watchdog Timer value is less than or equal to WDD, writing WDT\_CR with WDRSTT = 1 restarts the timer.

If the Watchdog Timer value is greater than WDD, writing WDT\_CR with WDRSTT = 1 causes a Watchdog error.

- **WDBGHLT: Watchdog Debug Halt**

0: The Watchdog runs when the processor is in debug state.

1: The Watchdog stops when the processor is in debug state.

- **WDIDLEHLT: Watchdog Idle Halt**

0: The Watchdog runs when the system is in idle mode.

1: The Watchdog stops when the system is in idle state.

- **WDDIS: Watchdog Disable**

0: Enables the Watchdog Timer.

1: Disables the Watchdog Timer.

### 15.5.3 Watchdog Timer Status Register

**Name:** WDT\_SR

**Address:** 0x400E1458

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	WDERR	WDUNF

- **WDUNF: Watchdog Underflow**

0: No Watchdog underflow occurred since the last read of WDT\_SR.

1: At least one Watchdog underflow occurred since the last read of WDT\_SR.

- **WDERR: Watchdog Error**

0: No Watchdog error occurred since the last read of WDT\_SR.

1: At least one Watchdog error occurred since the last read of WDT\_SR.



## 16. Supply Controller (SUPC)

### 16.1 Description

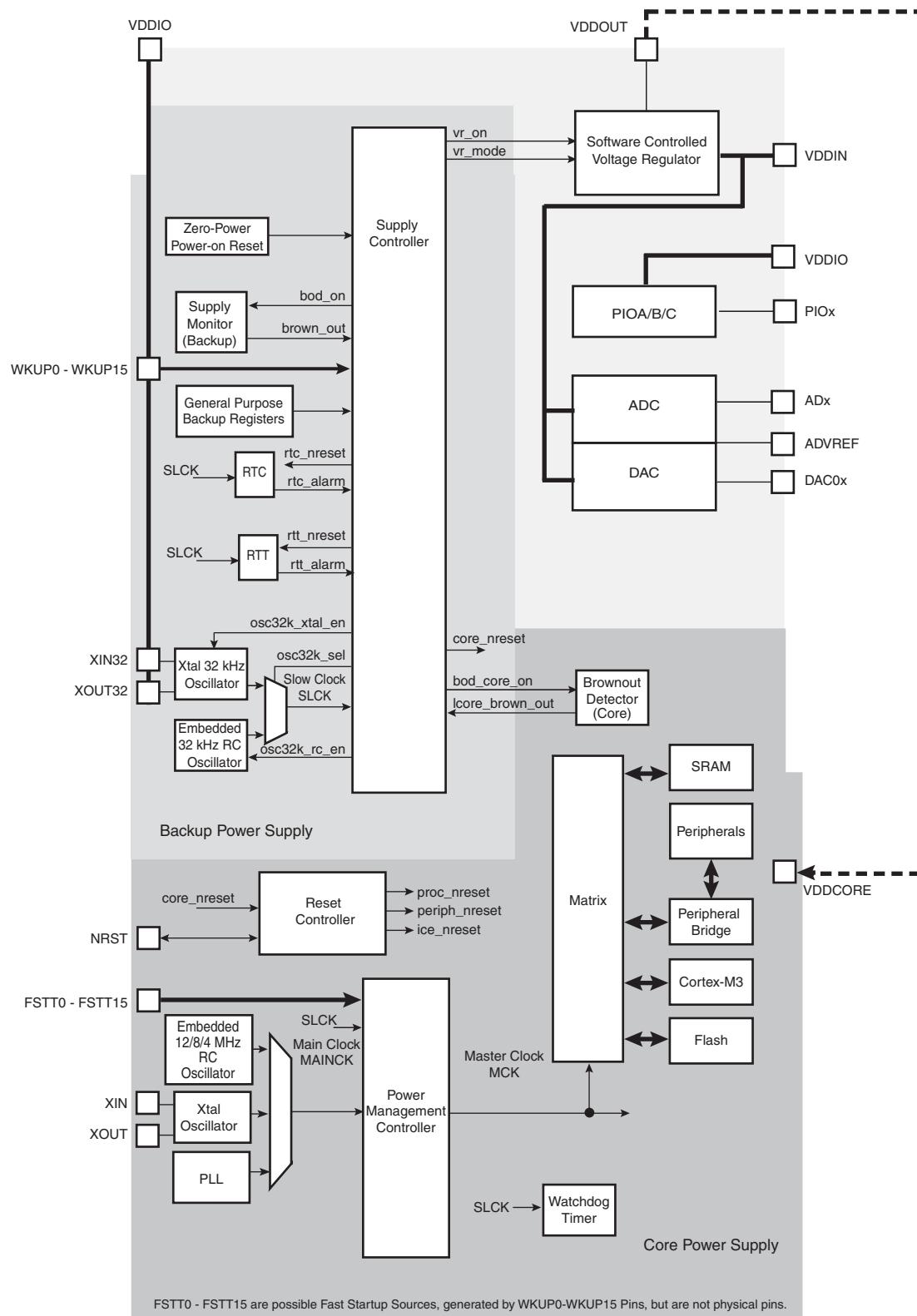
The Supply Controller (SUPC) controls the supply voltage of the Core of the system and manages the Backup Low Power Mode. In this mode, the current consumption is reduced to a few microamps for Backup power retention. Exit from this mode is possible on multiple wake-up sources including events on WKUP pins, or a Clock alarm. The SUPC also generates the Slow Clock by selecting either the Low Power RC oscillator or the Low Power Crystal oscillator.

### 16.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Manages the Core Power Supply VDDCORE and the Backup Low Power Mode by Controlling the Embedded Voltage Regulator
- Generates the Slow Clock SLCK, by Selecting Either the 22-42 kHz Low Power RC Oscillator or the 32 kHz Low Power Crystal Oscillator
- Supports Multiple Wake Up Sources, for Exit from Backup Low Power Mode
  - Force Wake Up Pin, with Programmable Debouncing
  - 16 Wake Up Inputs, with Programmable Debouncing
  - Real Time Clock Alarm
  - Real Time Timer Alarm
  - Supply Monitor Detection on VDDIO, with Programmable Scan Period and Voltage Threshold
- A Supply Monitor Detection on VDDIO or a Brownout Detection on VDDCORE can Trigger a Core Reset
- Embeds:
  - One 22 to 42 kHz Low Power RC Oscillator
  - One 32 kHz Low Power Crystal Oscillator
  - One Zero-Power Power-On Reset Cell
  - One Software Programmable Supply Monitor, on VDDIO Located in Backup Section
  - One Brownout Detector on VDDCORE Located in the Core

## 16.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 16-1.** Supply Controller Block Diagram



## 16.4 Supply Controller Functional Description

### 16.4.1 Supply Controller Overview

The device can be divided into two power supply areas:

- The VDDIO Power Supply: including the Supply Controller, a part of the Reset Controller, the Slow Clock switch, the General Purpose Backup Registers, the Supply Monitor and the Clock which includes the Real Time Timer and the Real Time Clock
- The Core Power Supply: including the other part of the Reset Controller, the Brownout Detector, the Processor, the SRAM memory, the FLASH memory and the Peripherals

The Supply Controller (SUPC) controls the supply voltage of the core power supply. The SUPC intervenes when the VDDIO power supply rises (when the system is starting) or when the Backup Low Power Mode is entered.

The SUPC also integrates the Slow Clock generator which is based on a 32 kHz crystal oscillator and an embedded 32 kHz RC oscillator. The Slow Clock defaults to the RC oscillator, but the software can enable the crystal oscillator and select it as the Slow Clock source.

The Supply Controller and the VDDIO power supply have a reset circuitry based on a zero-power power-on reset cell. The zero-power power-on reset allows the SUPC to start properly as soon as the VDDIO voltage becomes valid.

At startup of the system, once the voltage VDDIO is valid and the embedded 32 kHz RC oscillator is stabilized, the SUPC starts up the core by sequentially enabling the internal Voltage Regulator, waiting that the core voltage VDDCORE is valid, then releasing the reset signal of the core “vddcore\_nreset” signal.

Once the system has started, the user can program a supply monitor and/or a brownout detector. If the supply monitor detects a voltage on VDDIO that is too low, the SUPC can assert the reset signal of the core “vddcore\_nreset” signal until VDDIO is valid. Likewise, if the brownout detector detects a core voltage VDDCORE that is too low, the SUPC can assert the reset signal “vddcore\_nreset” until VDDCORE is valid.

When the Backup Low Power Mode is entered, the SUPC sequentially asserts the reset signal of the core power supply “vddcore\_nreset” and disables the voltage regulator, in order to supply only the VDDIO power supply. In this mode the current consumption is reduced to a few microamps for Backup part retention. Exit from this mode is possible on multiple wake-up sources including an event on WKUP pins, or a Clock alarm. To exit this mode, the SUPC operates in the same way as system startup.

#### 16.4.2 Slow Clock Generator

The Supply Controller embeds a slow clock generator that is supplied with the VDDIO power supply. As soon as the VDDIO is supplied, both the crystal oscillator and the embedded RC oscillator are powered up, but only the embedded RC oscillator is enabled. This allows the slow clock to be valid in a short time (about 100 µs).

The user can select the crystal oscillator to be the source of the slow clock, as it provides a more accurate frequency. The command is made by writing the Supply Controller Control Register (SUPC\_CR) with the XTALSEL bit at 1. This results in a sequence which first configures the PIO lines multiplexed with XIN32 and XOUT32 to be driven by the oscillator, then enables the crystal oscillator, then waits for 32,768 slow clock cycles, then switches the slow clock on the output of the crystal oscillator and then disables the RC oscillator to save power. The switch of the slow clock source is glitch free. The OSCSEL bit of the Supply Controller Status Register (SUPC\_SR) allows knowing when the switch sequence is done.

Coming back on the RC oscillator is only possible by shutting down the VDDIO power supply.

If the user does not need the crystal oscillator, the XIN32 and XOUT32 pins should be left unconnected.

The user can also set the crystal oscillator in bypass mode instead of connecting a crystal. In this case, the user has to provide the external clock signal on XIN32. The input characteristics of the XIN32 pin are given in the product electrical characteristics section. In order to set the bypass mode, the OSCBYPASS bit of the Supply Controller Mode Register (SUPC\_MR) needs to be set at 1.

#### 16.4.3 Voltage Regulator Control/Backup Low Power Mode

The Supply Controller can be used to control the embedded 1.8V voltage regulator.

The voltage regulator automatically adapts its quiescent current depending on the required load current. Please refer to the electrical characteristics section.

The programmer can switch off the voltage regulator, and thus put the device in Backup mode, by writing the Supply Controller Control Register (SUPC\_CR) with the VROFF bit at 1.

This can be done also by using WFE (Wait for Event) Cortex-M3 instruction with the deep mode bit set to 1.

The Backup mode can also be entered by executing the WFI (Wait for Interrupt) or WFE (Wait for Event) Cortex-M3 instructions. To select the Backup mode entry mechanism, two options are available, depending on the SLEEPONEXIT bit in the Cortex-M3 System Control register:

- Sleep-now: if the SLEEPONEXIT bit is cleared, the device enters Backup mode as soon as the WFI or WFE instruction is executed.
- Sleep-on-exit: if the SLEEPONEXIT bit is set when the WFI instruction is executed, the device enters Backup mode as soon as it exits the lowest priority ISR.

This asserts the vddcore\_nreset signal after the write resynchronization time which lasts, in the worse case, two slow clock cycles. Once the vddcore\_nreset signal is asserted, the processor and the peripherals are stopped one slow clock cycle before the core power supply shuts off.

When the user does not use the internal voltage regulator and wants to supply VDDCORE by an external supply, it is possible to disable the voltage regulator. Note that it is different from the Backup mode. Depending on the application, disabling the voltage regulator can reduce power consumption as the voltage regulator input (VDDIN) is shared with the ADC and DAC. This is done through ONREG bit in SUPC\_MR.

#### 16.4.4 Supply Monitor

The Supply Controller embeds a supply monitor which is located in the VDDIO Power Supply and which monitors VDDIO power supply.

The supply monitor can be used to prevent the processor from falling into an unpredictable state if the Main power supply drops below a certain level.

The threshold of the supply monitor is programmable. It can be selected from 1.9V to 3.4V by steps of 100 mV. This threshold is programmed in the SMTL field of the Supply Controller Supply Monitor Mode Register (SUPC\_SMMR).

The supply monitor can also be enabled during one slow clock period on every one of either 32, 256 or 2048 slow clock periods, according to the choice of the user. This can be configured by programming the SMSMPL field in SUPC\_SMMR.

Enabling the supply monitor for such reduced times allows to divide the typical supply monitor power consumption respectively by factors of 32, 256 or 2048, if the user does not need a continuous monitoring of the VDDIO power supply.

A supply monitor detection can either generate a reset of the core power supply or a wake up of the core power supply. Generating a core reset when a supply monitor detection occurs is enabled by writing the SMRSTEN bit to 1 in SUPC\_SMMR.

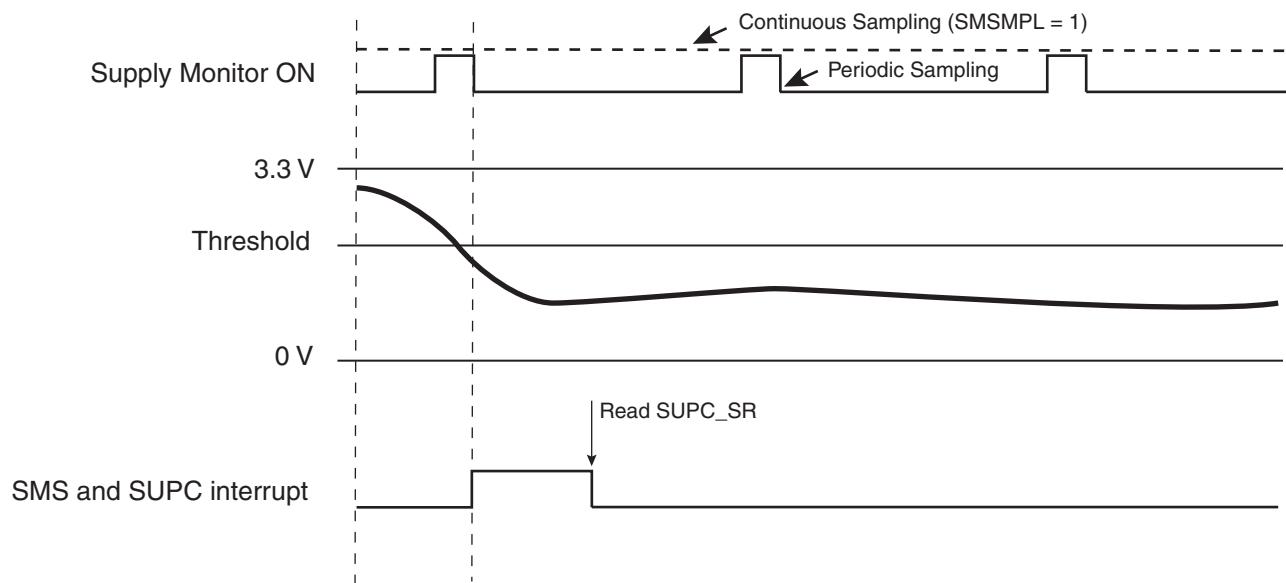
Waking up the core power supply when a supply monitor detection occurs can be enabled by programming the SMEN bit to 1 in the Supply Controller Wake Up Mode Register (SUPC\_WUMR).

The Supply Controller provides two status bits in the Supply Controller Status Register for the supply monitor which allows to determine whether the last wake up was due to the supply monitor:

- The SMOS bit provides real time information, which is updated at each measurement cycle or updated at each Slow Clock cycle, if the measurement is continuous.
- The SMS bit provides saved information and shows a supply monitor detection has occurred since the last read of SUPC\_SR.

The SMS bit can generate an interrupt if the SMIEN bit is set to 1 in the Supply Controller Supply Monitor Mode Register (SUPC\_SMMR).

**Figure 16-2.** Supply Monitor Status Bit and Associated Interrupt



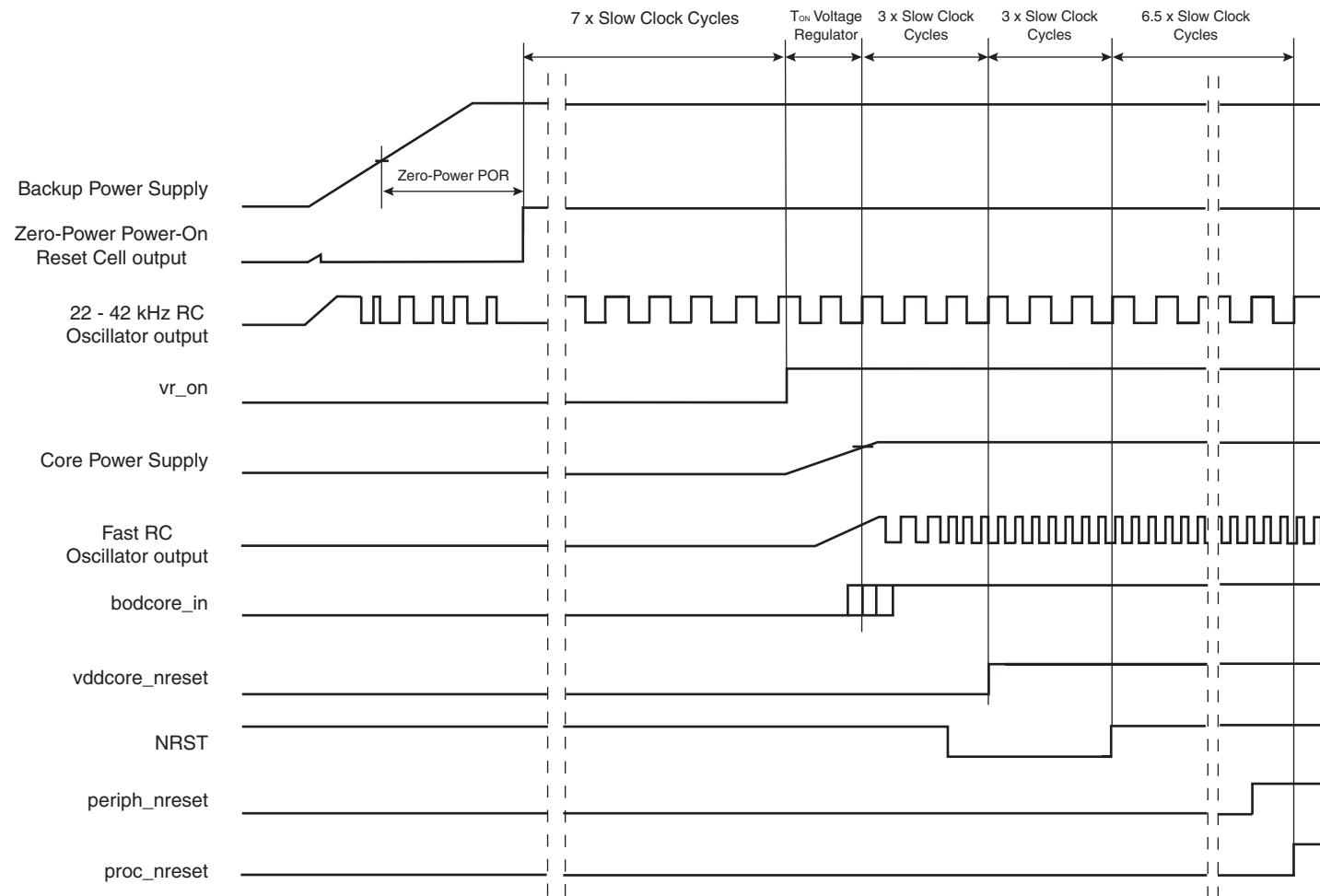
## 16.4.5 Power Supply Reset

### 16.4.5.1 Raising the Power Supply

As soon as the voltage VDDIO rises, the RC oscillator is powered up and the zero-power power-on reset cell maintains its output low as long as VDDIO has not reached its target voltage. During this time, the Supply Controller is entirely reset. When the VDDIO voltage becomes valid and zero-power power-on reset signal is released, a counter is started for 5 slow clock cycles. This is the time it takes for the 32 kHz RC oscillator to stabilize.

After this time, the voltage regulator is enabled. The core power supply rises and the brownout detector provides the bodcore\_in signal as soon as the core voltage VDDCORE is valid. This results in releasing the vddcore\_nreset signal to the Reset Controller after the bodcore\_in signal has been confirmed as being valid for at least one slow clock cycle.

**Figure 16-3.** Raising the VDDIO Power Supply



Note: After "proc\_nreset" rising, the core starts fetching instructions from Flash at 4 MHz.

#### 16.4.6 Core Reset

The Supply Controller manages the vddcore\_nreset signal to the Reset Controller, as described previously in [Section 16.4.5 "Power Supply Reset"](#). The vddcore\_nreset signal is normally asserted before shutting down the core power supply and released as soon as the core power supply is correctly regulated.

There are two additional sources which can be programmed to activate vddcore\_nreset:

- a supply monitor detection
- a brownout detection

##### 16.4.6.1 Supply Monitor Reset

The supply monitor is capable of generating a reset of the system. This can be enabled by setting the SMRSTEN bit in the Supply Controller Supply Monitor Mode Register (SUPC\_SMMR).

If SMRSTEN is set and if a supply monitor detection occurs, the vddcore\_nreset signal is immediately activated for a minimum of 1 slow clock cycle.

##### 16.4.6.2 Brownout Detector Reset

The brownout detector provides the bodcore\_in signal to the SUPC which indicates that the voltage regulation is operating as programmed. If this signal is lost for longer than 1 slow clock period while the voltage regulator is enabled, the Supply Controller can assert vddcore\_nreset. This feature is enabled by writing the bit, BODRSTEN (Brownout Detector Reset Enable) to 1 in the Supply Controller Mode Register (SUPC\_MR).

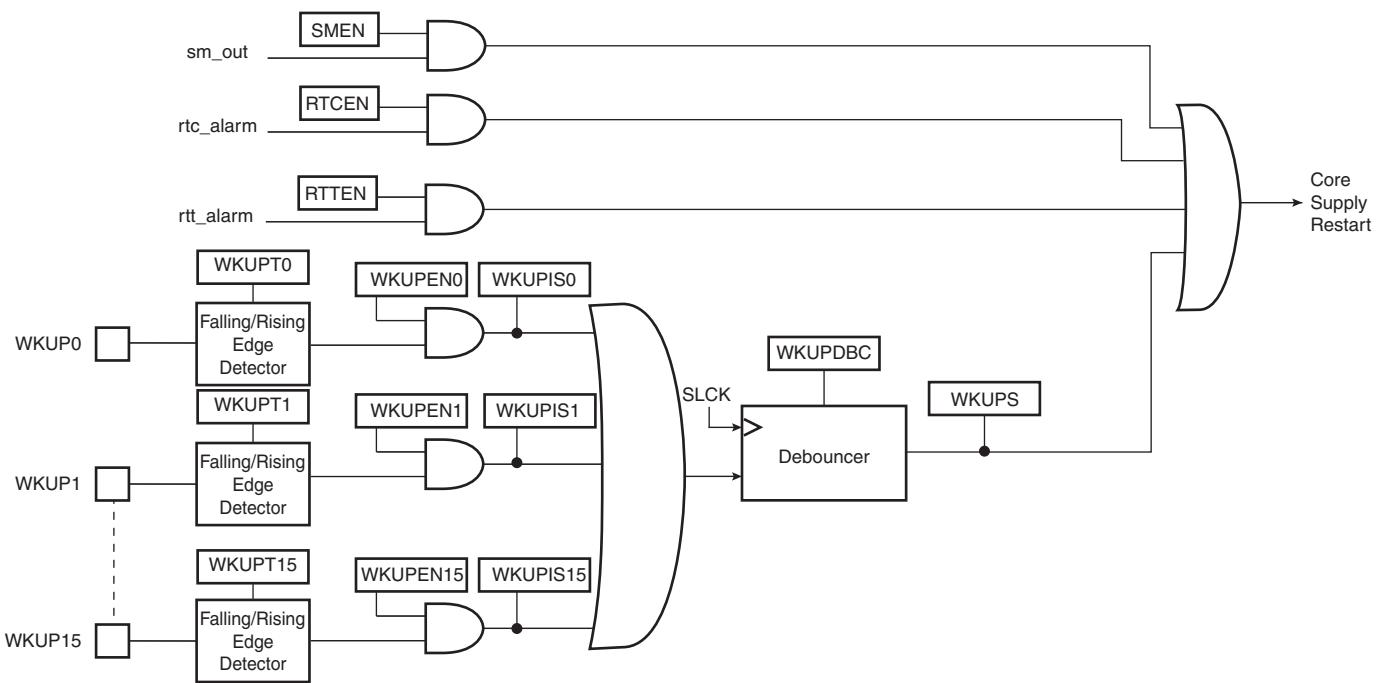
If BODRSTEN is set and the voltage regulation is lost (output voltage of the regulator too low), the vddcore\_nreset signal is asserted for a minimum of 1 slow clock cycle and then released if bodcore\_in has been reactivated. The BODRSTS bit is set in the Supply Controller Status Register (SUPC\_SR) so that the user can know the source of the last reset.

Until bodcore\_in is deactivated, the vddcore\_nreset signal remains active.

#### 16.4.7 Wake Up Sources

The wake up events allow the device to exit backup mode. When a wake up event is detected, the Supply Controller performs a sequence which automatically reenables the core power supply.

**Figure 16-4.** Wake Up Sources



#### 16.4.7.1 Wake Up Inputs

The wake up inputs, **WKUP0** to **WKUP15**, can be programmed to perform a wake up of the core power supply. Each input can be enabled by writing to 1 the corresponding bit, **WKUPEN0** to **WKUPEN 15**, in the Wake Up Inputs Register (**SUPC\_WUIR**). The wake up level can be selected with the corresponding polarity bit, **WKUPPL0** to **WKUPPL15**, also located in **SUPC\_WUIR**.

All the resulting signals are wired-ORed to trigger a debounce counter, which can be programmed with the **WKUPDBC** field in the Supply Controller Wake Up Mode Register (**SUPC\_WUMR**). The **WKUPDBC** field can select a debouncing period of 3, 32, 512, 4,096 or 32,768 slow clock cycles. This corresponds respectively to about 100 µs, about 1 ms, about 16 ms, about 128 ms and about 1 second (for a typical slow clock frequency of 32 kHz). Programming **WKUPDBC** to 0x0 selects an immediate wake up, i.e., an enabled **WKUP** pin must be active according to its polarity during a minimum of one slow clock period to wake up the core power supply.

If an enabled **WKUP** pin is asserted for a time longer than the debouncing period, a wake up of the core power supply is started and the signals, **WKUP0** to **WKUP15** as shown in [Figure 16-4](#), are latched in the Supply Controller Status Register (**SUPC\_SR**). This allows the user to identify the source of the wake up, however, if a new wake up condition occurs, the primary information is lost. No new wake up can be detected since the primary wake up condition has disappeared.

#### 16.4.7.2 *Clock Alarms*

The RTC and the RTT alarms can generate a wake up of the core power supply. This can be enabled by writing respectively, the bits RTCEN and RTTEN to 1 in the Supply Controller Wake Up Mode Register (SUPC\_WUMR).

The Supply Controller does not provide any status as the information is available in the User Interface of either the Real Time Timer or the Real Time Clock.

#### 16.4.7.3 *Supply Monitor Detection*

The supply monitor can generate a wakeup of the core power supply. See [Section 16.4.4 "Supply Monitor"](#).

## 16.5 Supply Controller (SUPC) User Interface

The User Interface of the Supply Controller is part of the System Controller User Interface.

### 16.5.1 System Controller (SYSC) User Interface

**Table 16-1.** System Controller Registers

Offset	System Controller Peripheral	Name
0x00-0x0C	Reset Controller	RSTC
0x10-0x2C	Supply Controller	SUPC
0x30-0x3C	Real Time Timer	RTT
0x50-0x5C	Watchdog	WDT
0x60-0x7C	Real Time Clock	RTC
0x90-0xDC	General Purpose Backup Register	GPBR

### 16.5.2 Supply Controller (SUPC) User Interface

**Table 16-2.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Supply Controller Control Register	SUPC_CR	Write-only	N/A
0x04	Supply Controller Supply Monitor Mode Register	SUPC_SMMR	Read-write	0x0000_0000
0x08	Supply Controller Mode Register	SUPC_MR	Read-write	0x0000_5A00
0x0C	Supply Controller Wake Up Mode Register	SUPC_WUMR	Read-write	0x0000_0000
0x10	Supply Controller Wake Up Inputs Register	SUPC_WUIR	Read-write	0x0000_0000
0x14	Supply Controller Status Register	SUPC_SR	Read-only	0x0000_0800
0x18	Reserved			

### 16.5.3 Supply Controller Control Register

**Name:** SUPC\_CR

**Address:** 0x400E1410

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
KEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	XTALSEL	VROFF	—	—

- **VROFF: Voltage Regulator Off**

0 (NO\_EFFECT) = no effect.

1 (STOP\_VREG) = if KEY is correct, asserts vddcore\_nreset and stops the voltage regulator.

- **XTALSEL: Crystal Oscillator Select**

0 (NO\_EFFECT) = no effect.

1 (CRYSTAL\_SEL) = if KEY is correct, switches the slow clock on the crystal oscillator output.

- **KEY: Password**

Should be written to value 0xA5. Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation.

#### 16.5.4 Supply Controller Supply Monitor Mode Register

**Name:** SUPC\_SMMR

**Address:** 0x400E1414

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	SMIEN	SMRSTEN	-	SMSMPL		
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	SMTH		

- **SMTH:** Supply Monitor Threshold

Value	Name	Description
0x0	1_9V	1.9 V
0x1	2_0V	2.0 V
0x2	2_1V	2.1 V
0x3	2_2V	2.2 V
0x4	2_3V	2.3 V
0x5	2_4V	2.4 V
0x6	2_5V	2.5 V
0x7	2_6V	2.6 V
0x8	2_7V	2.7 V
0x9	2_8V	2.8 V
0xA	2_9V	2.9 V
0xB	3_0V	3.0 V
0xC	3_1V	3.1 V
0xD	3_2V	3.2 V
0xE	3_3V	3.3 V
0xF	3_4V	3.4 V

- **SMSMPL: Supply Monitor Sampling Period**

Value	Name	Description
0x0	SMD	Supply Monitor disabled
0x1	CSM	Continuous Supply Monitor
0x2	32SLCK	Supply Monitor enabled one SLCK period every 32 SLCK periods
0x3	256SLCK	Supply Monitor enabled one SLCK period every 256 SLCK periods
0x4	2048SLCK	Supply Monitor enabled one SLCK period every 2,048 SLCK periods
0x5-0x7	Reserved	Reserved

- **SMRSTEN: Supply Monitor Reset Enable**

0 (NOT\_ENABLE) = the core reset signal “vddcore\_nreset” is not affected when a supply monitor detection occurs.

1 (ENABLE) = the core reset signal, vddcore\_nreset is asserted when a supply monitor detection occurs.

- **SMIEN: Supply Monitor Interrupt Enable**

0 (NOT\_ENABLE) = the SUPC interrupt signal is not affected when a supply monitor detection occurs.

1 (ENABLE) = the SUPC interrupt signal is asserted when a supply monitor detection occurs.

### 16.5.5 Supply Controller Mode Register

**Name:** SUPC\_MR

**Address:** 0x400E1418

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
KEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	OSCBYPASS	—	—	—	—
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	ONREG	BODDIS	BODRSTEN	—	—	—	—
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

- **BODRSTEN: Brownout Detector Reset Enable**

0 (NOT\_ENABLE) = the core reset signal “vddcore\_nreset” is not affected when a brownout detection occurs.

1 (ENABLE) = the core reset signal, vddcore\_nreset is asserted when a brownout detection occurs.

- **BODDIS: Brownout Detector Disable**

0 (ENABLE) = the core brownout detector is enabled.

1 (DISABLE) = the core brownout detector is disabled.

- **ONREG: Voltage Regulator enable**

0 (ONREG\_UNUSED) = Voltage Regulator is not used

1 (ONREG\_USED) = Voltage Regulator is used

- **OSCBYPASS: Oscillator Bypass**

0 (NO\_EFFECT) = no effect. Clock selection depends on XTALSEL value.

1 (BYPASS) = the 32-KHz XTAL oscillator is selected and is put in bypass mode.

- **KEY: Password Key**

Should be written to value 0xA5. Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation.

### 16.5.6 Supply Controller Wake Up Mode Register

**Name:** SUPC\_WUMR

**Address:** 0x400E141C

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	WKUPDBC			-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	RTCEN	RTTEN	SMEN	-

- **SMEN: Supply Monitor Wake Up Enable**

0 (NOT\_ENABLE) = the supply monitor detection has no wake up effect.

1 (ENABLE) = the supply monitor detection forces the wake up of the core power supply.

- **RTTEN: Real Time Timer Wake Up Enable**

0 (NOT\_ENABLE) = the RTT alarm signal has no wake up effect.

1 (ENABLE) = the RTT alarm signal forces the wake up of the core power supply.

- **RTCEN: Real Time Clock Wake Up Enable**

0 (NOT\_ENABLE) = the RTC alarm signal has no wake up effect.

1 (ENABLE) = the RTC alarm signal forces the wake up of the core power supply.

- **WKUPDBC: Wake Up Inputs Debouncer Period**

Value	Name	Description
0	IMMEDIATE	Immediate, no debouncing, detected active at least on one Slow Clock edge.
1	3_SCLK	WKUPx shall be in its active state for at least 3 SLCK periods
2	32_SCLK	WKUPx shall be in its active state for at least 32 SLCK periods
3	512_SCLK	WKUPx shall be in its active state for at least 512 SLCK periods
4	4096_SCLK	WKUPx shall be in its active state for at least 4,096 SLCK periods
5	32768_SCLK	WKUPx shall be in its active state for at least 32,768 SLCK periods
6	Reserved	Reserved
7	Reserved	Reserved

### 16.5.7 System Controller Wake Up Inputs Register

**Name:** SUPC\_WUIR

**Address:** 0x400E1420

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WKUPT15	WKUPT14	WKUPT13	WKUPT12	WKUPT11	WKUPT10	WKUPT9	WKUPT8
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WKUPT7	WKUPT6	WKUPT5	WKUPT4	WKUPT3	WKUPT2	WKUPT1	WKUPT0
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WKUPEN15	WKUPEN14	WKUPEN13	WKUPEN12	WKUPEN11	WKUPEN10	WKUPEN9	WKUPEN8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
WKUPEN7	WKUPEN6	WKUPEN5	WKUPEN4	WKUPEN3	WKUPEN2	WKUPEN1	WKUPEN0

- **WKUPEN0 - WKUPEN15: Wake Up Input Enable 0 to 15**

0 (NOT\_ENABLE) = the corresponding wake-up input has no wake up effect.

1 (ENABLE) = the corresponding wake-up input forces the wake up of the core power supply.

- **WKUPT0 - WKUPT15: Wake Up Input Transition 0 to 15**

0 (HIGH\_TO\_LOW) = a high to low level transition on the corresponding wake-up input forces the wake up of the core power supply.

1 (LOW\_TO\_HIGH) = a low to high level transition on the corresponding wake-up input forces the wake up of the core power supply.

### 16.5.8 Supply Controller Status Register

**Name:** SUPC\_SR

**Address:** 0x400E1424

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WKUPIS15	WKUPIS14	WKUPIS13	WKUPIS12	WKUPIS11	WKUPIS10	WKUPIS9	WKUPIS8
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WKUPIS7	WKUPIS6	WKUPIS5	WKUPIS4	WKUPIS3	WKUPIS2	WKUPIS1	WKUPIS0
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
OSCSEL	SMOS	SMS	SMRSTS	BODRSTS	SMWS	WKUPS	—

Note: Because of the asynchronism between the Slow Clock (SCLK) and the System Clock (MCK), the status register flag reset is taken into account only 2 slow clock cycles after the read of the SUPC\_SR.

- **WKUPS: WKUP Wake Up Status**

0 (NO) = no wake up due to the assertion of the WKUP pins has occurred since the last read of SUPC\_SR.

1 (PRESENT) = at least one wake up due to the assertion of the WKUP pins has occurred since the last read of SUPC\_SR.

- **SMWS: Supply Monitor Detection Wake Up Status**

0 (NO) = no wake up due to a supply monitor detection has occurred since the last read of SUPC\_SR.

1 (PRESENT) = at least one wake up due to a supply monitor detection has occurred since the last read of SUPC\_SR.

- **BODRSTS: Brownout Detector Reset Status**

0 (NO) = no core brownout rising edge event has been detected since the last read of the SUPC\_SR.

1 (PRESENT) = at least one brownout output rising edge event has been detected since the last read of the SUPC\_SR.

When the voltage remains below the defined threshold, there is no rising edge event at the output of the brownout detection cell. The rising edge event occurs only when there is a voltage transition below the threshold.

- **SMRSTS: Supply Monitor Reset Status**

0 (NO) = no supply monitor detection has generated a core reset since the last read of the SUPC\_SR.

1 (PRESENT) = at least one supply monitor detection has generated a core reset since the last read of the SUPC\_SR.

- **SMS: Supply Monitor Status**

0 (NO) = no supply monitor detection since the last read of SUPC\_SR.

1 (PRESENT) = at least one supply monitor detection since the last read of SUPC\_SR.

- **SMOS: Supply Monitor Output Status**

0 (HIGH) = the supply monitor detected VDDIO higher than its threshold at its last measurement.

1 (LOW) = the supply monitor detected VDDIO lower than its threshold at its last measurement.

## 17. General Purpose Backup Registers (GPBR)

### 17.1 Description

The System Controller embeds Eight general-purpose backup registers.

### 17.2 Embedded Characteristics

Eight 32-bit General Purpose Backup Registers

### 17.3 General Purpose Backup Registers (GPBR) User Interface

Table 17-1. Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0	General Purpose Backup Register 0	SYS_GPBR0	Read-write	-
...	...	...	...	...
0x1C	General Purpose Backup Register 7	SYS_GPBR7	Read-write	-

## 17.3.0.1 General Purpose Backup Register x

**Name:** SYS\_GPBRx**Addresses:** 0x400E1490 [0] .. 0x400E149C [3]**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
GPBR_VALUEEx							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
GPBR_VALUEEx							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
GPBR_VALUEEx							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
GPBR_VALUEEx							

- **GPBR\_VALUEEx:** Value of GPBR x

## 18. Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC)

### 18.1 Description

The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) ensures the interface of the Flash block with the 32-bit internal bus.

Its 128-bit or 64-bit wide memory interface increases performance. It also manages the programming, erasing, locking and unlocking sequences of the Flash using a full set of commands. One of the commands returns the embedded Flash descriptor definition that informs the system about the Flash organization, thus making the software generic.

### 18.2 Product Dependencies

#### 18.2.1 Power Management

The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) is continuously clocked. The Power Management Controller has no effect on its behavior.

#### 18.2.2 Interrupt Sources

The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) interrupt line is connected to the Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC). Using the Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) interrupt requires the NVIC to be programmed first. The EEFC interrupt is generated only on FRDY bit rising.

**Table 18-1.** Peripheral IDs

Instance	ID
EFC	6

### 18.3 Functional Description

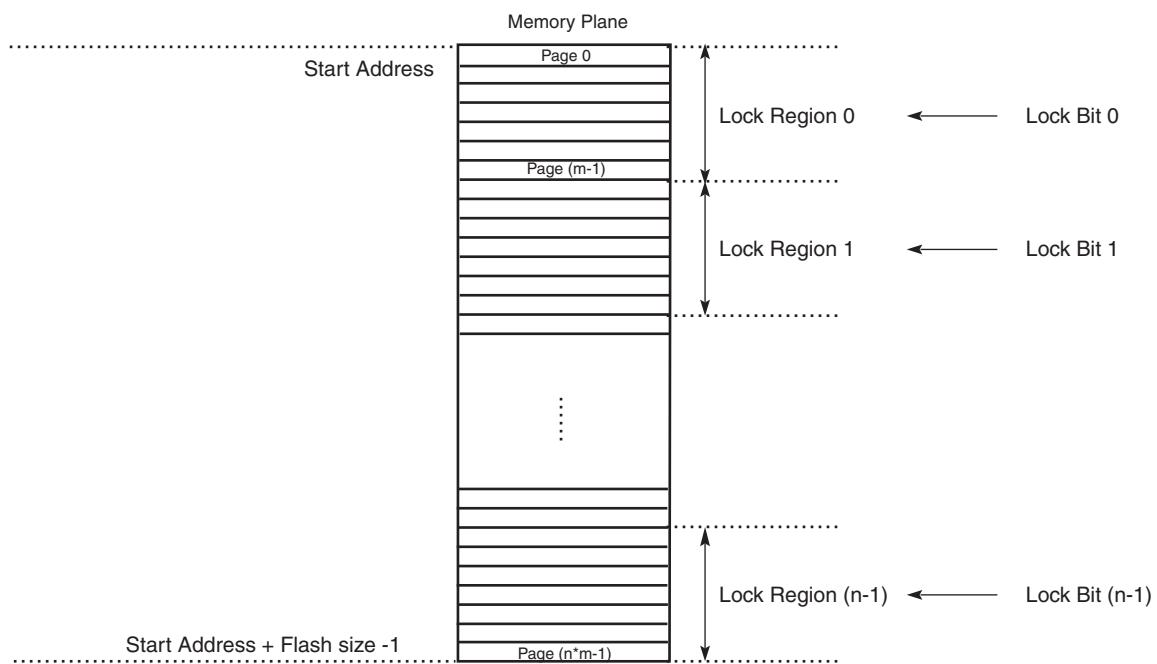
#### 18.3.1 Embedded Flash Organization

The embedded Flash interfaces directly with the 32-bit internal bus. The embedded Flash is composed of:

- One memory plane organized in several pages of the same size.
- Two 128-bit or 64-bit read buffers used for code read optimization.
- One 128-bit or 64-bit read buffer used for data read optimization.
- One write buffer that manages page programming. The write buffer size is equal to the page size. This buffer is write-only and accessible all along the 1 MByte address space, so that each word can be written to its final address.
- Several lock bits used to protect write/erase operation on several pages (lock region). A lock bit is associated with a lock region composed of several pages in the memory plane.
- Several bits that may be set and cleared through the Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) interface, called General Purpose Non Volatile Memory bits (GPNVM bits).

The embedded Flash size, the page size, the lock regions organization and GPNVM bits definition are described in the product definition section. The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) returns a descriptor of the Flash controlled after a get descriptor command issued by the application (see “[Getting Embedded Flash Descriptor](#)” on page 280).



**Figure 18-1.** Embedded Flash Organization

### 18.3.2 Read Operations

An optimized controller manages embedded Flash reads, thus increasing performance when the processor is running in Thumb2 mode by means of the 128- or 64-bit wide memory interface.

The Flash memory is accessible through 8-, 16- and 32-bit reads.

As the Flash block size is smaller than the address space reserved for the internal memory area, the embedded Flash wraps around the address space and appears to be repeated within it.

The read operations can be performed with or without wait states. Wait states must be programmed in the field FWS (Flash Read Wait State) in the Flash Mode Register (EEFC\_FMR). Defining FWS to be 0 enables the single-cycle access of the embedded Flash. Refer to the Electrical Characteristics for more details.

#### 18.3.2.1 128-bit or 64-bit Access Mode

By default the read accesses of the Flash are performed through a 128-bit wide memory interface. It enables better system performance especially when 2 or 3 wait state needed.

For systems requiring only 1 wait state, or to privilege current consumption rather than performance, the user can select a 64-bit wide memory access via the FAM bit in the Flash Mode Register (EEFC\_FMR)

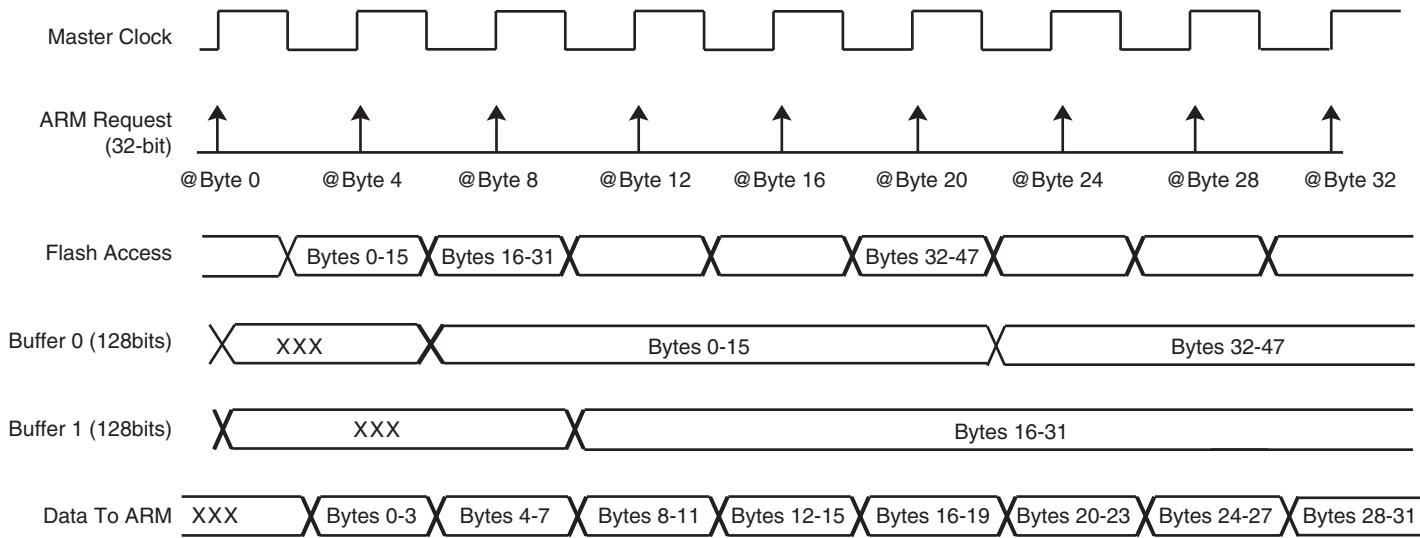
Please refer to the electrical characteristics section of the product datasheet for more details.

#### 18.3.2.2 Code Read Optimization

A system of 2 x 128-bit or 2 x 64-bit buffers is added in order to optimize sequential Code Fetch.

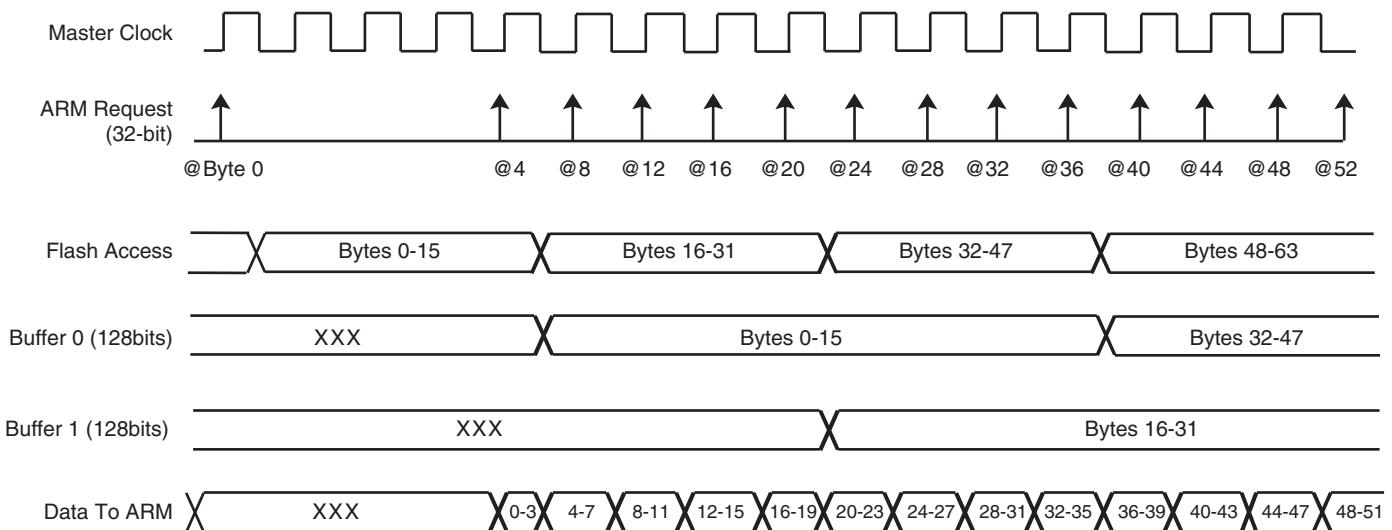
Note: Immediate consecutive code read accesses are not mandatory to benefit from this optimization.

**Figure 18-2.** Code Read Optimization for FWS = 0



Note: When FWS is equal to 0, all the accesses are performed in a single-cycle access.

**Figure 18-3.** Code Read Optimization for FWS = 3



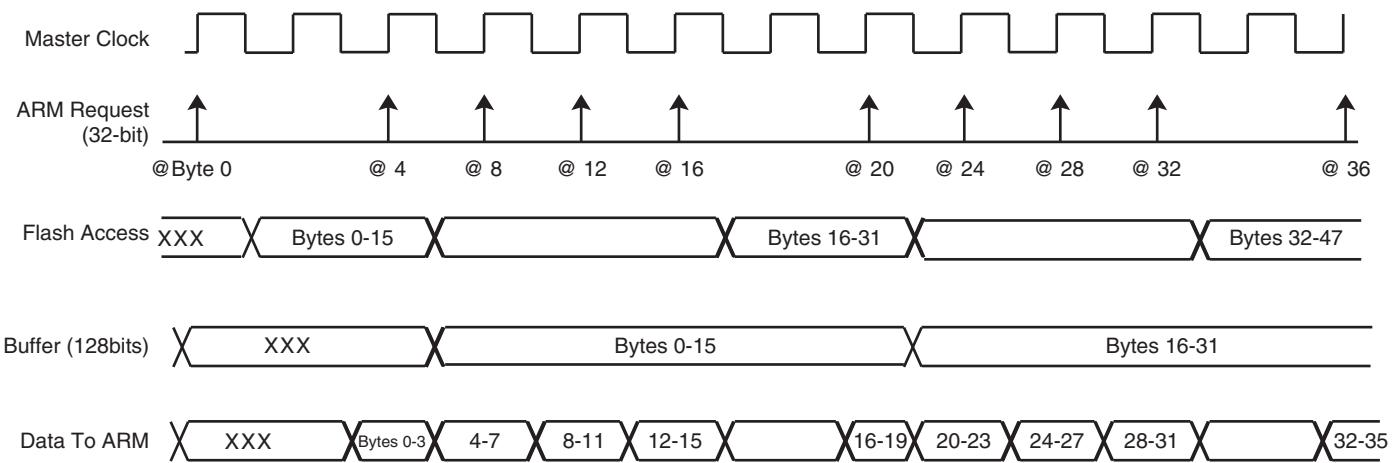
Note: When FWS is included between 1 and 3, in case of sequential reads, the first access takes (FWS+1) cycles, the other ones only 1 cycle.

#### 18.3.2.3 Data Read Optimization

The organization of the Flash in 128 bits (or 64 bits) is associated with two 128-bit (or 64-bit) prefetch buffers and one 128-bit (or 64-bit) data read buffer, thus providing maximum system performance. This buffer is added in order to store the requested data plus all the data contained in the 128-bit (64-bit) aligned data. This speeds up sequential data reads if, for example, FWS is equal to 1 (see [Figure 18-4](#)).

Note: No consecutive data read accesses are mandatory to benefit from this optimization.

**Figure 18-4.** Data Read Optimization for FWS = 1



### 18.3.3 Flash Commands

The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) offers a set of commands such as programming the memory Flash, locking and unlocking lock regions, consecutive programming and locking and full Flash erasing, etc.

Commands and read operations can be performed in parallel only on different memory planes. Code can be fetched from one memory plane while a write or an erase operation is performed on another.

**Table 18-2.** Set of Commands

Command	Value	Mnemonic
Get Flash Descriptor	0x00	GETD
Write page	0x01	WP
Write page and lock	0x02	WPL
Erase page and write page	0x03	EWP
Erase page and write page then lock	0x04	EWPL
Erase all	0x05	EA
Set Lock Bit	0x08	SLB
Clear Lock Bit	0x09	CLB
Get Lock Bit	0x0A	GLB
Set GPNVM Bit	0x0B	SGPB
Clear GPNVM Bit	0x0C	CGPB
Get GPNVM Bit	0x0D	GGPB
Start Read Unique Identifier	0x0E	STUI
Stop Read Unique Identifier	0x0F	SPUI
Get CALIB Bit	0x10	GCALB

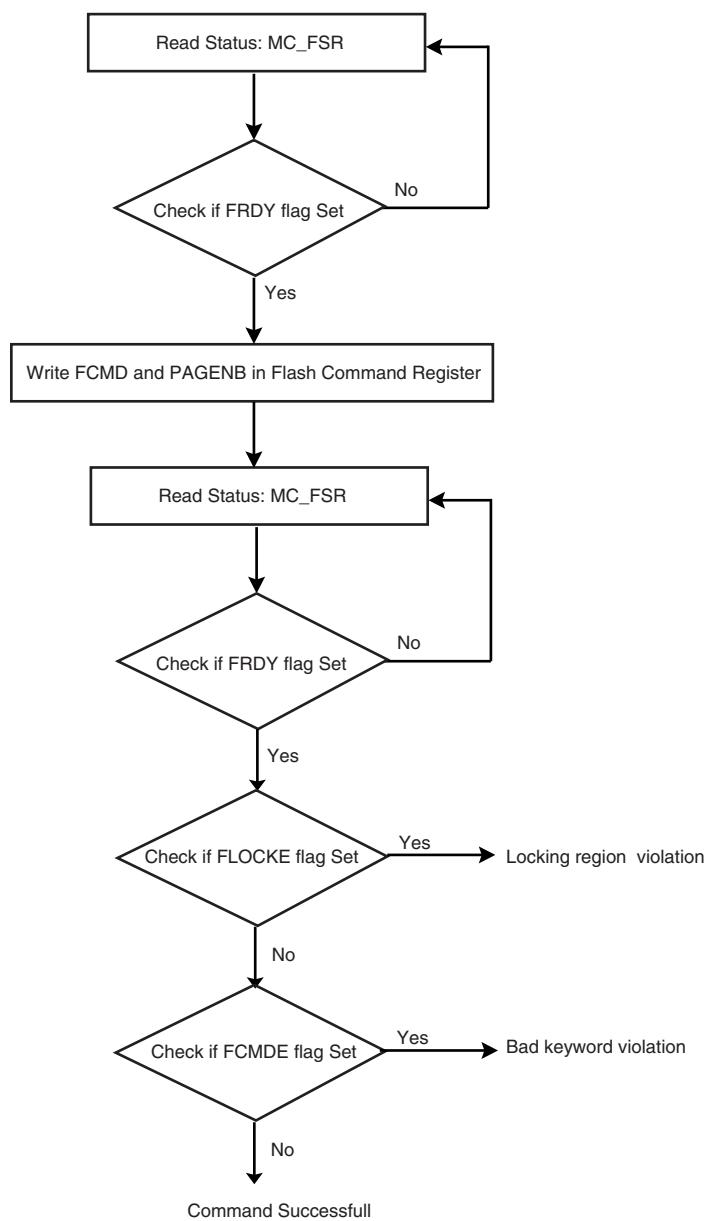
In order to perform one of these commands, the Flash Command Register (EEFC\_FCR) has to be written with the correct command using the FCMD field. As soon as the EEFC\_FCR register is written, **the FRDY flag and the FVALUE field in the EEFC\_FRR register are automatically cleared**. Once the current command is achieved, then the FRDY flag is automatically set. If an interrupt has been enabled by setting the FRDY bit in EEFC\_FMR, the corresponding interrupt line of the NVIC is activated. (Note that this is true for all commands except for the STUI Command. The FRDY flag is not set when the STUI command is achieved.)

All the commands are protected by the same keyword, which has to be written in the 8 highest bits of the EEFC\_FCR register.

Writing EEFC\_FCR with data that does not contain the correct key and/or with an invalid command has no effect on the whole memory plane, but the FCMDE flag is set in the EEFC\_FSR register. This flag is automatically cleared by a read access to the EEFC\_FSR register.

When the current command writes or erases a page in a locked region, the command has no effect on the whole memory plane, but the FLOCKE flag is set in the EEFC\_FSR register. This flag is automatically cleared by a read access to the EEFC\_FSR register.

**Figure 18-5.** Command State Chart



#### 18.3.3.1 Getting Embedded Flash Descriptor

This command allows the system to learn about the Flash organization. The system can take full advantage of this information. For instance, a device could be replaced by one with more Flash capacity, and so the software is able to adapt itself to the new configuration.

To get the embedded Flash descriptor, the application writes the GETD command in the EEFC\_FCR register. The first word of the descriptor can be read by the software application in the EEFC\_FRR register as soon as the FRDY flag in the EEFC\_FSR register rises. The next reads of the EEFC\_FRR register provide the following word of the descriptor. If extra read oper-

ations to the EEFC\_FRR register are done after the last word of the descriptor has been returned, then the EEFC\_FRR register value is 0 until the next valid command.

**Table 18-3.** Flash Descriptor Definition

Symbol	Word Index	Description
FL_ID	0	Flash Interface Description
FL_SIZE	1	Flash size in bytes
FL_PAGE_SIZE	2	Page size in bytes
FL_NB_PLANE	3	Number of planes.
FL_PLANE[0]	4	Number of bytes in the first plane.
...		
FL_PLANE[FL_NB_PLANE-1]	4 + FL_NB_PLANE - 1	Number of bytes in the last plane.
FL_NB_LOCK	4 + FL_NB_PLANE	Number of lock bits. A bit is associated with a lock region. A lock bit is used to prevent write or erase operations in the lock region.
FL_LOCK[0]	4 + FL_NB_PLANE + 1	Number of bytes in the first lock region.
...		

#### 18.3.3.2 Write Commands

Several commands can be used to program the Flash.

Flash technology requires that an erase is done before programming. The full memory plane can be erased at the same time, or several pages can be erased at the same time (refer to [Section "The Partial Programming mode works only with 128-bit \(or higher\) boundaries. It cannot be used with boundaries lower than 128 bits \(8, 16 or 32-bit for example.\)](#)). Also, a page erase can be automatically done before a page write using EWP or EWPL commands.

After programming, the page (the whole lock region) can be locked to prevent miscellaneous write or erase sequences. The lock bit can be automatically set after page programming using WPL or EWPL commands.

Data to be written are stored in an internal latch buffer. The size of the latch buffer corresponds to the page size. The latch buffer wraps around within the internal memory area address space and is repeated as many times as the number of pages within this address space.

Note: Writing of 8-bit and 16-bit data is not allowed and may lead to unpredictable data corruption.  
Write operations are performed in a number of wait states equal to the number of wait states for read operations.

Data are written to the latch buffer before the programming command is written to the Flash Command Register EEFC\_FCR. The sequence is as follows:

- Write the full page, at any page address, within the internal memory area address space.
- Programming starts as soon as the page number and the programming command are written to the Flash Command Register. The FRDY bit in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) is automatically cleared.
- When programming is completed, the FRDY bit in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) rises. If an interrupt has been enabled by setting the bit FRDY in EEFC\_FMR, the corresponding interrupt line of the NVIC is activated.

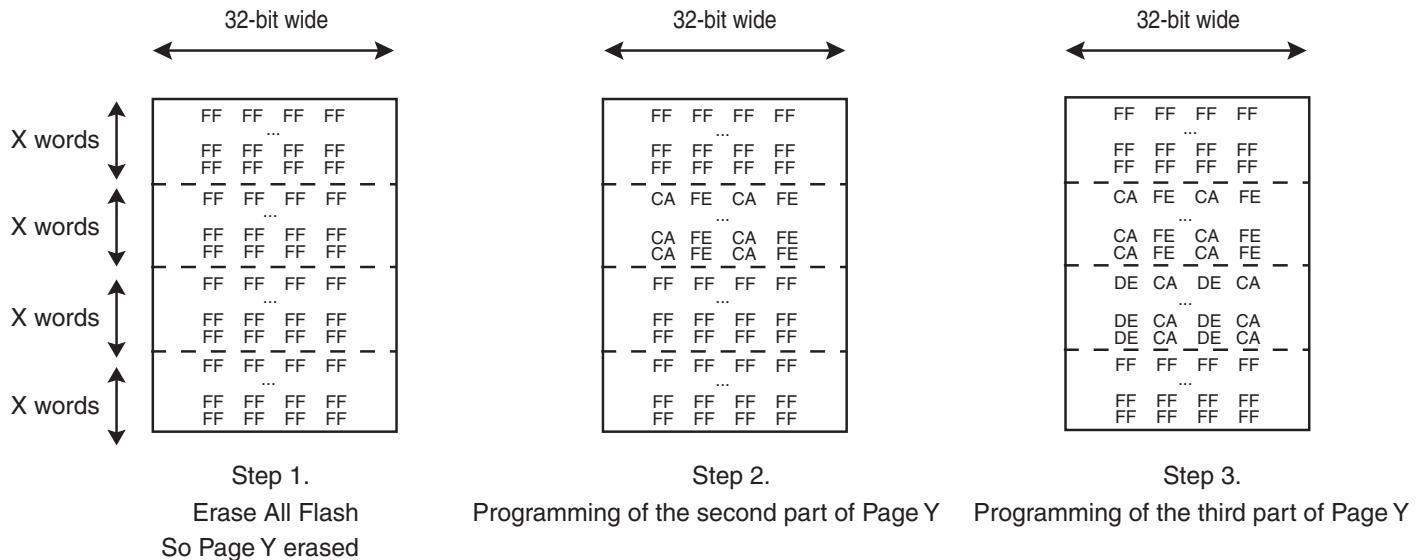


Two errors can be detected in the EEFC\_FSR register after a programming sequence:

- a Command Error: a bad keyword has been written in the EEFC\_FCR register.
- a Lock Error: the page to be programmed belongs to a locked region. A command must be previously run to unlock the corresponding region.

By using the WP command, a page can be programmed in several steps if it has been erased before (see [Figure 18-6](#)).

**Figure 18-6.** Example of Partial Page Programming



The Partial Programming mode works only with 128-bit (or higher) boundaries. It cannot be used with boundaries lower than 128 bits (8, 16 or 32-bit for example).

#### 18.3.3.3 Erase Commands

Erase commands are allowed only on unlocked regions.

The erase sequence is:

- Erase starts as soon as one of the erase commands and the FARG field are written in the Flash Command Register.
- When the programming completes, the FRDY bit in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) rises. If an interrupt has been enabled by setting the FRDY bit in EEFC\_FMR, the interrupt line of the NVIC is activated.

Two errors can be detected in the EEFC\_FSR register after a programming sequence:

- a Command Error: a bad keyword has been written in the EEFC\_FCR register.
- a Lock Error: at least one page to be erased belongs to a locked region. The erase command has been refused, no page has been erased. A command must be run previously to unlock the corresponding region.

#### 18.3.3.4 Lock Bit Protection

Lock bits are associated with several pages in the embedded Flash memory plane. This defines lock regions in the embedded Flash memory plane. They prevent writing/erasing protected pages.

The lock sequence is:

- The Set Lock command (SLB) and a page number to be protected are written in the Flash Command Register.
- When the locking completes, the FRDY bit in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) rises. If an interrupt has been enabled by setting the FRDY bit in EEFC\_FMR, the interrupt line of the NVIC is activated.
- If the lock bit number is greater than the total number of lock bits, then the command has no effect. The result of the SLB command can be checked running a GLB (Get Lock Bit) command.

One error can be detected in the EEFC\_FSR register after a programming sequence:

- a Command Error: a bad keyword has been written in the EEFC\_FCR register.

It is possible to clear lock bits previously set. Then the locked region can be erased or programmed. The unlock sequence is:

- The Clear Lock command (CLB) and a page number to be unprotected are written in the Flash Command Register.
- When the unlock completes, the FRDY bit in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) rises. If an interrupt has been enabled by setting the FRDY bit in EEFC\_FMR, the interrupt line of the NVIC is activated.
- If the lock bit number is greater than the total number of lock bits, then the command has no effect.

One error can be detected in the EEFC\_FSR register after a programming sequence:

- a Command Error: a bad keyword has been written in the EEFC\_FCR register.

The status of lock bits can be returned by the Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC). The Get Lock Bit status sequence is:

- The Get Lock Bit command (GLB) is written in the Flash Command Register, FARG field is meaningless.
- Lock bits can be read by the software application in the EEFC\_FRR register. The first word read corresponds to the 32 first lock bits, next reads providing the next 32 lock bits as long as it is meaningful. Extra reads to the EEFC\_FRR register return 0.

For example, if the third bit of the first word read in the EEFC\_FRR is set, then the third lock region is locked.

One error can be detected in the EEFC\_FSR register after a programming sequence:

- a Command Error: a bad keyword has been written in the EEFC\_FCR register.

Note: Access to the Flash in read is permitted when a set, clear or get lock bit command is performed.

#### 18.3.3.5 GPNVM Bit

GPNVM bits do not interfere with the embedded Flash memory plane. Refer to the product definition section for information on the GPNVM Bit Action.

The set GPNVM bit sequence is:

- Start the Set GPNVM Bit command (SGPB) by writing the Flash Command Register with the SGPB command and the number of the GPNVM bit to be set.



- When the GPVNM bit is set, the bit FRDY in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) rises. If an interrupt was enabled by setting the FRDY bit in EEFC\_FMR, the interrupt line of the NVIC is activated.
- If the GPNVM bit number is greater than the total number of GPNVM bits, then the command has no effect. The result of the SGPB command can be checked by running a GGPB (Get GPNVM Bit) command.

One error can be detected in the EEFC\_FSR register after a programming sequence:

- A Command Error: a bad keyword has been written in the EEFC\_FCR register.

It is possible to clear GPNVM bits previously set. The clear GPNVM bit sequence is:

- Start the Clear GPNVM Bit command (CGPB) by writing the Flash Command Register with CGPB and the number of the GPNVM bit to be cleared.
- When the clear completes, the FRDY bit in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) rises. If an interrupt has been enabled by setting the FRDY bit in EEFC\_FMR, the interrupt line of the NVIC is activated.
- If the GPNVM bit number is greater than the total number of GPNVM bits, then the command has no effect.

One error can be detected in the EEFC\_FSR register after a programming sequence:

- A Command Error: a bad keyword has been written in the EEFC\_FCR register.

The status of GPNVM bits can be returned by the Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC). The sequence is:

- Start the Get GPNVM bit command by writing the Flash Command Register with GGPB. The FARG field is meaningless.
- GPNVM bits can be read by the software application in the EEFC\_FRR register. The first word read corresponds to the 32 first GPNVM bits, following reads provide the next 32 GPNVM bits as long as it is meaningful. Extra reads to the EEFC\_FRR register return 0.

For example, if the third bit of the first word read in the EEFC\_FRR is set, then the third GPNVM bit is active.

One error can be detected in the EEFC\_FSR register after a programming sequence:

- a Command Error: a bad keyword has been written in the EEFC\_FCR register.

Note: Access to the Flash in read is permitted when a set, clear or get GPNVM bit command is performed.

#### 18.3.3.6 Calibration Bit

Calibration bits do not interfere with the embedded Flash memory plane.

It is impossible to modify the calibration bits.

The status of calibration bits can be returned by the Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC). The sequence is:

- Issue the Get CALIB Bit command by writing the Flash Command Register with GCALB (see [Table 18-2](#)). The FARG field is meaningless.
- Calibration bits can be read by the software application in the EEFC\_FRR register. The first word read corresponds to the 32 first calibration bits, following reads provide the next 32 calibration bits as long as it is meaningful. Extra reads to the EEFC\_FRR register return 0.

The 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator is calibrated in production. This calibration can be read through the Get CALIB Bit command. The table below shows the bit implementation for each frequency:

RC Calibration Frequency	EEFC_FRR Bits
8 MHz output	[28 - 22]
12 MHz output	[38 - 32]

The RC calibration for 4 MHz is set to 1,000,000.

#### 18.3.3.7 Security Bit Protection

When the security is enabled, access to the Flash, either through the JTAG/SWD interface or through the Fast Flash Programming Interface, is forbidden. This ensures the confidentiality of the code programmed in the Flash.

The security bit is GPNVM0.

Disabling the security bit can only be achieved by asserting the ERASE pin at 1, and after a full Flash erase is performed. When the security bit is deactivated, all accesses to the Flash are permitted.

#### 18.3.3.8 Unique Identifier

Each part is programmed with a 128-bit Unique Identifier. It can be used to generate keys for example.

To read the Unique Identifier the sequence is:

- Send the Start Read unique Identifier command (STUI) by writing the Flash Command Register with the STUI command.
- When the Unique Identifier is ready to be read, the FRDY bit in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) falls.
- The Unique Identifier is located in the first 128 bits of the Flash memory mapping. So, at the address 0x80000-0x8000F.
- To stop the Unique Identifier mode, the user needs to send the Stop Read unique Identifier command (SPUI) by writing the Flash Command Register with the SPUI command.
- When the Stop read Unique Identifier command (SPUI) has been performed, the FRDY bit in the Flash Programming Status Register (EEFC\_FSR) rises. If an interrupt was enabled by setting the FRDY bit in EEFC\_FMR, the interrupt line of the NVIC is activated.

Note that during the sequence, the software can not run out of Flash (or the second plane in case of dual plane).

## 18.4 Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) User Interface

The User Interface of the Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) is integrated within the System Controller with base address 0x400E0800.

**Table 18-4.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset State
0x00	EEFC Flash Mode Register	EEFC_FMR	Read-write	0x0
0x04	EEFC Flash Command Register	EEFC_FCR	Write-only	-
0x08	EEFC Flash Status Register	EEFC_FSR	Read-only	0x00000001
0x0C	EEFC Flash Result Register	EEFC_FRR	Read-only	0x0
0x10	Reserved	-	-	-

#### 18.4.1 EEFC Flash Mode Register

**Name:** EEFC\_FMR

**Address:** 0x400E0A00

**Access:** Read-write

**Offset:** 0x00

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	FAM
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–			FWS	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–		–	–	–	–	–	FRDY

- **FRDY: Ready Interrupt Enable**

0: Flash Ready does not generate an interrupt.

1: Flash Ready (to accept a new command) generates an interrupt.

- **FWS: Flash Wait State**

This field defines the number of wait states for read and write operations:

Number of cycles for Read/Write operations = FWS+1

- **FAM: Flash Access Mode**

0: 128-bit access in read Mode only, to enhance access speed.

1: 64-bit access in read Mode only, to enhance power consumption.

No Flash read should be done during change of this register.

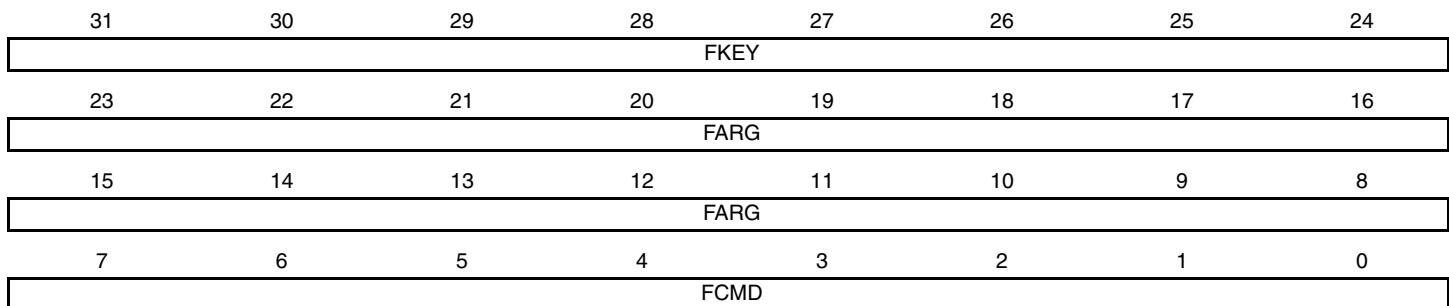
#### 18.4.2 EEFC Flash Command Register

**Name:** EEFC\_FCR

**Address:** 0x400E0A04

**Access:** Write-only

**Offset:** 0x04



- **FCMD: Flash Command**

This field defines the flash commands. Refer to “[Flash Commands](#)” on page 279.

- **FARG: Flash Command Argument**

Erase command	For erase all command, this field is meaningless.
Programming command	FARG defines the page number to be programmed.
Lock command	FARG defines the page number to be locked.
GPNVM command	FARG defines the GPNVM number.
Get commands	Field is meaningless.
Unique Identifier commands	Field is meaningless.

- **FKEY: Flash Writing Protection Key**

This field should be written with the value 0x5A to enable the command defined by the bits of the register. If the field is written with a different value, the write is not performed and no action is started.

### 18.4.3 EEFC Flash Status Register

**Name:** EEFC\_FSR

**Address:** 0x400E0A08

**Access:** Read-only

**Offset:** 0x08

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	FLOCKE	FCMDE	FRDY

- **FRDY: Flash Ready Status**

0: The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) is busy.

1: The Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) is ready to start a new command.

When it is set, this flag triggers an interrupt if the FRDY flag is set in the EEFC\_FMR register.

This flag is automatically cleared when the Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) is busy.

- **FCMDE: Flash Command Error Status**

0: No invalid commands and no bad keywords were written in the Flash Mode Register EEFC\_FMR.

1: An invalid command and/or a bad keyword was/were written in the Flash Mode Register EEFC\_FMR.

This flag is automatically cleared when EEFC\_FSR is read or EEFC\_FCR is written.

- **FLOCKE: Flash Lock Error Status**

0: No programming/erase of at least one locked region has happened since the last read of EEFC\_FSR.

1: Programming/erase of at least one locked region has happened since the last read of EEFC\_FSR.

This flag is automatically cleared when EEFC\_FSR is read or EEFC\_FCR is written.

#### 18.4.4 EEFC Flash Result Register

**Name:** EEFC\_FRR

**Address:** 0x400E0A0C

**Access:** Read-only

**Offset:** 0x0C

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
FVALUE							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
FVALUE							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
FVALUE							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
FVALUE							

- **FVALUE: Flash Result Value**

The result of a Flash command is returned in this register. If the size of the result is greater than 32 bits, then the next resulting value is accessible at the next register read.

## 19. Fast Flash Programming Interface (FFPI)

### 19.1 Description

The Fast Flash Programming Interface provides parallel high-volume programming using a standard gang programmer. The parallel interface is fully handshaked and the device is considered to be a standard EEPROM. Additionally, the parallel protocol offers an optimized access to all the embedded Flash functionalities.

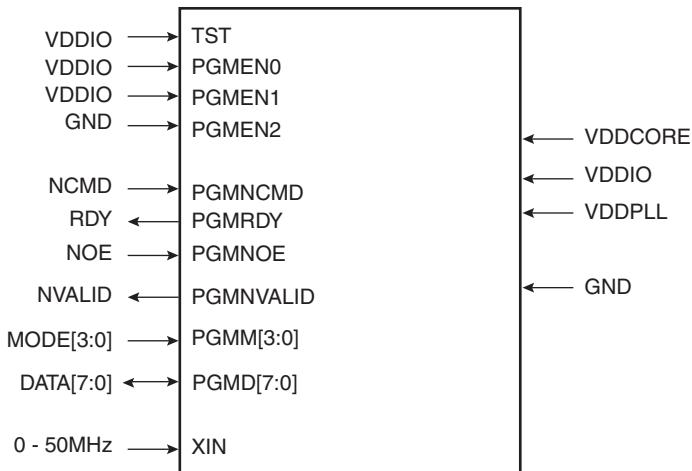
Although the Fast Flash Programming Mode is a dedicated mode for high volume programming, this mode is not designed for in-situ programming.

### 19.2 Parallel Fast Flash Programming

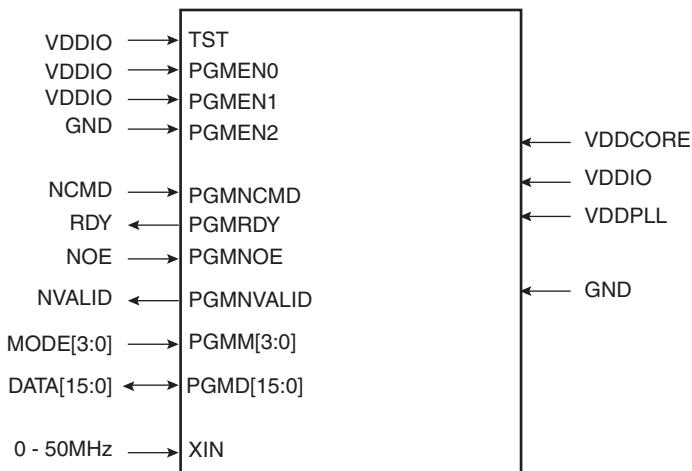
#### 19.2.1 Device Configuration

In Fast Flash Programming Mode, the device is in a specific test mode. Only a certain set of pins is significant. The rest of the PIOs are used as inputs with a pull-up. The crystal oscillator is in bypass mode. Other pins must be left unconnected.

**Figure 19-1.** SAM3Nx(A) (48 bits) Parallel Programming Interface



**Figure 19-2.** SAM3Nx(B/C) (64/100 pins) Parallel Programming Interface



**Table 19-1.** Signal Description List

Signal Name	Function	Type	Active Level	Comments
<b>Power</b>				
VDDIO	I/O Lines Power Supply	Power		
VDDCORE	Core Power Supply	Power		
VDDPLL	PLL Power Supply	Power		
GND	Ground	Ground		
<b>Clocks</b>				
XIN	Main Clock Input	Input		32KHz to 50MHz
<b>Test</b>				
TST	Test Mode Select	Input	High	Must be connected to VDDIO
PGMEN0	Test Mode Select	Input	High	Must be connected to VDDIO
PGMEN1	Test Mode Select	Input	High	Must be connected to VDDIO
PGMEN2	Test Mode Select	Input	Low	Must be connected to GND
<b>PIO</b>				
PGMNCMD	Valid command available	Input	Low	Pulled-up input at reset
PGMRDY	0: Device is busy 1: Device is ready for a new command	Output	High	Pulled-up input at reset
PGMNOE	Output Enable (active high)	Input	Low	Pulled-up input at reset
PGMNVALID	0: DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0] <sup>(1)</sup> is in input mode 1: DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0] <sup>(1)</sup> is in output mode	Output	Low	Pulled-up input at reset
PGMM[3:0]	Specifies DATA type (See <a href="#">Table 19-2</a> )	Input		Pulled-up input at reset
PGMD[15:0] or [7:0] <sup>(2)</sup>	Bi-directional data bus	Input/Output		Pulled-up input at reset

Notes: 1. DATA[7:0] pertains to the SAM3Nx(A) (48 bits).

2. PGMD[7:0] pertains to the SAM3Nx(A) (48 bits).

### 19.2.2 Signal Names

Depending on the MODE settings, DATA is latched in different internal registers.

**Table 19-2.** Mode Coding

MODE[3:0]	Symbol	Data
0000	CMDE	Command Register
0001	ADDR0	Address Register LSBs
0010	ADDR1	
0011	ADDR2	
0100	ADDR3	Address Register MSBs
0101	DATA	Data Register
Default	IDLE	No register

When MODE is equal to CMDE, then a new command (strobed on DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0] signals) is stored in the command register.

Note: DATA[7:0] pertains to SAM3Nx(A (48 pins).

**Table 19-3.** Command Bit Coding

DATA[15:0]	Symbol	Command Executed
0x0011	READ	Read Flash
0x0012	WP	Write Page Flash
0x0022	WPL	Write Page and Lock Flash
0x0032	EWP	Erase Page and Write Page
0x0042	EWPL	Erase Page and Write Page then Lock
0x0013	EA	Erase All
0x0014	SLB	Set Lock Bit
0x0024	CLB	Clear Lock Bit
0x0015	GLB	Get Lock Bit
0x0034	SGPB	Set General Purpose NVM bit
0x0044	CGPB	Clear General Purpose NVM bit
0x0025	GGPB	Get General Purpose NVM bit
0x0054	SSE	Set Security Bit
0x0035	GSE	Get Security Bit
0x001F	WRAM	Write Memory
0x001E	GVE	Get Version

### 19.2.3 Entering Programming Mode

The following algorithm puts the device in Parallel Programming Mode:

- Apply GND, VDDIO, VDDCORE and VDDPLL.
- Apply XIN clock within  $T_{POR\_RESET}$  if an external clock is available.
- Wait for  $T_{POR\_RESET}$
- Start a read or write handshaking.

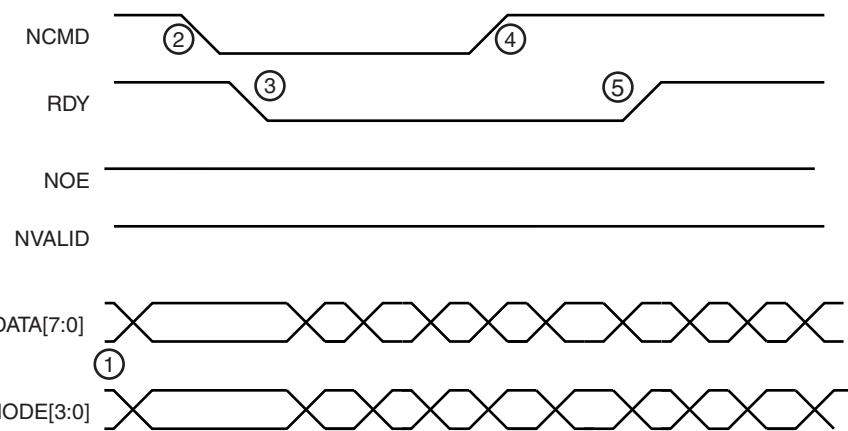
### 19.2.4 Programmer Handshaking

An handshake is defined for read and write operations. When the device is ready to start a new operation (RDY signal set), the programmer starts the handshake by clearing the NCMD signal. The handshaking is achieved once NCMD signal is high and RDY is high.

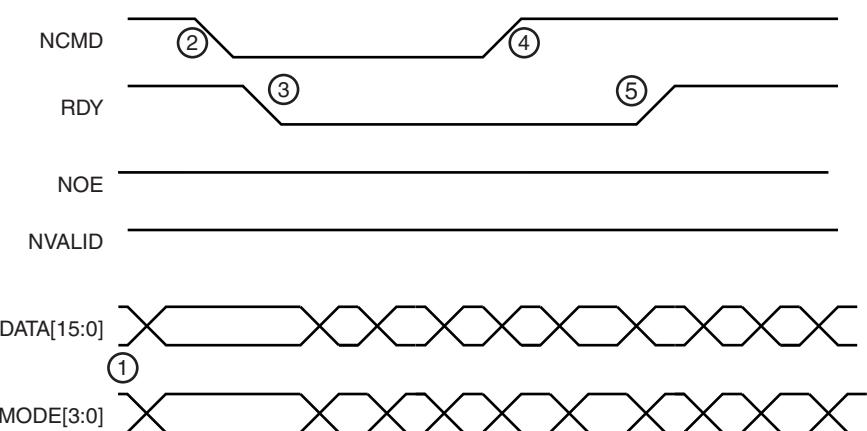
#### 19.2.4.1 Write Handshaking

For details on the write handshaking sequence, refer to [Figure 19-3](#) [Figure 19-4](#) and [Table 19-4](#).

**Figure 19-3.** SAM3Nx B/C (64/100 pins) Parallel Programming Timing, Write Sequence



**Figure 19-4.** SAM3Nx A (48 pins) Parallel Programming Timing, Write Sequence

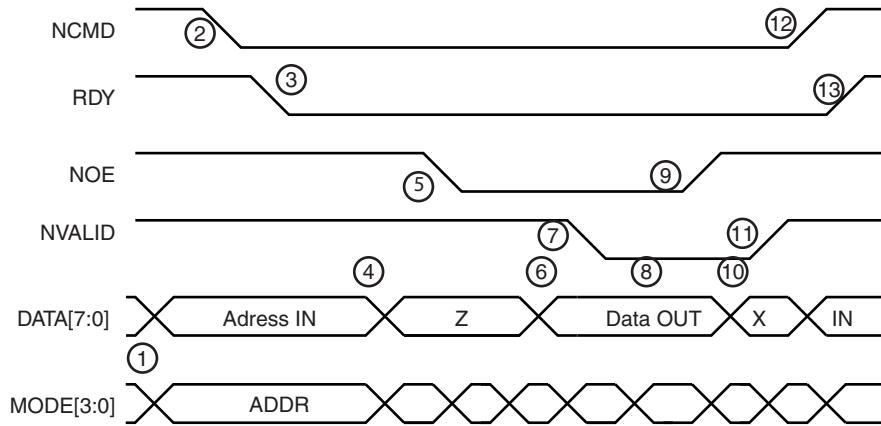
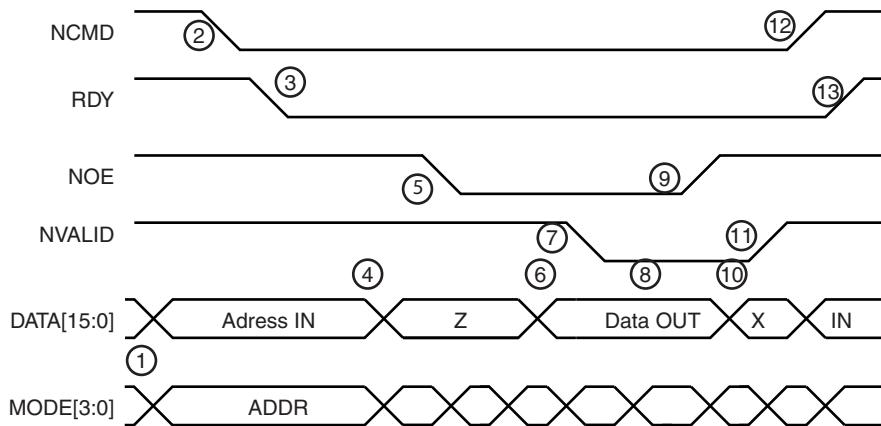


**Table 19-4.** Write Handshake

Step	Programmer Action	Device Action	Data I/O
1	Sets MODE and DATA signals	Waits for NCMD low	Input
2	Clears NCMD signal	Latches MODE and DATA	Input
3	Waits for RDY low	Clears RDY signal	Input
4	Releases MODE and DATA signals	Executes command and polls NCMD high	Input
5	Sets NCMD signal	Executes command and polls NCMD high	Input
6	Waits for RDY high	Sets RDY	Input

19.2.4.2 *Read Handshaking*

For details on the read handshaking sequence, refer to [Figure 19-5](#) [Figure 19-6](#) and [Table 19-5](#).

**Figure 19-5.** SAM3Nx B/C (64/100 pins) Parallel Programming Timing, Read Sequence**Figure 19-6.** SAM3Nx A (48 pins) Parallel Programming Timing, Read Sequence

**Table 19-5.** Read Handshake

<b>Step</b>	<b>Programmer Action</b>	<b>Device Action</b>	<b>DATA I/O</b>
1	Sets MODE and DATA signals	Waits for NCMD low	Input
2	Clears NCMD signal	Latch MODE and DATA	Input
3	Waits for RDY low	Clears RDY signal	Input
4	Sets DATA signal in tristate	Waits for NOE Low	Input
5	Clears NOE signal		Tristate
6	Waits for NVALID low	Sets DATA bus in output mode and outputs the flash contents.	Output
7		Clears NVALID signal	Output
8	Reads value on DATA Bus	Waits for NOE high	Output
9	Sets NOE signal		Output
10	Waits for NVALID high	Sets DATA bus in input mode	X
11	Sets DATA in output mode	Sets NVALID signal	Input
12	Sets NCMD signal	Waits for NCMD high	Input
13	Waits for RDY high	Sets RDY signal	Input

### 19.2.5 Device Operations

Several commands on the Flash memory are available. These commands are summarized in [Table 19-3 on page 293](#). Each command is driven by the programmer through the parallel interface running several read/write handshaking sequences.

When a new command is executed, the previous one is automatically achieved. Thus, chaining a read command after a write automatically flushes the load buffer in the Flash.

**In the following tables, Table 19-6 through Table 19-17**

- DATA[15:0] pertains to ASAM3Nx8C (64/100 pins)
- DATA[7:0] pertains to SAM3BxA (48 pins)

#### 19.2.5.1 Flash Read Command

This command is used to read the contents of the Flash memory. The read command can start at any valid address in the memory plane and is optimized for consecutive reads. Read handshaking can be chained; an internal address buffer is automatically increased.

**Table 19-6.** Read Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	READ
2	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
3	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
4	Read handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
5	Read handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...
n	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
n+1	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
n+2	Read handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
n+3	Read handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...

**Table 19-7.** Read Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	READ
2	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
3	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
4	Write handshaking	ADDR2	Memory Address
5	Write handshaking	ADDR3	Memory Address
6	Read handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
7	Read handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...
n	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB



**Table 19-7.** Read Command (Continued)

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[7:0]
n+1	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
n+2	Write handshaking	ADDR2	Memory Address
n+3	Write handshaking	ADDR3	Memory Address
n+4	Read handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
n+5	Read handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...

#### 19.2.5.2 Flash Write Command

This command is used to write the Flash contents.

The Flash memory plane is organized into several pages. Data to be written are stored in a load buffer that corresponds to a Flash memory page. The load buffer is automatically flushed to the Flash:

- before access to any page other than the current one
- when a new command is validated (MODE = CMDE)

The **Write Page** command (**WP**) is optimized for consecutive writes. Write handshaking can be chained; an internal address buffer is automatically increased.

**Table 19-8.** Write Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	WP or WPL or EWP or EWPL
2	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
3	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
4	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
5	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...
n	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
n+1	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
n+2	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
n+3	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...

**Table 19-9.** Write Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	WP or WPL or EWP or EWPL
2	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
3	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
4	Write handshaking	ADDR2	Memory Address

**Table 19-9.** Write Command (Continued)

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[7:0]
5	Write handshaking	ADDR3	Memory Address
6	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
7	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...
n	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
n+1	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
n+2	Write handshaking	ADDR2	Memory Address
n+3	Write handshaking	ADDR3	Memory Address
n+4	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
n+5	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...

The Flash command **Write Page and Lock (WPL)** is equivalent to the Flash Write Command. However, the lock bit is automatically set at the end of the Flash write operation. As a lock region is composed of several pages, the programmer writes to the first pages of the lock region using Flash write commands and writes to the last page of the lock region using a Flash write and lock command.

The Flash command **Erase Page and Write (EWP)** is equivalent to the Flash Write Command. However, before programming the load buffer, the page is erased.

The Flash command **Erase Page and Write the Lock (EWPL)** combines EWP and WPL commands.

#### 19.2.5.3 Flash Full Erase Command

This command is used to erase the Flash memory planes.

All lock regions must be unlocked before the Full Erase command by using the CLB command. Otherwise, the erase command is aborted and no page is erased.

**Table 19-10.** Full Erase Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	EA
2	Write handshaking	DATA	0

#### 19.2.5.4 Flash Lock Commands

Lock bits can be set using WPL or EWPL commands. They can also be set by using the **Set Lock command (SLB)**. With this command, several lock bits can be activated. A Bit Mask is provided as argument to the command. When bit 0 of the bit mask is set, then the first lock bit is activated.

In the same way, the **Clear Lock** command (**CLB**) is used to clear lock bits.

**Table 19-11.** Set and Clear Lock Bit Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	SLB or CLB
2	Write handshaking	DATA	Bit Mask

Lock bits can be read using **Get Lock Bit** command (**GLB**). The  $n^{\text{th}}$  lock bit is active when the bit  $n$  of the bit mask is set..

**Table 19-12.** Get Lock Bit Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	GLB
2	Read handshaking	DATA	Lock Bit Mask Status 0 = Lock bit is cleared 1 = Lock bit is set

#### 19.2.5.5 Flash General-purpose NVM Commands

General-purpose NVM bits (GP NVM bits) can be set using the **Set GPNVM** command (**SGPB**). This command also activates GP NVM bits. A bit mask is provided as argument to the command. When bit 0 of the bit mask is set, then the first GP NVM bit is activated.

In the same way, the **Clear GPNVM** command (**CGPB**) is used to clear general-purpose NVM bits. The general-purpose NVM bit is deactivated when the corresponding bit in the pattern value is set to 1.

**Table 19-13.** Set/Clear GP NVM Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	SGPB or CGPB
2	Write handshaking	DATA	GP NVM bit pattern value

General-purpose NVM bits can be read using the **Get GPNVM Bit** command (**GGPB**). The  $n^{\text{th}}$  GP NVM bit is active when bit  $n$  of the bit mask is set..

**Table 19-14.** Get GP NVM Bit Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	GGPB
2	Read handshaking	DATA	GP NVM Bit Mask Status 0 = GP NVM bit is cleared 1 = GP NVM bit is set

#### 19.2.5.6 Flash Security Bit Command

A security bit can be set using the **Set Security Bit** command (SSE). Once the security bit is active, the Fast Flash programming is disabled. No other command can be run. An event on the Erase pin can erase the security bit once the contents of the Flash have been erased.

**Table 19-15.** Set Security Bit Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	SSE
2	Write handshaking	DATA	0

Once the security bit is set, it is not possible to access FFPI. The only way to erase the security bit is to erase the Flash.

In order to erase the Flash, the user must perform the following:

- Power-off the chip
- Power-on the chip with TST = 0
- Assert Erase during a period of more than 220 ms
- Power-off the chip

Then it is possible to return to FFPI mode and check that Flash is erased.

#### 19.2.5.7 Memory Write Command

This command is used to perform a write access to any memory location.

The **Memory Write** command (**WRAM**) is optimized for consecutive writes. Write handshaking can be chained; an internal address buffer is automatically increased.

**Table 19-16.** Write Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	WRAM
2	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
3	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
4	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
5	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...
n	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
n+1	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
n+2	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
n+3	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...

**Table 19-17.** Write Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	WRAM
2	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
3	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
4	Write handshaking	ADDR2	Memory Address
5	Write handshaking	ADDR3	Memory Address
6	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
7	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...
n	Write handshaking	ADDR0	Memory Address LSB
n+1	Write handshaking	ADDR1	Memory Address
n+2	Write handshaking	ADDR2	Memory Address
n+3	Write handshaking	ADDR3	Memory Address
n+4	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
n+5	Write handshaking	DATA	*Memory Address++
...	...	...	...

#### 19.2.5.8 Get Version Command

The **Get Version** (GVE) command retrieves the version of the FFPI interface.

**Table 19-18.** Get Version Command

Step	Handshake Sequence	MODE[3:0]	DATA[15:0] or DATA[7:0]
1	Write handshaking	CMDE	GVE
2	Write handshaking	DATA	Version

## 20. SAM3N Boot Program

### 20.1 Description

The SAM-BA® Boot Program integrates an array of programs permitting download and/or upload into the different memories of the product.

### 20.2 Hardware and Software Constraints

- SAM-BA Boot uses the first 2048 bytes of the SRAM for variables and stacks. The remaining available size can be used for user's code.
- UART0 requirements: None

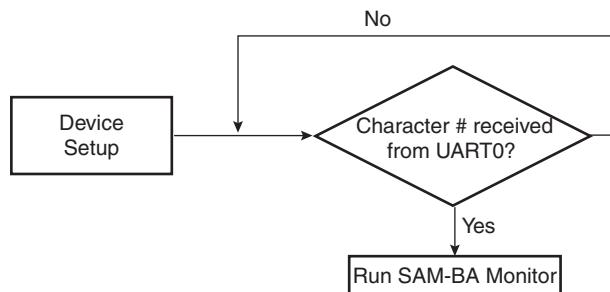
**Table 20-1.** Pins Driven during Boot Program Execution

Peripheral	Pin	PIO Line
UART0	URXD0	PA9
UART0	UTXD0	PA10

### 20.3 Flow Diagram

The Boot Program implements the algorithm in [Figure 20-1](#).

**Figure 20-1.** Boot Program Algorithm Flow Diagram



The SAM-BA Boot program uses the internal 12 MHz RC oscillator as source clock for PLL. The MCK runs from PLL divided by 2. The core runs at 48 MHz.

### 20.4 Device Initialization

Initialization follows the steps described below:

1. Stack setup
2. Setup the Embedded Flash Controller
3. Switch on internal 12 MHz RC oscillator
4. Configure PLL to run at 96 MHz
5. Switch MCK to run on PLL divided by 2
6. Configure UART0
7. Disable Watchdog
8. Wait for a character on UART0
9. Jump to SAM-BA monitor (see [Section 20.5 "SAM-BA Monitor"](#))

## 20.5 SAM-BA Monitor

The SAM-BA boot principle:

Once the communication interface is identified, to run in an infinite loop waiting for different commands as shown in [Table 20-2](#).

**Table 20-2.** Commands Available through the SAM-BA Boot

Command	Action	Argument(s)	Example
N	set Normal mode	No argument	N#
T	set Terminal mode	No argument	T#
O	write a byte	Address, Value#	O200001,CA#
o	read a byte	Address,#	o200001,#
H	write a half word	Address, Value#	H200002,CAFE#
h	read a half word	Address,#	h200002,#
W	write a word	Address, Value#	W200000,CAFEDECA#
w	read a word	Address,#	w200000,#
S	send a file	Address,#	S200000,#
R	receive a file	Address, NbOfBytes#	R200000,1234#
G	go	Address#	G200200#
V	display version	No argument	V#

- Mode commands:
  - Normal mode configures SAM-BA Monitor to send/receive data in binary format,
  - Terminal mode configures SAM-BA Monitor to send/receive data in ascii format.
- Write commands: Write a byte (**O**), a halfword (**H**) or a word (**W**) to the target.
  - *Address*: Address in hexadecimal.
  - *Value*: Byte, halfword or word to write in hexadecimal.
  - *Output*: '>'.
- Read commands: Read a byte (**o**), a halfword (**h**) or a word (**w**) from the target.
  - *Address*: Address in hexadecimal
  - *Output*: The byte, halfword or word read in hexadecimal following by '>'

- Send a file (**S**): Send a file to a specified address
  - *Address*: Address in hexadecimal
  - *Output*: '>'.

Note: There is a time-out on this command which is reached when the prompt '>' appears before the end of the command execution.

- Receive a file (**R**): Receive data into a file from a specified address
  - *Address*: Address in hexadecimal
  - *NbOfBytes*: Number of bytes in hexadecimal to receive
  - *Output*: '>'
- Go (**G**): Jump to a specified address and execute the code
  - *Address*: Address to jump in hexadecimal

- *Output: '>'*
- Get Version (**V**): Return the SAM-BA boot version
  - *Output: '>'*

#### 20.5.1    UART0 Serial Port

Communication is performed through the UART0 initialized to 115200 Baud, 8, n, 1.

The Send and Receive File commands use the Xmodem protocol to communicate. Any terminal performing this protocol can be used to send the application file to the target. The size of the binary file to send depends on the SRAM size embedded in the product. In all cases, the size of the binary file must be lower than the SRAM size because the Xmodem protocol requires some SRAM memory to work. See, [Section 20.2 "Hardware and Software Constraints"](#)

#### 20.5.2    Xmodem Protocol

The Xmodem protocol supported is the 128-byte length block. This protocol uses a two-character CRC-16 to guarantee detection of a maximum bit error.

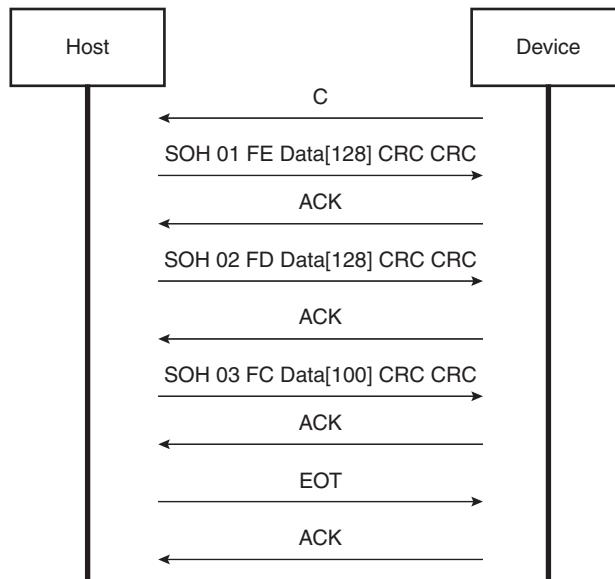
Xmodem protocol with CRC is accurate provided both sender and receiver report successful transmission. Each block of the transfer looks like:

<SOH><blk #><255-blk #><--128 data bytes--><checksum> in which:

- <SOH> = 01 hex
- <blk #> = binary number, starts at 01, increments by 1, and wraps 0FFH to 00H (not to 01)
- <255-blk #> = 1's complement of the blk#.
- <checksum> = 2 bytes CRC16

[Figure 20-2](#) shows a transmission using this protocol.

**Figure 20-2.** Xmodem Transfer Example



### 20.5.3 In Application Programming (IAP) Feature

The IAP feature is a function located in ROM that can be called by any software application.

When called, this function sends the desired FLASH command to the EEFC and waits for the Flash to be ready (looping while the FRDY bit is not set in the MC\_FSR register).

Since this function is executed from ROM, this allows Flash programming (such as sector write) to be done by code running in Flash.

The IAP function entry point is retrieved by reading the NMI vector in ROM (0x00800008).

This function takes one argument in parameter: the command to be sent to the EEFC.

This function returns the value of the MC\_FSR register.

IAP software code example:

```
(unsigned int) (*IAP_Function)(unsigned long);
void main (void){

    unsigned long FlashSectorNum = 200; //
    unsigned long flash_cmd = 0;
    unsigned long flash_status = 0;
    unsigned long EFCIndex = 0; // 0:EEFC0, 1: EEFC1

    /* Initialize the function pointer (retrieve function address from NMI
    vector) */

    IAP_Function = ((unsigned long) (*) (unsigned long)) 0x00800008;

    /* Send your data to the sector here */

    /* build the command to send to EEFC */

    flash_cmd = (0x5A << 24) | (FlashSectorNum << 8) | AT91C_MC_FCMD_EWP;

    /* Call the IAP function with appropriate command */

    flash_status = IAP_Function (EFCIndex, flash_cmd);

}
```

## 21. Bus Matrix (MATRIX)

### 21.1 Description

The Bus Matrix implements a multi-layer AHB that enables parallel access paths between multiple AHB masters and slaves in a system, which increases the overall bandwidth. Bus Matrix interconnects 3 AHB Masters to 4 AHB Slaves. The normal latency to connect a master to a slave is one cycle except for the default master of the accessed slave which is connected directly (zero cycle latency).

The Bus Matrix user interface also provides a Chip Configuration User Interface with Registers that allow to support application specific features.

### 21.2 Embedded Characteristics

#### 21.2.1 Matrix Masters

The Bus Matrix of the SAM3N product manages 3 masters, which means that each master can perform an access concurrently with others, to an available slave.

Each master has its own decoder, which is defined specifically for each master. In order to simplify the addressing, all the masters have the same decodings.

**Table 21-1.** List of Bus Matrix Masters

Master 0	Cortex-M3 Instruction/Data
Master 1	Cortex-M3 System
Master 2	Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC)

#### 21.2.2 Matrix Slaves

The Bus Matrix of the SAM3N product manages 4 slaves. Each slave has its own arbiter, allowing a different arbitration per slave.

List of Bus Matrix Slaves

Slave 0	Internal SRAM
Slave 1	Internal ROM
Slave 2	Internal Flash
Slave 3	Peripheral Bridge

### 21.2.3 Master to Slave Access

All the Masters can normally access all the Slaves. However, some paths do not make sense, for example allowing access from the Cortex-M3 S Bus to the Internal ROM. Thus, these paths are forbidden or simply not wired and shown as “-” in the following table.

**Table 21-2.** SAM3N Master to Slave Access

Slaves	Masters	0	1	2
		Cortex-M3 I/D Bus	Cortex-M3 S Bus	PDC
0	Internal SRAM	-	X	X
1	Internal ROM	X	-	X
2	Internal Flash	X	-	-
3	Peripheral Bridge	-	X	X

## 21.3 Memory Mapping

Bus Matrix provides one decoder for every AHB Master Interface. The decoder offers each AHB Master several memory mappings. In fact, depending on the product, each memory area may be assigned to several slaves. Booting at the same address while using different AHB slaves (i.e. internal ROM or internal Flash) becomes possible.

## 21.4 Special Bus Granting Techniques

The Bus Matrix provides some speculative bus granting techniques in order to anticipate access requests from some masters. This mechanism allows to reduce latency at first accesses of a burst or single transfer. The bus granting mechanism allows to set a default master for every slave.

At the end of the current access, if no other request is pending, the slave remains connected to its associated default master. A slave can be associated with three kinds of default masters: no default master, last access master and fixed default master.

### 21.4.1 No Default Master

At the end of the current access, if no other request is pending, the slave is disconnected from all masters. No Default Master suits low power mode.

### 21.4.2 Last Access Master

At the end of the current access, if no other request is pending, the slave remains connected to the last master that performed an access request.

### 21.4.3 Fixed Default Master

At the end of the current access, if no other request is pending, the slave connects to its fixed default master. Unlike last access master, the fixed master doesn't change unless the user modifies it by a software action (field FIXED\_DEFMSTR of the related MATRIX\_SCFG).

To change from one kind of default master to another, the Bus Matrix user interface provides the Slave Configuration Registers, one for each slave, that allow to set a default master for each slave. The Slave Configuration Register contains two fields:

DEFMSTR\_TYPE and FIXED\_DEFMSTR. The 2-bit DEFMSTR\_TYPE field allows to choose the default master type (no default, last access master, fixed default master) whereas the 4-bit

FIXED\_DEFMSTR field allows to choose a fixed default master provided that DEFMSTR\_TYPE is set to fixed default master. Please refer to the Bus Matrix user interface description.

## 21.5 Arbitration

The Bus Matrix provides an arbitration mechanism that allows to reduce latency when conflict cases occur, basically when two or more masters try to access the same slave at the same time. One arbiter per AHB slave is provided, allowing to arbitrate each slave differently.

The Bus Matrix provides to the user the possibility to choose between 2 arbitration types, and this for each slave:

1. Round-Robin Arbitration (the default)
2. Fixed Priority Arbitration

This choice is given through the field ARBT of the Slave Configuration Registers (MATRIX\_SCFG).

Each algorithm may be complemented by selecting a default master configuration for each slave.

When a re-arbitration has to be done, it is realized only under some specific conditions detailed in the following paragraph.

### 21.5.1 Arbitration Rules

Each arbiter has the ability to arbitrate between two or more different master's requests. In order to avoid burst breaking and also to provide the maximum throughput for slave interfaces, arbitration may only take place during the following cycles:

1. Idle Cycles: when a slave is not connected to any master or is connected to a master which is not currently accessing it.
2. Single Cycles: when a slave is currently doing a single access.
3. End of Burst Cycles: when the current cycle is the last cycle of a burst transfer. For defined length burst, predicted end of burst matches the size of the transfer but is managed differently for undefined length burst (See [Section 21.5.1.1 "Undefined Length Burst Arbitration" on page 309](#)).
4. Slot Cycle Limit: when the slot cycle counter has reached the limit value indicating that the current master access is too long and must be broken (See [Section 21.5.1.2 "Slot Cycle Limit Arbitration" on page 310](#)).

#### 21.5.1.1 *Undefined Length Burst Arbitration*

In order to avoid too long slave handling during undefined length bursts (INCR), the Bus Matrix provides specific logic in order to re-arbitrate before the end of the INCR transfer.

A predicted end of burst is used as for defined length burst transfer, which is selected between the following:

1. Infinite: no predicted end of burst is generated and therefore INCR burst transfer will never be broken.
2. Four beat bursts: predicted end of burst is generated at the end of each four beat boundary inside INCR transfer.
3. Eight beat bursts: predicted end of burst is generated at the end of each eight beat boundary inside INCR transfer.
4. Sixteen beat bursts: predicted end of burst is generated at the end of each sixteen beat boundary inside INCR transfer.



This selection can be done through the field ULBT of the Master Configuration Registers (MATRIX\_MCFG).

#### 21.5.1.2 *Slot Cycle Limit Arbitration*

The Bus Matrix contains specific logic to break too long accesses such as very long bursts on a very slow slave (e.g. an external low speed memory). At the beginning of the burst access, a counter is loaded with the value previously written in the SLOT\_CYCLE field of the related Slave Configuration Register (MATRIX\_SCFG) and decreased at each clock cycle. When the counter reaches zero, the arbiter has the ability to re-arbitrate at the end of the current byte, half word or word transfer.

#### 21.5.2 **Round-Robin Arbitration**

This algorithm allows the Bus Matrix arbiters to dispatch the requests from different masters to the same slave in a round-robin manner. If two or more master's requests arise at the same time, the master with the lowest number is first serviced then the others are serviced in a round-robin manner.

There are three round-robin algorithm implemented:

- Round-Robin arbitration without default master
- Round-Robin arbitration with last access master
- Round-Robin arbitration with fixed default master

##### 21.5.2.1 *Round-Robin arbitration without default master*

This is the main algorithm used by Bus Matrix arbiters. It allows the Bus Matrix to dispatch requests from different masters to the same slave in a pure round-robin manner. At the end of the current access, if no other request is pending, the slave is disconnected from all masters. This configuration incurs one latency cycle for the first access of a burst. Arbitration without default master can be used for masters that perform significant bursts.

##### 21.5.2.2 *Round-Robin arbitration with last access master*

This is a biased round-robin algorithm used by Bus Matrix arbiters. It allows the Bus Matrix to remove the one latency cycle for the last master that accessed the slave. In fact, at the end of the current transfer, if no other master request is pending, the slave remains connected to the last master that performs the access. Other non privileged masters will still get one latency cycle if they want to access the same slave. This technique can be used for masters that mainly perform single accesses.

##### 21.5.2.3 *Round-Robin arbitration with fixed default master*

This is another biased round-robin algorithm, it allows the Bus Matrix arbiters to remove the one latency cycle for the fixed default master per slave. At the end of the current access, the slave remains connected to its fixed default master. Every request attempted by this fixed default master will not cause any latency whereas other non privileged masters will still get one latency cycle. This technique can be used for masters that mainly perform single accesses.

#### 21.5.3 **Fixed Priority Arbitration**

This algorithm allows the Bus Matrix arbiters to dispatch the requests from different masters to the same slave by using the fixed priority defined by the user. If two or more master's requests are active at the same time, the master with the highest priority number is serviced first. If two or

more master's requests with the same priority are active at the same time, the master with the highest number is serviced first.

For each slave, the priority of each master may be defined through the Priority Registers for Slaves (MATRIX\_PRAS and MATRIX\_PRBS).

## 21.6 System I/O Configuration

The System I/O Configuration register (CCFG\_SYSIO) allows to configure some I/O lines in System I/O mode (such as JTAG, ERASE, etc...) or as general purpose I/O lines. Enabling or disabling the corresponding I/O lines in peripheral mode or in PIO mode (PIO\_PER or PIO\_PDR registers) in the PIO controller as no effect. However, the direction (input or output), pull-up, pull-down and other mode control is still managed by the PIO controller.

## 21.7 Write Protect Registers

To prevent any single software error that may corrupt MATRIX behavior, **the entire MATRIX address space from address offset 0x000 to 0x1FC can be write-protected** by setting the WPEN bit in the MATRIX Write Protect Mode Register (MATRIX\_WPMR).

If a write access to anywhere in the MATRIX address space from address offset 0x000 to 0x1FC is detected, then the WPVS flag in the MATRIX Write Protect Status Register (MATRIX\_WPSR) is set and the field WPVSR indicates in which register the write access has been attempted.

The WPVS flag is reset by writing the MATRIX Write Protect Mode Register (MATRIX\_WPMR) with the appropriate access key WPKEY.

## 21.8 Bus Matrix (MATRIX) User Interface

**Table 21-3.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0000	Master Configuration Register 0	MATRIX_MCFG0	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0004	Master Configuration Register 1	MATRIX_MCFG1	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0008	Master Configuration Register 2	MATRIX_MCFG2	Read-write	0x00000000
0x000C - 0x003C	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0040	Slave Configuration Register 0	MATRIX_SCFG0	Read-write	0x00010010
0x0044	Slave Configuration Register 1	MATRIX_SCFG1	Read-write	0x00050010
0x0048	Slave Configuration Register 2	MATRIX_SCFG2	Read-write	0x00000010
0x004C	Slave Configuration Register 3	MATRIX_SCFG3	Read-write	0x00000010
0x0050 - 0x007C	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0080	Priority Register A for Slave 0	MATRIX_PRAS0	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0084	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0088	Priority Register A for Slave 1	MATRIX_PRAS1	Read-write	0x00000000
0x008C	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0090	Priority Register A for Slave 2	MATRIX_PRAS2	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0094	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0098	Priority Register A for Slave 3	MATRIX_PRAS3	Read-write	0x00000000
0x009C - 0x0110	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0114	System I/O Configuration register	CCFG_SYSIO	Read/Write	0x00000000
0x0118- 0x011C	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0120 - 0x010C	Reserved	—	—	—
0x1E4	Write Protect Mode Register	MATRIX_WPMR	Read-write	0x0
0x1E8	Write Protect Status Register	MATRIX_WPSR	Read-only	0x0
0x0110 - 0x01FC	Reserved	—	—	—

### 21.8.1 Bus Matrix Master Configuration Registers

**Name:** MATRIX\_MCFG0..MATRIX\_MCFG2

**Address:** 0x400E0200

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	ULBT	

- **ULBT: Undefined Length Burst Type**

0: Infinite Length Burst

No predicted end of burst is generated and therefore INCR bursts coming from this master cannot be broken.

1: Single Access

The undefined length burst is treated as a succession of single access allowing re-arbitration at each beat of the INCR burst.

2: Four Beat Burst

The undefined length burst is split into a 4-beat bursts allowing re-arbitration at each 4-beat burst end.

3: Eight Beat Burst

The undefined length burst is split into 8-beat bursts allowing re-arbitration at each 8-beat burst end.

4: Sixteen Beat Burst

The undefined length burst is split into 16-beat bursts allowing re-arbitration at each 16-beat burst end.

### 21.8.2 Bus Matrix Slave Configuration Registers

**Name:** MATRIX\_SCFG0..MATRIX\_SCFG3

**Address:** 0x400E0240

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	ARBT
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-		FIXED_DEFMSTR		DEFMSTR_TYPE	
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SLOT_CYCLE							

- **SLOT\_CYCLE: Maximum Number of Allowed Cycles for a Burst**

When the SLOT\_CYCLE limit is reached for a burst it may be broken by another master trying to access this slave.

This limit has been placed to avoid locking very slow slaves when very long bursts are used.

This limit should not be very small though. An unreasonable small value will break every burst and the Bus Matrix will spend its time to arbitrate without performing any data transfer. 16 cycles is a reasonable value for SLOT\_CYCLE.

- **DEFMSTR\_TYPE: Default Master Type**

0: No Default Master

At the end of current slave access, if no other master request is pending, the slave is disconnected from all masters.

This results in having a one cycle latency for the first access of a burst transfer or for a single access.

1: Last Default Master

At the end of current slave access, if no other master request is pending, the slave stays connected to the last master having accessed it.

This results in not having the one cycle latency when the last master re-tries access on the slave again.

2: Fixed Default Master

At the end of the current slave access, if no other master request is pending, the slave connects to the fixed master the number that has been written in the FIXED\_DEFMSTR field.

This results in not having the one cycle latency when the fixed master re-tries access on the slave again.

- **FIXED\_DEFMSTR: Fixed Default Master**

This is the number of the Default Master for this slave. Only used if DEFMSTR\_TYPE is 2. Specifying the number of a master which is not connected to the selected slave is equivalent to setting DEFMSTR\_TYPE to 0.

- **ARBT: Arbitration Type**

0: Round-Robin Arbitration

1: Fixed Priority Arbitration

2: Reserved

3: Reserved



### 21.8.3 Bus Matrix Priority Registers For Slaves

**Name:** MATRIX\_PRAS0..MATRIX\_PRAS3

**Addresses:** 0x400E0280 [0], 0x400E0288 [1], 0x400E0290 [2], 0x400E0298 [3]

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	M3PR		-	-	M2PR	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	M1PR		-	-	M0PR	

- **MxPR: Master x Priority**

Fixed priority of Master x for accessing the selected slave. The higher the number, the higher the priority.

#### 21.8.4 System I/O Configuration Register

**Name:** CCFG\_SYSIO

**Address:** 0x400E0314

**Access:** Read-write

**Reset:** 0x0000\_0000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	SYSIO12	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SYSIO7	SYSIO6	SYSIO5	SYSIO4	-	-	-	-

- **SYSIO4: PB4 or TDI Assignment**

0 = TDI function selected.

1 = PB4 function selected.

- **SYSIO5: PB5 or TDO/TRACESWO Assignment**

0 = TDO/TRACESWO function selected.

1 = PB5 function selected.

- **SYSIO6: PB6 or TMS/SWDIO Assignment**

0 = TMS/SWDIO function selected.

1 = PB6 function selected.

- **SYSIO7: PB7 or TCK/SWCLK Assignment**

0 = TCK/SWCLK function selected.

1 = PB7 function selected.

- **SYSIO12: PB12 or ERASE Assignment**

0 = ERASE function selected.

1 = PB12 function selected.

### 21.8.5 Write Protect Mode Register

**Name:** MATRIX\_WPMR

**Address:** 0x400E03E4

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPEN

For more details on MATRIX\_WPMR, refer to [Section 21.7 “Write Protect Registers” on page 311](#).

- **WPEN: Write Protect ENable**

0 = Disables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x4D4154 (“MAT” in ASCII).

1 = Enables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x4D4154 (“MAT” in ASCII).

Protects the entire MATRIX address space from address offset 0x000 to 0x1FC.

- **WPKEY: Write Protect KEY (Write-only)**

Should be written at value 0x4D4154 (“MAT” in ASCII). Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation of the WPEN bit. Always reads as 0.

### 21.8.6 Write Protect Status Register

**Name:** MATRIX\_WPSR

**Address:** 0x400E03E8

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPVSRC							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPVSRC							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	WPVS

For more details on MATRIX\_WPSR, refer to [Section 21.7 “Write Protect Registers” on page 311](#).

- **WPVS: Write Protect Violation Status**

0: No Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last write of MATRIX\_WPMR.

1: At least one Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last write of MATRIX\_WPMR.

- **WPVSRC: Write Protect Violation Source**

Should be written at value 0x4D4154 (“MAT” in ASCII). Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation of the WPEN bit. Always reads as 0.

## 22. Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC)

### 22.1 Description

The Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC) transfers data between on-chip serial peripherals and the on- and/or off-chip memories. The link between the PDC and a serial peripheral is operated by the AHB to ABP bridge.

The user interface of each PDC channel is integrated into the user interface of the peripheral it serves. The user interface of mono directional channels (receive only or transmit only), contains two 32-bit memory pointers and two 16-bit counters, one set (pointer, counter) for current transfer and one set (pointer, counter) for next transfer. The bi-directional channel user interface contains four 32-bit memory pointers and four 16-bit counters. Each set (pointer, counter) is used by current transmit, next transmit, current receive and next receive.

Using the PDC removes processor overhead by reducing its intervention during the transfer. This significantly reduces the number of clock cycles required for a data transfer, which improves microcontroller performance.

To launch a transfer, the peripheral triggers its associated PDC channels by using transmit and receive signals. When the programmed data is transferred, an end of transfer interrupt is generated by the peripheral itself.

### 22.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Handles data transfer between peripherals and memories
- Low bus arbitration overhead
  - One Master Clock cycle needed for a transfer from memory to peripheral
  - Two Master Clock cycles needed for a transfer from peripheral to memory
- Next Pointer management for reducing interrupt latency requirement

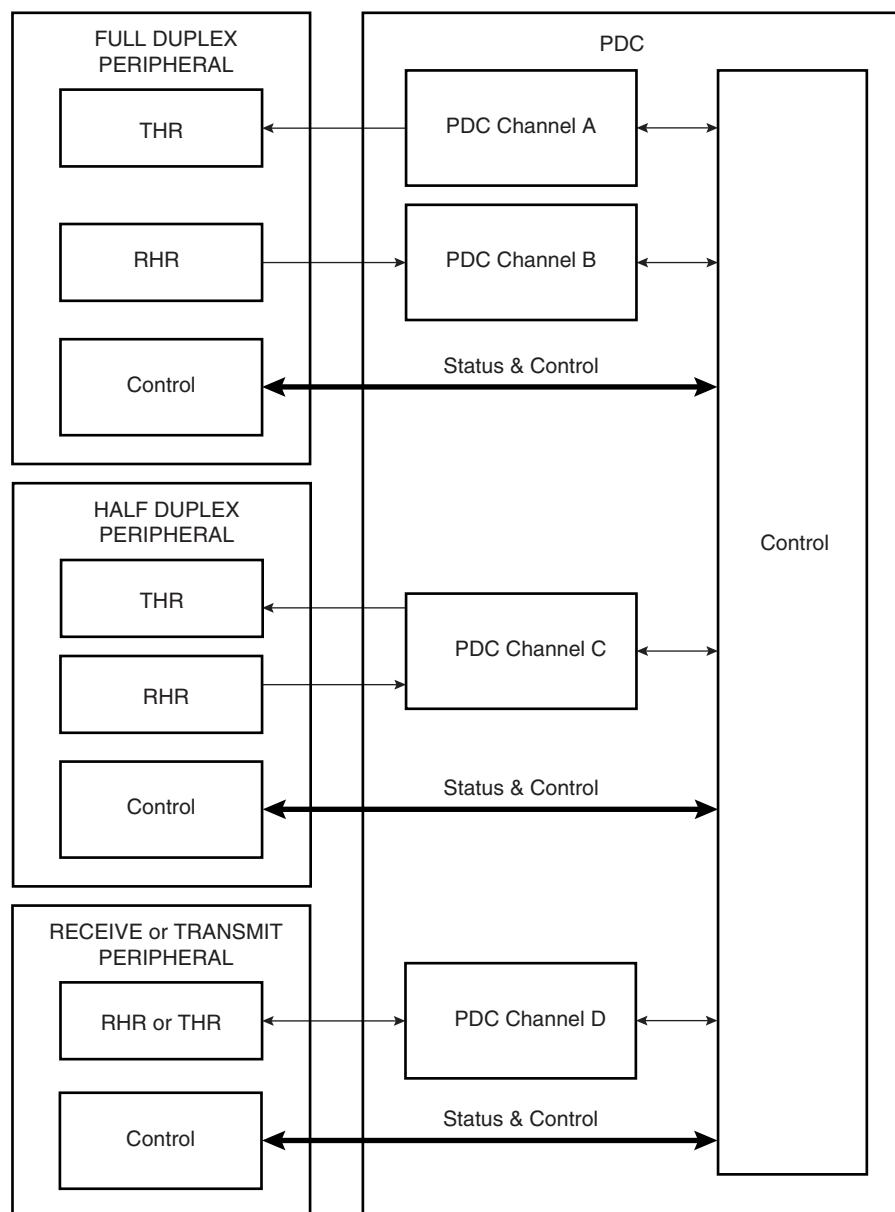
The Peripheral DMA Controller handles transfer requests from the channel according to the following priorities (Low to High priorities):

**Table 22-1.** Peripheral DMA Controller

Instance name	Channel T/R	100 & 64 Pins	48 Pins
TWI0	Transmit	x	x
UART0	Transmit	x	x
USART0	Transmit	x	x
DAC	Transmit	x	N/A
SPI	Transmit	x	x
TWI0	Receive	x	x
UART0	Receive	x	x
USART0	Receive	x	x
ADC	Receive	x	x
SPI	Receive	x	x

## 22.3 Block Diagram

Figure 22-1. Block Diagram



## 22.4 Functional Description

### 22.4.1 Configuration

The PDC channel user interface enables the user to configure and control data transfers for each channel. The user interface of each PDC channel is integrated into the associated peripheral user interface.

The user interface of a serial peripheral, whether it is full or half duplex, contains four 32-bit pointers (RPR, RNPR, TPR, TNPR) and four 16-bit counter registers (RCR, RNCR, TCR, TNCR). However, the transmit and receive parts of each type are programmed differently: the transmit and receive parts of a full duplex peripheral can be programmed at the same time, whereas only one part (transmit or receive) of a half duplex peripheral can be programmed at a time.

32-bit pointers define the access location in memory for current and next transfer, whether it is for read (transmit) or write (receive). 16-bit counters define the size of current and next transfers. It is possible, at any moment, to read the number of transfers left for each channel.

The PDC has dedicated status registers which indicate if the transfer is enabled or disabled for each channel. The status for each channel is located in the associated peripheral status register. Transfers can be enabled and/or disabled by setting TXTEN/TXTDIS and RXTEN/RXTDIS in the peripheral's Transfer Control Register.

At the end of a transfer, the PDC channel sends status flags to its associated peripheral. These flags are visible in the peripheral status register (ENDRX, ENDTX, RXBUFF, and TXBUFE). Refer to [Section 22.4.3](#) and to the associated peripheral user interface.

### 22.4.2 Memory Pointers

Each full duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC by a receive channel and a transmit channel. Both channels have 32-bit memory pointers that point respectively to a receive area and to a transmit area in on- and/or off-chip memory.

Each half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC by a bidirectional channel. This channel has two 32-bit memory pointers, one for current transfer and the other for next transfer. These pointers point to transmit or receive data depending on the operating mode of the peripheral.

Depending on the type of transfer (byte, half-word or word), the memory pointer is incremented respectively by 1, 2 or 4 bytes.

If a memory pointer address changes in the middle of a transfer, the PDC channel continues operating using the new address.

### 22.4.3 Transfer Counters

Each channel has two 16-bit counters, one for current transfer and the other one for next transfer. These counters define the size of data to be transferred by the channel. The current transfer counter is decremented first as the data addressed by current memory pointer starts to be transferred. When the current transfer counter reaches zero, the channel checks its next transfer counter. If the value of next counter is zero, the channel stops transferring data and sets the appropriate flag. But if the next counter value is greater than zero, the values of the next pointer/next counter are copied into the current pointer/current counter and the channel resumes the transfer whereas next pointer/next counter get zero/zero as values. At the end of this transfer the PDC channel sets the appropriate flags in the Peripheral Status Register.

The following list gives an overview of how status register flags behave depending on the counters' values:

- ENDRX flag is set when the PERIPH\_RCR register reaches zero.
- RXBUFF flag is set when both PERIPH\_RCR and PERIPH\_RNCR reach zero.
- ENDTX flag is set when the PERIPH\_TCR register reaches zero.
- TXBUFE flag is set when both PERIPH\_TCR and PERIPH\_TNCR reach zero.

These status flags are described in the Peripheral Status Register.

#### 22.4.4 Data Transfers

The serial peripheral triggers its associated PDC channels' transfers using transmit enable (TXEN) and receive enable (RXEN) flags in the transfer control register integrated in the peripheral's user interface.

When the peripheral receives an external data, it sends a Receive Ready signal to its PDC receive channel which then requests access to the Matrix. When access is granted, the PDC receive channel starts reading the peripheral Receive Holding Register (RHR). The read data are stored in an internal buffer and then written to memory.

When the peripheral is about to send data, it sends a Transmit Ready to its PDC transmit channel which then requests access to the Matrix. When access is granted, the PDC transmit channel reads data from memory and puts them to Transmit Holding Register (THR) of its associated peripheral. The same peripheral sends data according to its mechanism.

#### 22.4.5 PDC Flags and Peripheral Status Register

Each peripheral connected to the PDC sends out receive ready and transmit ready flags and the PDC sends back flags to the peripheral. All these flags are only visible in the Peripheral Status Register.

Depending on the type of peripheral, half or full duplex, the flags belong to either one single channel or two different channels.

##### 22.4.5.1 *Receive Transfer End*

This flag is set when PERIPH\_RCR register reaches zero and the last data has been transferred to memory.

It is reset by writing a non zero value in PERIPH\_RCR or PERIPH\_RNCR.

##### 22.4.5.2 *Transmit Transfer End*

This flag is set when PERIPH\_TCR register reaches zero and the last data has been written into peripheral THR.

It is reset by writing a non zero value in PERIPH\_TCR or PERIPH\_TNCR.

##### 22.4.5.3 *Receive Buffer Full*

This flag is set when PERIPH\_RCR register reaches zero with PERIPH\_RNCR also set to zero and the last data has been transferred to memory.

It is reset by writing a non zero value in PERIPH\_TCR or PERIPH\_TNCR.

#### 22.4.5.4 *Transmit Buffer Empty*

This flag is set when PERIPH\_TCR register reaches zero with PERIPH\_TNCR also set to zero and the last data has been written into peripheral THR.

It is reset by writing a non zero value in PERIPH\_TCR or PERIPH\_TNCR.

## 22.5 Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC) User Interface

**Table 22-2.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x100	Receive Pointer Register	PERIPH <sup>(1)</sup> _RPR	Read-write	0
0x104	Receive Counter Register	PERIPH_RCR	Read-write	0
0x108	Transmit Pointer Register	PERIPH_TPR	Read-write	0
0x10C	Transmit Counter Register	PERIPH_TCR	Read-write	0
0x110	Receive Next Pointer Register	PERIPH_RNPR	Read-write	0
0x114	Receive Next Counter Register	PERIPH_RNCR	Read-write	0
0x118	Transmit Next Pointer Register	PERIPH_TNPR	Read-write	0
0x11C	Transmit Next Counter Register	PERIPH_TNCR	Read-write	0
0x120	Transfer Control Register	PERIPH_PTCR	Write-only	0
0x124	Transfer Status Register	PERIPH PTSR	Read-only	0

Note: 1. PERIPH: Ten registers are mapped in the peripheral memory space at the same offset. These can be defined by the user according to the function and the desired peripheral.)

### 22.5.1 Receive Pointer Register

Name: PERIPH\_RPR

Access: Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
RXPTR							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
RXPTR							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RXPTR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RXPTR							

- **RXPTR: Receive Pointer Register**

RXPTR must be set to receive buffer address.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, RXPTR = TXPTR.

## 22.5.2 Receive Counter Register

**Name:** PERIPH\_RCR

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RXCTR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RXCTR							

- **RXCTR: Receive Counter Register**

RXCTR must be set to receive buffer size.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, RXCTR = TXCTR.

0 = Stops peripheral data transfer to the receiver

1 - 65535 = Starts peripheral data transfer if corresponding channel is active

### 22.5.3 Transmit Pointer Register

Name: PERIPH\_TPR

Access: Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
TXPTR							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
TXPTR							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXPTR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXPTR							

- **TXPTR: Transmit Counter Register**

TXPTR must be set to transmit buffer address.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, RXPTR = TXPTR.



#### 22.5.4 Transmit Counter Register

**Name:** PERIPH\_TCR

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXCTR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXCTR							

- **TXCTR: Transmit Counter Register**

TXCTR must be set to transmit buffer size.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, RXCTR = TXCTR.

0 = Stops peripheral data transfer to the transmitter

1- 65535 = Starts peripheral data transfer if corresponding channel is active



### 22.5.5 Receive Next Pointer Register

**Name:** PERIPH\_RNPR

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
RXNPTR							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
RXNPTR							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RXNPTR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RXNPTR							

- **RXNPTR: Receive Next Pointer**

RXNPTR contains next receive buffer address.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, RXNPTR = TXNPTR.

### 22.5.6 Receive Next Counter Register

**Name:** PERIPH\_RNCR

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RXNCTR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RXNCTR							

- **RXNCTR: Receive Next Counter**

RXNCTR contains next receive buffer size.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, RXNCTR = TXNCTR.

### 22.5.7 Transmit Next Pointer Register

**Name:** PERIPH\_TNPR

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
TXNPTR							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
TXNPTR							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXNPTR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXNPTR							

- **TXNPTR: Transmit Next Pointer**

TXNPTR contains next transmit buffer address.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, RXNPTR = TXNPTR.

### 22.5.8 Transmit Next Counter Register

**Name:** PERIPH\_TNCR

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXNCTR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXNCTR							

- **TXNCTR: Transmit Counter Next**

TXNCTR contains next transmit buffer size.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, RXNCTR = TXNCTR.

### 22.5.9 Transfer Control Register

**Name:** PERIPH\_PTCR

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	TXTDIS	TXTEN
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	–	–	–	RXTDIS	RXTEN

- **RXTEN: Receiver Transfer Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables PDC receiver channel requests if RXTDIS is not set.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, enabling the receiver channel requests automatically disables the transmitter channel requests. It is forbidden to set both TXTEN and RXTEN for a half duplex peripheral.

- **RXTDIS: Receiver Transfer Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the PDC receiver channel requests.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, disabling the receiver channel requests also disables the transmitter channel requests.

- **TXTEN: Transmitter Transfer Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the PDC transmitter channel requests.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, it enables the transmitter channel requests only if RXTEN is not set. It is forbidden to set both TXTEN and RXTEN for a half duplex peripheral.

- **TXTDIS: Transmitter Transfer Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the PDC transmitter channel requests.

When a half duplex peripheral is connected to the PDC, disabling the transmitter channel requests disables the receiver channel requests.



**22.5.10 Transfer Status Register****Name:** PERIPH\_PTSR**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	TXTEN
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	RXTEN

**• RXTEN: Receiver Transfer Enable**

0 = PDC Receiver channel requests are disabled.

1 = PDC Receiver channel requests are enabled.

**• TXTEN: Transmitter Transfer Enable**

0 = PDC Transmitter channel requests are disabled.

1 = PDC Transmitter channel requests are enabled.

## 23. Clock Generator

### 23.1 Description

The Clock Generator User Interface is embedded within the Power Management Controller and is described in [Section 24.15 "Power Management Controller \(PMC\) User Interface"](#). However, the Clock Generator registers are named CKGR\_.

### 23.2 Embedded Characteristics

The Clock Generator is made up of:

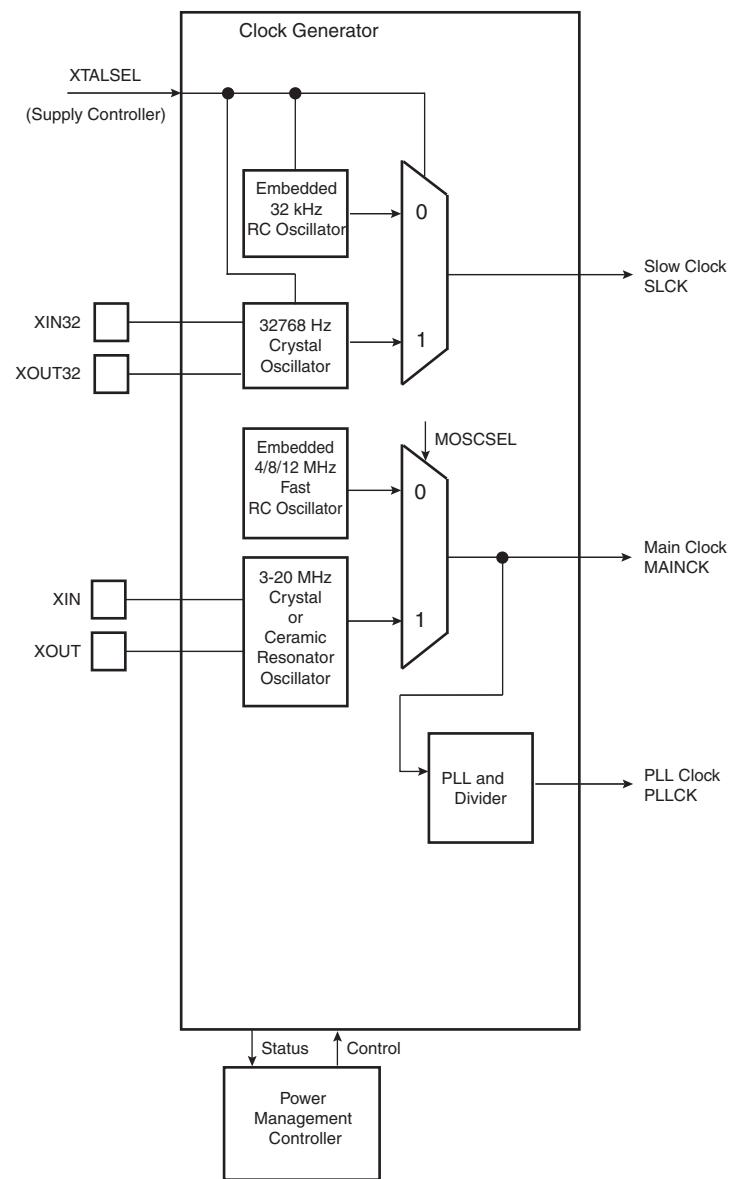
- A Low Power 32,768 Hz Slow Clock Oscillator with bypass mode
- A Low Power RC Oscillator
- A 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based Oscillator which can be bypassed
- A factory programmed Fast RC Oscillator, 3 output frequencies can be selected: 4, 8 or 12 MHz. By default 4 MHz is selected.
- A 60 to 130 MHz programmable PLL (input from 3.5 to 20 MHz), capable of providing the clock MCK to the processor and to the peripherals.

It provides the following clocks:

- SLCK, the Slow Clock, which is the only permanent clock within the system
- MAINCK is the output of the Main Clock Oscillator selection: either the Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based Oscillator or 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC Oscillator
- PLLCK is the output of the Divider and 60 to 130 MHz programmable PLL

### 23.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 23-1.** Clock Generator Block Diagram



## 23.4 Slow Clock

The Supply Controller embeds a slow clock generator that is supplied with the VDDIO power-supply. As soon as VDDIO is supplied, both the crystal oscillator and the embedded RC oscillator are powered up, but only the embedded RC oscillator is enabled. This allows the slow clock to be valid in a short time (about 100 µs).

The Slow Clock is generated either by the Slow Clock Crystal Oscillator or by the Slow Clock RC Oscillator.

The selection between the RC or crystal oscillator is made by writing the XTALSEL bit in the Supply Controller Control Register (SUPC\_CR).

### 23.4.1 Slow Clock RC Oscillator

By default, the Slow Clock RC Oscillator is enabled and selected. The user has to take into account the possible drifts of the RC Oscillator. More details are given in the section “DC Characteristics” of the product datasheet.

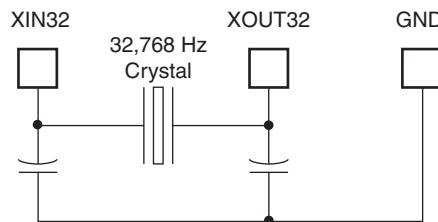
It can be disabled via the XTALSEL bit in the Supply Controller Control Register (SUPC\_CR).

### 23.4.2 Slow Clock Crystal Oscillator

The Clock Generator integrates a 32,768 Hz low-power oscillator. In order to use this oscillator, the XIN32/PA7 and XOUT32/P8 pins must be connected to a 32,768 Hz crystal. Two external capacitors must be wired as shown in [Figure 23-2](#). More details are given in the section “DC Characteristics” of the product datasheet.

Note that the user is not obliged to use the Slow Clock Crystal and can use the RC Oscillator instead.

**Figure 23-2.** Typical Slow Clock Crystal Oscillator Connection



The user can select the crystal oscillator to be the source of the slow clock, as it provides a more accurate frequency. The command is made by writing the Supply Controller Control Register (SUPC\_CR) with the XTALSEL bit at 1. This results in a sequence which first configures the PIO lines multiplexed with XIN32 and XOUT32 to be driven by the oscillator, then enables the crystal oscillator and then disables the RC oscillator to save power. The switch of the slow clock source is glitch free. The OSCSEL bit of the Supply Controller Status Register (SUPC\_SR) allows knowing when the switch sequence is done.

Coming back on the RC oscillator is only possible by shutting down the VDDIO power supply. If the user does not need the crystal oscillator, the XIN32 and XOUT32 pins can be left unconnected since by default the XIN32 and XOUT32 system I/O pins are in PIO input mode after reset.

The user can also set the crystal oscillator in bypass mode instead of connecting a crystal. In this case, the user has to provide the external clock signal on XIN32. The input characteristics of

the XIN32 pin are given in the product electrical characteristics section. In order to set the bypass mode, the OSCBYPASS bit of the Supply Controller Mode Register (SUPC\_MR) needs to be set at 1.

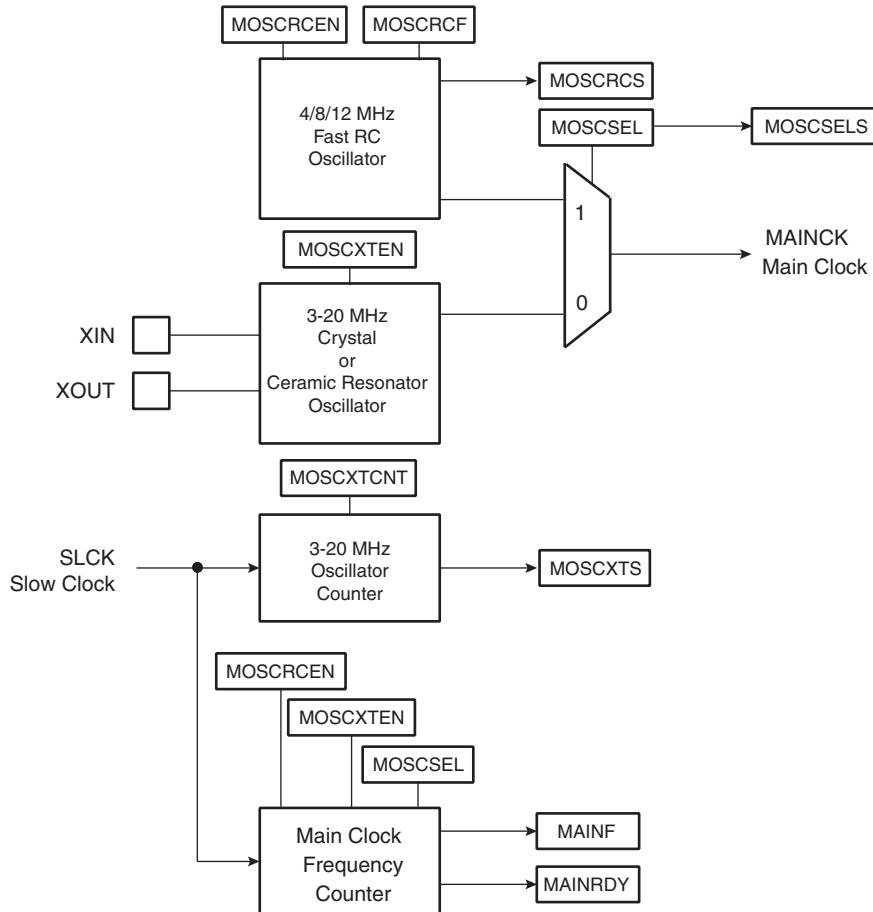
The user can set the Slow Clock Crystal Oscillator in bypass mode instead of connecting a crystal. In this case, the user has to provide the external clock signal on XIN32. The input characteristics of the XIN32 pin under these conditions are given in the product electrical characteristics section.

The programmer has to be sure to set the OSCBYPASS bit in the Supply Controller Mode Register (SUPC\_MR) and XTALSEL bit in the Supply Controller Control Register (SUPC\_CR).

## 23.5 Main Clock

[Figure 23-3](#) shows the Main Clock block diagram.

**Figure 23-3. Main Clock Block Diagram**



The Main Clock has two sources:

- 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC Oscillator which starts very quickly and is used at startup
- 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based Oscillator which can be bypassed

### 23.5.1 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC Oscillator

After reset, the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC Oscillator is enabled with the 4 MHz frequency selected and it is selected as the source of MAINCK. MAINCK is the default clock selected to start up the system.

The Fast RC Oscillator 8 and 12 MHz frequencies are calibrated in production. Note that is not the case for the 4 MHz frequency.

Please refer to the “DC Characteristics” section of the product datasheet.

The software can disable or enable the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC Oscillator with the MOSCRCEN bit in the Clock Generator Main Oscillator Register (CKGR\_MOR).

The user can also select the output frequency of the Fast RC Oscillator: either 4 MHz, 8 MHz or 12 MHz are available. It can be done through MOSCRCF bits in CKGR\_MOR. When changing this frequency selection, the MOSCRCS bit in the Power Management Controller Status Register (PMC\_SR) is automatically cleared and MAINCK is stopped until the oscillator is stabilized. Once the oscillator is stabilized, MAINCK restarts and MOSCRCS is set.

When disabling the Main Clock by clearing the MOSCRCEN bit in CKGR\_MOR, the MOSCRCS bit in the Power Management Controller Status Register (PMC\_SR) is automatically cleared, indicating the Main Clock is off.

Setting the MOSCRCS bit in the Power Management Controller Interrupt Enable Register (PMC\_IER) can trigger an interrupt to the processor.

It is recommended to disable the Main Clock as soon as the processor no longer uses it and runs out of SLCK or PLLCK.

The CAL4, CAL8 and CAL12 values in the PMC\_OCR registers are the default values set by Atmel during production. These values are stored in a specific Flash memory area different from the main memory plane. These values cannot be modified by the user and cannot be erased by a Flash erase command or by the ERASE pin. Values written by the user's application in the PMC\_OCR register are reset after each power up or peripheral reset.

### 23.5.2 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC Oscillator Clock Frequency Adjustment

It is possible for the user to adjust the main RC oscillator frequency through PMC\_OCR register. By default, SEL4/8/12 are low, so the RC oscillator will be driven with Flash calibration bits which are programmed during chip production.

The user can adjust the trimming of the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator through this register in order to obtain more accurate frequency (to compensate derating factors such as temperature and voltage).

In order to calibrate the 4 MHz Fast RC oscillator frequency, SEL4 must be set to 1 and a valid frequency value must be configured in CAL4. Likewise, SEL8/12 must be set to 1 and a trim value must be configured in CAL8/12 in order to adjust the 8/12 MHz frequency oscillator.

However, the adjustment can not be done to the frequency from which the oscillator is operating. For example, while running from a frequency of 8 MHz, the user can adjust the 4 and 12 MHz frequency but not the 8 MHz.

### 23.5.3 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based Oscillator

After reset, the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator is disabled and it is not selected as the source of MAINCK.

The user can select the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator to be the source of MAINCK, as it provides a more accurate frequency. The software enables or disables the main oscillator so as to reduce power consumption by clearing the MOSCXTEN bit in the Main Oscillator Register (CKGR\_MOR).

When disabling the main oscillator by clearing the MOSCXTEN bit in CKGR\_MOR, the MOSCXTS bit in PMC\_SR is automatically cleared, indicating the Main Clock is off.

When enabling the main oscillator, the user must initiate the main oscillator counter with a value corresponding to the startup time of the oscillator. This startup time depends on the crystal frequency connected to the oscillator.

When the MOSCXTEN bit and the MOSCXTCNT are written in CKGR\_MOR to enable the main oscillator, the MOSCXTS bit in the Power Management Controller Status Register (PMC\_SR) is cleared and the counter starts counting down on the slow clock divided by 8 from the MOSCXTCNT value. Since the MOSCXTCNT value is coded with 8 bits, the maximum startup time is about 62 ms.

When the counter reaches 0, the MOSCXTS bit is set, indicating that the main clock is valid. Setting the MOSCXTS bit in PMC\_IMR can trigger an interrupt to the processor.

### 23.5.4 Main Clock Oscillator Selection

The user can select either the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator or the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator to be the source of Main Clock.

The advantage of the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator is that it provides fast startup time, this is why it is selected by default (to start up the system) and when entering Wait Mode.

The advantage of the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator is that it is very accurate.

The selection is made by writing the MOSCSEL bit in the Main Oscillator Register (CKGR\_MOR). The switch of the Main Clock source is glitch free, so there is no need to run out of SLCK or PLLCK in order to change the selection. The MOSCSELS bit of the Power Management Controller Status Register (PMC\_SR) allows knowing when the switch sequence is done.

Setting the MOSCSELS bit in PMC\_IMR can trigger an interrupt to the processor.

### 23.5.5 Main Clock Frequency Counter

The device features a Main Clock frequency counter that provides the frequency of the Main Clock.

The Main Clock frequency counter is reset and starts incrementing at the Main Clock speed after the next rising edge of the Slow Clock in the following cases:

- when the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator clock is selected as the source of Main Clock and when this oscillator becomes stable (i.e., when the MOSCRCS bit is set)
- when the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator is selected as the source of Main Clock and when this oscillator becomes stable (i.e., when the MOSCXTS bit is set)
- when the Main Clock Oscillator selection is modified

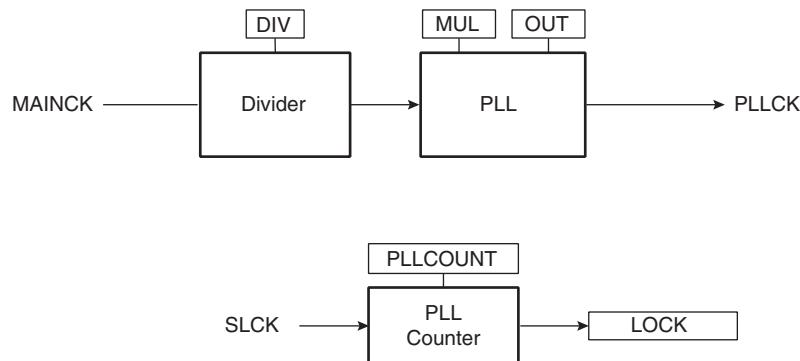
Then, at the 16th falling edge of Slow Clock, the MAINFRDY bit in the Clock Generator Main Clock Frequency Register (CKGR\_MCFR) is set and the counter stops counting. Its value can be read in the MAINF field of CKGR\_MCFR and gives the number of Main Clock cycles during 16 periods of Slow Clock, so that the frequency of the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator or 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator can be determined.

## 23.6 Divider and PLL Block

The device features a Divider/PLL Block that permits a wide range of frequencies to be selected on either the master clock, the processor clock or the programmable clock outputs.

[Figure 23-4](#) shows the block diagram of the divider and PLL block.

**Figure 23-4.** Divider and PLL Block Diagram



### 23.6.1 Divider and Phase Lock Loop Programming

The divider can be set between 1 and 255 in steps of 1. When the divider field (DIV) is set to 0, the output of the divider and the PLL output is a continuous signal at level 0. On reset, the DIV field is set to 0, thus the PLL input clock is set to 0.

The PLL allows multiplication of the divider's output. The PLL clock signal has a frequency that depends on the respective source signal frequency and on the DIV and MUL parameters. The factor applied to the source signal frequency is  $(MUL + 1)/DIV$ . When MUL is written to 0, the PLL is disabled and its power consumption is saved. Re-enabling the PLL can be performed by writing a value higher than 0 in the MUL field.

Whenever the PLL is re-enabled or one of its parameters is changed, the LOCK bit in PMC\_SR is automatically cleared. The value written in the PLLCOUNT field in CKGR\_PLLR is loaded in the PLL counter. The PLL counter then decrements at the speed of the Slow Clock until it reaches 0. At this time, the LOCK bit is set in PMC\_SR and can trigger an interrupt to the processor. The user has to load the number of Slow Clock cycles required to cover the PLL transient time into the PLLCOUNT field.

The PLL clock can be divided by 2 by writing the PLLDIV2 bit in PMC\_MCKR register.

It is forbidden to change 4/8/12 Fast RC oscillator frequency or main selection in CKGR\_MOR register while Master clock source is PLL and PLL reference clock is Fast RC oscillator.

The user must:

- Switch on the Main RC oscillator by writing 1 in CSS field of PMC\_MCKR.
- Change the frequency (MOSCRCF) or oscillator selection (MOSCSEL) in CKGR\_MOR.
- Wait for MOSCRCS (if frequency changes) or MOSCSELS (if oscillator selection changes) in PMC\_IER.
- Disable and then enable the PLL (LOCK in PMC\_IDR and PMC\_IER register)
- Wait for PLLRDY.
- Switch back to PLL.

## 24. Power Management Controller (PMC)

### 24.1 Description

The Power Management Controller (PMC) optimizes power consumption by controlling all system and user peripheral clocks. The PMC enables/disables the clock inputs to many of the peripherals and the Cortex-M3 Processor.

The Supply Controller selects between the 32 kHz RC oscillator or the crystal oscillator. The unused oscillator is disabled automatically so that power consumption is optimized.

By default, at startup the chip runs out of the Master Clock using the fast RC oscillator running at 4 MHz.

The user can trim the 8 and 12 MHz RC Oscillator frequency by software.

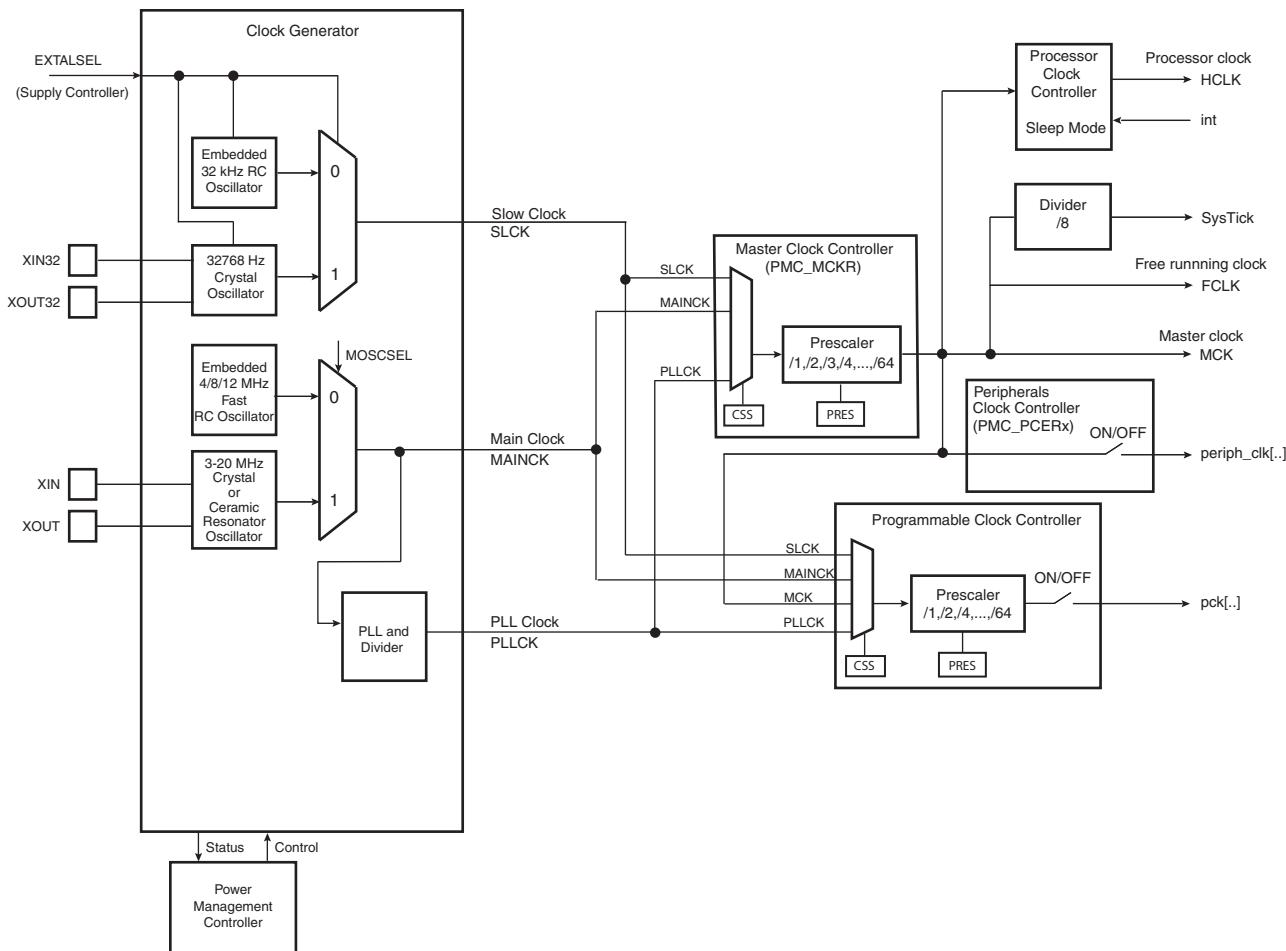
### 24.2 Embedded Characteristics

The Power Management Controller provides the following clocks:

- MCK, the Master Clock, programmable from a few hundred Hz to the maximum operating frequency of the device. It is available to the modules running permanently, such as the Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller.
- Processor Clock (HCLK) is automatically switched off when the processor enters Sleep Mode
- Free running processor Clock (FCLK)
- the Cortex-M3 SysTick external clock
- Peripheral Clocks, typically MCK, provided to the embedded peripherals (USART, SPI, TWI, TC, etc.) and are independently controllable. In order to reduce the number of clock names in a product, the Peripheral Clocks are named MCK in the product datasheet.
- Programmable Clock Outputs can be selected from the clocks provided by the clock generator and driven on the PCKx pins.

## 24.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 24-1.** General Clock Block Diagram



## 24.4 Master Clock Controller

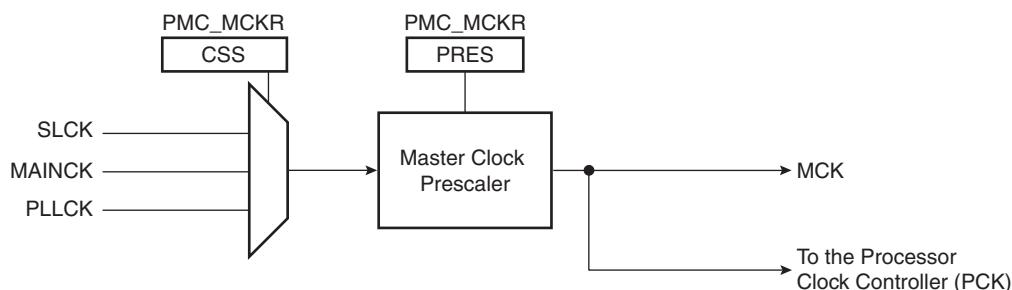
The Master Clock Controller provides selection and division of the Master Clock (MCK). MCK is the clock provided to all the peripherals.

The Master Clock is selected from one of the clocks provided by the Clock Generator. Selecting the Slow Clock provides a Slow Clock signal to the whole device. Selecting the Main Clock saves power consumption of the PLL.

The Master Clock Controller is made up of a clock selector and a prescaler.

The Master Clock selection is made by writing the CSS field (Clock Source Selection) in **PMC\_MCKR** (Master Clock Register). The prescaler supports the division by a power of 2 of the selected clock between 1 and 64, and the division by 3. The PRES field in **PMC\_MCKR** programs the prescaler.

Each time **PMC\_MCKR** is written to define a new Master Clock, the **MCKRDY** bit is cleared in **PMC\_SR**. It reads 0 until the Master Clock is established. Then, the **MCKRDY** bit is set and can trigger an interrupt to the processor. This feature is useful when switching from a high-speed clock to a lower one to inform the software when the change is actually done.

**Figure 24-2.** Master Clock Controller

## 24.5 Processor Clock Controller

The PMC features a Processor Clock Controller (HCLK) that implements the Processor Sleep Mode. The Processor Clock can be disabled by executing the WFI (WaitForInterrupt) or the WFE (WaitForEvent) processor instruction while the LPM bit is at 0 in the PMC Fast Startup Mode Register (PMC\_FSMR).

The Processor Clock HCLK is enabled after a reset and is automatically re-enabled by any enabled interrupt. The Processor Sleep Mode is achieved by disabling the Processor Clock, which is automatically re-enabled by any enabled fast or normal interrupt, or by the reset of the product.

When Processor Sleep Mode is entered, the current instruction is finished before the clock is stopped, but this does not prevent data transfers from other masters of the system bus.

## 24.6 SysTick Clock

The SysTick calibration value is fixed at 6000 which allows the generation of a time base of 1 ms with SysTick clock at 6 MHz (max MCK/8).

## 24.7 Peripheral Clock Controller

The Power Management Controller controls the clocks of each embedded peripheral by means of the Peripheral Clock Controller. The user can individually enable and disable the Clock on the peripherals.

The user can also enable and disable these clocks by writing Peripheral Clock Enable (PMC\_PCER) and Peripheral Clock Disable (PMC\_PCDR) registers. The status of the peripheral clock activity can be read in the Peripheral Clock Status Register (PMC\_PCSR).

When a peripheral clock is disabled, the clock is immediately stopped. The peripheral clocks are automatically disabled after a reset.

In order to stop a peripheral, it is recommended that the system software wait until the peripheral has executed its last programmed operation before disabling the clock. This is to avoid data corruption or erroneous behavior of the system.

The bit number within the Peripheral Clock Control registers (PMC\_PCER, PMC\_PCDR and PMC\_PCSR) is the Peripheral Identifier defined at the product level. The bit number corresponds to the interrupt source number assigned to the peripheral.

## 24.8 Free Running Processor Clock

The Free running processor clock (FCLK) used for sampling interrupts and clocking debug blocks ensures that interrupts can be sampled, and sleep events can be traced, while the processor is sleeping. It is connected to Master Clock (MCK).

## 24.9 Programmable Clock Output Controller

The PMC controls 3 signals to be output on external pins, PCKx. Each signal can be independently programmed via the PMC\_PCKx registers.

PCKx can be independently selected between the Slow Clock (SLCK), the Main Clock (MAINCK), the PLL Clock (PLLCK) and the Master Clock (MCK) by writing the CSS field in PMC\_PCKx. Each output signal can also be divided by a power of 2 between 1 and 64 by writing the PRES (Prescaler) field in PMC\_PCKx.

Each output signal can be enabled and disabled by writing 1 in the corresponding bit, PCKx of PMC\_SCER and PMC\_SCDR, respectively. Status of the active programmable output clocks are given in the PCKx bits of PMC\_SCSR (System Clock Status Register).

Moreover, like the PCK, a status bit in PMC\_SR indicates that the Programmable Clock is actually what has been programmed in the Programmable Clock registers.

As the Programmable Clock Controller does not manage with glitch prevention when switching clocks, it is strongly recommended to disable the Programmable Clock before any configuration change and to re-enable it after the change is actually performed.

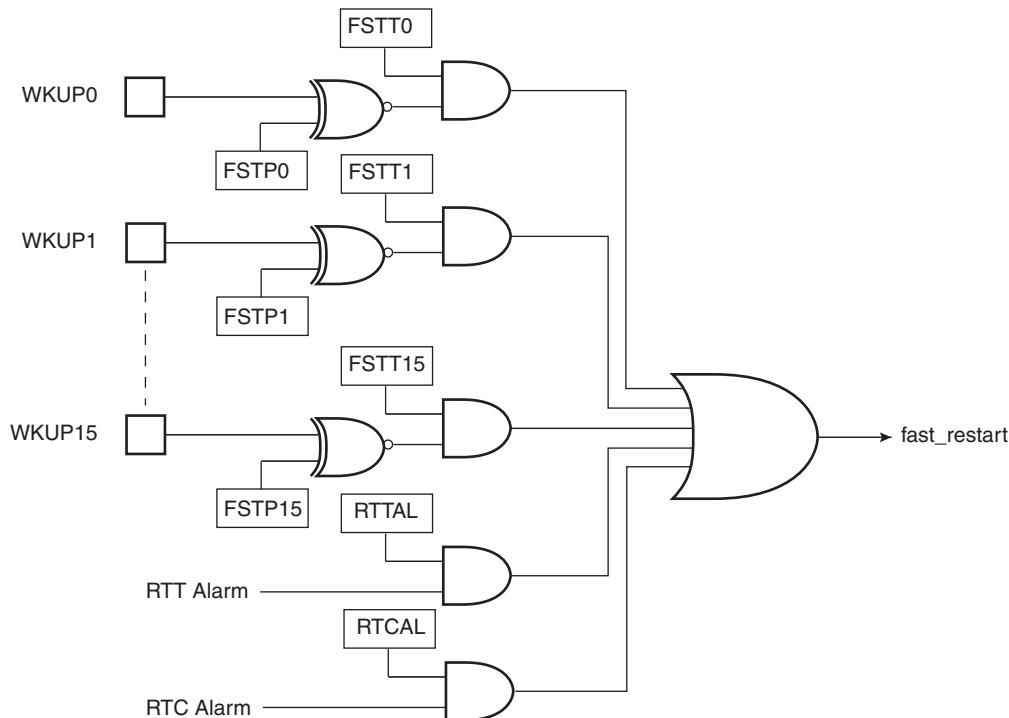
## 24.10 Fast Startup

The SAM3N device allows the processor to restart in less than 10 µs while the device is in Wait mode. The system enters Wait mode either by writing the WAITMODE bit at 1 in the PMC Clock Generator Main Oscillator Register (CKGR\_MOR), or by executing the WaitForEvent (WFE) instruction of the processor while the LPM bit is at 1 in the PMC Fast Startup Mode Register (PMC\_FSMR).

A Fast Startup is enabled upon the detection of a programmed level on one of the 16 wake-up inputs (WKUP), SM or upon an active alarm from the RTC and RTT. The polarity of the 16 wake-up inputs is programmable by writing the PMC Fast Startup Polarity Register (PMC\_FSPR).

The Fast Restart circuitry, as shown in [Figure 24-3](#), is fully asynchronous and provides a fast startup signal to the Power Management Controller. As soon as the fast startup signal is asserted, this automatically restarts the embedded 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator.

**Figure 24-3.** Fast Startup Circuitry



Each wake-up input pin and alarm can be enabled to generate a Fast Startup event by writing at 1 the corresponding bit in the Fast Startup Mode Register PMC\_FSMR.

The user interface does not provide any status for Fast Startup, but the user can easily recover this information by reading the PIO Controller, and the status registers of the RTC and RTT.

## 24.11 Clock Failure Detector

The clock failure detector allows to monitor the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator and to detect an eventual defect of this oscillator (for example if the crystal is unconnected).

The clock failure detector can be enabled or disabled by means of the CFDEN bit in the PMC Clock Generator Main Oscillator Register (CKGR\_MOR). After reset, the detector is disabled. However, if the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based Oscillator is disabled, the clock failure detector is disabled too.

A failure is detected by means of a counter incrementing on the 3 to 20 MHzCrystal oscillator or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator clock edge and timing logic clocked on the slow clock RC oscillator controlling the counter. The counter is cleared when the slow clock RC oscillator signal is low and enabled when the slow clock RC oscillator is high. Thus the failure detection time is 1 slow clock RC oscillator clock period. If, during the high level period of slow clock RC oscillator, less than 8 fast crystal clock periods have been counted, then a failure is declared.

If a failure of the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator clock is detected, the CFDEV flag is set in the PMC Status Register (PMC\_SR), and can generate an interrupt if it is not masked. The interrupt remains active until a read operation in the PMC\_SR register. The user can know the status of the clock failure detector at any time by reading the CFDS bit in the PMC\_SR register.

If the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator clock is selected as the source clock of MAINCK (MOSCSEL = 1), and if the Master Clock Source is PLLCK (CSS = 2), then a clock failure detection switches automatically the Master Clock on MAINCK. Then whatever the PMC configuration is, a clock failure detection switches automatically MAINCK on the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC Oscillator clock. If the Fast RC oscillator is disabled when a clock failure detection occurs, it is automatically re-enabled by the clock failure detection mechanism.

It takes 2 slow clock RC oscillator cycles to detect and switch from the 3 to 20 MHz Crystal or Ceramic Resonator-based oscillator to the 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC Oscillator if the Master Clock Source is Main Clock or 3 slow clock RC oscillator cycles if the Master Clock Source is PLL.

The user can know the status of the fault output at any time by reading the FOS bit in the PMC\_SR register.

## 24.12 Programming Sequence

### 1. Enabling the Main Oscillator:

The main oscillator is enabled by setting the MOSCXTEN field in the CKGR\_MOR register. The user can define a start-up time. This can be achieved by writing a value in the MOSCXTST field in the CKGR\_MOR register. Once this register has been correctly configured, the user must wait for MOSCXTS field in the PMC\_SR register to be set. This can be done either by polling the status register, or by waiting the interrupt line to be raised if the associated interrupt to MOSCXTS has been enabled in the PMC\_IER register.

Start Up Time =  $8 * \text{MOSCXTST} / \text{SLCK} = 56$  Slow Clock Cycles.

So, the main oscillator will be enabled (MOSCXTS bit set) after 56 Slow Clock Cycles.

### 2. Checking the Main Oscillator Frequency (Optional):

In some situations the user may need an accurate measure of the main clock frequency. This measure can be accomplished via the CKGR\_MCFR register.

Once the MAINFRDY field is set in CKGR\_MCFR register, the user may read the MAINF field in CKGR\_MCFR register. This provides the number of main clock cycles within sixteen slow clock cycles.

### 3. Setting PLL and Divider:

All parameters needed to configure PLL and the divider are located in the CKGR\_PLLR register.

The DIV field is used to control the divider itself. It must be set to 1 when PLL is used. By default, DIV parameter is set to 0 which means that the divider is turned off.

The MUL field is the PLL multiplier factor. This parameter can be programmed between 0 and 2047. If MUL is set to 0, PLL will be turned off, otherwise the PLL output frequency is PLL input frequency multiplied by (MUL + 1).

The PLLCOUNT field specifies the number of slow clock cycles before LOCK bit is set in the PMC\_SR register after CKGR\_PLLR register has been written.

Once the PMC\_PLL register has been written, the user must wait for the LOCK bit to be set in the PMC\_SR register. This can be done either by polling the status register or by waiting the interrupt line to be raised if the associated interrupt to LOCK has been enabled in the PMC\_IER register. All parameters in CKGR\_PLLR can be programmed in a single write operation. If at some stage one of the following parameters, MUL, DIV is modified, LOCK bit will go low to indicate that PLL is not ready yet. When PLL is locked, LOCK will be set again. The user is constrained to wait for LOCK bit to be set before using the PLL output clock.

### 4. Selection of Master Clock and Processor Clock

The Master Clock and the Processor Clock are configurable via the PMC\_MCKR register.

The CSS field is used to select the Master Clock divider source. By default, the selected clock source is main clock.

Once the PMC\_MCKR register has been written, the user must wait for the MCKRDY bit to be set in the PMC\_SR register. This can be done either by polling the status register or by waiting for the interrupt line to be raised if the associated interrupt to MCKRDY has been enabled in the PMC\_IER register.

The PMC\_MCKR register must not be programmed in a single write operation. The preferred programming sequence for the PMC\_MCKR register is as follows:



- If a new value for CSS field corresponds to PLL Clock,
    - Program the PRES field in the PMC\_MCKR register.
    - Wait for the MCKRDY bit to be set in the PMC\_SR register.
    - Program the CSS field in the PMC\_MCKR register.
    - Wait for the MCKRDY bit to be set in the PMC\_SR register.
  - If a new value for CSS field corresponds to Main Clock or Slow Clock,
    - Program the CSS field in the PMC\_MCKR register.
    - Wait for the MCKRDY bit to be set in the PMC\_SR register.
    - Program the PRES field in the PMC\_MCKR register.
    - Wait for the MCKRDY bit to be set in the PMC\_SR register.
- If at some stage one of the following parameters, CSS or PRES, is modified, the MCKRDY bit will go low to indicate that the Master Clock and the Processor Clock are not ready yet. The user must wait for MCKRDY bit to be set again before using the Master and Processor Clocks.

Note: IF PLL clock was selected as the Master Clock and the user decides to modify it by writing in CKGR\_PLLR, the MCKRDY flag will go low while PLL is unlocked. Once PLL is locked again, LOCK goes high and MCKRDY is set.  
While PLL is unlocked, the Master Clock selection is automatically changed to Slow Clock. For further information, see [Section 24.13.2 “Clock Switching Waveforms” on page 350](#).

Code Example:

```
write_register(PMC_MCKR,0x00000001)
wait (MCKRDY=1)
write_register(PMC_MCKR,0x00000011)
wait (MCKRDY=1)
```

The Master Clock is main clock divided by 2.

The Processor Clock is the Master Clock.

##### 5. Selection of Programmable Clocks

Programmable clocks are controlled via registers; PMC\_SCER, PMC\_SCDR and PMC\_SCSR.

Programmable clocks can be enabled and/or disabled via the PMC\_SCER and PMC\_SCDR registers. 3 Programmable clocks can be enabled or disabled. The PMC\_SCSR provides a clear indication as to which Programmable clock is enabled. By default all Programmable clocks are disabled.

PMC\_PCKx registers are used to configure Programmable clocks.

The CSS field is used to select the Programmable clock divider source. Three clock options are available: main clock, slow clock, PLL. By default, the clock source selected is slow clock.

The PRES field is used to control the Programmable clock prescaler. It is possible to choose between different values (1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64). Programmable clock output is prescaler input divided by PRES parameter. By default, the PRES parameter is set to 0 which means that master clock is equal to slow clock.

Once the PMC\_PCKx register has been programmed, The corresponding Programmable clock must be enabled and the user is constrained to wait for the PCKRDY<sub>x</sub> bit to be set in the PMC\_SR register. This can be done either by polling the status register or by waiting the interrupt line to be raised if the associated interrupt to PCKRDY<sub>x</sub> has been enabled in the PMC\_IER register. All parameters in PMC\_PCKx can be programmed in a single write operation.

If the CSS and PRES parameters are to be modified, the corresponding Programmable clock must be disabled first. The parameters can then be modified. Once this has been done, the user must re-enable the Programmable clock and wait for the PCKRDY<sub>x</sub> bit to be set.

#### 6. Enabling Peripheral Clocks

Once all of the previous steps have been completed, the peripheral clocks can be enabled and/or disabled via registers PMC\_PCER0, PMC\_PCER1, PMC\_PCDR0 and PMC\_PCDR1.

## 24.13 Clock Switching Details

### 24.13.1 Master Clock Switching Timings

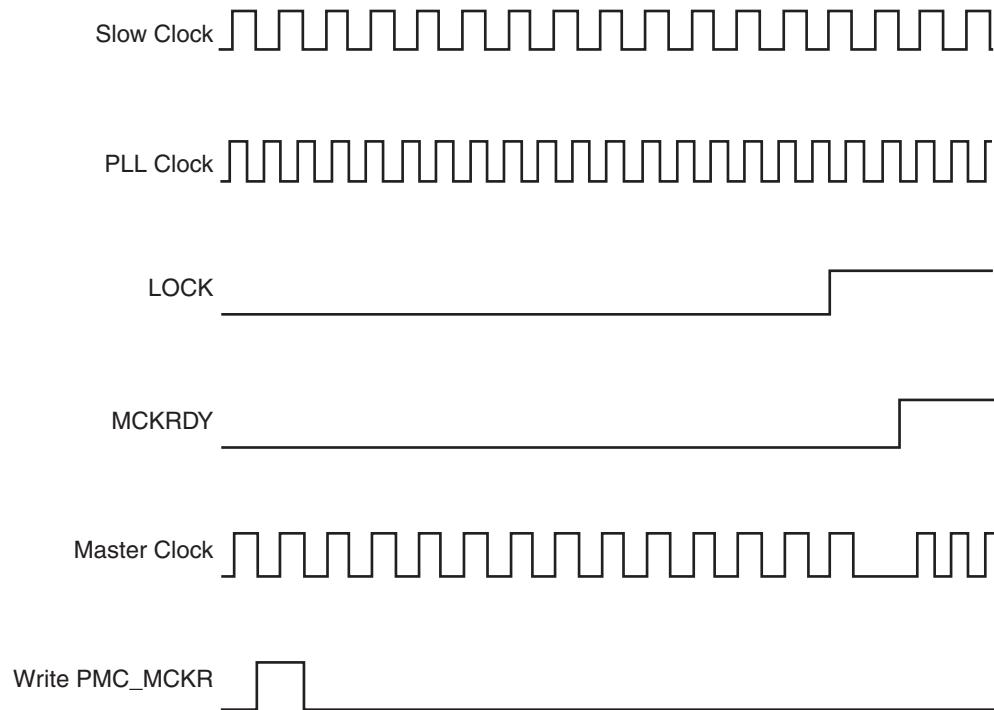
**Table 24-1** gives the worst case timings required for the Master Clock to switch from one selected clock to another one. This is in the event that the prescaler is de-activated. When the prescaler is activated, an additional time of 64 clock cycles of the new selected clock has to be added.

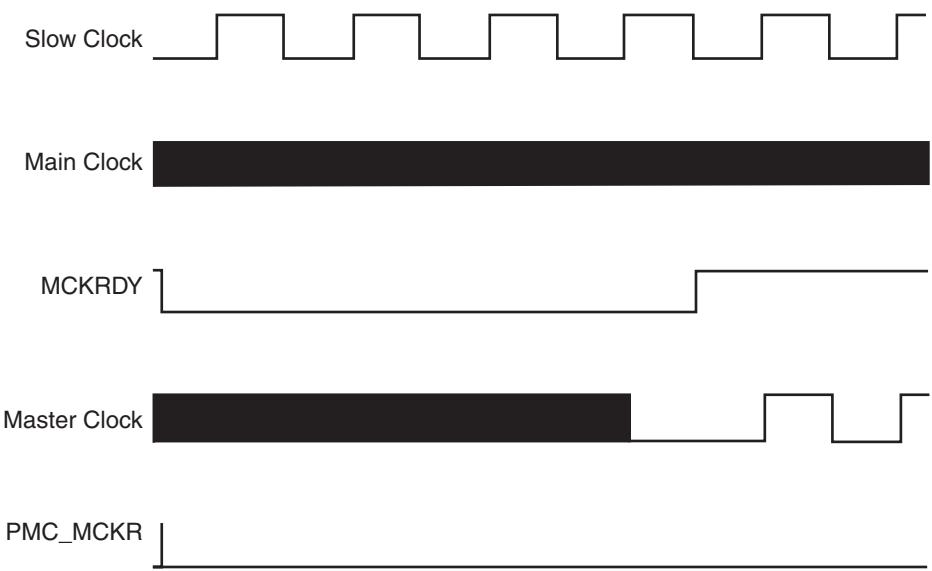
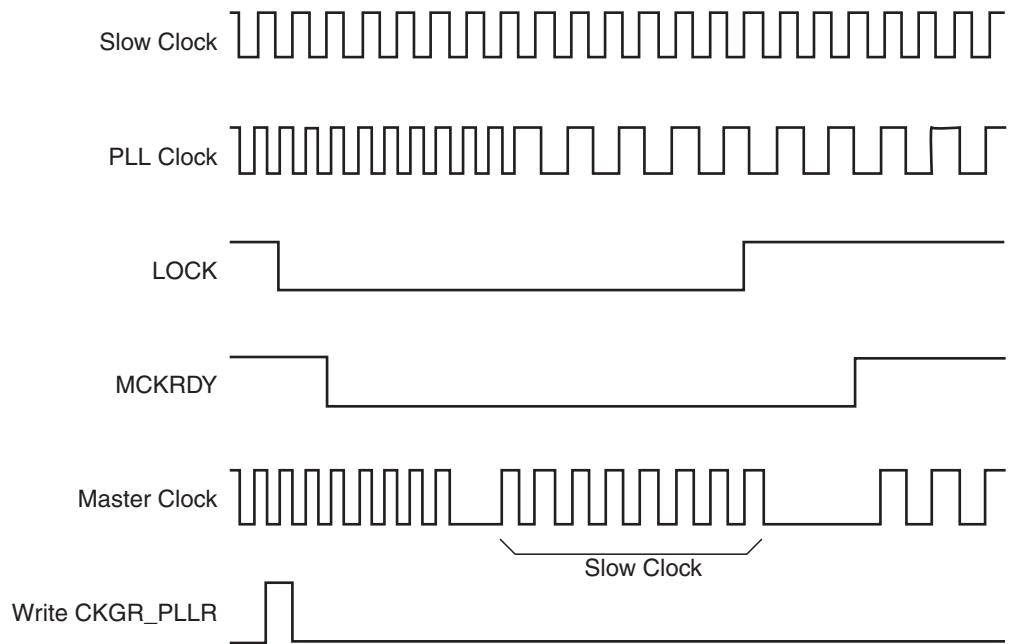
**Table 24-1.** Clock Switching Timings (Worst Case)

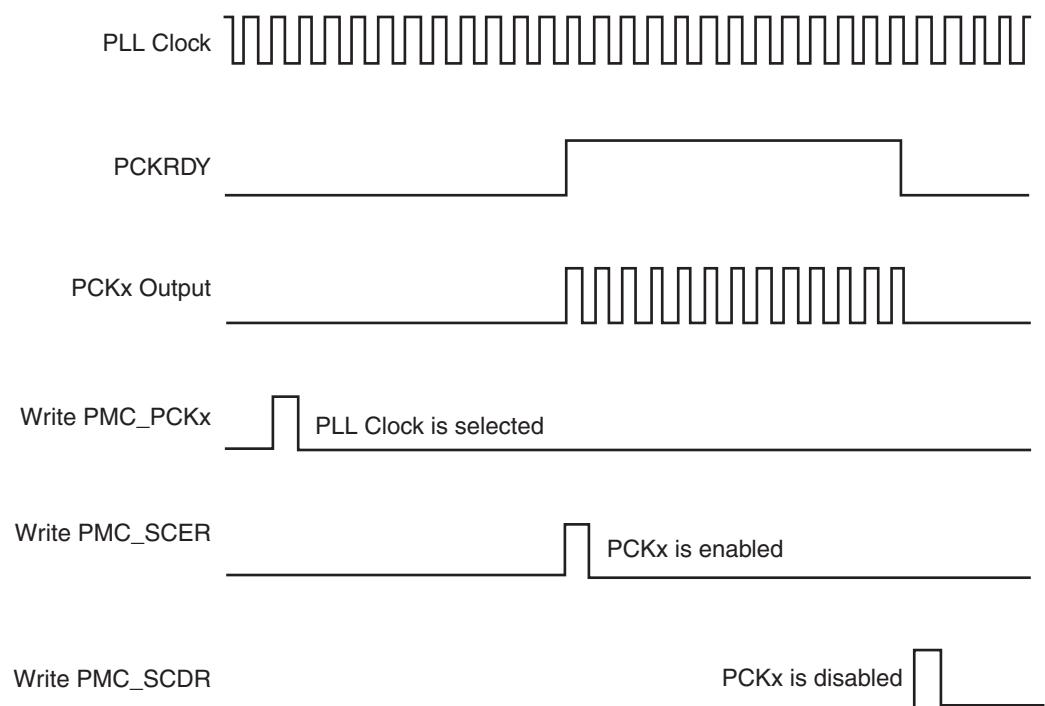
To	From	Main Clock	SLCK	PLL Clock
Main Clock	—	—	4 x SLCK + 2.5 x Main Clock	3 x PLL Clock + 4 x SLCK + 1 x Main Clock
SLCK	—	0.5 x Main Clock + 4.5 x SLCK	—	3 x PLL Clock + 5 x SLCK
PLL Clock	—	0.5 x Main Clock + 4 x SLCK + PLLCOUNT x SLCK + 2.5 x PLL Clock	2.5 x PLL Clock + 5 x SLCK + PLLCOUNT x SLCK	2.5 x PLL Clock + 4 x SLCK + PLLCOUNT x SLCK

### 24.13.2 Clock Switching Waveforms

**Figure 24-4.** Switch Master Clock from Slow Clock to PLL Clock



**Figure 24-5.** Switch Master Clock from Main Clock to Slow Clock**Figure 24-6.** Change PLL Programming

**Figure 24-7.** Programmable Clock Output Programming

## 24.14 Write Protection Registers

To prevent any single software error that may corrupt PMC behavior, certain address spaces can be write protected by setting the WPEN bit in the “[PMC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” (PMC\_WPMR).

If a write access to the protected registers is detected, then the WPVS flag in the PMC Write Protect Status Register (PMC\_WPSR) is set and the field WPVSR indicates in which register the write access has been attempted.

The WPVS flag is reset by writing the PMC Write Protect Mode Register (PMC\_WPMR) with the appropriate access key, WPKEY.

The protected registers are:

- “[PMC System Clock Enable Register](#)” on page 355
- “[PMC System Clock Disable Register](#)” on page 355
- “[PMC Peripheral Clock Enable Register](#)” on page 357
- “[PMC Peripheral Clock Disable Register](#)” on page 358
- “[PMC Clock Generator Main Oscillator Register](#)” on page 360
- “[PMC Clock Generator PLL Register](#)” on page 363
- “[PMC Master Clock Register](#)” on page 364
- “[PMC Programmable Clock Register](#)” on page 365
- “[PMC Fast Startup Mode Register](#)” on page 371
- “[PMC Fast Startup Polarity Register](#)” on page 372
- “[PMC Oscillator Calibration Register](#)” on page 376

## 24.15 Power Management Controller (PMC) User Interface

**Table 24-2.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0000	System Clock Enable Register	PMC_SCER	Write-only	–
0x0004	System Clock Disable Register	PMC_SCDR	Write-only	–
0x0008	System Clock Status Register	PMC_SCSR	Read-only	0x0000_0001
0x000C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0010	Peripheral Clock Enable Register	PMC_PCER	Write-only	–
0x0014	Peripheral Clock Disable Register	PMC_PCDR	Write-only	–
0x0018	Peripheral Clock Status Register	PMC_PCSR	Read-only	0x0000_0000
0x001C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0020	Main Oscillator Register	CKGR_MOR	Read-write	0x0000_0001
0x0024	Main Clock Frequency Register	CKGR_MCFR	Read-only	0x0000_0000
0x0028	PLL Register	CKGR_PLLR	Read-write	0x0000_3F00
0x002C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0030	Master Clock Register	PMC_MCKR	Read-write	0x0000_0001
0x0034 - 0x003C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0040	Programmable Clock 0 Register	PMC_PCK0	Read-write	0x0000_0000
0x0044	Programmable Clock 1 Register	PMC_PCK1	Read-write	0x0000_0000
0x0048	Programmable Clock 2 Register	PMC_PCK2	Read-write	0x0000_0000
0x004C - 0x005C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0060	Interrupt Enable Register	PMC_IER	Write-only	–
0x0064	Interrupt Disable Register	PMC_IDR	Write-only	–
0x0068	Status Register	PMC_SR	Read-only	0x0001_0008
0x006C	Interrupt Mask Register	PMC_IMR	Read-only	0x0000_0000
0x0070	Fast Startup Mode Register	PMC_FSMR	Read-write	0x0000_0000
0x0074	Fast Startup Polarity Register	PMC_FSPR	Read-write	0x0000_0000
0x0078	Fault Output Clear Register	PMC_FOCR	Write-only	–
0x007C- 0x00E0	Reserved	–	–	–
0x00E4	Write Protect Mode Register	PMC_WPMR	Read-write	0x0
0x00E8	Write Protect Status Register	PMC_WPSR	Read-only	0x0
0x00EC-0x010C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0110	Oscillator Calibration Register	PMC_OCR	Read-write	0x0040_4040

Note: if an offset is not listed in the table it must be considered as “reserved”.

#### 24.15.1 PMC System Clock Enable Register

**Name:** PMC\_SCER

**Address:** 0x400E0400

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	PCK2	PCK1	PCK0
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **PCKx: Programmable Clock x Output Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the corresponding Programmable Clock output.

#### 24.15.2 PMC System Clock Disable Register

**Name:** PMC\_SCDR

**Address:** 0x400E0404

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	PCK2	PCK1	PCK0
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **PCKx: Programmable Clock x Output Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the corresponding Programmable Clock output.

#### 24.15.3 PMC System Clock Status Register

**Name:** PMC\_SCSR

**Address:** 0x400E0408

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	PCK2	PCK1	PCK0
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

- **PCKx: Programmable Clock x Output Status**

0 = The corresponding Programmable Clock output is disabled.

1 = The corresponding Programmable Clock output is enabled.

#### 24.15.4 PMC Peripheral Clock Enable Register

**Name:** PMC\_PCER

**Address:** 0x400E0410

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
PID31	PID30	PID29	PID28	PID27	PID26	PID25	PID24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
PID23	PID22	PID21	PID20	PID19	PID18	PID17	PID16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
PID15	PID14	PID13	PID12	PID11	PID10	PID9	PID8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PID7	PID6	PID5	PID4	PID3	PID2	–	–

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **PIDx: Peripheral Clock x Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the corresponding peripheral clock.

Note: PID2 to PID31 refer to identifiers as defined in the section “Peripheral Identifiers” in the product datasheet.

Note: Programming the control bits of the Peripheral ID that are not implemented has no effect on the behavior of the PMC.

#### 24.15.5 PMC Peripheral Clock Disable Register

**Name:** PMC\_PCDR

**Address:** 0x400E0414

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
PID31	PID30	PID29	PID28	PID27	PID26	PID25	PID24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
PID23	PID22	PID21	PID20	PID19	PID18	PID17	PID16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
PID15	PID14	PID13	PID12	PID11	PID10	PID9	PID8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PID7	PID6	PID5	PID4	PID3	PID2	-	-

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **PIDx: Peripheral Clock x Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the corresponding peripheral clock.

Note: PID2 to PID31 refer to identifiers as defined in the section “Peripheral Identifiers” in the product datasheet.

#### 24.15.6 PMC Peripheral Clock Status Register

**Name:** PMC\_PCSR

**Address:** 0x400E0418

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
PID31	PID30	PID29	PID28	PID27	PID26	PID25	PID24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
PID23	PID22	PID21	PID20	PID19	PID18	PID17	PID16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
PID15	PID14	PID13	PID12	PID11	PID10	PID9	PID8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PID7	PID6	PID5	PID4	PID3	PID2	-	-

- **PIDx: Peripheral Clock x Status**

0 = The corresponding peripheral clock is disabled.

1 = The corresponding peripheral clock is enabled.

Note: PID2 to PID31 refer to identifiers as defined in the section “Peripheral Identifiers” in the product datasheet.

#### 24.15.7 PMC Clock Generator Main Oscillator Register

**Name:** CKGR\_MOR

**Address:** 0x400E0420

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	CFDEN	MOSCSEL
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
KEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
MOSCXTST							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	MOSCRCF		MOSRCEN		WAITMODE	MOSCXTBY	MOSCXTEN

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **KEY: Password**

Should be written at value 0x37. Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation.

- **MOSCXTEN: Main Crystal Oscillator Enable**

A crystal must be connected between XIN and XOUT.

0 = The Main Crystal Oscillator is disabled.

1 = The Main Crystal Oscillator is enabled. MOSCXTBY must be set to 0.

When MOSCXTEN is set, the MOSCXTS flag is set once the Main Crystal Oscillator startup time is achieved.

- **MOSCXTBY: Main Crystal Oscillator Bypass**

0 = No effect.

1 = The Main Crystal Oscillator is bypassed. MOSCXTEN must be set to 0. An external clock must be connected on XIN.

When MOSCXTBY is set, the MOSCXTS flag in PMC\_SR is automatically set.

Clearing MOSCXTEN and MOSCXTBY bits allows resetting the MOSCXTS flag.

- **WAITMODE: Wait Mode Command**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enters the device in Wait mode.

Note: The bit WAITMODE is write-only

- **MOSCRCEN: Main On-Chip RC Oscillator Enable**

0 = The Main On-Chip RC Oscillator is disabled.

1 = The Main On-Chip RC Oscillator is enabled.

When MOSCRCEN is set, the MOSCRCS flag is set once the Main On-Chip RC Oscillator startup time is achieved.

- **MOSCRCF: Main On-Chip RC Oscillator Frequency Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0x0	4MHZ	The Fast RC Oscillator Frequency is at 4 MHz (default)
0x1	8MHZ	The Fast RC Oscillator Frequency is at 8 MHz
0x2	12MHZ	The Fast RC Oscillator Frequency is at 12 MHz

- **MOSCXTST: Main Crystal Oscillator Start-up Time**

Specifies the number of Slow Clock cycles multiplied by 8 for the Main Crystal Oscillator start-up time.

- **MOSCSEL: Main Oscillator Selection**

0 = The Main On-Chip RC Oscillator is selected.

1 = The Main Crystal Oscillator is selected.

- **CFDEN: Clock Failure Detector Enable**

0 = The Clock Failure Detector is disabled.

1 = The Clock Failure Detector is enabled.

#### 24.15.8 PMC Clock Generator Main Clock Frequency Register

**Name:** CKGR\_MCFR

**Address:** 0x400E0424

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	MAINFRDY
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
MAINF							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
MAINF							

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **MAINF: Main Clock Frequency**

Gives the number of Main Clock cycles within 16 Slow Clock periods.

- **MAINFRDY: Main Clock Ready**

0 = MAINF value is not valid or the Main Oscillator is disabled.

1 = The Main Oscillator has been enabled previously and MAINF value is available.

#### 24.15.9 PMC Clock Generator PLL Register

**Name:** CKGR\_PLLR

**Address:** 0x400E0428

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	1	-	-		MUL	
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
				MUL			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-			PLLCOUNT			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				DIV			

Possible limitations on PLL input frequencies and multiplier factors should be checked before using the PMC.

**Warning:** Bit 29 must always be set to 1 when programming the CKGR\_PLLR register.

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **DIV: Divider**

DIV	Divider Selected
0	Divider output is 0
1	Divider is bypassed (DIV = 1)
2 - 255	Divider output is DIV

- **PLLCOUNT: PLL Counter**

Specifies the number of Slow Clock cycles x8 before the LOCK bit is set in PMC\_SR after CKGR\_PLLR is written.

- **MUL: PLL Multiplier**

0 = The PLL is deactivated.

1 up to 2047 = The PLL Clock frequency is the PLL input frequency multiplied by MUL + 1.

#### 24.15.10 PMC Master Clock Register

**Name:** PMC\_MCKR

**Address:** 0x400E0430

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	PLLDIV2	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-		PRES		-	-	CSS	

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **CSS: Master Clock Source Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	SLOW_CLK	Slow Clock is selected
1	MAIN_CLK	Main Clock is selected
2	PLL_CLK	PLL Clock is selected
3	-	Reserved

- **PRES: Processor Clock Prescaler**

Value	Name	Description
0	CLK	Selected clock
1	CLK_2	Selected clock divided by 2
2	CLK_4	Selected clock divided by 4
3	CLK_28	Selected clock divided by 8
4	CLK_16	Selected clock divided by 16
5	CLK_32	Selected clock divided by 32
6	CLK_64	Selected clock divided by 64
7	CLK_3	Selected clock divided by 3

- **PLLDIV2: PLL Divisor by 2**

PLLDIV2	PLL Clock Division
0	PLL clock frequency is divided by 1
1	PLL clock frequency is divided by 2

#### 24.15.11 PMC Programmable Clock Register

**Name:** PMC\_PCKx

**Address:** 0x400E0440

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	PRES			-		CSS	

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **CSS: Master Clock Source Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	SLOW_CLK	Slow Clock is selected
1	MAIN_CLK	Main Clock is selected
2	PLLA_CLK	PLLA Clock is selected
3	PLL_B_CLK	PLL_B Clock is selected
4	MCK	Master Clock is selected

- **PRES: Processor Clock Prescaler**

Value	Name	Description
0	CLK	Selected clock
1	CLK_2	Selected clock divided by 2
2	CLK_4	Selected clock divided by 4
3	CLK_28	Selected clock divided by 8
4	CLK_16	Selected clock divided by 16
5	CLK_32	Selected clock divided by 32
6	CLK_64	Selected clock divided by 64

#### 24.15.12 PMC Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** PMC\_IER

**Address:** 0x400E0460

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	CFDEV	MOSCRCs	MOSCSELS
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	PCKRDY2	PCKRDY1	PCKRDY0
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	–	MCKRDY	–	LOCK	MOSCXTS

- **MOSCXTS:** Main Crystal Oscillator Status Interrupt Enable
- **LOCK:** PLL Lock Interrupt Enable
- **MCKRDY:** Master Clock Ready Interrupt Enable
- **PCKRDYx:** Programmable Clock Ready x Interrupt Enable
- **MOSCSELS:** Main Oscillator Selection Status Interrupt Enable
- **MOSCRCs:** Main On-Chip RC Status Interrupt Enable
- **CFDEV:** Clock Failure Detector Event Interrupt Enable

#### 24.15.13 PMC Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** PMC\_IDR

**Address:** 0x400E0464

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	CFDEV	MOSCRCS	MOSCSELS
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	PCKRDY2	PCKRDY1	PCKRDY0
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	–	MCKRDY	–	LOCK	MOSCXTS

- **MOSCXTS:** Main Crystal Oscillator Status Interrupt Disable
- **LOCK:** PLL Lock Interrupt Disable
- **MCKRDY:** Master Clock Ready Interrupt Disable
- **PCKRDYx:** Programmable Clock Ready x Interrupt Disable
- **MOSCSELS:** Main Oscillator Selection Status Interrupt Disable
- **MOSCRCs:** Main On-Chip RC Status Interrupt Disable
- **CFDEV:** Clock Failure Detector Event Interrupt Disable

#### 24.15.14 PMC Status Register

**Name:** PMC\_SR

**Address:** 0x400E0468

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	FOS	CFDS	CFDEV	MOSCRCS	MOSCSELS
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	PCKRDY2	PCKRDY1	PCKRDY0
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
OSCSELS	-	-	-	MCKRDY	-	LOCK	MOSCXTS

- **MOSCXTS: Main XTAL Oscillator Status**

0 = Main XTAL oscillator is not stabilized.

1 = Main XTAL oscillator is stabilized.

- **LOCK: PLL Lock Status**

0 = PLL is not locked

1 = PLL is locked.

- **MCKRDY: Master Clock Status**

0 = Master Clock is not ready.

1 = Master Clock is ready.

- **OSCSELS: Slow Clock Oscillator Selection**

0 = Internal slow clock RC oscillator is selected.

1 = External slow clock 32 kHz oscillator is selected.

- **PCKRDY<sub>x</sub>: Programmable Clock Ready Status**

0 = Programmable Clock x is not ready.

1 = Programmable Clock x is ready.

- **MOSCSELS: Main Oscillator Selection Status**

0 = Selection is in progress

1 = Selection is done

- **MOSCRCS: Main On-Chip RC Oscillator Status**

0 = Main on-chip RC oscillator is not stabilized.

1 = Main on-chip RC oscillator is stabilized.

- **CFDEV: Clock Failure Detector Event**

0 = No clock failure detection of the main on-chip RC oscillator clock has occurred since the last read of PMC\_SR.

1 = At least one clock failure detection of the main on-chip RC oscillator clock has occurred since the last read of PMC\_SR.

- **CFDS: Clock Failure Detector Status**

0 = A clock failure of the main on-chip RC oscillator clock is not detected.

1 = A clock failure of the main on-chip RC oscillator clock is detected.

- **FOS: Clock Failure Detector Fault Output Status**

0 = The fault output of the clock failure detector is inactive.

1 = The fault output of the clock failure detector is active.



#### 24.15.15 PMC Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** PMC\_IMR

**Address:** 0x400E046C

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	CFDEV	MOSCRCs	MOSCSELS
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	PCKRDY2	PCKRDY1	PCKRDY0
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
–	–	–	–	MCKRDY	–	LOCK	MOSCXTS

- **MOSCXTS:** Main Crystal Oscillator Status Interrupt Mask
- **LOCK:** PLL Lock Interrupt Mask
- **MCKRDY:** Master Clock Ready Interrupt Mask
- **PCKRDYx:** Programmable Clock Ready x Interrupt Mask
- **MOSCSELS:** Main Oscillator Selection Status Interrupt Mask
- **MOSCRCs:** Main On-Chip RC Status Interrupt Mask
- **CFDEV:** Clock Failure Detector Event Interrupt Mask

#### 24.15.16 PMC Fast Startup Mode Register

**Name:** PMC\_FSMR

**Address:** 0x400E0470

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	LPM	-	-	RTCAL	RTTAL
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
FSTT15	FSTT14	FSTT13	FSTT12	FSTT11	FSTT10	FSTT9	FSTT8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
FSTT7	FSTT6	FSTT5	FSTT4	FSTT3	FSTT2	FSTT1	FSTT0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **FSTT0 - FSTT15: Fast Startup Input Enable 0 to 15**

0 = The corresponding wake up input has no effect on the Power Management Controller.

1 = The corresponding wake up input enables a fast restart signal to the Power Management Controller.

- **RTTAL: RTT Alarm Enable**

0 = The RTT alarm has no effect on the Power Management Controller.

1 = The RTT alarm enables a fast restart signal to the Power Management Controller.

- **RTCAL: RTC Alarm Enable**

0 = The RTC alarm has no effect on the Power Management Controller.

1 = The RTC alarm enables a fast restart signal to the Power Management Controller.

- **LPM: Low Power Mode**

0 = The WaitForInterrupt (WFI) or WaitForEvent (WFE) instruction of the processor causes the processor to enter Idle Mode.

1 = The WaitForEvent (WFE) instruction of the processor causes the system to enter Wait Mode.

#### 24.15.17 PMC Fast Startup Polarity Register

**Name:** PMC\_FSPR

**Address:** 0x400E0474

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
FSTP15	FSTP14	FSTP13	FSTP12	FSTP11	FSTP10	FSTP9	FSTP8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
FSTP7	FSTP6	FSTP5	FSTP4	FSTP3	FSTP2	FSTP1	FSTP0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **FSTPx: Fast Startup Input Polarityx**

Defines the active polarity of the corresponding wake up input. If the corresponding wake up input is enabled and at the FSTP level, it enables a fast restart signal.

#### 24.15.18 PMC Fault Output Clear Register

**Name:** PMC\_FOCR

**Address:** 0x400E0478

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	FOCLR

- **FOCLR: Fault Output Clear**

Clears the clock failure detector fault output.

#### 24.15.19 PMC Write Protect Mode Register

**Name:** PMC\_WPMR

**Address:** 0x400E04E4

**Access:** Read-write

**Reset:** See [Table 24-2](#)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPEN

- **WPEN: Write Protect Enable**

0 = Disables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x504D43 (“PMC” in ASCII).

1 = Enables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x504D43 (“PMC” in ASCII).

Protects the registers:

- “[PMC System Clock Enable Register](#)” on page 355
- “[PMC System Clock Disable Register](#)” on page 355
- “[PMC Peripheral Clock Enable Register](#)” on page 357
- “[PMC Peripheral Clock Disable Register](#)” on page 358
- “[PMC Clock Generator Main Oscillator Register](#)” on page 360
- “[PMC Clock Generator PLL Register](#)” on page 363
- “[PMC Master Clock Register](#)” on page 364
- “[PMC Programmable Clock Register](#)” on page 365
- “[PMC Fast Startup Mode Register](#)” on page 371
- “[PMC Fast Startup Polarity Register](#)” on page 372
- “[PMC Oscillator Calibration Register](#)” on page 376

- **WPKEY: Write Protect KEY**

Should be written at value 0x504D43 (“PMC” in ASCII). Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation of the WPEN bit. Always reads as 0.

#### 24.15.20 PMC Write Protect Status Register

**Name:** PMC\_WPSR

**Address:** 0x400E04E8

**Access:** Read-only

**Reset:** See [Table 24-2](#)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPVSRC							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPVSRC							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPVS

- **WPVS: Write Protect Violation Status**

0 = No Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last read of the PMC\_WPSR register.

1 = A Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last read of the PMC\_WPSR register. If this violation is an unauthorized attempt to write a protected register, the associated violation is reported into field WPVSRC.

- **WPVSRC: Write Protect Violation Source**

When WPVS is active, this field indicates the write-protected register (through address offset or code) in which a write access has been attempted.

Reading PMC\_WPSR automatically clears all fields.

#### 24.15.21 PMC Oscillator Calibration Register

**Name:** PMC\_OCR

**Address:** 0x400E0510

**Access:** Read-Write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
SEL12				CAL12			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
SEL8				CAL8			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SEL4				CAL4			

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “PMC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 374.

- **CAL4: RC Oscillator Calibration bits for 4 MHz**

Calibration bits applied to the RC Oscillator when SEL4 is set.

- **SEL4: Selection of RC Oscillator Calibration bits for 4 MHz**

0 = Default value stored in Flash memory.

1 = Value written by user in CAL4 field of this register.

- **CAL8: RC Oscillator Calibration bits for 8 MHz**

Calibration bits applied to the RC Oscillator when SEL8 is set.

- **SEL8: Selection of RC Oscillator Calibration bits for 8 MHz**

0 = Factory determined value stored in Flash memory.

1 = Value written by user in CAL8 field of this register.

- **CAL12: RC Oscillator Calibration bits for 12 MHz**

Calibration bits applied to the RC Oscillator when SEL12 is set.

- **SEL12: Selection of RC Oscillator Calibration bits for 12 MHz**

0 = Factory determined value stored in Flash memory.

1 = Value written by user in CAL12 field of this register.

## 25. Chip Identifier (CHIPID)

### 25.1 Description

Chip Identifier registers permit recognition of the device and its revision. These registers provide the sizes and types of the on-chip memories, as well as the set of embedded peripherals.

Two chip identifier registers are embedded: CHIPID\_CIDR (Chip ID Register) and CHIPID\_EXID (Extension ID). Both registers contain a hard-wired value that is read-only. The first register contains the following fields:

- EXT - shows the use of the extension identifier register
- NVPTYP and NVPSIZ - identifies the type of embedded non-volatile memory and its size
- ARCH - identifies the set of embedded peripherals
- SRAMSIZ - indicates the size of the embedded SRAM
- EPROC - indicates the embedded ARM processor
- VERSION - gives the revision of the silicon

The second register is device-dependent and reads 0 if the bit EXT is 0.

**Table 25-1.** ATSAM3N Chip IDs Register

Chip Name	CHIPID_CIDR	CHIPID_EXID
ATSAM3N4C (Rev A)	0x29540960	0x0
ATSAM3N2C (Rev A)	0x29590760	0x0
ATSAM3N1C (Rev A)	0x29580560	0x0
ATSAM3N4B (Rev A)	0x29440960	0x0
ATSAM3N2B (Rev A)	0x29490760	0x0
ATSAM3N1B (Rev A)	0x29480560	0x0
ATSAM3N4A (Rev A)	0x29340960	0x0
ATSAM3N2A (Rev A)	0x29390760	0x0
ATSAM3N1A (Rev A)	0x29380560	0x0
ATSAM3N1C (Rev B)	0x29580561	0x0
ATSAM3N1B (Rev B)	0x29480561	0x0
ATSAM3N1A (Rev B)	0x29380561	0x0
ATSAM3N0C (Rev A)	0x295 80361	0x0
ATSAM3N0B (Rev A)	0x294 80361	0x0
ATSAM3N0A (Rev A)	0x293 80361	0x0
ATSAM3N00B (Rev A)	0x294 50261	0x0
ATSAM3N00A (Rev A)	0x293 50261	0x0

## 25.2 Chip Identifier (CHIPID) User Interface

Table 25-2. Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0	Chip ID Register	CHIPID_CIDR	Read-only	—
0x4	Chip ID Extension Register	CHIPID_EXID	Read-only	—

### 25.2.1 Chip ID Register

**Name:** CHIPID\_CIDR

**Address:** 0x400E0740

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
EXT		NVPTYP		ARCH			
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
		ARCH			SRAMSIZ		
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
		NVPSIZ2			NVPSIZ		
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		EPROC		VERSION			

- VERSION: Version of the Device**

Current version of the device.

- EPROC: Embedded Processor**

Value	Name	Description
1	ARM946ES	ARM946ES
2	ARM7TDMI	ARM7TDMI
3	CM3	Cortex-M3
4	ARM920T	ARM920T
5	ARM926EJS	ARM926EJS
6	CA5	Cortex-A5

- NVPSIZ: Nonvolatile Program Memory Size**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	8K	8K bytes
2	16K	16K bytes
3	32K	32K bytes
4		Reserved
5	64K	64K bytes
6		Reserved
7	128K	128K bytes
8		Reserved
9	256K	256K bytes
10	512K	512K bytes
11		Reserved
12	1024K	1024K bytes

Value	Name	Description
13		Reserved
14	2048K	2048K bytes
15		Reserved

- NVPSIZ2 Second Nonvolatile Program Memory Size

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	8K	8K bytes
2	16K	16K bytes
3	32K	32K bytes
4		Reserved
5	64K	64K bytes
6		Reserved
7	128K	128K bytes
8		Reserved
9	256K	256K bytes
10	512K	512K bytes
11		Reserved
12	1024K	1024K bytes
13		Reserved
14	2048K	2048K bytes
15		Reserved

- SRAMSIZ: Internal SRAM Size

Value	Name	Description
0	48K	48K bytes
1	1K	1K bytes
2	2K	2K bytes
3	6K	6K bytes
4	112K	112K bytes
5	4K	4K bytes
6	80K	80K bytes
7	160K	160K bytes
8	8K	8K bytes
9	16K	16K bytes
10	32K	32K bytes
11	64K	64K bytes
12	128K	128K bytes

Value	Name	Description
13	256K	256K bytes
14	96K	96K bytes
15	512K	512K bytes

- **ARCH: Architecture Identifier**

Value	Name	Description
0x19	AT91SAM9xx	AT91SAM9xx Series
0x29	AT91SAM9XExx	AT91SAM9XExx Series
0x34	AT91x34	AT91x34 Series
0x37	CAP7	CAP7 Series
0x39	CAP9	CAP9 Series
0x3B	CAP11	CAP11 Series
0x40	AT91x40	AT91x40 Series
0x42	AT91x42	AT91x42 Series
0x55	AT91x55	AT91x55 Series
0x60	AT91SAM7Axx	AT91SAM7Axx Series
0x61	AT91SAM7AQxx	AT91SAM7AQxx Series
0x63	AT91x63	AT91x63 Series
0x70	AT91SAM7Sxx	AT91SAM7Sxx Series
0x71	AT91SAM7XCxx	AT91SAM7XCxx Series
0x72	AT91SAM7SExx	AT91SAM7SExx Series
0x73	AT91SAM7Lxx	AT91SAM7Lxx Series
0x75	AT91SAM7XXX	AT91SAM7XXX Series
0x76	AT91SAM7SLxx	AT91SAM7SLxx Series
0x80	ATSAM3UxC	ATSAM3UxC Series (100-pin version)
0x81	ATSAM3UxE	ATSAM3UxE Series (144-pin version)
0x83	ATSAM3AxC	ATSAM3AxC Series (100-pin version)
0x84	ATSAM3XxC	ATSAM3XxC Series (100-pin version)
0x85	ATSAM3XxE	ATSAM3XxE Series (144-pin version)
0x86	ATSAM3XxG	ATSAM3XxG Series (208/217-pin version)
0x88	ATSAM3SxA	ATSAM3SxA Series (48-pin version)
0x89	ATSAM3SxB	ATSAM3SxB Series (64-pin version)
0x8A	ATSAM3SxC	ATSAM3SxC Series (100-pin version)
0x92	AT91x92	AT91x92 Series
0x93	ATSAM3Nx A	ATSAM3Nx A Series (48-pin version)
0x94	ATSAM3Nx B	ATSAM3Nx B Series (64-pin version)
0x95	ATSAM3Nx C	ATSAM3Nx C Series (100-pin version)

Value	Name	Description
0x98	ATSAM3SDxA	ATSAM3SDxA Series (48-pin version)
0x99	ATSAM3SDxB	ATSAM3SDxB Series (64-pin version)
0x9A	ATSAM3SDxC	ATSAM3SDxC Series (100-pin version)
0xA5	ATSAM5A	ATSAM5A
0xF0	AT75Cxx	AT75Cxx Series

- **NVPTYP: Nonvolatile Program Memory Type**

Value	Name	Description
0	ROM	ROM
1	ROMLESS	ROMless or on-chip Flash
4	SRAM	SRAM emulating ROM
2	FLASH	Embedded Flash Memory
3	ROM_FLASH	ROM and Embedded Flash Memory NVPSIZ is ROM size NVPSIZ2 is Flash size

- **EXT: Extension Flag**

0 = Chip ID has a single register definition without extension

1 = An extended Chip ID exists.

### 25.2.2 Chip ID Extension Register

**Name:** CHIPID\_EXID

**Address:** 0x400E0744

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
EXID							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
EXID							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
EXID							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EXID							

- **EXID: Chip ID Extension**

Reads 0 if the bit EXT in CHIPID\_CIDR is 0.



## 26. Parallel Input/Output (PIO) Controller

### 26.1 Description

The Parallel Input/Output Controller (PIO) manages up to 32 fully programmable input/output lines. Each I/O line may be dedicated as a general-purpose I/O or be assigned to a function of an embedded peripheral. This assures effective optimization of the pins of a product.

Each I/O line is associated with a bit number in all of the 32-bit registers of the 32-bit wide User Interface.

Each I/O line of the PIO Controller features:

- An input change interrupt enabling level change detection on any I/O line.
- Additional Interrupt modes enabling rising edge, falling edge, low level or high level detection on any I/O line.
- A glitch filter providing rejection of glitches lower than one-half of PIO clock cycle.
- A debouncing filter providing rejection of unwanted pulses from key or push button operations.
- Multi-drive capability similar to an open drain I/O line.
- Control of the pull-up and pull-down of the I/O line.
- Input visibility and output control.

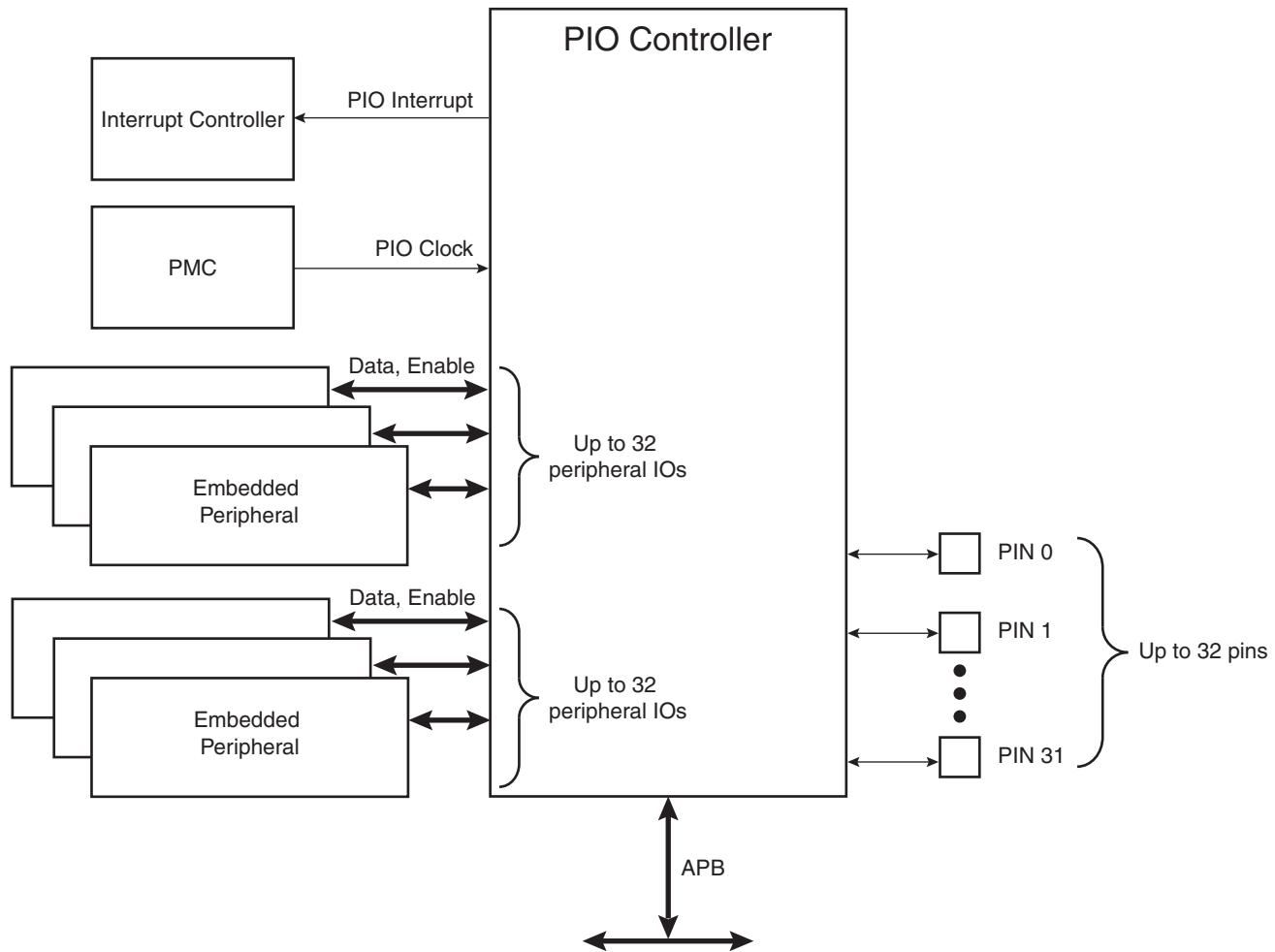
The PIO Controller also features a synchronous output providing up to 32 bits of data output in a single write operation.

### 26.2 Embedded Characteristics

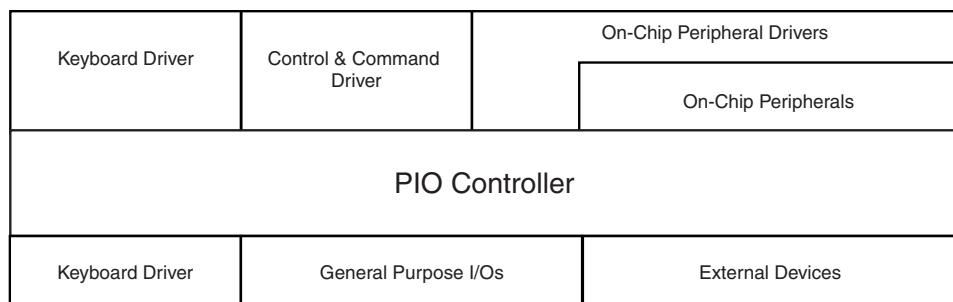
- Up to 32 Programmable I/O Lines
- Fully Programmable through Set/Clear Registers
- Multiplexing of Four Peripheral Functions per I/O Line
- For each I/O Line (Whether Assigned to a Peripheral or Used as General Purpose I/O)
  - Input Change Interrupt
  - Programmable Glitch Filter
  - Programmable Debouncing Filter
  - Multi-drive Option Enables Driving in Open Drain
  - Programmable Pull Up on Each I/O Line
  - Pin Data Status Register, Supplies Visibility of the Level on the Pin at Any Time
  - Additional Interrupt Modes on a Programmable Event: Rising Edge, Falling Edge, Low Level or High Level
  - Lock of the Configuration by the Connected Peripheral
- Synchronous Output, Provides Set and Clear of Several I/O lines in a Single Write
- Write Protect Registers
- Programmable Schmitt Trigger Inputs

## 26.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 26-1.** Block Diagram



**Figure 26-2.** Application Block Diagram



## 26.4 Product Dependencies

### 26.4.1 Pin Multiplexing

Each pin is configurable, according to product definition as either a general-purpose I/O line only, or as an I/O line multiplexed with one or two peripheral I/Os. As the multiplexing is hardware defined and thus product-dependent, the hardware designer and programmer must carefully determine the configuration of the PIO controllers required by their application. When an I/O line is general-purpose only, i.e. not multiplexed with any peripheral I/O, programming of the PIO Controller regarding the assignment to a peripheral has no effect and only the PIO Controller can control how the pin is driven by the product.

### 26.4.2 Power Management

The Power Management Controller controls the PIO Controller clock in order to save power. Writing any of the registers of the user interface does not require the PIO Controller clock to be enabled. This means that the configuration of the I/O lines does not require the PIO Controller clock to be enabled.

However, when the clock is disabled, not all of the features of the PIO Controller are available, including glitch filtering. Note that the Input Change Interrupt, Interrupt Modes on a programmable event and the read of the pin level require the clock to be validated.

After a hardware reset, the PIO clock is disabled by default.

The user must configure the Power Management Controller before any access to the input line information.

### 26.4.3 Interrupt Generation

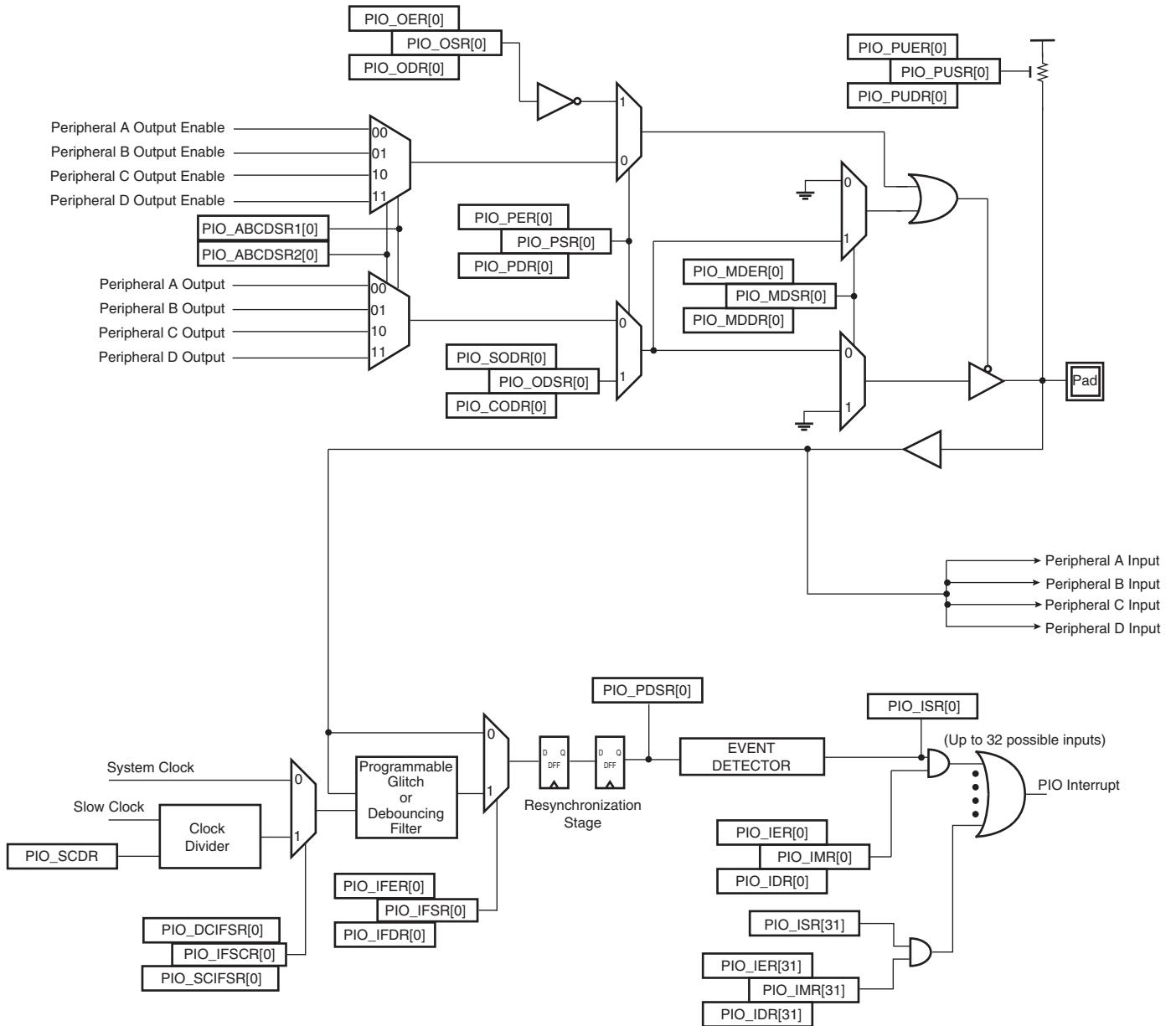
The PIO Controller is connected on one of the sources of the Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC). Using the PIO Controller requires the NVIC to be programmed first.

The PIO Controller interrupt can be generated only if the PIO Controller clock is enabled.

## 26.5 Functional Description

The PIO Controller features up to 32 fully-programmable I/O lines. Most of the control logic associated to each I/O is represented in [Figure 26-3](#). In this description each signal shown represents but one of up to 32 possible indexes.

**Figure 26-3.** I/O Line Control Logic



### 26.5.1 Pull-up and Pull-down Resistor Control

Each I/O line is designed with an embedded pull-up resistor and an embedded pull-down resistor. The pull-up resistor can be enabled or disabled by writing respectively PIO\_PUER (Pull-up Enable Register) and PIO\_PUDR (Pull-up Disable Resistor). Writing in these registers results in setting or clearing the corresponding bit in PIO\_PUSR (Pull-up Status Register). Reading a 1 in PIO\_PUSR means the pull-up is disabled and reading a 0 means the pull-up is enabled. The pull-down resistor can be enabled or disabled by writing respectively PIO\_PPDER (Pull-down Enable Register) and PIO\_PPDDR (Pull-down Disable Resistor). Writing in these registers results in setting or clearing the corresponding bit in PIO\_PPDSR (Pull-down Status Register). Reading a 1 in PIO\_PPDSR means the pull-up is disabled and reading a 0 means the pull-down is enabled.

Enabling the pull-down resistor while the pull-up resistor is still enabled is not possible. In this case, the write of PIO\_PPDER for the concerned I/O line is discarded. Likewise, enabling the pull-up resistor while the pull-down resistor is still enabled is not possible. In this case, the write of PIO\_PUER for the concerned I/O line is discarded.

Control of the pull-up resistor is possible regardless of the configuration of the I/O line.

After reset, all of the pull-ups are enabled, i.e. PIO\_PUSR resets at the value 0x0, and all the pull-downs are disabled, i.e. PIO\_PPDSR resets at the value 0xFFFFFFFF.

### 26.5.2 I/O Line or Peripheral Function Selection

When a pin is multiplexed with one or two peripheral functions, the selection is controlled with the registers PIO\_PER (PIO Enable Register) and PIO\_PDR (PIO Disable Register). The register PIO\_PSR (PIO Status Register) is the result of the set and clear registers and indicates whether the pin is controlled by the corresponding peripheral or by the PIO Controller. A value of 0 indicates that the pin is controlled by the corresponding on-chip peripheral selected in the PIO\_ABCDSR1 and PIO\_ABCDSR2 (ABCD Select Registers). A value of 1 indicates the pin is controlled by the PIO controller.

If a pin is used as a general purpose I/O line (not multiplexed with an on-chip peripheral), PIO\_PER and PIO\_PDR have no effect and PIO\_PSR returns 1 for the corresponding bit.

After reset, most generally, the I/O lines are controlled by the PIO controller, i.e. PIO\_PSR resets at 1. However, in some events, it is important that PIO lines are controlled by the peripheral (as in the case of memory chip select lines that must be driven inactive after reset or for address lines that must be driven low for booting out of an external memory). Thus, the reset value of PIO\_PSR is defined at the product level, depending on the multiplexing of the device.

### 26.5.3 Peripheral A or B or C or D Selection

The PIO Controller provides multiplexing of up to four peripheral functions on a single pin. The selection is performed by writing PIO\_ABCDSR1 and PIO\_ABCDSR2 (ABCD Select Registers).

For each pin:

- the corresponding bit at level 0 in PIO\_ABCDSR1 and the corresponding bit at level 0 in PIO\_ABCDSR2 means peripheral A is selected.
- the corresponding bit at level 1 in PIO\_ABCDSR1 and the corresponding bit at level 0 in PIO\_ABCDSR2 means peripheral B is selected.
- the corresponding bit at level 0 in PIO\_ABCDSR1 and the corresponding bit at level 1 in PIO\_ABCDSR2 means peripheral C is selected.



- the corresponding bit at level 1 in PIO\_ABCDSR1 and the corresponding bit at level 1 in PIO\_ABCDSR2 means peripheral D is selected.

Note that multiplexing of peripheral lines A, B, C and D only affects the output line. The peripheral input lines are always connected to the pin input.

After reset, PIO\_ABCDSR1 and PIO\_ABCDSR2 are 0, thus indicating that all the PIO lines are configured on peripheral A. However, peripheral A generally does not drive the pin as the PIO Controller resets in I/O line mode.

Writing in PIO\_ABCDSR1 and PIO\_ABCDSR2 manages the multiplexing regardless of the configuration of the pin. However, assignment of a pin to a peripheral function requires a write in the peripheral selection registers (PIO\_ABCDSR1 and PIO\_ABCDSR2) in addition to a write in PIO\_PDR.

#### 26.5.4 Output Control

When the I/O line is assigned to a peripheral function, i.e. the corresponding bit in PIO\_PSR is at 0, the drive of the I/O line is controlled by the peripheral. Peripheral A or B or C or D depending on the value in PIO\_ABCDSR1 and PIO\_ABCDSR2 (ABCD Select Registers) determines whether the pin is driven or not.

When the I/O line is controlled by the PIO controller, the pin can be configured to be driven. This is done by writing PIO\_OER (Output Enable Register) and PIO\_ODR (Output Disable Register). The results of these write operations are detected in PIO\_OSR (Output Status Register). When a bit in this register is at 0, the corresponding I/O line is used as an input only. When the bit is at 1, the corresponding I/O line is driven by the PIO controller.

The level driven on an I/O line can be determined by writing in PIO\_SODR (Set Output Data Register) and PIO\_CODR (Clear Output Data Register). These write operations respectively set and clear PIO\_ODSR (Output Data Status Register), which represents the data driven on the I/O lines. Writing in PIO\_OER and PIO\_ODR manages PIO\_OSR whether the pin is configured to be controlled by the PIO controller or assigned to a peripheral function. This enables configuration of the I/O line prior to setting it to be managed by the PIO Controller.

Similarly, writing in PIO\_SODR and PIO\_CODR effects PIO\_ODSR. This is important as it defines the first level driven on the I/O line.

#### 26.5.5 Synchronous Data Output

Clearing one (or more) PIO line(s) and setting another one (or more) PIO line(s) synchronously cannot be done by using PIO\_SODR and PIO\_CODR registers. It requires two successive write operations into two different registers. To overcome this, the PIO Controller offers a direct control of PIO outputs by single write access to PIO\_ODSR (Output Data Status Register). Only bits unmasked by PIO\_OWSR (Output Write Status Register) are written. The mask bits in PIO\_OWSR are set by writing to PIO\_OWER (Output Write Enable Register) and cleared by writing to PIO\_OWDR (Output Write Disable Register).

After reset, the synchronous data output is disabled on all the I/O lines as PIO\_OWSR resets at 0x0.

#### 26.5.6 Multi Drive Control (Open Drain)

Each I/O can be independently programmed in Open Drain by using the Multi Drive feature. This feature permits several drivers to be connected on the I/O line which is driven low only by each device. An external pull-up resistor (or enabling of the internal one) is generally required to guarantee a high level on the line.

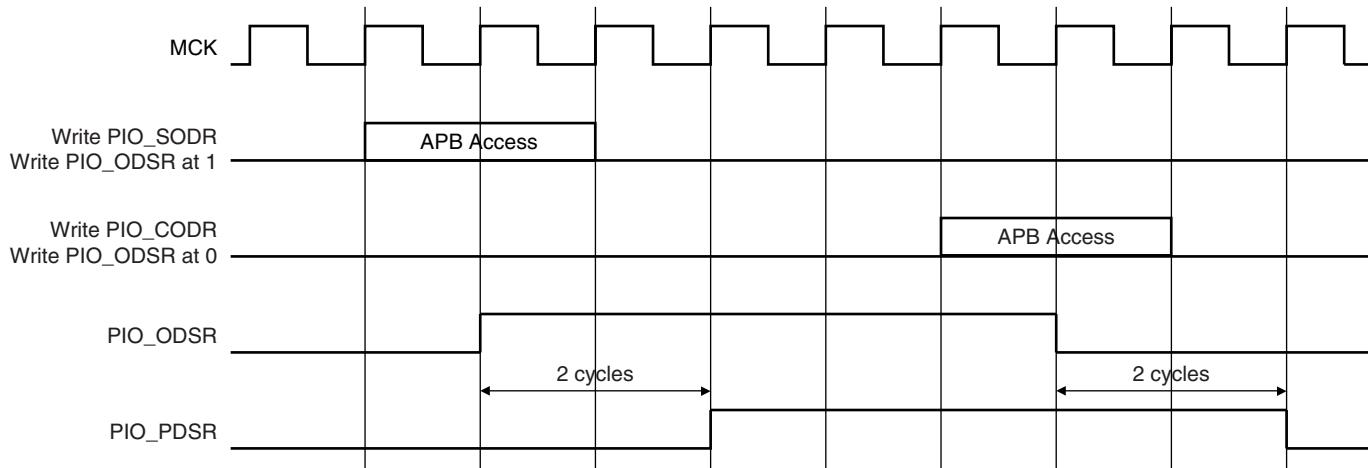
The Multi Drive feature is controlled by PIO\_MDER (Multi-driver Enable Register) and PIO\_MDDR (Multi-driver Disable Register). The Multi Drive can be selected whether the I/O line is controlled by the PIO controller or assigned to a peripheral function. PIO\_MDSR (Multi-driver Status Register) indicates the pins that are configured to support external drivers.

After reset, the Multi Drive feature is disabled on all pins, i.e. PIO\_MDSR resets at value 0x0.

#### 26.5.7 Output Line Timings

[Figure 26-4](#) shows how the outputs are driven either by writing PIO\_SODR or PIO\_CODR, or by directly writing PIO\_ODSR. This last case is valid only if the corresponding bit in PIO\_OWSR is set. [Figure 26-4](#) also shows when the feedback in PIO\_PDSR is available.

**Figure 26-4.** Output Line Timings



#### 26.5.8 Inputs

The level on each I/O line can be read through PIO\_PDSR (Pin Data Status Register). This register indicates the level of the I/O lines regardless of their configuration, whether uniquely as an input or driven by the PIO controller or driven by a peripheral.

Reading the I/O line levels requires the clock of the PIO controller to be enabled, otherwise PIO\_PDSR reads the levels present on the I/O line at the time the clock was disabled.

#### 26.5.9 Input Glitch and Debouncing Filters

Optional input glitch and debouncing filters are independently programmable on each I/O line.

The glitch filter can filter a glitch with a duration of less than 1/2 Master Clock (MCK) and the debouncing filter can filter a pulse of less than 1/2 Period of a Programmable Divided Slow Clock.

The selection between glitch filtering or debounce filtering is done by writing in the registers PIO\_IFSCDR (PIO Input Filter Slow Clock Disable Register) and PIO\_IFSCER (PIO Input Filter Slow Clock Enable Register). Writing PIO\_IFSCDR and PIO\_IFSCER respectively, sets and clears bits in PIO\_IFCSR.

The current selection status can be checked by reading the register PIO\_IFCSR (Input Filter Slow Clock Status Register).

- If PIO\_IFCSR[i] = 0: The glitch filter can filter a glitch with a duration of less than 1/2 Period of Master Clock.

- If  $\text{PIO\_IFCSR}[i] = 1$ : The debouncing filter can filter a pulse with a duration of less than 1/2 Period of the Programmable Divided Slow Clock.

For the debouncing filter, the Period of the Divided Slow Clock is performed by writing in the DIV field of the PIO\_SCDR (Slow Clock Divider Register)

$$T_{\text{div\_slclk}} = ((\text{DIV}+1)*2).T_{\text{slow\_clock}}$$

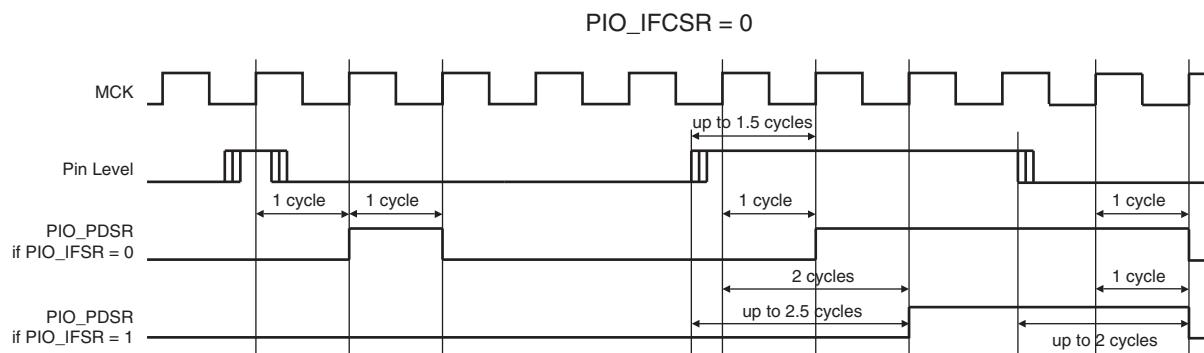
When the glitch or debouncing filter is enabled, a glitch or pulse with a duration of less than 1/2 Selected Clock Cycle (Selected Clock represents MCK or Divided Slow Clock depending on PIO\_IFSCDR and PIO\_IFSCER programming) is automatically rejected, while a pulse with a duration of 1 Selected Clock (MCK or Divided Slow Clock) cycle or more is accepted. For pulse durations between 1/2 Selected Clock cycle and 1 Selected Clock cycle the pulse may or may not be taken into account, depending on the precise timing of its occurrence. Thus for a pulse to be visible it must exceed 1 Selected Clock cycle, whereas for a glitch to be reliably filtered out, its duration must not exceed 1/2 Selected Clock cycle.

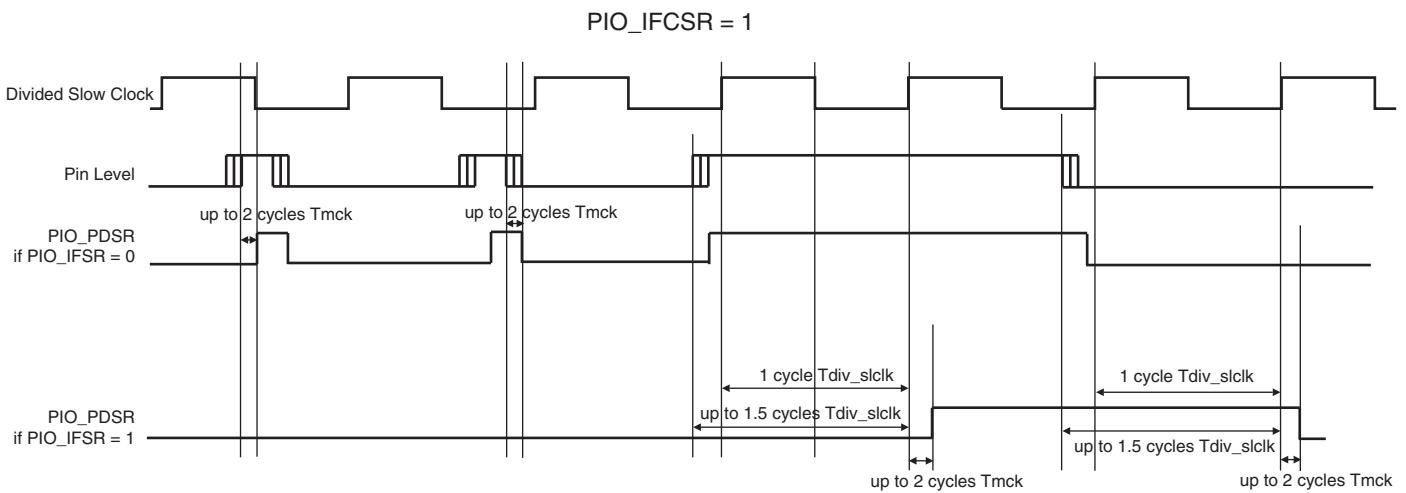
The filters also introduce some latencies, this is illustrated in [Figure 26-5](#) and [Figure 26-6](#).

The glitch filters are controlled by the register set: PIO\_IFER (Input Filter Enable Register), PIO\_IFDR (Input Filter Disable Register) and PIO\_IFSR (Input Filter Status Register). Writing PIO\_IFER and PIO\_IFDR respectively sets and clears bits in PIO\_IFSR. This last register enables the glitch filter on the I/O lines.

When the glitch and/or debouncing filter is enabled, it does not modify the behavior of the inputs on the peripherals. It acts only on the value read in PIO\_PDSR and on the input change interrupt detection. The glitch and debouncing filters require that the PIO Controller clock is enabled.

**Figure 26-5.** Input Glitch Filter Timing



**Figure 26-6.** Input Debouncing Filter Timing

#### 26.5.10 Input Edge/Level Interrupt

The PIO Controller can be programmed to generate an interrupt when it detects an edge or a level on an I/O line. The Input Edge/Level Interrupt is controlled by writing PIO\_IER (Interrupt Enable Register) and PIO\_IDR (Interrupt Disable Register), which respectively enable and disable the input change interrupt by setting and clearing the corresponding bit in PIO\_IMR (Interrupt Mask Register). As Input change detection is possible only by comparing two successive samplings of the input of the I/O line, the PIO Controller clock must be enabled. The Input Change Interrupt is available, regardless of the configuration of the I/O line, i.e. configured as an input only, controlled by the PIO Controller or assigned to a peripheral function.

By default, the interrupt can be generated at any time an edge is detected on the input.

Some additional Interrupt modes can be enabled/disabled by writing in the PIO\_AIMER (Additional Interrupt Modes Enable Register) and PIO\_AMDR (Additional Interrupt Modes Disable Register). The current state of this selection can be read through the PIO\_AMMR (Additional Interrupt Modes Mask Register)

These Additional Modes are:

- Rising Edge Detection
- Falling Edge Detection
- Low Level Detection
- High Level Detection

In order to select an Additional Interrupt Mode:

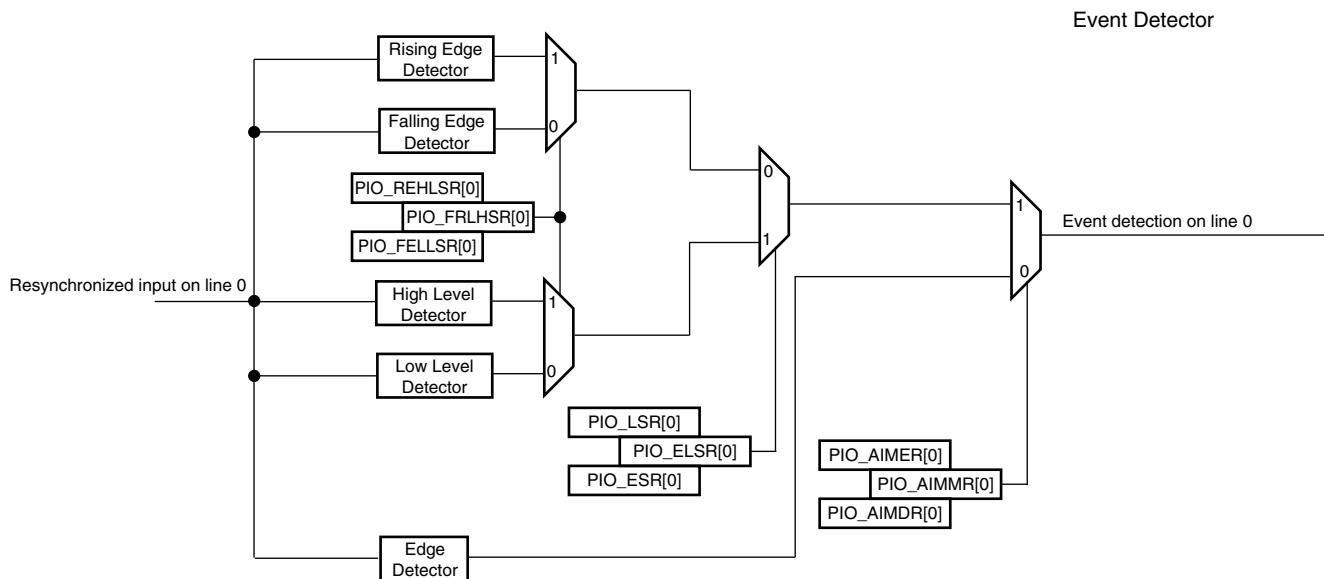
- The type of event detection (Edge or Level) must be selected by writing in the set of registers; PIO\_ESR (Edge Select Register) and PIO\_LSR (Level Select Register) which enable respectively, the Edge and Level Detection. The current status of this selection is accessible through the PIO\_ELSR (Edge/Level Status Register).
- The Polarity of the event detection (Rising/Falling Edge or High/Low Level) must be selected by writing in the set of registers; PIO\_FELLSR (Falling Edge /Low Level Select Register) and PIO\_REHLSR (Rising Edge/High Level Select Register) which allow to select Falling or Rising Edge (if Edge is selected in the PIO\_ELSR) Edge or High or Low Level Detection (if

Level is selected in the PIO\_ELSR). The current status of this selection is accessible through the PIO\_FRLHSR (Fall/Rise - Low/High Status Register).

When an input Edge or Level is detected on an I/O line, the corresponding bit in PIO\_ISR (Interrupt Status Register) is set. If the corresponding bit in PIO\_IMR is set, the PIO Controller interrupt line is asserted. The interrupt signals of the thirty-two channels are ORed-wired together to generate a single interrupt signal to the Nested Vector Interrupt Controller (NVIC).

When the software reads PIO\_ISR, all the interrupts are automatically cleared. This signifies that all the interrupts that are pending when PIO\_ISR is read must be handled. When an Interrupt is enabled on a “Level”, the interrupt is generated as long as the interrupt source is not cleared, even if some read accesses in PIO\_ISR are performed.

**Figure 26-7.** Event Detector on Input Lines (Figure represents line 0)



#### 26.5.10.1 Example

If generating an interrupt is required on the following:

- Rising edge on PIO line 0
- Falling edge on PIO line 1
- Rising edge on PIO line 2
- Low Level on PIO line 3
- High Level on PIO line 4
- High Level on PIO line 5
- Falling edge on PIO line 6
- Rising edge on PIO line 7
- Any edge on the other lines

The configuration required is described below.

#### 26.5.10.2 Interrupt Mode Configuration

All the interrupt sources are enabled by writing 32'hFFFF\_FFFF in PIO\_IER.

Then the Additional Interrupt Mode is enabled for line 0 to 7 by writing 32'h0000\_00FF in PIO\_AIMER.

#### 26.5.10.3 Edge or Level Detection Configuration

Lines 3, 4 and 5 are configured in Level detection by writing 32'h0000\_0038 in PIO\_LSR.

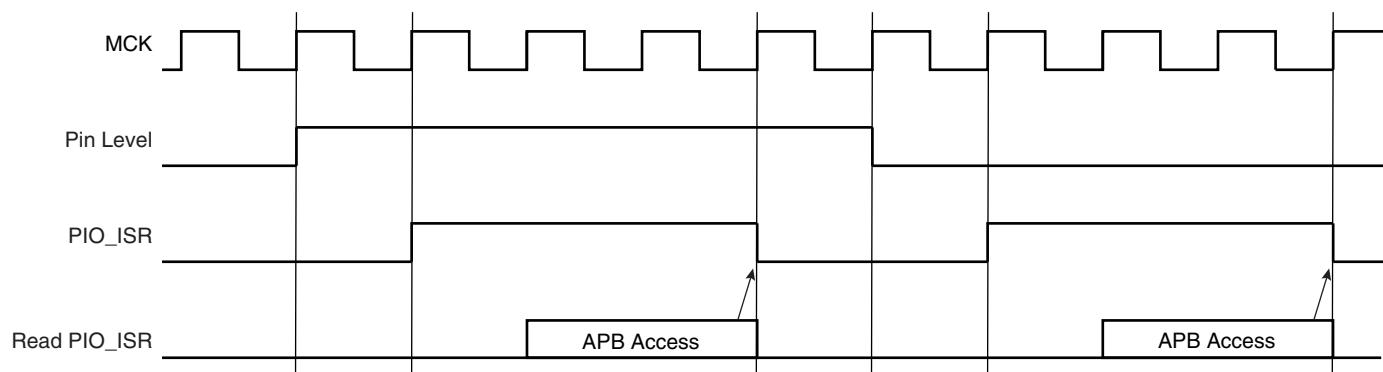
The other lines are configured in Edge detection by default, if they have not been previously configured. Otherwise, lines 0, 1, 2, 6 and 7 must be configured in Edge detection by writing 32'h0000\_00C7 in PIO\_ESR.

#### 26.5.10.4 Falling/Rising Edge or Low/High Level Detection Configuration.

Lines 0, 2, 4, 5 and 7 are configured in Rising Edge or High Level detection by writing 32'h0000\_00B5 in PIO\_REHLSR.

The other lines are configured in Falling Edge or Low Level detection by default, if they have not been previously configured. Otherwise, lines 1, 3 and 6 must be configured in Falling Edge/Low Level detection by writing 32'h0000\_004A in PIO\_FELLSR.

**Figure 26-8.** Input Change Interrupt Timings if there are no Additional Interrupt Modes



#### 26.5.11 I/O Lines Lock

When an I/O line is controlled by a peripheral (particularly the Pulse Width Modulation Controller PWM), it can become locked by the action of this peripheral via an input of the PIO controller. When an I/O line is locked, the write of the corresponding bit in the registers PIO\_PER, PIO\_PDR, PIO\_MDER, PIO\_MDDR, PIO\_PUDR, PIO\_PUER, PIO\_ABCDSR1 and PIO\_ABCDSR2 is discarded in order to lock its configuration. The user can know at anytime which I/O line is locked by reading the PIO Lock Status register PIO\_LOCKSR. Once an I/O line is locked, the only way to unlock it is to apply a hardware reset to the PIO Controller.

#### 26.5.12 Programmable Schmitt Trigger

It is possible to configure each input for the Schmitt Trigger. By default the Schmitt trigger is active. Disabling the Schmitt Trigger is requested when using the QTouch™ Library.

### 26.5.13 Write Protection Registers

To prevent any single software error that may corrupt PIO behavior, certain address spaces can be write-protected by setting the WPEN bit in the “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” (PIO\_WPMR).

If a write access to the protected registers is detected, then the WPVS flag in the PIO Write Protect Status Register (PIO\_WPSR) is set and the field WPVSR indicates in which register the write access has been attempted.

The WPVS flag is reset by writing the PIO Write Protect Mode Register (PIO\_WPMR) with the appropriate access key, WPKEY.

The protected registers are:

- [“PIO Enable Register” on page 401](#)
- [“PIO Disable Register” on page 401](#)
- [“PIO Output Enable Register” on page 402](#)
- [“PIO Output Disable Register” on page 403](#)
- [“PIO Input Filter Enable Register” on page 404](#)
- [“PIO Input Filter Disable Register” on page 404](#)
- [“PIO Multi-driver Enable Register” on page 409](#)
- [“PIO Multi-driver Disable Register” on page 410](#)
- [“PIO Pull Up Disable Register” on page 411](#)
- [“PIO Pull Up Enable Register” on page 411](#)
- [“PIO Peripheral ABCD Select Register 1” on page 413](#)
- [“PIO Peripheral ABCD Select Register 2” on page 414](#)
- [“PIO Output Write Enable Register” on page 419](#)
- [“PIO Output Write Disable Register” on page 419](#)
- [“PIO Pad Pull Down Disable Register” on page 417](#)
- [“PIO Pad Pull Down Status Register” on page 418](#)

## 26.6 I/O Lines Programming Example

The programming example as shown in [Table 26-1](#) below is used to obtain the following configuration.

- 4-bit output port on I/O lines 0 to 3, (should be written in a single write operation), open-drain, with pull-up resistor
- Four output signals on I/O lines 4 to 7 (to drive LEDs for example), driven high and low, no pull-up resistor, no pull-down resistor
- Four input signals on I/O lines 8 to 11 (to read push-button states for example), with pull-up resistors, glitch filters and input change interrupts
- Four input signals on I/O line 12 to 15 to read an external device status (polled, thus no input change interrupt), no pull-up resistor, no glitch filter
- I/O lines 16 to 19 assigned to peripheral A functions with pull-up resistor
- I/O lines 20 to 23 assigned to peripheral B functions with pull-down resistor
- I/O line 24 to 27 assigned to peripheral C with Input Change Interrupt, no pull-up resistor and no pull-down resistor
- I/O line 28 to 31 assigned to peripheral D, no pull-up resistor and no pull-down resistor

**Table 26-1.** Programming Example

Register	Value to be Written
PIO_PER	0x0000_FFFF
PIO_PDR	0xFFFF_0000
PIO_OER	0x0000_00FF
PIO_ODR	0xFFFF_FF00
PIO_IFER	0x0000_0F00
PIO_IFDR	0xFFFF_F0FF
PIO_SODR	0x0000_0000
PIO_CODR	0x0FFF_FFFF
PIO_IER	0x0F00_0F00
PIO_IDR	0xF0FF_F0FF
PIO_MDER	0x0000_000F
PIO_MDDR	0xFFFF_FFF0
PIO_PUDR	0xFFFF_00F0
PIO_PUER	0x000F_FF0F
PIO_PPDDR	0xFF0F_FFFF
PIO_PPDER	0x00F0_0000
PIO_ABCDSR1	0x0F00_0000
PIO_ABCDSR2	0xFF00_0000
PIO_OWER	0x0000_000F
PIO_OWDR	0x0FFF_FFF0

## 26.7 Parallel Input/Output Controller (PIO) User Interface

Each I/O line controlled by the PIO Controller is associated with a bit in each of the PIO Controller User Interface registers. Each register is 32 bits wide. If a parallel I/O line is not defined, writing to the corresponding bits has no effect. Undefined bits read zero. If the I/O line is not multiplexed with any peripheral, the I/O line is controlled by the PIO Controller and PIO\_PSR returns 1 systematically.

**Table 26-2.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0000	PIO Enable Register	PIO_PER	Write-only	–
0x0004	PIO Disable Register	PIO_PDR	Write-only	–
0x0008	PIO Status Register	PIO_PSR	Read-only	(1)
0x000C	Reserved			
0x0010	Output Enable Register	PIO_OER	Write-only	–
0x0014	Output Disable Register	PIO_ODR	Write-only	–
0x0018	Output Status Register	PIO_OSR	Read-only	0x0000 0000
0x001C	Reserved			
0x0020	Glitch Input Filter Enable Register	PIO_IFER	Write-only	–
0x0024	Glitch Input Filter Disable Register	PIO_IFDR	Write-only	–
0x0028	Glitch Input Filter Status Register	PIO_IFSR	Read-only	0x0000 0000
0x002C	Reserved			
0x0030	Set Output Data Register	PIO_SODR	Write-only	–
0x0034	Clear Output Data Register	PIO_CODR	Write-only	
0x0038	Output Data Status Register	PIO_ODSR	Read-only or(2) Read-write	–
0x003C	Pin Data Status Register	PIO_PDSR	Read-only	(3)
0x0040	Interrupt Enable Register	PIO_IER	Write-only	–
0x0044	Interrupt Disable Register	PIO_IDR	Write-only	–
0x0048	Interrupt Mask Register	PIO_IMR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x004C	Interrupt Status Register(4)	PIO_ISR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x0050	Multi-driver Enable Register	PIO_MDER	Write-only	–
0x0054	Multi-driver Disable Register	PIO_MDDR	Write-only	–
0x0058	Multi-driver Status Register	PIO_MDSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x005C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0060	Pull-up Disable Register	PIO_PUDR	Write-only	–
0x0064	Pull-up Enable Register	PIO_PUER	Write-only	–
0x0068	Pad Pull-up Status Register	PIO_PUSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x006C	Reserved	–	–	–

**Table 26-2.** Register Mapping (Continued)

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0070	Peripheral Select Register 1	PIO_ABCDSR1	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0074	Peripheral Select Register 2	PIO_ABCDSR2	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0078 to 0x007C	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0080	Input Filter Slow Clock Disable Register	PIO_IFSCDR	Write-only	—
0x0084	Input Filter Slow Clock Enable Register	PIO_IFSCER	Write-only	—
0x0088	Input Filter Slow Clock Status Register	PIO_IFCSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x008C	Slow Clock Divider Debouncing Register	PIO_SCDR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0090	Pad Pull-down Disable Register	PIO_PPDDR	Write-only	—
0x0094	Pad Pull-down Enable Register	PIO_PPDER	Write-only	—
0x0098	Pad Pull-down Status Register	PIO_PPDSR	Read-only	0xFFFFFFFF
0x009C	Reserved	—	—	—
0x00A0	Output Write Enable	PIO_OWER	Write-only	—
0x00A4	Output Write Disable	PIO_OWDR	Write-only	—
0x00A8	Output Write Status Register	PIO_OWSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x00AC	Reserved	—	—	—
0x00B0	Additional Interrupt Modes Enable Register	PIO_AIMER	Write-only	—
0x00B4	Additional Interrupt Modes Disables Register	PIO_AIMDR	Write-only	—
0x00B8	Additional Interrupt Modes Mask Register	PIO_AIMMR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x00BC	Reserved	—	—	—
0x00C0	Edge Select Register	PIO_ESR	Write-only	—
0x00C4	Level Select Register	PIO_LSR	Write-only	—
0x00C8	Edge/Level Status Register	PIO_ELSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x00CC	Reserved	—	—	—
0x00D0	Falling Edge/Low Level Select Register	PIO_FELLSR	Write-only	—
0x00D4	Rising Edge/ High Level Select Register	PIO_REHLSR	Write-only	—
0x00D8	Fall/Rise - Low/High Status Register	PIO_FRLHSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x00DC	Reserved	—	—	—
0x00E0	Lock Status	PIO_LOCKSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x00E4	Write Protect Mode Register	PIO_WPMR	Read-write	0x0
0x00E8	Write Protect Status Register	PIO_WPSR	Read-only	0x0
0x00EC to 0x00F8	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0100	Schmitt Trigger Register	PIO_SCHMITT	Read-write	0x00000000

**Table 26-2.** Register Mapping (Continued)

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0104-0x010C	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0110	Reserved	—	—	—
0x0114-0x011C	Reserved	—	—	—

- Notes:
1. Reset value of PIO\_PSR depends on the product implementation.
  2. PIO\_ODSR is Read-only or Read/Write depending on PIO\_OWSR I/O lines.
  3. Reset value of PIO\_PDSR depends on the level of the I/O lines. Reading the I/O line levels requires the clock of the PIO Controller to be enabled, otherwise PIO\_PDSR reads the levels present on the I/O line at the time the clock was disabled.
  4. PIO\_ISR is reset at 0x0. However, the first read of the register may read a different value as input changes may have occurred.

Note: if an offset is not listed in the table it must be considered as reserved.

### 26.7.1 PIO Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_PER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E00 (PIOA), 0x400E1000 (PIOB), 0x400E1200 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: PIO Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the PIO to control the corresponding pin (disables peripheral control of the pin).

### 26.7.2 PIO Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_PDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E04 (PIOA), 0x400E1004 (PIOB), 0x400E1204 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: PIO Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the PIO from controlling the corresponding pin (enables peripheral control of the pin).

### 26.7.3 PIO Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_PSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E08 (PIOA), 0x400E1008 (PIOB), 0x400E1208 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: PIO Status**

0 = PIO is inactive on the corresponding I/O line (peripheral is active).

1 = PIO is active on the corresponding I/O line (peripheral is inactive).

### 26.7.4 PIO Output Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_OER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E10 (PIOA), 0x400E1010 (PIOB), 0x400E1210 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Output Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the output on the I/O line.

### 26.7.5 PIO Output Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_ODR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E14 (PIOA), 0x400E1014 (PIOB), 0x400E1214 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Output Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the output on the I/O line.

### 26.7.6 PIO Output Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_OSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E18 (PIOA), 0x400E1018 (PIOB), 0x400E1218 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Output Status**

0 = The I/O line is a pure input.

1 = The I/O line is enabled in output.

### 26.7.7 PIO Input Filter Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_IFER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E20 (PIOA), 0x400E1020 (PIOB), 0x400E1220 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Input Filter Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the input glitch filter on the I/O line.

### 26.7.8 PIO Input Filter Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_IFDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E24 (PIOA), 0x400E1024 (PIOB), 0x400E1224 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Input Filter Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the input glitch filter on the I/O line.

### 26.7.9 PIO Input Filter Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_IFSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E28 (PIOA), 0x400E1028 (PIOB), 0x400E1228 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Input Filer Status**

0 = The input glitch filter is disabled on the I/O line.

1 = The input glitch filter is enabled on the I/O line.

### 26.7.10 PIO Set Output Data Register

**Name:** PIO\_SODR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E30 (PIOA), 0x400E1030 (PIOB), 0x400E1230 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Set Output Data**

0 = No effect.

1 = Sets the data to be driven on the I/O line.

### 26.7.11 PIO Clear Output Data Register

**Name:** PIO\_CODR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E34 (PIOA), 0x400E1034 (PIOB), 0x400E1234 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Clear Output Data**

0 = No effect.

1 = Clears the data to be driven on the I/O line.

### 26.7.12 PIO Output Data Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_ODSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E38 (PIOA), 0x400E1038 (PIOB), 0x400E1238 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only or Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Output Data Status**

0 = The data to be driven on the I/O line is 0.

1 = The data to be driven on the I/O line is 1.

### 26.7.13 PIO Pin Data Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_PDSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E3C (PIOA), 0x400E103C (PIOB), 0x400E123C (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Output Data Status**

0 = The I/O line is at level 0.

1 = The I/O line is at level 1.

### 26.7.14 PIO Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_IER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E40 (PIOA), 0x400E1040 (PIOB), 0x400E1240 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Input Change Interrupt Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the Input Change Interrupt on the I/O line.

### 26.7.15 PIO Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_IDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E44 (PIOA), 0x400E1044 (PIOB), 0x400E1244 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Input Change Interrupt Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the Input Change Interrupt on the I/O line.

### 26.7.16 PIO Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** PIO\_IMR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E48 (PIOA), 0x400E1048 (PIOB), 0x400E1248 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Input Change Interrupt Mask**

0 = Input Change Interrupt is disabled on the I/O line.

1 = Input Change Interrupt is enabled on the I/O line.

### 26.7.17 PIO Interrupt Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_ISR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E4C (PIOA), 0x400E104C (PIOB), 0x400E124C (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Input Change Interrupt Status**

0 = No Input Change has been detected on the I/O line since PIO\_ISR was last read or since reset.

1 = At least one Input Change has been detected on the I/O line since PIO\_ISR was last read or since reset.

### 26.7.18 PIO Multi-driver Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_MDER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E50 (PIOA), 0x400E1050 (PIOB), 0x400E1250 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Multi Drive Enable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables Multi Drive on the I/O line.

### 26.7.19 PIO Multi-driver Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_MDDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E54 (PIOA), 0x400E1054 (PIOB), 0x400E1254 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Multi Drive Disable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables Multi Drive on the I/O line.

### 26.7.20 PIO Multi-driver Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_MDSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E58 (PIOA), 0x400E1058 (PIOB), 0x400E1258 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Multi Drive Status.**

0 = The Multi Drive is disabled on the I/O line. The pin is driven at high and low level.

1 = The Multi Drive is enabled on the I/O line. The pin is driven at low level only.

**26.7.21 PIO Pull Up Disable Register****Name:** PIO\_PUDR**Addresses:** 0x400E0E60 (PIOA), 0x400E1060 (PIOB), 0x400E1260 (PIOC)**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Pull Up Disable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the pull up resistor on the I/O line.

**26.7.22 PIO Pull Up Enable Register****Name:** PIO\_PUER**Addresses:** 0x400E0E64 (PIOA), 0x400E1064 (PIOB), 0x400E1264 (PIOC)**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Pull Up Enable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the pull up resistor on the I/O line.

### 26.7.23 PIO Pull Up Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_PUSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E68 (PIOA), 0x400E1068 (PIOB), 0x400E1268 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Pull Up Status.**

0 = Pull Up resistor is enabled on the I/O line.

1 = Pull Up resistor is disabled on the I/O line.

### 26.7.24 PIO Peripheral ABCD Select Register 1

**Name:** PIO\_ABCDSR1

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Peripheral Select.**

If the same bit is set to 0 in PIO\_ABCDSR2:

0 = Assigns the I/O line to the Peripheral A function.

1 = Assigns the I/O line to the Peripheral B function.

If the same bit is set to 1 in PIO\_ABCDSR2:

0 = Assigns the I/O line to the Peripheral C function.

1 = Assigns the I/O line to the Peripheral D function.

### 26.7.25 PIO Peripheral ABCD Select Register 2

**Name:** PIO\_ABCDSR2

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Peripheral Select.**

If the same bit is set to 0 in PIO\_ABCDSR1:

0 = Assigns the I/O line to the Peripheral A function.

1 = Assigns the I/O line to the Peripheral C function.

If the same bit is set to 1 in PIO\_ABCDSR1:

0 = Assigns the I/O line to the Peripheral B function.

1 = Assigns the I/O line to the Peripheral D function.

### 26.7.26 PIO Input Filter Slow Clock Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_IFSCDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E80 (PIOA), 0x400E1080 (PIOB), 0x400E1280 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: PIO Clock Glitch Filtering Select.**

0 = No Effect.

1 = The Glitch Filter is able to filter glitches with a duration < Tmck/2.

### 26.7.27 PIO Input Filter Slow Clock Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_IFSCER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E84 (PIOA), 0x400E1084 (PIOB), 0x400E1284 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Debouncing Filtering Select.**

0 = No Effect.

1 = The Debouncing Filter is able to filter pulses with a duration < Tdiv\_slclk/2.

### 26.7.28 PIO Input Filter Slow Clock Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_IFCSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E88 (PIOA), 0x400E1088 (PIOB), 0x400E1288 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Glitch or Debouncing Filter Selection Status**

0 = The Glitch Filter is able to filter glitches with a duration < Tmck2.

1 = The Debouncing Filter is able to filter pulses with a duration < Tdiv\_slclk/2.

### 26.7.29 PIO Slow Clock Divider Debouncing Register

**Name:** PIO\_SCDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E8C (PIOA), 0x400E108C (PIOB), 0x400E128C (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	DIV13	DIV12	DIV11	DIV10	DIV9	DIV8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
DIV7	DIV6	DIV5	DIV4	DIV3	DIV2	DIV1	DIV0

- **DIVx: Slow Clock Divider Selection for Debouncing**

Tdiv\_slclk = 2\*(DIV+1)\*Tslow\_clock.

### 26.7.30 PIO Pad Pull Down Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_PPDDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E90 (PIOA), 0x400E1090 (PIOB), 0x400E1290 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Pull Down Disable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the pull down resistor on the I/O line.

### 26.7.31 PIO Pad Pull Down Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_PPDER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E94 (PIOA), 0x400E1094 (PIOB), 0x400E1294 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Pull Down Enable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the pull down resistor on the I/O line.

### 26.7.32 PIO Pad Pull Down Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_PPDSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0E98 (PIOA), 0x400E1098 (PIOB), 0x400E1298 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Pull Down Status.**

0 = Pull Down resistor is enabled on the I/O line.

1 = Pull Down resistor is disabled on the I/O line.

### 26.7.33 PIO Output Write Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_OWER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EA0 (PIOA), 0x400E10A0 (PIOB), 0x400E12A0 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Output Write Enable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables writing PIO\_ODSR for the I/O line.

### 26.7.34 PIO Output Write Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_OWDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EA4 (PIOA), 0x400E10A4 (PIOB), 0x400E12A4 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[PIO Write Protect Mode Register](#)” .

- **P0-P31: Output Write Disable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables writing PIO\_ODSR for the I/O line.

### 26.7.35 PIO Output Write Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_OWSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EA8 (PIOA), 0x400E10A8 (PIOB), 0x400E12A8 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- P0-P31: Output Write Status.**

0 = Writing PIO\_ODSR does not affect the I/O line.

1 = Writing PIO\_ODSR affects the I/O line.

### 26.7.36 PIO Additional Interrupt Modes Enable Register

**Name:** PIO\_AIMER

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EB0 (PIOA), 0x400E10B0 (PIOB), 0x400E12B0 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- P0-P31: Additional Interrupt Modes Enable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = The interrupt source is the event described in PIO\_ELSR and PIO\_FRLHSR.

### 26.7.37 PIO Additional Interrupt Modes Disable Register

**Name:** PIO\_AIMDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EB4 (PIOA), 0x400E10B4 (PIOB), 0x400E12B4 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Additional Interrupt Modes Disable.**

0 = No effect.

1 = The interrupt mode is set to the default interrupt mode (Both Edge detection).

### 26.7.38 PIO Additional Interrupt Modes Mask Register

**Name:** PIO\_AIMMR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EB8 (PIOA), 0x400E10B8 (PIOB), 0x400E12B8 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Peripheral CD Status.**

0 = The interrupt source is a Both Edge detection event

1 = The interrupt source is described by the registers PIO\_ELSR and PIO\_FRLHSR

### 26.7.39 PIO Edge Select Register

**Name:** PIO\_ESR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EC0 (PIOA), 0x400E10C0 (PIOB), 0x400E12C0 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Edge Interrupt Selection.**

0 = No effect.

1 = The interrupt source is an Edge detection event.

### 26.7.40 PIO Level Select Register

**Name:** PIO\_LSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EC4 (PIOA), 0x400E10C4 (PIOB), 0x400E12C4 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Level Interrupt Selection.**

0 = No effect.

1 = The interrupt source is a Level detection event.

#### 26.7.41 PIO Edge/Level Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_ELSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EC8 (PIOA), 0x400E10C8 (PIOB), 0x400E12C8 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Edge/Level Interrupt source selection.**

0 = The interrupt source is an Edge detection event.

1 = The interrupt source is a Level detection event.

#### 26.7.42 PIO Falling Edge/Low Level Select Register

**Name:** PIO\_FELLSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0ED0 (PIOA), 0x400E10D0 (PIOB), 0x400E12D0 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Falling Edge/Low Level Interrupt Selection.**

0 = No effect.

1 = The interrupt source is set to a Falling Edge detection or Low Level detection event, depending on PIO\_ELSR.

#### 26.7.43 PIO Rising Edge/High Level Select Register

**Name:** PIO\_REHLSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0ED4 (PIOA), 0x400E10D4 (PIOB), 0x400E12D4 (PIOC)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Rising Edge /High Level Interrupt Selection.**

0 = No effect.

1 = The interrupt source is set to a Rising Edge detection or High Level detection event, depending on PIO\_ELSR.

#### 26.7.44 PIO Fall/Rise - Low/High Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_FRLHSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0ED8 (PIOA), 0x400E10D8 (PIOB), 0x400E12D8 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Edge /Level Interrupt Source Selection.**

0 = The interrupt source is a Falling Edge detection (if PIO\_ELSR = 0) or Low Level detection event (if PIO\_ELSR = 1).

1 = The interrupt source is a Rising Edge detection (if PIO\_ELSR = 0) or High Level detection event (if PIO\_ELSR = 1).

#### 26.7.45 PIO Lock Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_LOCKSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EE0 (PIOA), 0x400E10E0 (PIOB), 0x400E12E0 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
P31	P30	P29	P28	P27	P26	P25	P24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
P23	P22	P21	P20	P19	P18	P17	P16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10	P9	P8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0

- **P0-P31: Lock Status.**

0 = The I/O line is not locked.

1 = The I/O line is locked.

#### 26.7.46 PIO Write Protect Mode Register

**Name:** PIO\_WPMR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EE4 (PIOA), 0x400E10E4 (PIOB), 0x400E12E4 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-write

**Reset:** See [Table 26-2](#)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPEN

For more information on Write Protection Registers, refer to [Section 26.7 "Parallel Input/Output Controller \(PIO\) User Interface"](#).

- **WPEN: Write Protect Enable**

0 = Disables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x50494F ("PIO" in ASCII).

1 = Enables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x50494F ("PIO" in ASCII).

Protects the registers:

["PIO Enable Register" on page 401](#)

["PIO Disable Register" on page 401](#)

["PIO Output Enable Register" on page 402](#)

["PIO Output Disable Register" on page 403](#)

["PIO Input Filter Enable Register" on page 404](#)

["PIO Input Filter Disable Register" on page 404](#)

["PIO Multi-driver Enable Register" on page 409](#)

["PIO Multi-driver Disable Register" on page 410](#)

["PIO Pull Up Disable Register" on page 411](#)

["PIO Pull Up Enable Register" on page 411](#)

["PIO Peripheral ABCD Select Register 1" on page 413](#)

["PIO Peripheral ABCD Select Register 2" on page 414](#)

["PIO Output Write Enable Register" on page 419](#)

["PIO Output Write Disable Register" on page 419](#)

["PIO Pad Pull Down Disable Register" on page 417](#)

["PIO Pad Pull Down Status Register" on page 418](#)

- WPKEY: Write Protect KEY**

Should be written at value 0x50494F (“PIO” in ASCII). Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation of the WPEN bit. Always reads as 0.

#### 26.7.47 PIO Write Protect Status Register

**Name:** PIO\_WPSR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0EE8 (PIOA), 0x400E10E8 (PIOB), 0x400E12E8 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-only

**Reset:** See [Table 26-2](#)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPVSRC							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPVSRC							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPVS

- WPVS: Write Protect Violation Status**

0 = No Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last read of the PIO\_WPSR register.

1 = A Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last read of the PIO\_WPSR register. If this violation is an unauthorized attempt to write a protected register, the associated violation is reported into field WPVSRC.

- WPVSRC: Write Protect Violation Source**

When WPVS is active, this field indicates the write-protected register (through address offset or code) in which a write access has been attempted.

Note: Reading PIO\_WPSR automatically clears all fields.

#### 26.7.48 PIO Schmitt Trigger Register

**Name:** PIO\_SCHMITT

**Addresses:** 0x400E0F00 (PIOA), 0x400E1100 (PIOB), 0x400E1300 (PIOC)

**Access:** Read-write

**Reset:** See [Figure 26-2](#)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
SCHMITT31	SCHMITT30	SCHMITT29	SCHMITT28	SCHMITT27	SCHMITT26	SCHMITT25	SCHMITT24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
SCHMITT23	SCHMITT22	SCHMITT21	SCHMITT20	SCHMITT19	SCHMITT18	SCHMITT17	SCHMITT16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
SCHMITT15	SCHMITT14	SCHMITT13	SCHMITT12	SCHMITT11	SCHMITT10	SCHMITT9	SCHMITT8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SCHMITT7	SCHMITT6	SCHMITT5	SCHMITT4	SCHMITT3	SCHMITT2	SCHMITT1	SCHMITT0

- **SCHMITTx [x=0..31]:**

0 = Schmitt Trigger is enabled.

1 = Schmitt Trigger is disabled.

## 27. Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

### 27.1 Description

The Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) circuit is a synchronous serial data link that provides communication with external devices in Master or Slave Mode. It also enables communication between processors if an external processor is connected to the system.

The Serial Peripheral Interface is essentially a shift register that serially transmits data bits to other SPIs. During a data transfer, one SPI system acts as the “master” which controls the data flow, while the other devices act as “slaves” which have data shifted into and out by the master. Different CPUs can take turn being masters (Multiple Master Protocol opposite to Single Master Protocol where one CPU is always the master while all of the others are always slaves) and one master may simultaneously shift data into multiple slaves. However, only one slave may drive its output to write data back to the master at any given time.

A slave device is selected when the master asserts its NSS signal. If multiple slave devices exist, the master generates a separate slave select signal for each slave (NPCS).

The SPI system consists of two data lines and two control lines:

- Master Out Slave In (MOSI): This data line supplies the output data from the master shifted into the input(s) of the slave(s).
- Master In Slave Out (MISO): This data line supplies the output data from a slave to the input of the master. There may be no more than one slave transmitting data during any particular transfer.
- Serial Clock (SPCK): This control line is driven by the master and regulates the flow of the data bits. The master may transmit data at a variety of baud rates; the SPCK line cycles once for each bit that is transmitted.
- Slave Select (NSS): This control line allows slaves to be turned on and off by hardware.

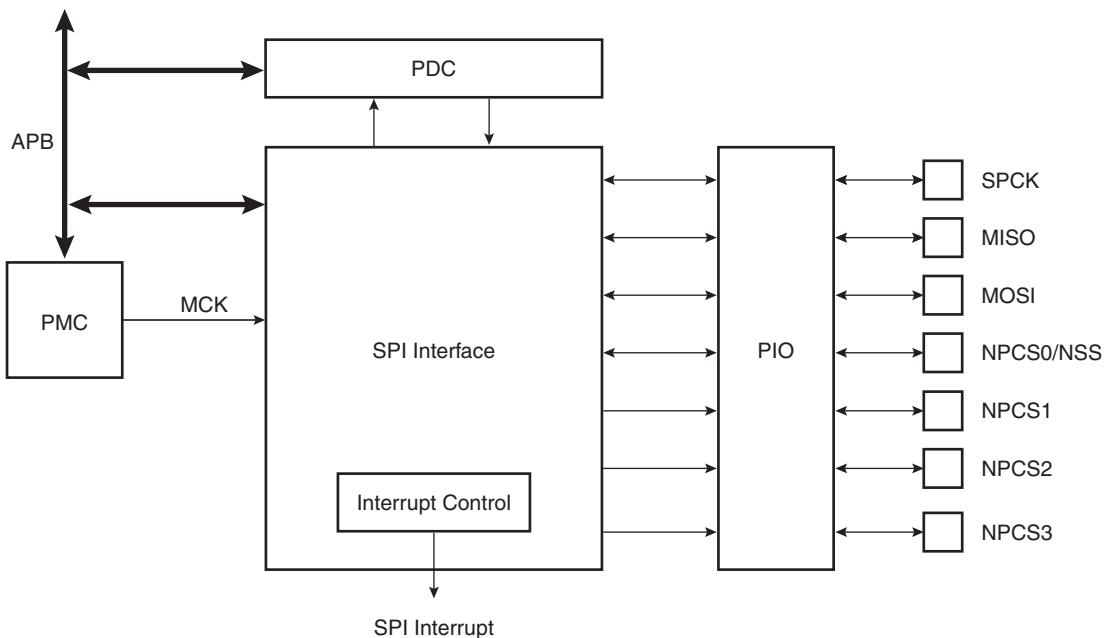
### 27.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Compatible with an Embedded 32-bit Microcontroller
- Supports Communication with Serial External Devices
  - Four Chip Selects with External Decoder Support Allow Communication with Up to 15 Peripherals
  - Serial Memories, such as DataFlash and 3-wire EEPROMs
  - Serial Peripherals, such as ADCs, DACs, LCD Controllers, CAN Controllers and Sensors
  - External Co-processors
- Master or Slave Serial Peripheral Bus Interface
  - 8- to 16-bit Programmable Data Length Per Chip Select
  - Programmable Phase and Polarity Per Chip Select
  - Programmable Transfer Delays Between Consecutive Transfers and Between Clock and Data Per Chip Select
  - Programmable Delay Between Consecutive Transfers
  - Selectable Mode Fault Detection
- Connection to PDC Channel Capabilities Optimizes Data Transfers
  - One Channel for the Receiver, One Channel for the Transmitter
  - Next Buffer Support



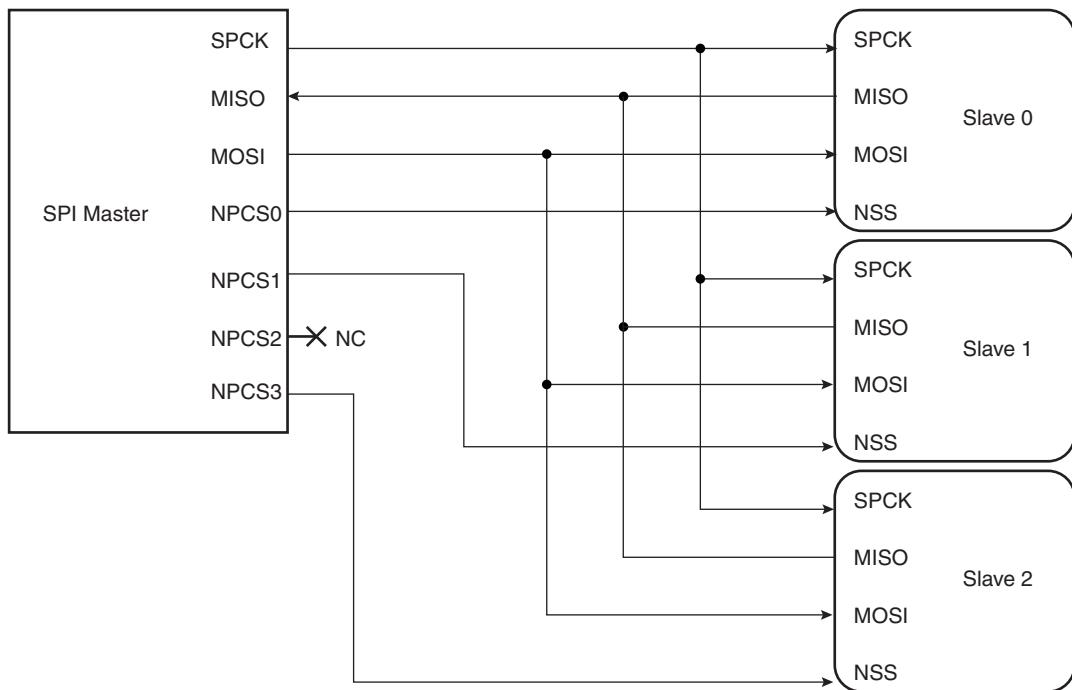
## 27.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 27-1.** Block Diagram



## 27.4 Application Block Diagram

**Figure 27-2.** Application Block Diagram: Single Master/Multiple Slave Implementation



## 27.5 Signal Description

**Table 27-1.** Signal Description

Pin Name	Pin Description	Type	
		Master	Slave
MISO	Master In Slave Out	Input	Output
MOSI	Master Out Slave In	Output	Input
SPCK	Serial Clock	Output	Input
NPCS1-NPCS3	Peripheral Chip Selects	Output	Unused
NPCS0/NSS	Peripheral Chip Select/Slave Select	Output	Input

## 27.6 Product Dependencies

### 27.6.1 I/O Lines

The pins used for interfacing the compliant external devices may be multiplexed with PIO lines. The programmer must first program the PIO controllers to assign the SPI pins to their peripheral functions.

**Table 27-2.** I/O Lines

Instance	Signal	I/O Line	Peripheral
SPI	MISO	PA12	A
SPI	MOSI	PA13	A
SPI	NPCS0	PA11	A
SPI	NPCS1	PA9	B
SPI	NPCS1	PA31	A
SPI	NPCS1	PB14	A
SPI	NPCS1	PC4	B
SPI	NPCS2	PA10	B
SPI	NPCS2	PA30	B
SPI	NPCS2	PB2	B
SPI	NPCS2	PC7	B
SPI	NPCS3	PA3	B
SPI	NPCS3	PA5	B
SPI	NPCS3	PA22	B
SPI	SPCK	PA14	A

### 27.6.2 Power Management

The SPI may be clocked through the Power Management Controller (PMC), thus the programmer must first configure the PMC to enable the SPI clock.

### 27.6.3 Interrupt

The SPI interface has an interrupt line connected to the Nested Vector Interrupt Controller (NVIC). Handling the SPI interrupt requires programming the NVIC before configuring the SPI.

**Table 27-3.** Peripheral IDs

Instance	ID
SPI	21

## 27.7 Functional Description

### 27.7.1 Modes of Operation

The SPI operates in Master Mode or in Slave Mode.

Operation in Master Mode is programmed by writing at 1 the MSTR bit in the Mode Register. The pins NPCS0 to NPCS3 are all configured as outputs, the SPCK pin is driven, the MISO line is wired on the receiver input and the MOSI line driven as an output by the transmitter.

If the MSTR bit is written at 0, the SPI operates in Slave Mode. The MISO line is driven by the transmitter output, the MOSI line is wired on the receiver input, the SPCK pin is driven by the transmitter to synchronize the receiver. The NPCS0 pin becomes an input, and is used as a Slave Select signal (NSS). The pins NPCS1 to NPCS3 are not driven and can be used for other purposes.

The data transfers are identically programmable for both modes of operations. The baud rate generator is activated only in Master Mode.

### 27.7.2 Data Transfer

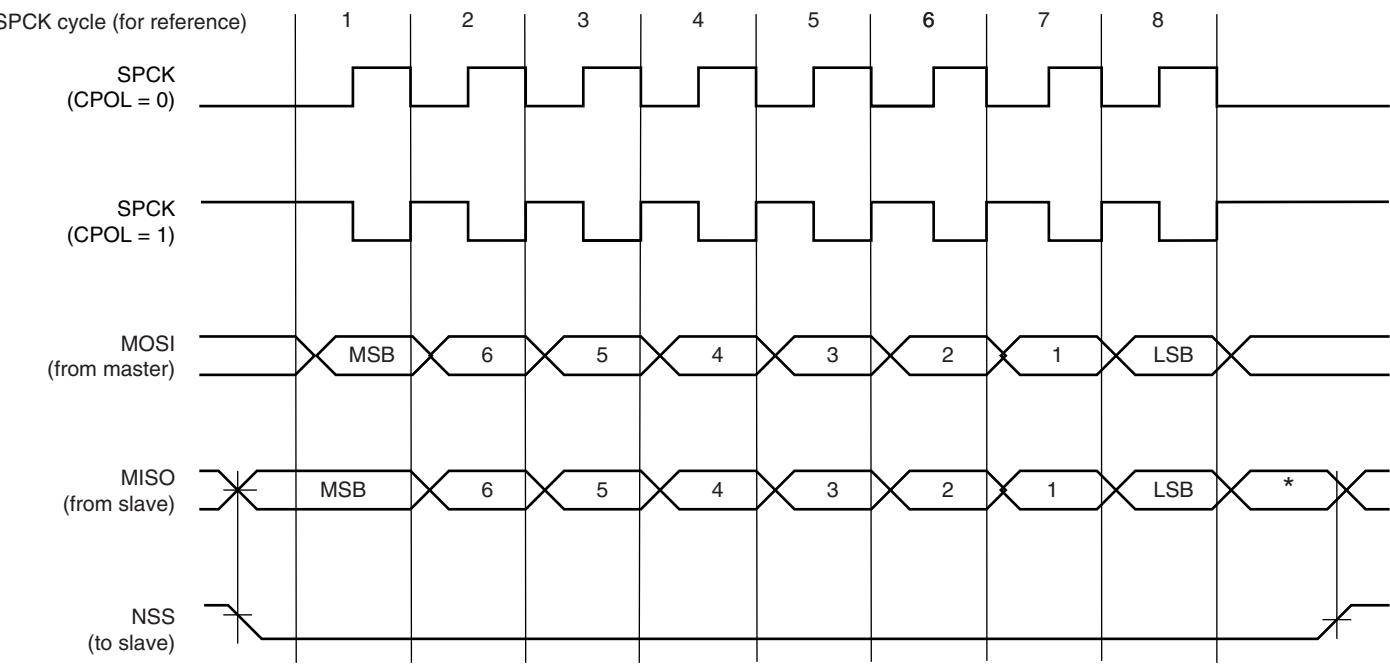
Four combinations of polarity and phase are available for data transfers. The clock polarity is programmed with the CPOL bit in the Chip Select Register. The clock phase is programmed with the NCPHA bit. These two parameters determine the edges of the clock signal on which data is driven and sampled. Each of the two parameters has two possible states, resulting in four possible combinations that are incompatible with one another. Thus, a master/slave pair must use the same parameter pair values to communicate. If multiple slaves are used and fixed in different configurations, the master must reconfigure itself each time it needs to communicate with a different slave.

[Table 27-4](#) shows the four modes and corresponding parameter settings.

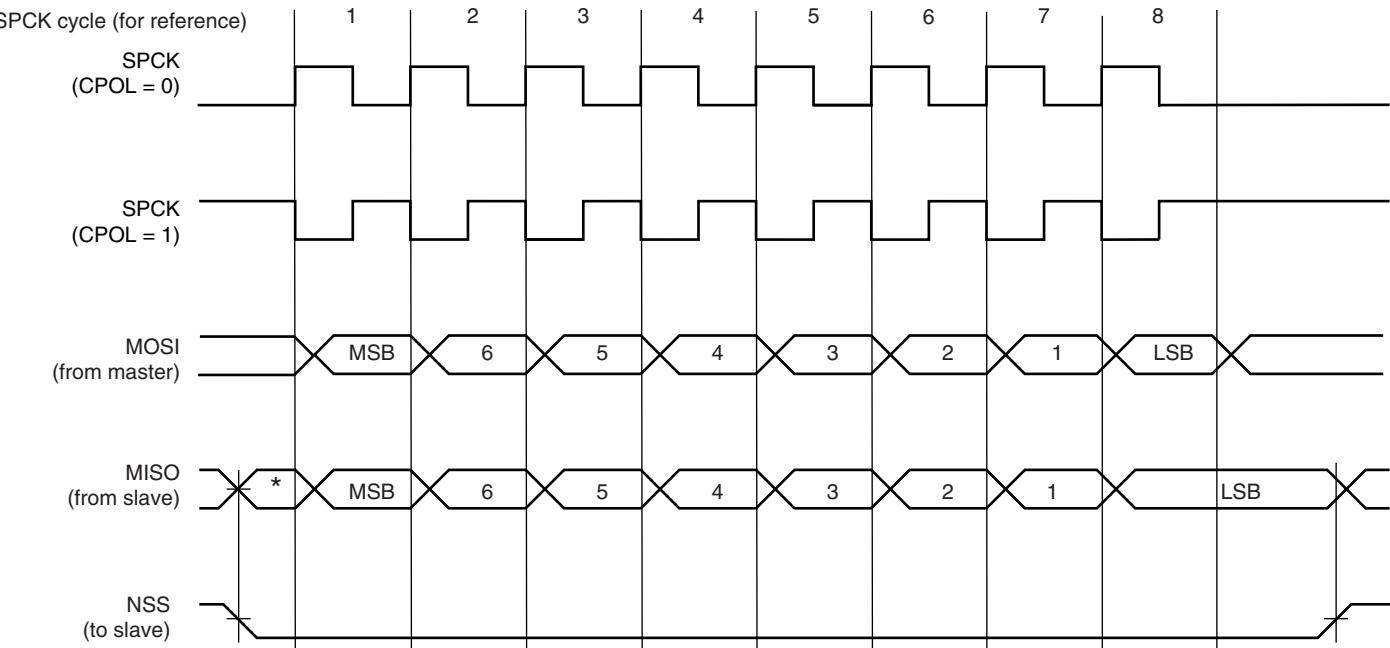
**Table 27-4.** SPI Bus Protocol Mode

SPI Mode	CPOL	NCPHA	Shift SPCK Edge	Capture SPCK Edge	SPCK Inactive Level
0	0	1	Falling	Rising	Low
1	0	0	Rising	Falling	Low
2	1	1	Rising	Falling	High
3	1	0	Falling	Rising	High

[Figure 27-3](#) and [Figure 27-4](#) show examples of data transfers.

**Figure 27-3.** SPI Transfer Format (NCPHA = 1, 8 bits per transfer)

\* Not defined, but normally MSB of previous character received.

**Figure 27-4.** SPI Transfer Format (NCPHA = 0, 8 bits per transfer)

\* Not defined but normally LSB of previous character transmitted.

### 27.7.3 Master Mode Operations

When configured in Master Mode, the SPI operates on the clock generated by the internal programmable baud rate generator. It fully controls the data transfers to and from the slave(s) connected to the SPI bus. The SPI drives the chip select line to the slave and the serial clock signal (SPCK).

The SPI features two holding registers, the Transmit Data Register and the Receive Data Register, and a single Shift Register. The holding registers maintain the data flow at a constant rate.

After enabling the SPI, a data transfer begins when the processor writes to the SPI\_TDR (Transmit Data Register). The written data is immediately transferred in the Shift Register and transfer on the SPI bus starts. While the data in the Shift Register is shifted on the MOSI line, the MISO line is sampled and shifted in the Shift Register. Receiving data cannot occur without transmitting data. If receiving mode is not needed, for example when communicating with a slave receiver only (such as an LCD), the receive status flags in the status register can be discarded.

Before writing the TDR, the PCS field in the SPI\_MR register must be set in order to select a slave.

After enabling the SPI, a data transfer begins when the processor writes to the SPI\_TDR (Transmit Data Register). The written data is immediately transferred in the Shift Register and transfer on the SPI bus starts. While the data in the Shift Register is shifted on the MOSI line, the MISO line is sampled and shifted in the Shift Register. Transmission cannot occur without reception.

Before writing the TDR, the PCS field must be set in order to select a slave.

If new data is written in SPI\_TDR during the transfer, it stays in it until the current transfer is completed. Then, the received data is transferred from the Shift Register to SPI\_RDR, the data in SPI\_TDR is loaded in the Shift Register and a new transfer starts.

The transfer of a data written in SPI\_TDR in the Shift Register is indicated by the TDRE bit (Transmit Data Register Empty) in the Status Register (SPI\_SR). When new data is written in SPI\_TDR, this bit is cleared. The TDRE bit is used to trigger the Transmit PDC channel.

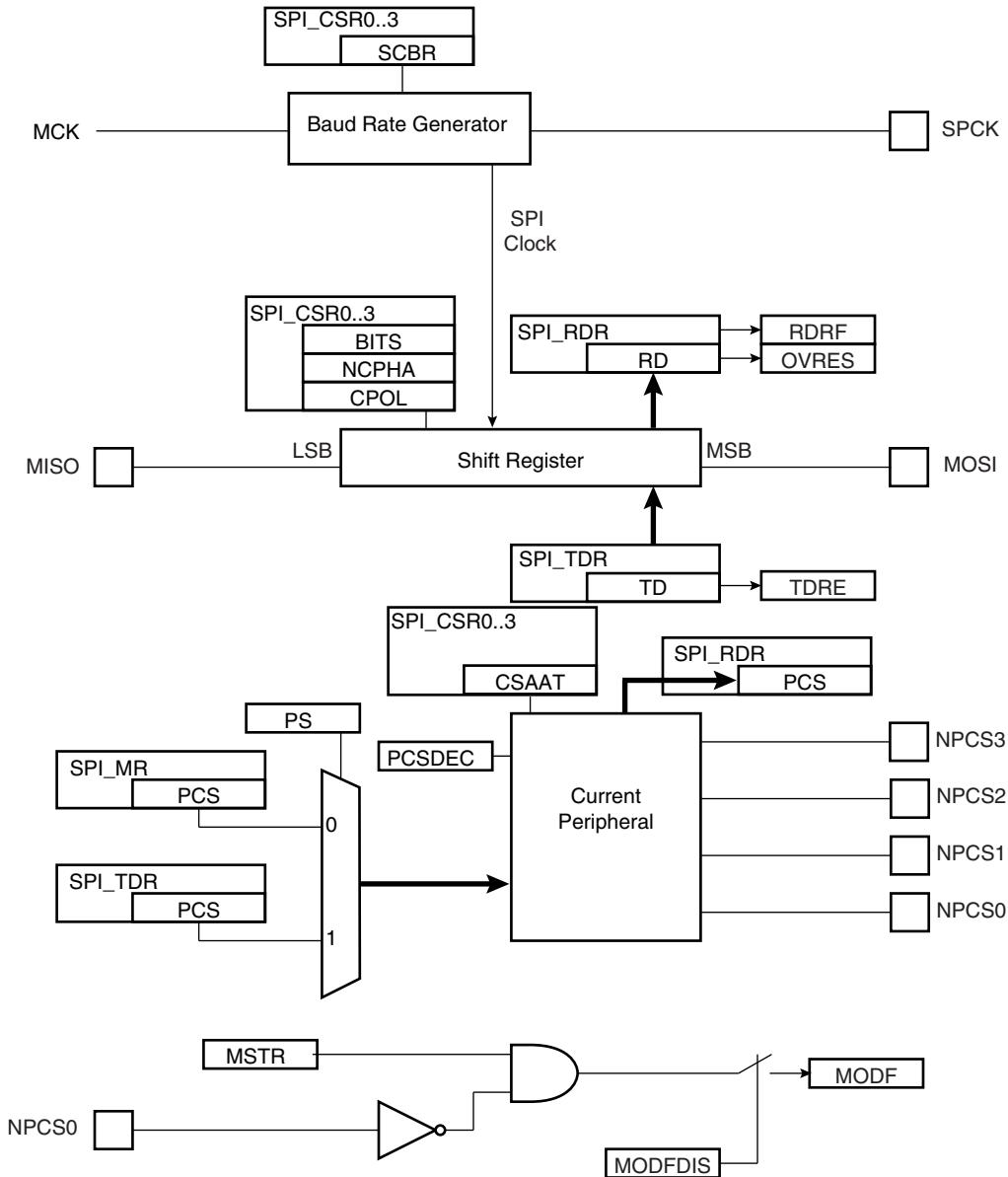
The end of transfer is indicated by the TXEMPTY flag in the SPI\_SR register. If a transfer delay (DLYBCT) is greater than 0 for the last transfer, TXEMPTY is set after the completion of said delay. The master clock (MCK) can be switched off at this time.

The transfer of received data from the Shift Register in SPI\_RDR is indicated by the RDRF bit (Receive Data Register Full) in the Status Register (SPI\_SR). When the received data is read, the RDRF bit is cleared.

If the SPI\_RDR (Receive Data Register) has not been read before new data is received, the Overrun Error bit (OVRES) in SPI\_SR is set. As long as this flag is set, data is loaded in SPI\_RDR. The user has to read the status register to clear the OVRES bit.

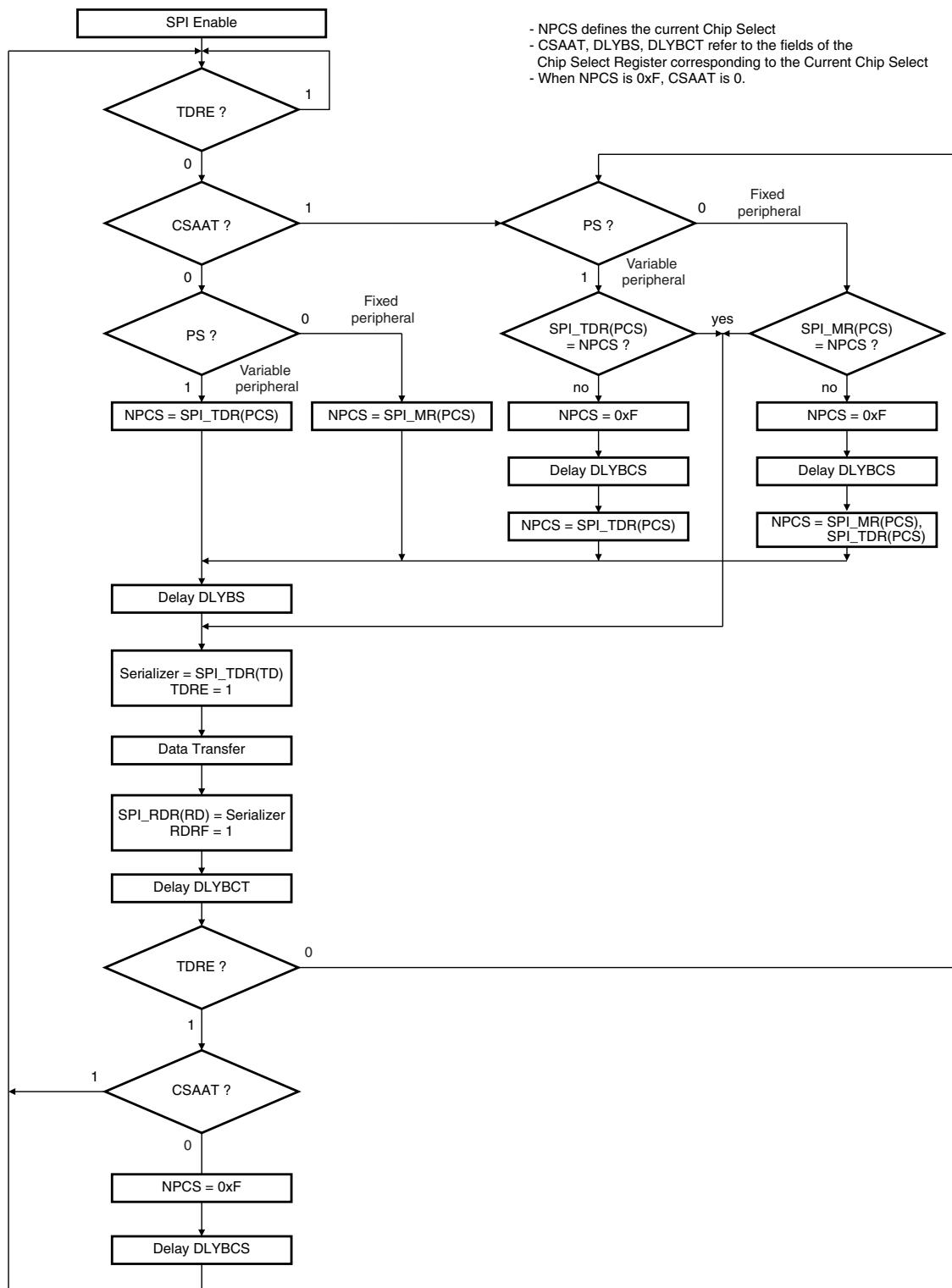
[Figure 27-5](#), shows a block diagram of the SPI when operating in Master Mode. [Figure 27-6](#) on page 436 shows a flow chart describing how transfers are handled.

## 27.7.3.1 Master Mode Block Diagram

**Figure 27-5.** Master Mode Block Diagram

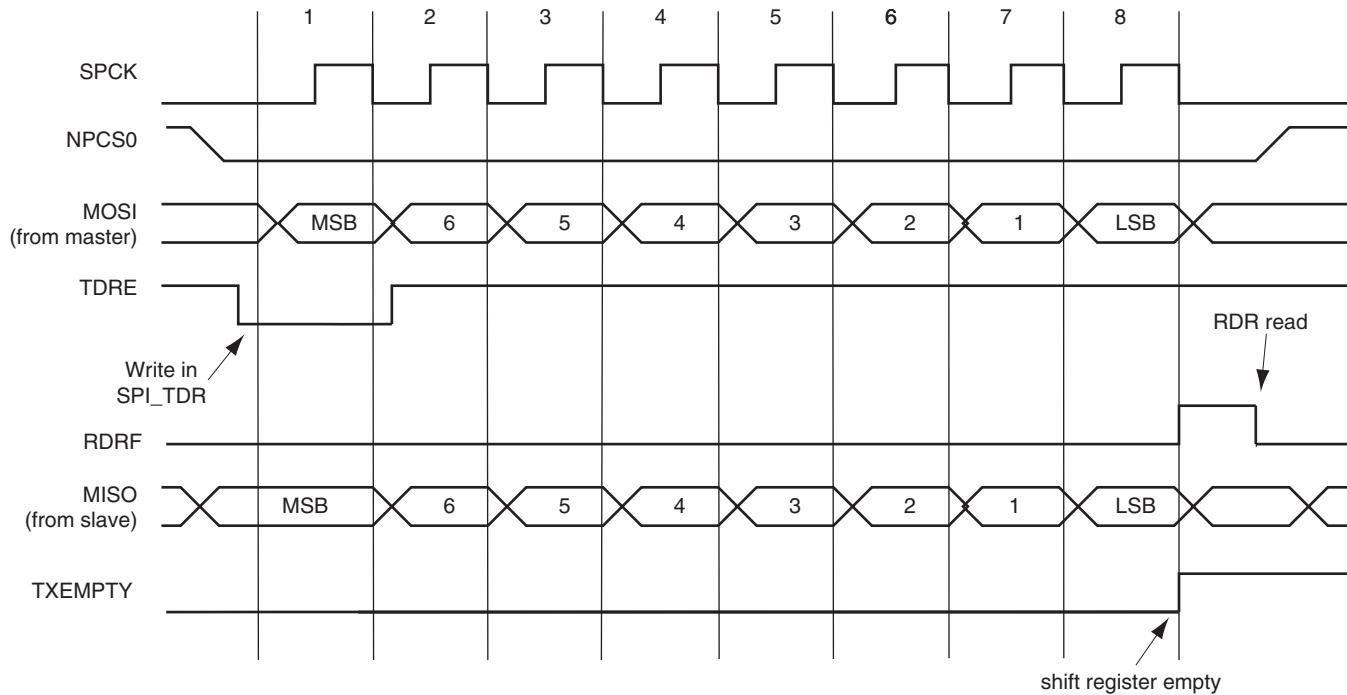
### 27.7.3.2 Master Mode Flow Diagram

**Figure 27-6.** Master Mode Flow Diagram



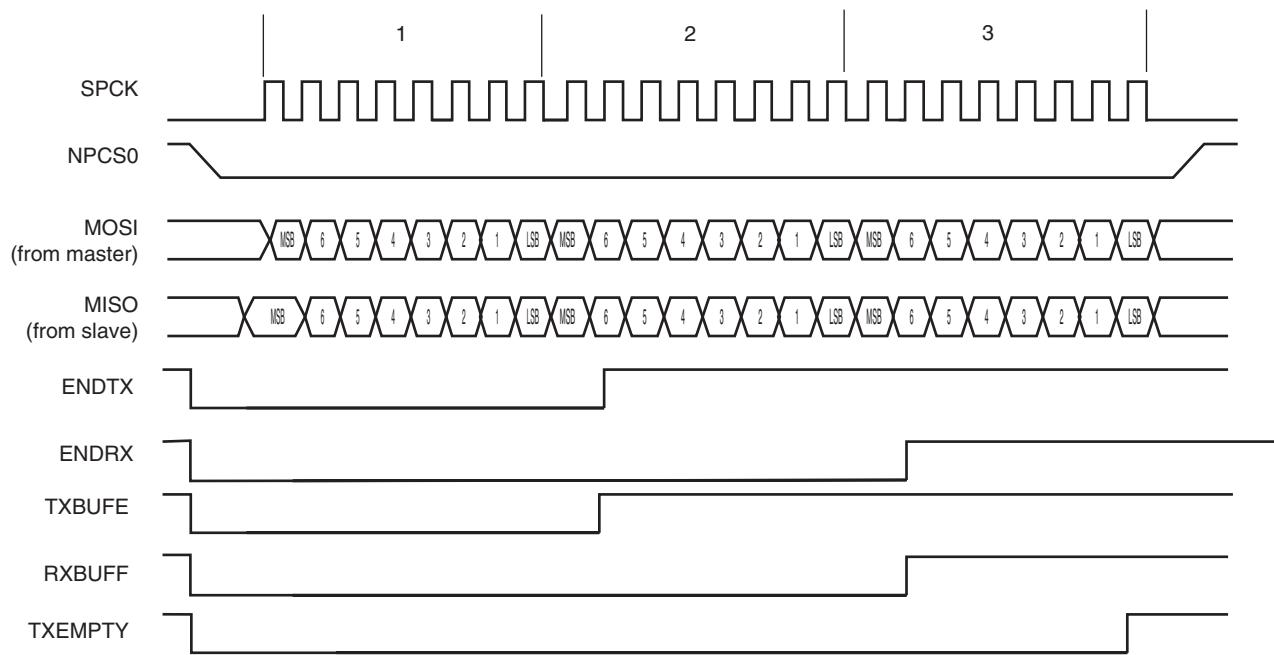
[Figure 27-7](#) shows Transmit Data Register Empty (TDRE), Receive Data Register (RDRF) and Transmission Register Empty (TXEMPTY) status flags behavior within the SPI\_SR (Status Register) during an 8-bit data transfer in fixed mode and no Peripheral Data Controller involved.

**Figure 27-7.** Status Register Flags Behavior



[Figure 27-8](#) shows Transmission Register Empty (TXEMPTY), End of RX buffer (ENDRX), End of TX buffer (ENDTX), RX Buffer Full (RXBUFF) and TX Buffer Empty (TXBUFE) status flags behavior within the SPI\_SR (Status Register) during an 8-bit data transfer in fixed mode with the Peripheral Data Controller involved. The PDC is programmed to transfer and receive three data. The next pointer and counter are not used. The RDRF and TDRE are not shown because these flags are managed by the PDC when using the PDC.

**Figure 27-8.** PDC Status Register Flags Behavior



#### 27.7.3.3 Clock Generation

The SPI Baud rate clock is generated by dividing the Master Clock (MCK), by a value between 1 and 255.

This allows a maximum operating baud rate at up to Master Clock and a minimum operating baud rate of MCK divided by 255.

Programming the SCBR field at 0 is forbidden. Triggering a transfer while SCBR is at 0 can lead to unpredictable results.

At reset, SCBR is 0 and the user has to program it at a valid value before performing the first transfer.

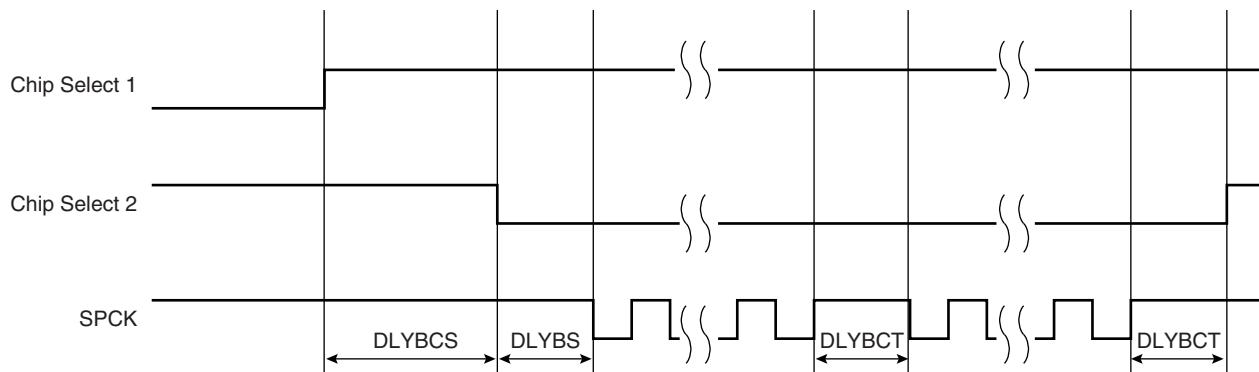
The divisor can be defined independently for each chip select, as it has to be programmed in the SCBR field of the Chip Select Registers. This allows the SPI to automatically adapt the baud rate for each interfaced peripheral without reprogramming.

#### 27.7.3.4 Transfer Delays

[Figure 27-9](#) shows a chip select transfer change and consecutive transfers on the same chip select. Three delays can be programmed to modify the transfer waveforms:

- The delay between chip selects, programmable only once for all the chip selects by writing the DLYBCS field in the Mode Register. Allows insertion of a delay between release of one chip select and before assertion of a new one.
- The delay before SPCK, independently programmable for each chip select by writing the field DLYBS. Allows the start of SPCK to be delayed after the chip select has been asserted.
- The delay between consecutive transfers, independently programmable for each chip select by writing the DLYBCT field. Allows insertion of a delay between two transfers occurring on the same chip select

These delays allow the SPI to be adapted to the interfaced peripherals and their speed and bus release time.

**Figure 27-9.** Programmable Delays

#### 27.7.3.5 Peripheral Selection

The serial peripherals are selected through the assertion of the NPCS0 to NPCS3 signals. By default, all the NPCS signals are high before and after each transfer.

- Fixed Peripheral Select: SPI exchanges data with only one peripheral

Fixed Peripheral Select is activated by writing the PS bit to zero in SPI\_MR (Mode Register). In this case, the current peripheral is defined by the PCS field in SPI\_MR and the PCS field in the SPI\_TDR has no effect.

- Variable Peripheral Select: Data can be exchanged with more than one peripheral without having to reprogram the NPCS field in the SPI\_MR register.

Variable Peripheral Select is activated by setting PS bit to one. The PCS field in SPI\_TDR is used to select the current peripheral. This means that the peripheral selection can be defined for each new data. The value to write in the SPI\_TDR register has the following format.

[xxxxxxxx(7-bit) + LASTXFER(1-bit)<sup>0</sup> + xxxx(4-bit) + PCS (4-bit) + DATA (8 to 16-bit)] with PCS equals to the chip select to assert as defined in [Section 27.8.4](#) (SPI Transmit Data Register) and LASTXFER bit at 0 or 1 depending on CSAAT bit.

Note: 1. Optional.

CSAAT, LASTXFER and CSNAAT bits are discussed in [Section 27.7.3.9 "Peripheral Deselection with PDC"](#).

If LASTXFER is used, the command must be issued before writing the last character. Instead of LASTXFER, the user can use the SPIDIS command. After the end of the PDC transfer, wait for the TXEMPTY flag, then write SPIDIS into the SPI\_CR register (this will not change the configuration register values); the NPCS will be deactivated after the last character transfer. Then, another PDC transfer can be started if the SPIEN was previously written in the SPI\_CR register.

#### 27.7.3.6 SPI Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC)

In both fixed and variable mode the Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC) can be used to reduce processor overhead.

The Fixed Peripheral Selection allows buffer transfers with a single peripheral. Using the PDC is an optimal means, as the size of the data transfer between the memory and the SPI is either 8 bits or 16 bits. However, changing the peripheral selection requires the Mode Register to be reprogrammed.

The Variable Peripheral Selection allows buffer transfers with multiple peripherals without reprogramming the Mode Register. Data written in SPI\_TDR is 32 bits wide and defines the real data to be transmitted and the peripheral it is destined to. Using the PDC in this mode requires 32-bit wide buffers, with the data in the LSBs and the PCS and LASTXFER fields in the MSBs, however the SPI still controls the number of bits (8 to 16) to be transferred through MISO and MOSI lines with the chip select configuration registers. This is not the optimal means in term of memory size for the buffers, but it provides a very effective means to exchange data with several peripherals without any intervention of the processor.

#### Transfer Size

Depending on the data size to transmit, from 8 to 16 bits, the PDC manages automatically the type of pointer's size it has to point to. The PDC will perform the following transfer size depending on the mode and number of bits per data.

##### Fixed Mode:

- 8-bit Data:  
Byte transfer,  
PDC Pointer Address = Address + 1 byte,  
PDC Counter = Counter - 1
- 8-bit to 16-bit Data:  
2 bytes transfer. n-bit data transfer with don't care data (MSB) filled with 0's,  
PDC Pointer Address = Address + 2 bytes,  
PDC Counter = Counter - 1

##### Variable Mode:

In variable Mode, PDC Pointer Address = Address +4 bytes and PDC Counter = Counter - 1 for 8 to 16-bit transfer size. When using the PDC, the TDRE and RDRF flags are handled by the PDC, thus the user's application does not have to check those bits. Only End of RX Buffer (ENDRX), End of TX Buffer (ENDTX), Buffer Full (RXBUFF), TX Buffer Empty (TXBUFE) are significant. For further details about the Peripheral DMA Controller and user interface, refer to the PDC section of the product datasheet.

#### 27.7.3.7 Peripheral Chip Select Decoding

The user can program the SPI to operate with up to 15 peripherals by decoding the four Chip Select lines, NPCS0 to NPCS3 with 1 of up to 16 decoder/demultiplexer. This can be enabled by writing the PCSDEC bit at 1 in the Mode Register (SPI\_MR).

When operating without decoding, the SPI makes sure that in any case only one chip select line is activated, i.e., one NPCS line driven low at a time. If two bits are defined low in a PCS field, only the lowest numbered chip select is driven low.

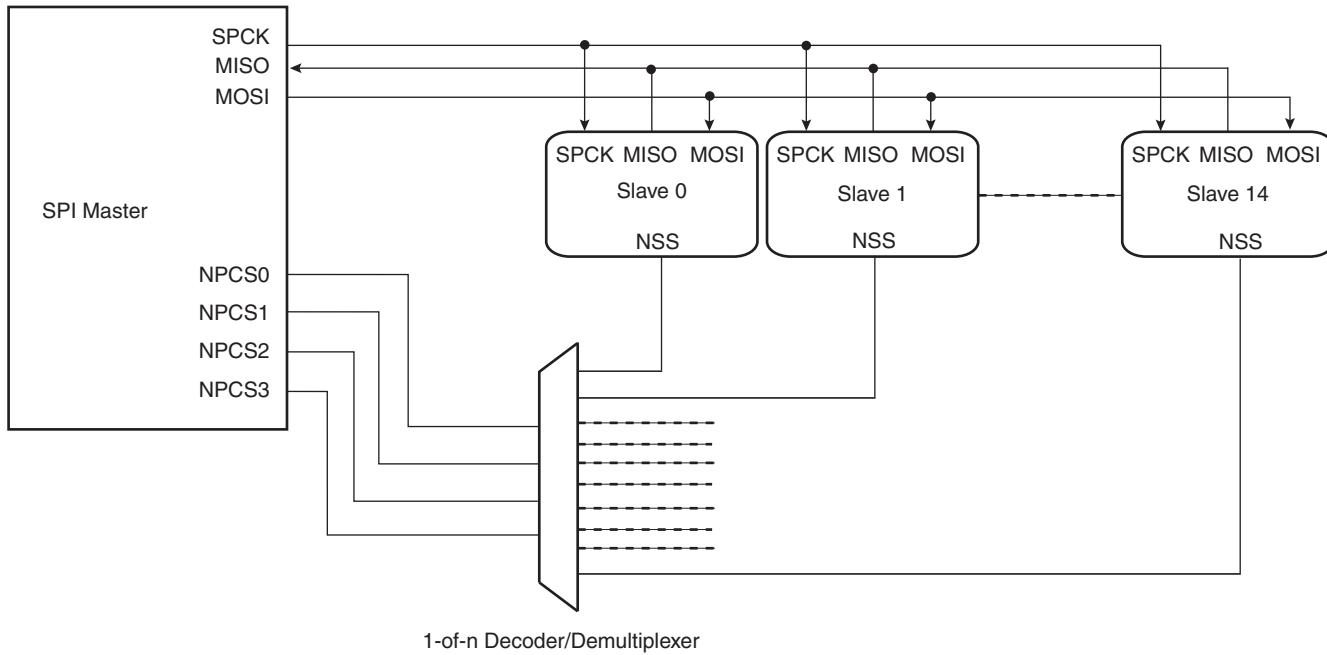
When operating with decoding, the SPI directly outputs the value defined by the PCS field on NPCS lines of either the Mode Register or the Transmit Data Register (depending on PS).

As the SPI sets a default value of 0xF on the chip select lines (i.e. all chip select lines at 1) when not processing any transfer, only 15 peripherals can be decoded.

The SPI has only four Chip Select Registers, not 15. As a result, when decoding is activated, each chip select defines the characteristics of up to four peripherals. As an example, SPI\_CRS0 defines the characteristics of the externally decoded peripherals 0 to 3, corresponding to the PCS values 0x0 to 0x3. Thus, the user has to make sure to connect compatible peripherals on the decoded chip select lines 0 to 3, 4 to 7, 8 to 11 and 12 to 14. [Figure 27-10](#) below shows such an implementation.

If the CSAAT bit is used, with or without the PDC, the Mode Fault detection for NPCS0 line must be disabled. This is not needed for all other chip select lines since Mode Fault Detection is only on NPCS0.

**Figure 27-10.** Chip Select Decoding Application Block Diagram: Single Master/Multiple Slave Implementation



#### 27.7.3.8 Peripheral Deselection without PDC

During a transfer of more than one data on a Chip Select without the PDC, the SPI\_TDR is loaded by the processor, the flag TDRE rises as soon as the content of the SPI\_TDR is transferred into the internal shift register. When this flag is detected high, the SPI\_TDR can be reloaded. If this reload by the processor occurs before the end of the current transfer and if the next transfer is performed on the same chip select as the current transfer, the Chip Select is not de-asserted between the two transfers. But depending on the application software handling the SPI status register flags (by interrupt or polling method) or servicing other interrupts or other tasks, the processor may not reload the SPI\_TDR in time to keep the chip select active (low). A null Delay Between Consecutive Transfer (DLYBCT) value in the SPI\_CSR register, will give even less time for the processor to reload the SPI\_TDR. With some SPI slave peripherals, requiring the chip select line to remain active (low) during a full set of transfers might lead to communication errors.

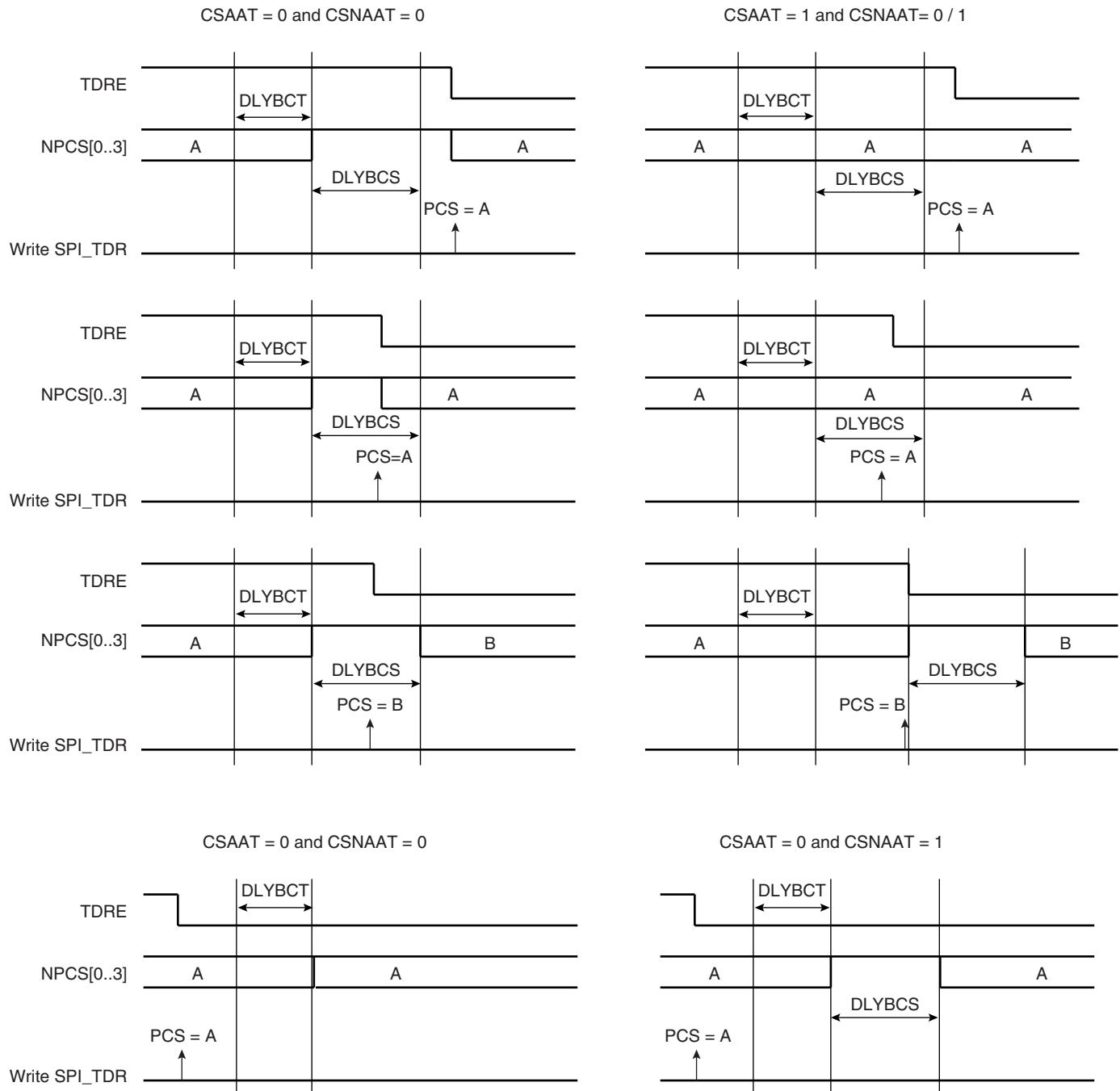
To facilitate interfacing with such devices, the Chip Select Register [CSR0...CSR3] can be programmed with the CSAAT bit (Chip Select Active After Transfer) at 1. This allows the chip select lines to remain in their current state (low = active) until transfer to another chip select is required. Even if the SPI\_TDR is not reloaded the chip select will remain active. To have the chip select line to raise at the end of the transfer the Last transfer Bit (LASTXFER) in the SPI\_MR register must be set at 1 before writing the last data to transmit into the SPI\_TDR.

27.7.3.9 *Peripheral Deselection with PDC*

When the Peripheral DMA Controller is used, the chip select line will remain low during the whole transfer since the TDRE flag is managed by the PDC itself. The reloading of the SPI\_TDR by the PDC is done as soon as TDRE flag is set to one. In this case the use of CSAAT bit might not be needed. However, it may happen that when other PDC channels connected to other peripherals are in use as well, the SPI PDC might be delayed by another (PDC with a higher priority on the bus). Having PDC buffers in slower memories like flash memory or SDRAM compared to fast internal SRAM, may lengthen the reload time of the SPI\_TDR by the PDC as well. This means that the SPI\_TDR might not be reloaded in time to keep the chip select line low. In this case the chip select line may toggle between data transfer and according to some SPI Slave devices, the communication might get lost. The use of the CSAAT bit might be needed.

When the CSAAT bit is set at 0, the NPCS does not rise in all cases between two transfers on the same peripheral. During a transfer on a Chip Select, the flag TDRE rises as soon as the content of the SPI\_TDR is transferred into the internal shifter. When this flag is detected the SPI\_TDR can be reloaded. If this reload occurs before the end of the current transfer and if the next transfer is performed on the same chip select as the current transfer, the Chip Select is not de-asserted between the two transfers. This might lead to difficulties for interfacing with some serial peripherals requiring the chip select to be de-asserted after each transfer. To facilitate interfacing with such devices, the Chip Select Register can be programmed with the CSNAAT bit (Chip Select Not Active After Transfer) at 1. This allows to de-assert systematically the chip select lines during a time DLYBCS. (The value of the CSNAAT bit is taken into account only if the CSAAT bit is set at 0 for the same Chip Select).

[Figure 27-11](#) shows different peripheral deselection cases and the effect of the CSAAT and CSNAAT bits.

**Figure 27-11.** Peripheral Deselection

#### 27.7.3.10 Mode Fault Detection

A mode fault is detected when the SPI is programmed in Master Mode and a low level is driven by an external master on the NPCS0/NSS signal. In this case, multi-master configuration, NPCS0, MOSI, MISO and SPCK pins must be configured in open drain (through the PIO controller). When a mode fault is detected, the MODF bit in the SPI\_SR is set until the SPI\_SR is read and the SPI is automatically disabled until re-enabled by writing the SPIEN bit in the SPI\_CR (Control Register) at 1.

By default, the Mode Fault detection circuitry is enabled. The user can disable Mode Fault detection by setting the MODFDIS bit in the SPI Mode Register (SPI\_MR).

#### 27.7.4 SPI Slave Mode

When operating in Slave Mode, the SPI processes data bits on the clock provided on the SPI clock pin (SPCK).

The SPI waits for NSS to go active before receiving the serial clock from an external master. When NSS falls, the clock is validated on the serializer, which processes the number of bits defined by the BITS field of the Chip Select Register 0 (SPI\_CSR0). These bits are processed following a phase and a polarity defined respectively by the NCPHA and CPOL bits of the SPI\_CSR0. Note that BITS, CPOL and NCPHA of the other Chip Select Registers have no effect when the SPI is programmed in Slave Mode.

The bits are shifted out on the MISO line and sampled on the MOSI line.

(For more information on BITS field, see also, the [\(Note:\)](#) below the register table; [Section 27.8.9 “SPI Chip Select Register” on page 458.](#))

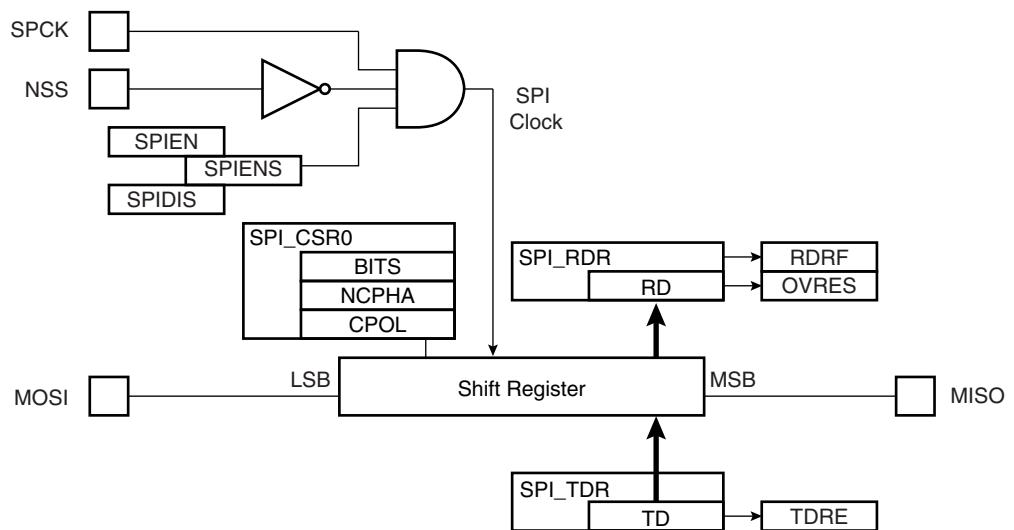
When all the bits are processed, the received data is transferred in the Receive Data Register and the RDRF bit rises. If the SPI\_RDR (Receive Data Register) has not been read before new data is received, the Overrun Error bit (OVRES) in SPI\_SR is set. As long as this flag is set, data is loaded in SPI\_RDR. The user has to read the status register to clear the OVRES bit.

When a transfer starts, the data shifted out is the data present in the Shift Register. If no data has been written in the Transmit Data Register (SPI\_TDR), the last data received is transferred. If no data has been received since the last reset, all bits are transmitted low, as the Shift Register resets at 0.

When a first data is written in SPI\_TDR, it is transferred immediately in the Shift Register and the TDRE bit rises. If new data is written, it remains in SPI\_TDR until a transfer occurs, i.e. NSS falls and there is a valid clock on the SPCK pin. When the transfer occurs, the last data written in SPI\_TDR is transferred in the Shift Register and the TDRE bit rises. This enables frequent updates of critical variables with single transfers.

Then, a new data is loaded in the Shift Register from the Transmit Data Register. In case no character is ready to be transmitted, i.e. no character has been written in SPI\_TDR since the last load from SPI\_TDR to the Shift Register, the Shift Register is not modified and the last received character is retransmitted. In this case the Underrun Error Status Flag (UNDES) is set in the SPI\_SR.

[Figure 27-12](#) shows a block diagram of the SPI when operating in Slave Mode.

**Figure 27-12.** Slave Mode Functional Bloc Diagram

### 27.7.5 Write Protected Registers

To prevent any single software error that may corrupt SPI behavior, the registers listed below can be write-protected by setting the SPIWPEN bit in the SPI Write Protection Mode Register (SPI\_WPMR).

If a write access in a write-protected register is detected, then the SPIWPVS flag in the SPI Write Protection Status Register (SPI\_WPSR) is set and the field SPIWPVSR indicates in which register the write access has been attempted.

The SPIWPVS flag is automatically reset after reading the SPI Write Protection Status Register (SPI\_WPSR).

List of the write-protected registers:

[Section 27.8.2 "SPI Mode Register"](#)

[Section 27.8.9 "SPI Chip Select Register"](#)

## 27.8 Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) User Interface

**Table 27-5.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Control Register	SPI_CR	Write-only	---
0x04	Mode Register	SPI_MR	Read-write	0x0
0x08	Receive Data Register	SPI_RDR	Read-only	0x0
0x0C	Transmit Data Register	SPI_TDR	Write-only	---
0x10	Status Register	SPI_SR	Read-only	0x000000F0
0x14	Interrupt Enable Register	SPI_IER	Write-only	---
0x18	Interrupt Disable Register	SPI_IDR	Write-only	---
0x1C	Interrupt Mask Register	SPI_IMR	Read-only	0x0
0x20 - 0x2C	Reserved			
0x30	Chip Select Register 0	SPI_CSR0	Read-write	0x0
0x34	Chip Select Register 1	SPI_CSR1	Read-write	0x0
0x38	Chip Select Register 2	SPI_CSR2	Read-write	0x0
0x3C	Chip Select Register 3	SPI_CSR3	Read-write	0x0
0x4C - 0xE0	Reserved	-	-	-
0xE4	Write Protection Control Register	SPI_WPMR	Read-write	0x0
0xE8	Write Protection Status Register	SPI_WPSR	Read-only	0x0
0x00E8 - 0x00F8	Reserved	-	-	-
0x00FC	Reserved	-	-	-
0x100 - 0x124	Reserved for the PDC	-	-	-

### 27.8.1 SPI Control Register

**Name:** SPI\_CR

**Address:** 0x40008000

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	LASTXFER
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SWRST	—	—	—	—	—	SPIDIS	SPIEN

- **SPIEN: SPI Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the SPI to transfer and receive data.

- **SPIDIS: SPI Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the SPI.

As soon as SPIDIS is set, SPI finishes its transfer.

All pins are set in input mode and no data is received or transmitted.

If a transfer is in progress, the transfer is finished before the SPI is disabled.

If both SPIEN and SPIDIS are equal to one when the control register is written, the SPI is disabled.

- **SWRST: SPI Software Reset**

0 = No effect.

1 = Reset the SPI. A software-triggered hardware reset of the SPI interface is performed.

The SPI is in slave mode after software reset.

PDC channels are not affected by software reset.

- **LASTXFER: Last Transfer**

0 = No effect.

1 = The current NPCS will be deasserted after the character written in TD has been transferred. When CSAAT is set, this allows to close the communication with the current serial peripheral by raising the corresponding NPCS line as soon as TD transfer has completed.

Refer to [Section 27.7.3.5 "Peripheral Selection"](#) for more details.

### 27.8.2 SPI Mode Register

**Name:** SPI\_MR

**Address:** 0x40008004

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
DLYBCS							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	—	—	PCS	—	—
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
LLB	—	WDRBT	MODFDIS	—	PCSDEC	PS	MSTR

- **MSTR: Master/Slave Mode**

0 = SPI is in Slave mode.

1 = SPI is in Master mode.

- **PS: Peripheral Select**

0 = Fixed Peripheral Select.

1 = Variable Peripheral Select.

- **PCSDEC: Chip Select Decode**

0 = The chip selects are directly connected to a peripheral device.

1 = The four chip select lines are connected to a 4- to 16-bit decoder.

When PCSDEC equals one, up to 15 Chip Select signals can be generated with the four lines using an external 4- to 16-bit decoder. The Chip Select Registers define the characteristics of the 15 chip selects according to the following rules:

SPI\_CSR0 defines peripheral chip select signals 0 to 3.

SPI\_CSR1 defines peripheral chip select signals 4 to 7.

SPI\_CSR2 defines peripheral chip select signals 8 to 11.

SPI\_CSR3 defines peripheral chip select signals 12 to 14.

- **MODFDIS: Mode Fault Detection**

0 = Mode fault detection is enabled.

1 = Mode fault detection is disabled.

- **WDRBT: Wait Data Read Before Transfer**

0 = No Effect. In master mode, a transfer can be initiated whatever the state of the Receive Data Register is.

1 = In Master Mode, a transfer can start only if the Receive Data Register is empty, i.e. does not contain any unread data. This mode prevents overrun error in reception.

- **LLB: Local Loopback Enable**

0 = Local loopback path disabled.

1 = Local loopback path enabled

LLB controls the local loopback on the data serializer for testing in Master Mode only. (MISO is internally connected on MOSI.)

- **PCS: Peripheral Chip Select**

This field is only used if Fixed Peripheral Select is active (PS = 0).

If PCSDEC = 0:

PCS = xxx0	NPCS[3:0] = 1110
PCS = xx01	NPCS[3:0] = 1101
PCS = x011	NPCS[3:0] = 1011
PCS = 0111	NPCS[3:0] = 0111
PCS = 1111	forbidden (no peripheral is selected)

(x = don't care)

If PCSDEC = 1:

NPCS[3:0] output signals = PCS.

- **DLYBCS: Delay Between Chip Selects**

This field defines the delay from NPCS inactive to the activation of another NPCS. The DLYBCS time guarantees non-overlapping chip selects and solves bus contentions in case of peripherals having long data float times.

If DLYBCS is less than or equal to six, six MCK periods will be inserted by default.

Otherwise, the following equation determines the delay:

$$\text{Delay Between Chip Selects} = \frac{DLYBCS}{MCK}$$

### 27.8.3 SPI Receive Data Register

**Name:** SPI\_RDR

**Address:** 0x40008008

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-			PCS	
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
				RD			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				RD			

- **RD: Receive Data**

Data received by the SPI Interface is stored in this register right-justified. Unused bits read zero.

- **PCS: Peripheral Chip Select**

In Master Mode only, these bits indicate the value on the NPCS pins at the end of a transfer. Otherwise, these bits read zero.

Note: When using variable peripheral select mode (PS = 1 in SPI\_MR) it is mandatory to also set the WDRBT field to 1 if the SPI\_RDR PCS field is to be processed.

#### 27.8.4 SPI Transmit Data Register

**Name:** SPI\_TDR

**Address:** 0x4000800C

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	LASTXFER
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-			PCS	
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
				TD			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				TD			

- **TD: Transmit Data**

Data to be transmitted by the SPI Interface is stored in this register. Information to be transmitted must be written to the transmit data register in a right-justified format.

- **PCS: Peripheral Chip Select**

This field is only used if Variable Peripheral Select is active (PS = 1).

If PCSDEC = 0:

PCS = xxx0	NPCS[3:0] = 1110
PCS = xx01	NPCS[3:0] = 1101
PCS = x011	NPCS[3:0] = 1011
PCS = 0111	NPCS[3:0] = 0111
PCS = 1111	forbidden (no peripheral is selected)
(x = don't care)	

If PCSDEC = 1:

NPCS[3:0] output signals = PCS

- **LASTXFER: Last Transfer**

0 = No effect.

1 = The current NPCS will be deasserted after the character written in TD has been transferred. When CSAAT is set, this allows to close the communication with the current serial peripheral by raising the corresponding NPCS line as soon as TD transfer has completed.

This field is only used if Variable Peripheral Select is active (PS = 1).

### 27.8.5 SPI Status Register

**Name:** SPI\_SR

**Address:** 0x40008010

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	SPIENS
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	UNDES	TXEMPTY	NSSR
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXBUFE	RXBUFF	ENDTX	ENDRX	OVRES	MODF	TDRE	RDRF

- RDRF: Receive Data Register Full**

0 = No data has been received since the last read of SPI\_RDR

1 = Data has been received and the received data has been transferred from the serializer to SPI\_RDR since the last read of SPI\_RDR.

- TDRE: Transmit Data Register Empty**

0 = Data has been written to SPI\_TDR and not yet transferred to the serializer.

1 = The last data written in the Transmit Data Register has been transferred to the serializer.

TDRE equals zero when the SPI is disabled or at reset. The SPI enable command sets this bit to one.

- MODF: Mode Fault Error**

0 = No Mode Fault has been detected since the last read of SPI\_SR.

1 = A Mode Fault occurred since the last read of the SPI\_SR.

- OVRES: Overrun Error Status**

0 = No overrun has been detected since the last read of SPI\_SR.

1 = An overrun has occurred since the last read of SPI\_SR.

An overrun occurs when SPI\_RDR is loaded at least twice from the serializer since the last read of the SPI\_RDR.

- ENDRX: End of RX buffer**

0 = The Receive Counter Register has not reached 0 since the last write in SPI\_RCR<sup>(1)</sup> or SPI\_RNCR<sup>(1)</sup>.

1 = The Receive Counter Register has reached 0 since the last write in SPI\_RCR<sup>(1)</sup> or SPI\_RNCR<sup>(1)</sup>.

- ENDTX: End of TX buffer**

0 = The Transmit Counter Register has not reached 0 since the last write in SPI\_TCR<sup>(1)</sup> or SPI\_TNCR<sup>(1)</sup>.

1 = The Transmit Counter Register has reached 0 since the last write in SPI\_TCR<sup>(1)</sup> or SPI\_TNCR<sup>(1)</sup>.

- RXBUFF: RX Buffer Full**

0 = SPI\_RCR<sup>(1)</sup> or SPI\_RNCR<sup>(1)</sup> has a value other than 0.

1 = Both SPI\_RCR<sup>(1)</sup> and SPI\_RNCR<sup>(1)</sup> have a value of 0.



- **TXBUFE: TX Buffer Empty**

0 = SPI\_TCR<sup>(1)</sup> or SPI\_TNCR<sup>(1)</sup> has a value other than 0.

1 = Both SPI\_TCR<sup>(1)</sup> and SPI\_TNCR<sup>(1)</sup> have a value of 0.

- **NSSR: NSS Rising**

0 = No rising edge detected on NSS pin since last read.

1 = A rising edge occurred on NSS pin since last read.

- **TXEMPTY: Transmission Registers Empty**

0 = As soon as data is written in SPI\_TDR.

1 = SPI\_TDR and internal shifter are empty. If a transfer delay has been defined, TXEMPTY is set after the completion of such delay.

- **UNDES: Underrun Error Status (Slave Mode Only)**

0 = No underrun has been detected since the last read of SPI\_SR.

1 = A transfer begins whereas no data has been loaded in the Transmit Data Register.

- **SPIENS: SPI Enable Status**

0 = SPI is disabled.

1 = SPI is enabled.

Note: 1. SPI\_RCR, SPI\_RNCR, SPI\_TCR, SPI\_TNCR are physically located in the PDC.

### 27.8.6 SPI Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** SPI\_IER

**Address:** 0x40008014

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	UNDES	TXEMPTY	NSSR
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXBUFE	RXBUFF	ENDTX	ENDRX	OVRES	MODF	TDRE	RDRF

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the corresponding interrupt.

- **RDRF: Receive Data Register Full Interrupt Enable**
- **TDRE: SPI Transmit Data Register Empty Interrupt Enable**
- **MODF: Mode Fault Error Interrupt Enable**
- **OVRES: Overrun Error Interrupt Enable**
- **ENDRX: End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Enable**
- **ENDTX: End of Transmit Buffer Interrupt Enable**
- **RXBUFF: Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Enable**
- **TXBUFE: Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable**
- **NSSR: NSS Rising Interrupt Enable**
- **TXEMPTY: Transmission Registers Empty Enable**
- **UNDES: Underrun Error Interrupt Enable**

### 27.8.7 SPI Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** SPI\_IDR

**Address:** 0x40008018

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	UNDES	TXEMPTY	NSSR
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXBUFE	RXBUFF	ENDTX	ENDRX	OVRES	MODF	TDRE	RDRF

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the corresponding interrupt.

- **RDRF: Receive Data Register Full Interrupt Disable**
- **TDRE: SPI Transmit Data Register Empty Interrupt Disable**
- **MODF: Mode Fault Error Interrupt Disable**
- **OVRES: Overrun Error Interrupt Disable**
- **ENDRX: End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Disable**
- **ENDTX: End of Transmit Buffer Interrupt Disable**
- **RXBUFF: Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Disable**
- **TXBUFE: Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Disable**
- **NSSR: NSS Rising Interrupt Disable**
- **TXEMPTY: Transmission Registers Empty Disable**
- **UNDES: Underrun Error Interrupt Disable**

### 27.8.8 SPI Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** SPI\_IMR

**Address:** 0x4000801C

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	UNDES	TXEMPTY	NSSR
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXBUFE	RXBUFF	ENDTX	ENDRX	OVRES	MODF	TDRE	RDRF

0 = The corresponding interrupt is not enabled.

1 = The corresponding interrupt is enabled.

- **RDRF: Receive Data Register Full Interrupt Mask**
- **TDRE: SPI Transmit Data Register Empty Interrupt Mask**
- **MODF: Mode Fault Error Interrupt Mask**
- **OVRES: Overrun Error Interrupt Mask**
- **ENDRX: End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Mask**
- **ENDTX: End of Transmit Buffer Interrupt Mask**
- **RXBUFF: Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Mask**
- **TXBUFE: Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Mask**
- **NSSR: NSS Rising Interrupt Mask**
- **TXEMPTY: Transmission Registers Empty Mask**
- **UNDES: Underrun Error Interrupt Mask**

### 27.8.9 SPI Chip Select Register

**Name:** SPI\_CSRx[x=0..3]

**Address:** 0x40008030

**Access:** Read/Write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
DLYBCT							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
DLYBS							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
SCBR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
BITS				CSAAT	CSNAAT	NCPHA	CPOL

Note: SPI\_CSRx registers must be written even if the user wants to use the defaults. The BITS field will not be updated with the translated value unless the register is written.

- **CPOL: Clock Polarity**

0 = The inactive state value of SPCK is logic level zero.

1 = The inactive state value of SPCK is logic level one.

CPOL is used to determine the inactive state value of the serial clock (SPCK). It is used with NCPHA to produce the required clock/data relationship between master and slave devices.

- **NCPHA: Clock Phase**

0 = Data is changed on the leading edge of SPCK and captured on the following edge of SPCK.

1 = Data is captured on the leading edge of SPCK and changed on the following edge of SPCK.

NCPHA determines which edge of SPCK causes data to change and which edge causes data to be captured. NCPHA is used with CPOL to produce the required clock/data relationship between master and slave devices.

- **CSAAT: Chip Select Not Active After Transfer (Ignored if CSAAT = 1)**

0 = The Peripheral Chip Select does not rise between two transfers if the SPI\_TDR is reloaded before the end of the first transfer and if the two transfers occur on the same Chip Select.

1 = The Peripheral Chip Select rises systematically between each transfer performed on the same slave for a minimal duration of:

$$-\frac{DLYBCS}{MCK} \text{ (if DLYBCT field is different from 0)}$$

$$-\frac{DLYBCS + 1}{MCK} \text{ (if DLYBCT field equal 0)}$$

- **CSAAT: Chip Select Active After Transfer**

0 = The Peripheral Chip Select Line rises as soon as the last transfer is achieved.

1 = The Peripheral Chip Select does not rise after the last transfer is achieved. It remains active until a new transfer is requested on a different chip select.

- **BITS: Bits Per Transfer**

(See the [\(Note\)](#) below the register table; [Section 27.8.9 “SPI Chip Select Register” on page 458.](#))

The BITS field determines the number of data bits transferred. Reserved values should not be used.

Value	Name	Description
0	8_BIT	8_bits for transfer
1	9_BIT	9_bits for transfer
2	10_BIT	8_bits for transfer
3	11_BIT	8_bits for transfer
4	12_BIT	8_bits for transfer
5	13_BIT	8_bits for transfer
6	14_BIT	8_bits for transfer
7	15_BIT	8_bits for transfer
8	16_BIT	8_bits for transfer
10	–	Reserved
11	–	Reserved
12	–	Reserved
13	–	Reserved
14	–	Reserved
15	–	Reserved
16	–	Reserved

- **SCBR: Serial Clock Baud Rate**

In Master Mode, the SPI Interface uses a modulus counter to derive the SPCK baud rate from the Master Clock MCK. The Baud rate is selected by writing a value from 1 to 255 in the SCBR field. The following equations determine the SPCK baud rate:

$$\text{SPCK Baudrate} = \frac{MCK}{SCBR}$$

Programming the SCBR field at 0 is forbidden. Triggering a transfer while SCBR is at 0 can lead to unpredictable results.

At reset, SCBR is 0 and the user has to program it at a valid value before performing the first transfer.

Note: If one of the SCBR fields in SPI\_CSRx is set to 1, the other SCBR fields in SPI\_CSRx must be set to 1 as well, if they are required to process transfers. If they are not used to transfer data, they can be set at any value.

- **DLYBS: Delay Before SPCK**

This field defines the delay from NPCS valid to the first valid SPCK transition.

When DLYBS equals zero, the NPCS valid to SPCK transition is 1/2 the SPCK clock period.

Otherwise, the following equations determine the delay:

$$\text{Delay Before SPCK} = \frac{DLYBS}{MCK}$$



- **DLYBCT: Delay Between Consecutive Transfers**

This field defines the delay between two consecutive transfers with the same peripheral without removing the chip select. The delay is always inserted after each transfer and before removing the chip select if needed.

When DLYBCT equals zero, no delay between consecutive transfers is inserted and the clock keeps its duty cycle over the character transfers.

Otherwise, the following equation determines the delay:

$$\text{Delay Between Consecutive Transfers} = \frac{32 \times DLYBCT}{MCK}$$

### 27.8.10 SPI Write Protection Mode Register

**Name:** SPI\_WPMR

**Address:** 0x400080E4

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
SPIWPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
SPIWPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
SPIWPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	SPIWPEN

- **SPIWPEN: SPI Write Protection Enable**

0: The Write Protection is Disabled

1: The Write Protection is Enabled

- **SPIWPKEY: SPI Write Protection Key Password**

If a value is written in SPIWPEN, the value is taken into account only if SPIWPKEY is written with “SPI” (SPI written in ASCII Code, ie 0x535049 in hexadecimal).

### 27.8.11 SPI Write Protection Status Register

**Name:** SPI\_WPSR

**Address:** 0x400080E8

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
SPIWPVSRC							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	SPIWPVS		

- **SPIWPVS: SPI Write Protection Violation Status**

SPIWPVS value	Violation Type
0x1	The Write Protection has blocked a Write access to a protected register (since the last read).
0x2	Software Reset has been performed while Write Protection was enabled (since the last read or since the last write access on SPI_MR, SPI_IER, SPI_IDR or SPI_CSRx).
0x3	Both Write Protection violation and software reset with Write Protection enabled have occurred since the last read.
0x4	Write accesses have been detected on SPI_MR (while a chip select was active) or on SPI_CSRi (while the Chip Select "i" was active) since the last read.
0x5	The Write Protection has blocked a Write access to a protected register and write accesses have been detected on SPI_MR (while a chip select was active) or on SPI_CSRi (while the Chip Select "i" was active) since the last read.
0x6	Software Reset has been performed while Write Protection was enabled (since the last read or since the last write access on SPI_MR, SPI_IER, SPI_IDR or SPI_CSRx) and some write accesses have been detected on SPI_MR (while a chip select was active) or on SPI_CSRi (while the Chip Select "i" was active) since the last read.
0x7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Write Protection has blocked a Write access to a protected register.</li> <li>and</li> <li>- Software Reset has been performed while Write Protection was enabled.</li> <li>and</li> <li>- Write accesses have been detected on SPI_MR (while a chip select was active) or on SPI_CSRi (while the Chip Select "i" was active) since the last read.</li> </ul>

- **SPIWPVSRC: SPI Write Protection Violation Source**

This Field indicates the APB Offset of the register concerned by the violation (SPI\_MR or SPI\_CSRx)

## 28. Two-wire Interface (TWI)

### 28.1 Description

The Atmel Two-wire Interface (TWI) interconnects components on a unique two-wire bus, made up of one clock line and one data line with speeds of up to 400 Kbits per second, based on a byte-oriented transfer format. It can be used with any Atmel Two-wire Interface bus Serial EEPROM and I<sup>2</sup>C compatible device such as Real Time Clock (RTC), Dot Matrix/Graphic LCD Controllers and Temperature Sensor, to name but a few. The TWI is programmable as a master or a slave with sequential or single-byte access. Multiple master capability is supported. 20

Arbitration of the bus is performed internally and puts the TWI in slave mode automatically if the bus arbitration is lost.

A configurable baud rate generator permits the output data rate to be adapted to a wide range of core clock frequencies.

Below, [Table 28-1](#) lists the compatibility level of the Atmel Two-wire Interface in Master Mode and a full I<sup>2</sup>C compatible device.

**Table 28-1.** Atmel TWI compatibility with i<sup>2</sup>C Standard

I <sup>2</sup> C Standard	Atmel TWI
Standard Mode Speed (100 KHz)	Supported
Fast Mode Speed (400 KHz)	Supported
7 or 10 bits Slave Addressing	Supported
START BYTE <sup>(1)</sup>	Not Supported
Repeated Start (Sr) Condition	Supported
ACK and NACK Management	Supported
Slope control and input filtering (Fast mode)	Not Supported
Clock stretching	Supported
Multi Master Capability	Supported

Note: 1. START + b00000001 + Ack + Sr

## 28.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Two TWIs
- Compatible with Atmel Two-wire Interface Serial Memory and I<sup>2</sup>C Compatible Devices (Note:)
- One, Two or Three Bytes for Slave Address
- Sequential Read-write Operations
- Master, Multi-master and Slave Mode Operation
- Bit Rate: Up to 400 Kbits
- General Call Supported in Slave mode
- SMBUS Quick Command Supported in Master Mode
- Connection to Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC) Channel Capabilities Optimizes Data Transfers in Master Mode Only
  - One Channel for the Receiver, One Channel for the Transmitter
  - Next Buffer Support
- Connection to DMA Controller (DMAC) Channel Capabilities Optimizes Data Transfers in Master Mode Only

Note: See [Table 28-1](#) for details on compatibility with I<sup>2</sup>C Standard.

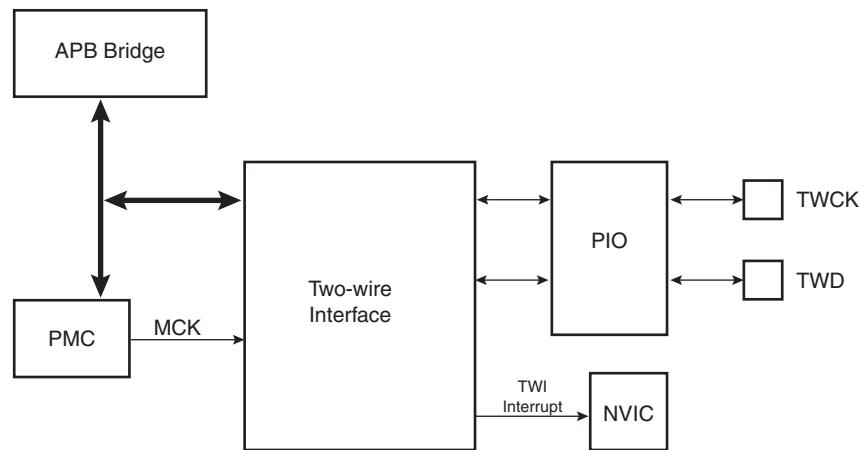
## 28.3 List of Abbreviations

**Table 28-2.** Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Description
TWI	Two-wire Interface
A	Acknowledge
NA	Non Acknowledge
P	Stop
S	Start
Sr	Repeated Start
SADR	Slave Address
ADR	Any address except SADR
R	Read
W	Write

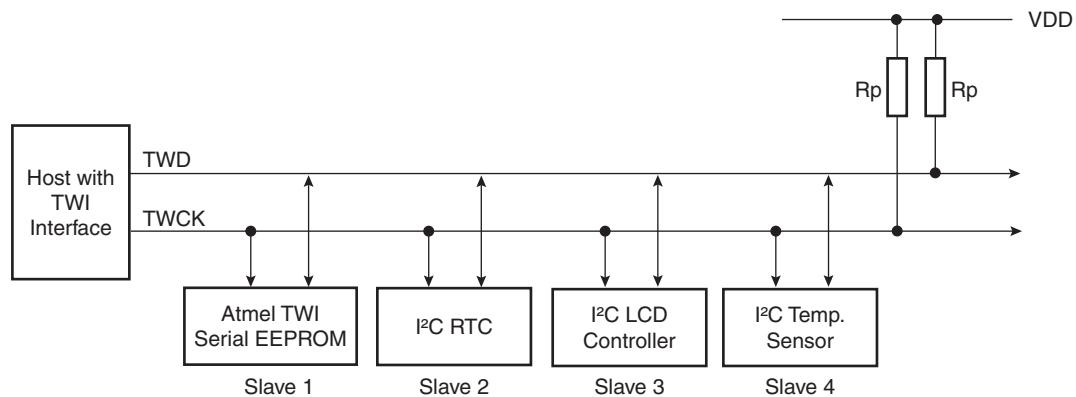
## 28.4 Block Diagram

**Figure 28-1.** Block Diagram



## 28.5 Application Block Diagram

**Figure 28-2.** Application Block Diagram



### 28.5.1 I/O Lines Description

**Table 28-3.** I/O Lines Description

Pin Name	Pin Description	Type
TWD	Two-wire Serial Data	Input/Output
TWCK	Two-wire Serial Clock	Input/Output

## 28.6 Product Dependencies

### 28.6.1 I/O Lines

Both TWD and TWCK are bidirectional lines, connected to a positive supply voltage via a current source or pull-up resistor (see [Figure 28-2 on page 465](#)). When the bus is free, both lines are high. The output stages of devices connected to the bus must have an open-drain or open-collector to perform the wired-AND function.

TWD and TWCK pins may be multiplexed with PIO lines. To enable the TWI, the programmer must perform the following step:

- Program the PIO controller to dedicate TWD and TWCK as peripheral lines.

The user must not program TWD and TWCK as open-drain. It is already done by the hardware.

**Table 28-4.** I/O Lines

Instance	Signal	I/O Line	Peripheral
TWI0	TWCK0	PA4	A
TWI0	TWD0	PA3	A
TWI1	TWCK1	PB5	A
TWI1	TWD1	PB4	A

### 28.6.2 Power Management

- Enable the peripheral clock.

The TWI interface may be clocked through the Power Management Controller (PMC), thus the programmer must first configure the PMC to enable the TWI clock.

### 28.6.3 Interrupt

The TWI interface has an interrupt line connected to the Nested Vector Interrupt Controller (NVIC). In order to handle interrupts, the NVIC must be programmed before configuring the TWI.

**Table 28-5.** Peripheral IDs

Instance	ID
TWI0	19
TWI1	20

## 28.7 Functional Description

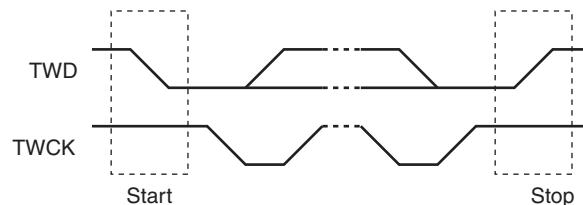
### 28.7.1 Transfer Format

The data put on the TWD line must be 8 bits long. Data is transferred MSB first; each byte must be followed by an acknowledgement. The number of bytes per transfer is unlimited (see [Figure 28-4](#)).

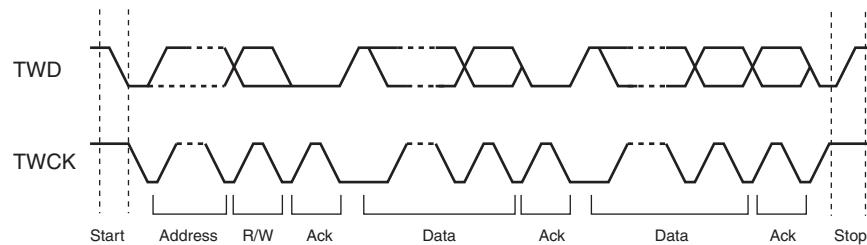
Each transfer begins with a START condition and terminates with a STOP condition (see [Figure 28-3](#)).

- A high-to-low transition on the TWD line while TWCK is high defines the START condition.
- A low-to-high transition on the TWD line while TWCK is high defines a STOP condition.

**Figure 28-3.** START and STOP Conditions



**Figure 28-4.** Transfer Format



### 28.7.2 Modes of Operation

The TWI has six modes of operations:

- Master transmitter mode
- Master receiver mode
- Multi-master transmitter mode
- Multi-master receiver mode
- Slave transmitter mode
- Slave receiver mode

These modes are described in the following chapters.

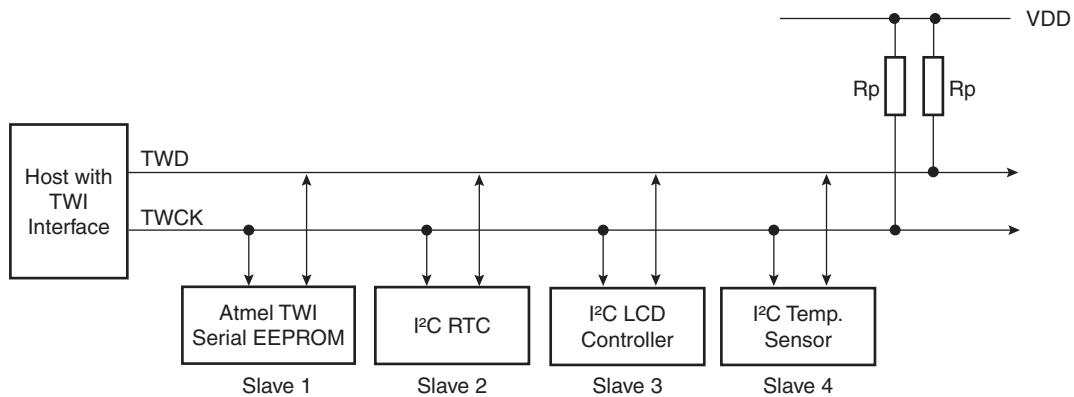
## 28.8 Master Mode

### 28.8.1 Definition

The Master is the device that starts a transfer, generates a clock and stops it.

### 28.8.2 Application Block Diagram

**Figure 28-5.** Master Mode Typical Application Block Diagram



Rp: Pull up value as given by the I<sup>2</sup>C Standard

### 28.8.3 Programming Master Mode

The following registers have to be programmed before entering Master mode:

1. DADR (+ IADRSZ + IADR if a 10 bit device is addressed): The device address is used to access slave devices in read or write mode.
2. CKDIV + CHDIV + CLDIV: Clock Waveform.
3. SVDIS: Disable the slave mode.
4. MSEN: Enable the master mode.

### 28.8.4 Master Transmitter Mode

After the master initiates a Start condition when writing into the Transmit Holding Register, TWI\_THR, it sends a 7-bit slave address, configured in the Master Mode register (DADR in TWI\_MMR), to notify the slave device. The bit following the slave address indicates the transfer direction, 0 in this case (MREAD = 0 in TWI\_MMR).

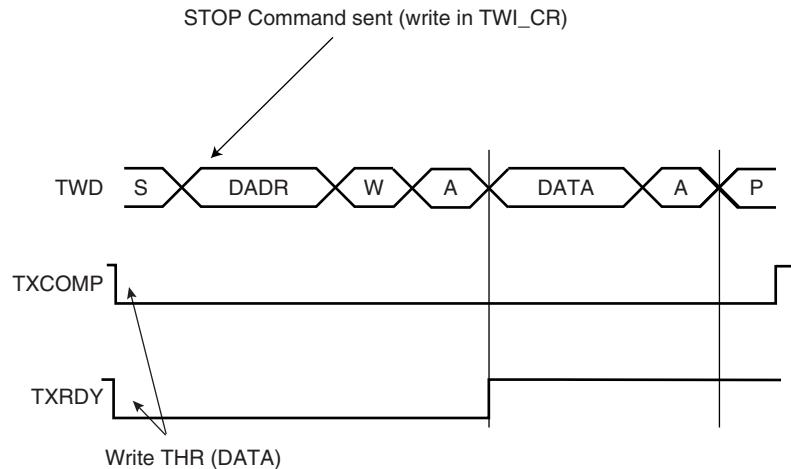
The TWI transfers require the slave to acknowledge each received byte. During the acknowledge clock pulse (9th pulse), the master releases the data line (HIGH), enabling the slave to pull it down in order to generate the acknowledge. The master polls the data line during this clock pulse and sets the Not Acknowledge bit (**NACK**) in the status register if the slave does not acknowledge the byte. As with the other status bits, an interrupt can be generated if enabled in the interrupt enable register (TWI\_IER). If the slave acknowledges the byte, the data written in the TWI\_THR, is then shifted in the internal shifter and transferred. When an acknowledge is detected, the TXRDY bit is set until a new write in the TWI\_THR.

While no new data is written in the TWI\_THR, the Serial Clock Line is tied low. When new data is written in the TWI\_THR, the SCL is released and the data is sent. To generate a STOP event, the STOP command must be performed by writing in the STOP field of TWI\_CR.

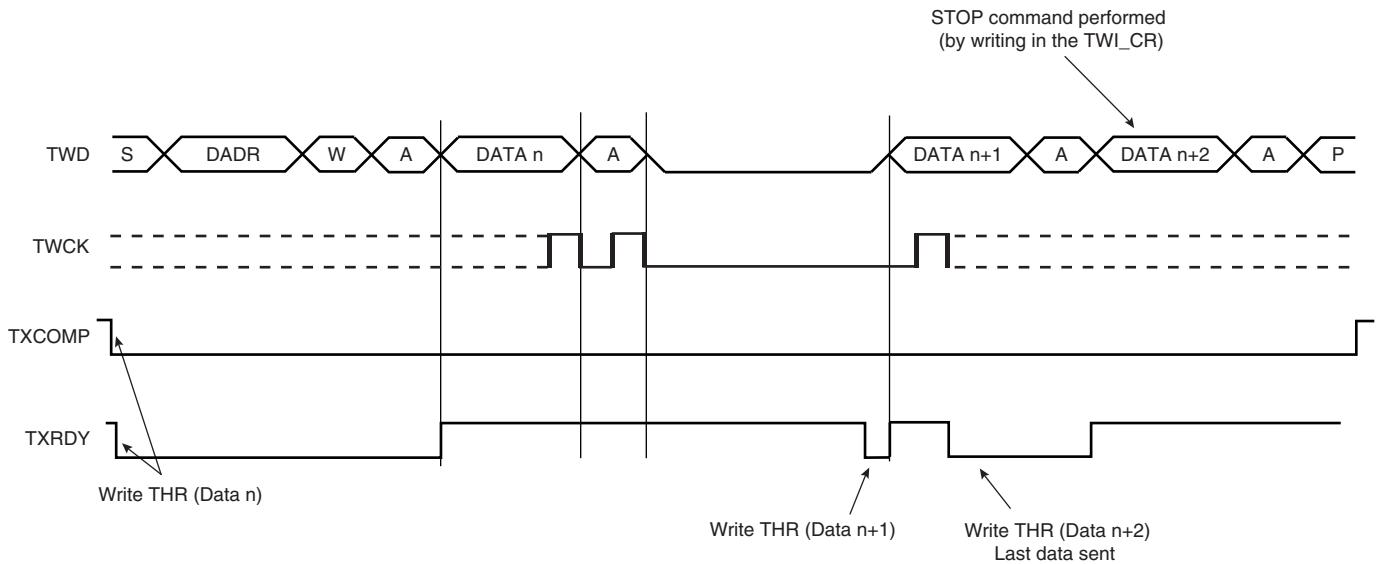
After a Master Write transfer, the Serial Clock line is stretched (tied low) while no new data is written in the TWI\_THR or until a STOP command is performed.

See [Figure 28-6](#), [Figure 28-7](#), and [Figure 28-8](#).

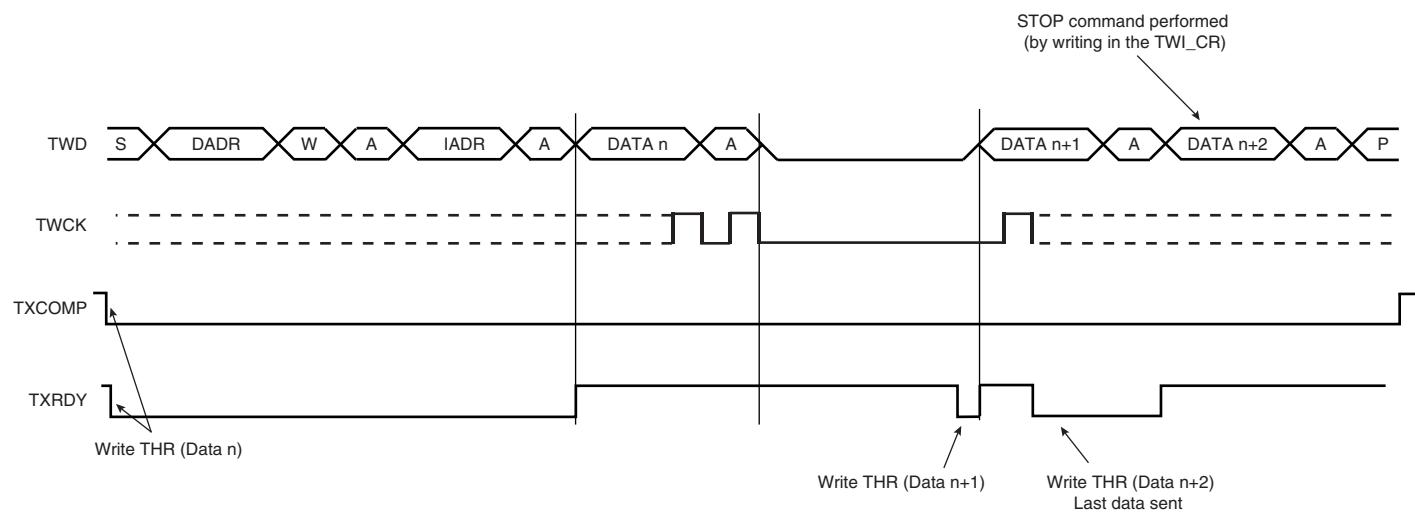
**Figure 28-6.** Master Write with One Data Byte



**Figure 28-7.** Master Write with Multiple Data Bytes



**Figure 28-8.** Master Write with One Byte Internal Address and Multiple Data Bytes



TXRDY is used as Transmit Ready for the PDC transmit channel.

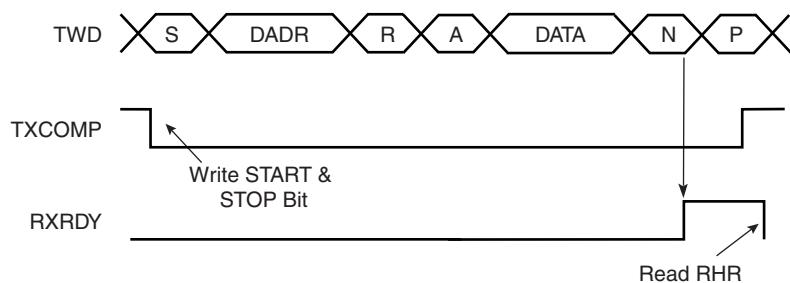
#### 28.8.5 Master Receiver Mode

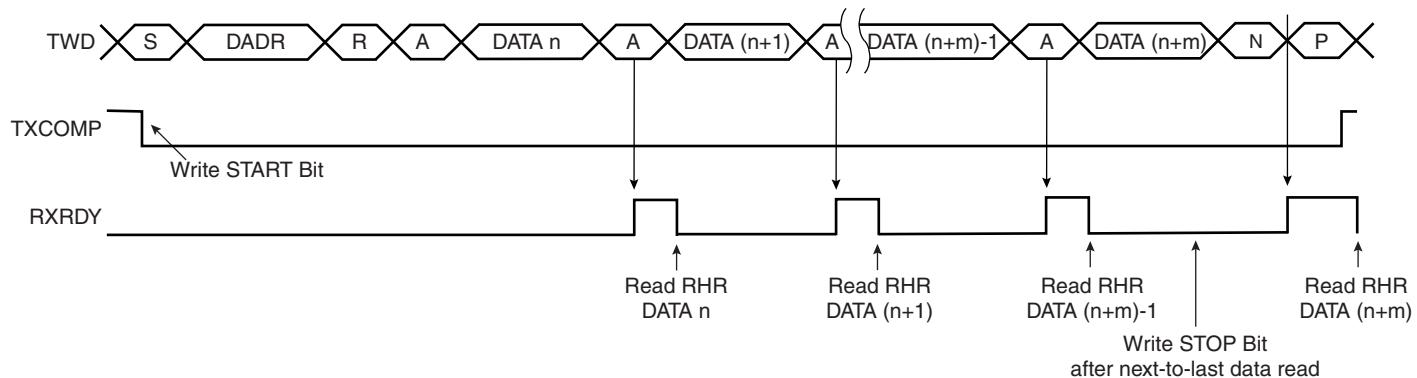
The read sequence begins by setting the START bit. After the start condition has been sent, the master sends a 7-bit slave address to notify the slave device. The bit following the slave address indicates the transfer direction, 1 in this case (MREAD = 1 in TWI\_MMR). During the acknowledge clock pulse (9th pulse), the master releases the data line (HIGH), enabling the slave to pull it down in order to generate the acknowledge. The master polls the data line during this clock pulse and sets the **NACK** bit in the status register if the slave does not acknowledge the byte.

If an acknowledge is received, the master is then ready to receive data from the slave. After data has been received, the master sends an acknowledge condition to notify the slave that the data has been received except for the last data, after the stop condition. See [Figure 28-9](#). When the RXRDY bit is set in the status register, a character has been received in the receive-holding register (TWI\_RHR). The RXRDY bit is reset when reading the TWI\_RHR.

When a single data byte read is performed, with or without internal address (**IADR**), the START and STOP bits must be set at the same time. See [Figure 28-9](#). When a multiple data byte read is performed, with or without internal address (**IADR**), the STOP bit must be set after the next-to-last data received. See [Figure 28-10](#). For Internal Address usage see [Section 28.8.6](#).

**Figure 28-9.** Master Read with One Data Byte



**Figure 28-10.** Master Read with Multiple Data Bytes

RXRDY is used as Receive Ready for the PDC receive channel.

## 28.8.6 Internal Address

The TWI interface can perform various transfer formats: Transfers with 7-bit slave address devices and 10-bit slave address devices.

### 28.8.6.1 7-bit Slave Addressing

When Addressing 7-bit slave devices, the internal address bytes are used to perform random address (read or write) accesses to reach one or more data bytes, within a memory page location in a serial memory, for example. When performing read operations with an internal address, the TWI performs a write operation to set the internal address into the slave device, and then switch to Master Receiver mode. Note that the second start condition (after sending the IADR) is sometimes called “repeated start” (Sr) in I2C fully-compatible devices. See [Figure 28-12](#). See [Figure 28-11](#) and [Figure 28-13](#) for Master Write operation with internal address.

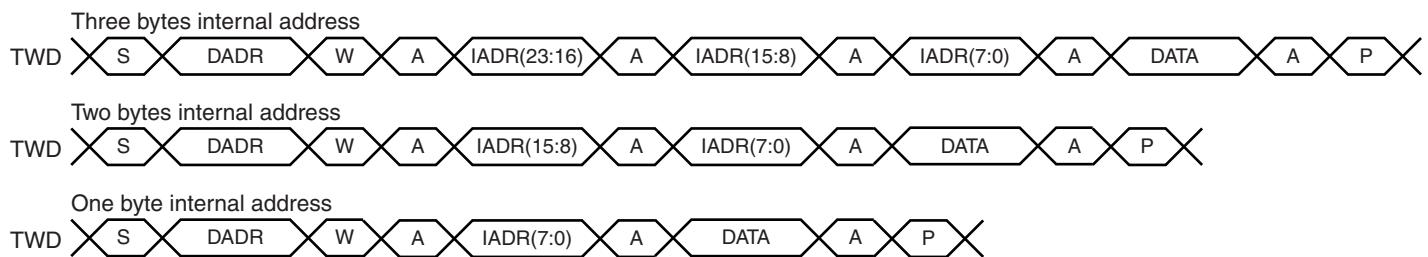
The three internal address bytes are configurable through the Master Mode register (TWI\_MMR).

If the slave device supports only a 7-bit address, i.e. no internal address, **IADRSZ** must be set to 0.

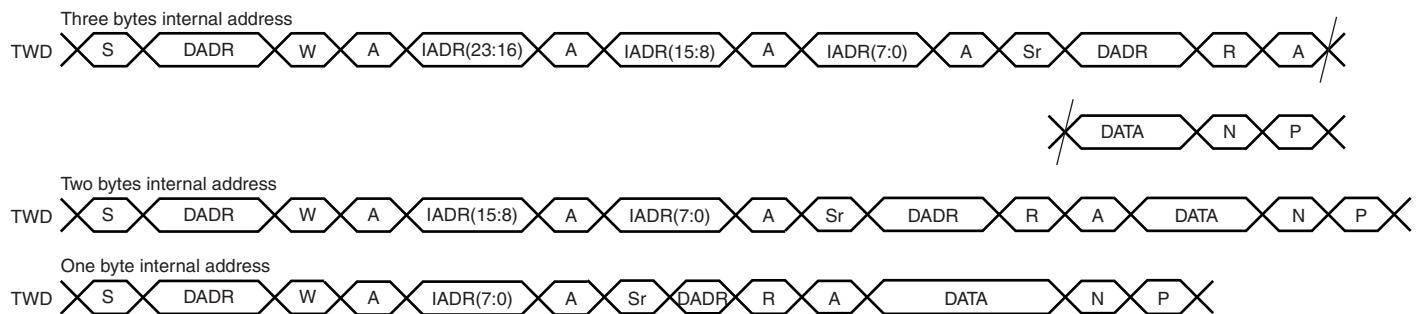
In the figures below the following abbreviations are used:

- S Start
- Sr Repeated Start
- P Stop
- W Write
- R Read
- A Acknowledge
- N Not Acknowledge
- DADR Device Address
- IADR Internal Address

**Figure 28-11.** Master Write with One, Two or Three Bytes Internal Address and One Data Byte



**Figure 28-12.** Master Read with One, Two or Three Bytes Internal Address and One Data Byte



#### 28.8.6.2 10-bit Slave Addressing

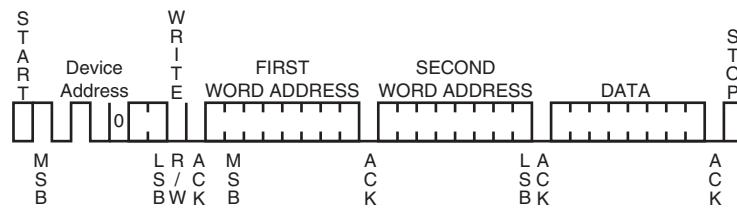
For a slave address higher than 7 bits, the user must configure the address size (**IADRSZ**) and set the other slave address bits in the internal address register (TWI\_IADR). The two remaining Internal address bytes, IADR[15:8] and IADR[23:16] can be used the same as in 7-bit Slave Addressing.

**Example:** Address a 10-bit device (10-bit device address is b1 b2 b3 b4 b5 b6 b7 b8 b9 b10)

1. Program IADRSZ = 1,
2. Program DADR with 1 1 1 1 0 b1 b2 (b1 is the MSB of the 10-bit address, b2, etc.)
3. Program TWI\_IADR with b3 b4 b5 b6 b7 b8 b9 b10 (b10 is the LSB of the 10-bit address)

[Figure 28-13](#) below shows a byte write to an Atmel AT24LC512 EEPROM. This demonstrates the use of internal addresses to access the device.

**Figure 28-13.** Internal Address Usage



## 28.8.7 Using the Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC)

The use of the PDC significantly reduces the CPU load.

To assure correct implementation, respect the following programming sequences:

### 28.8.7.1 Data Transmit with the PDC

1. Initialize the transmit PDC (memory pointers, size, etc.).
2. Configure the master mode (DADR, CKDIV, etc.).
3. Start the transfer by setting the PDC TXTEN bit.
4. Wait for the PDC end TX flag.
5. Disable the PDC by setting the PDC TXDIS bit.

### 28.8.7.2 Data Receive with the PDC

1. Initialize the receive PDC (memory pointers, size - 1, etc.).
2. Configure the master mode (DADR, CKDIV, etc.).
3. Start the transfer by setting the PDC RXTEN bit.
4. Wait for the PDC end RX flag.
5. Disable the PDC by setting the PDC RXDIS bit.

## 28.8.8 Using the DMA Controller (DMAC)

The use of the DMAC significantly reduces the CPU load.

To assure correct implementation, respect the following programming sequence.

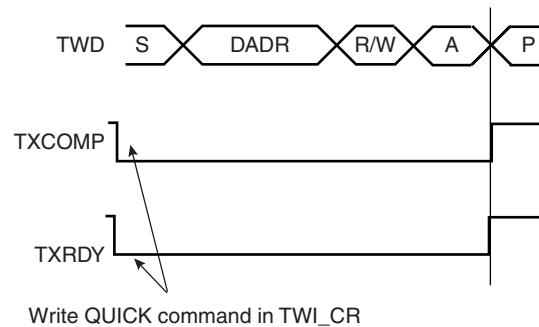
1. Initialize the DMAC (channels, memory pointers , size, etc.);
2. Configure the master mode (DADR, CKDIV, etc.).
3. Enable the DMAC.
4. Wait for the DMAC flag.
5. Disable the DMAC.

## 28.8.9 SMBUS Quick Command (Master Mode Only)

The TWI interface can perform a Quick Command:

1. Configure the master mode (DADR, CKDIV, etc.).
2. Write the MREAD bit in the TWI\_MMR register at the value of the one-bit command to be sent.
3. Start the transfer by setting the QUICK bit in the TWI\_CR.

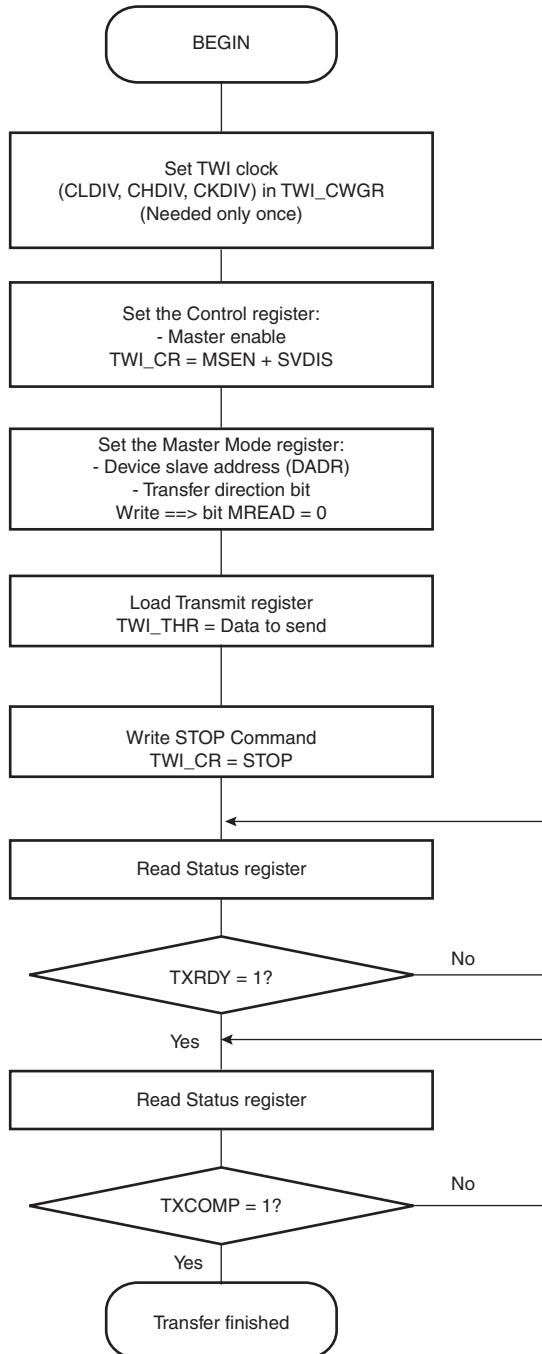
**Figure 28-14. SMBUS Quick Command**



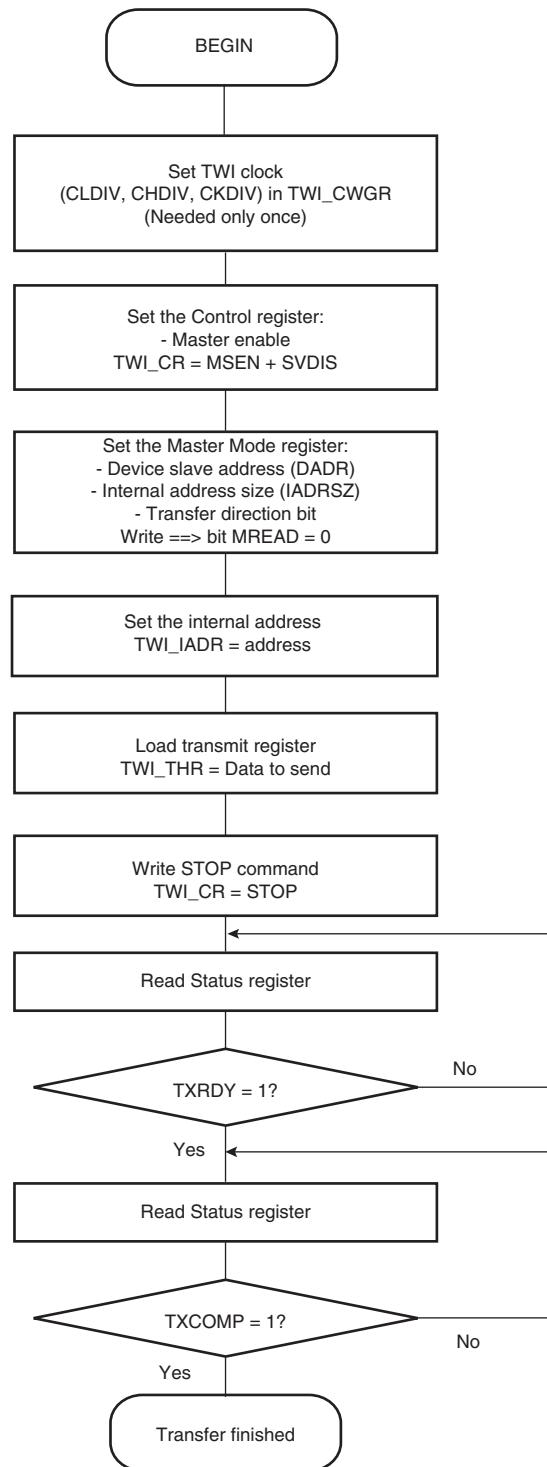
### 28.8.10 Read-write Flowcharts

The following flowcharts shown in [Figure 28-16 on page 475](#), [Figure 28-17 on page 476](#), [Figure 28-18 on page 477](#), [Figure 28-19 on page 478](#) and [Figure 28-20 on page 479](#) give examples for read and write operations. A polling or interrupt method can be used to check the status bits. The interrupt method requires that the interrupt enable register (TWI\_IER) be configured first.

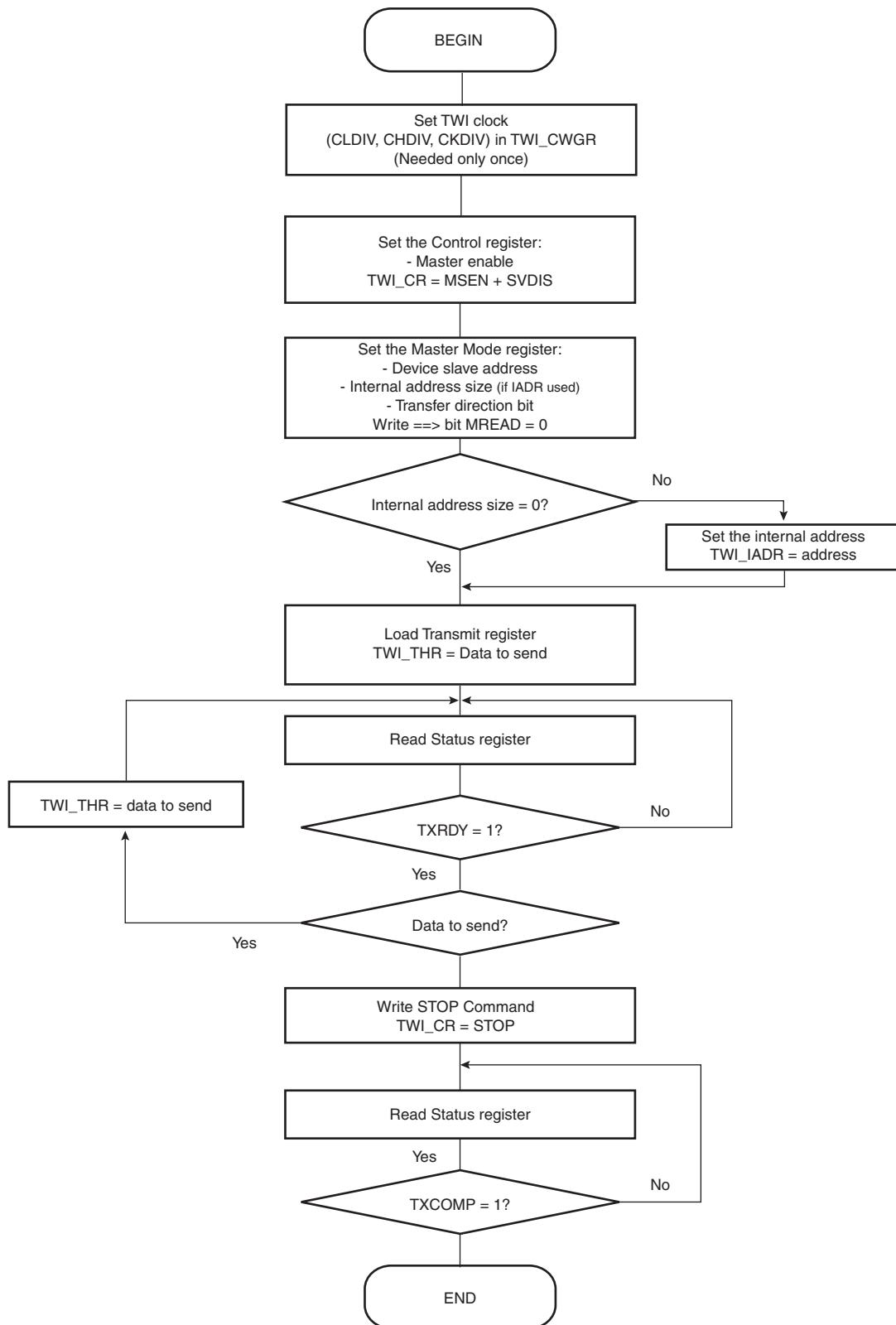
**Figure 28-15.** TWI Write Operation with Single Data Byte without Internal Address

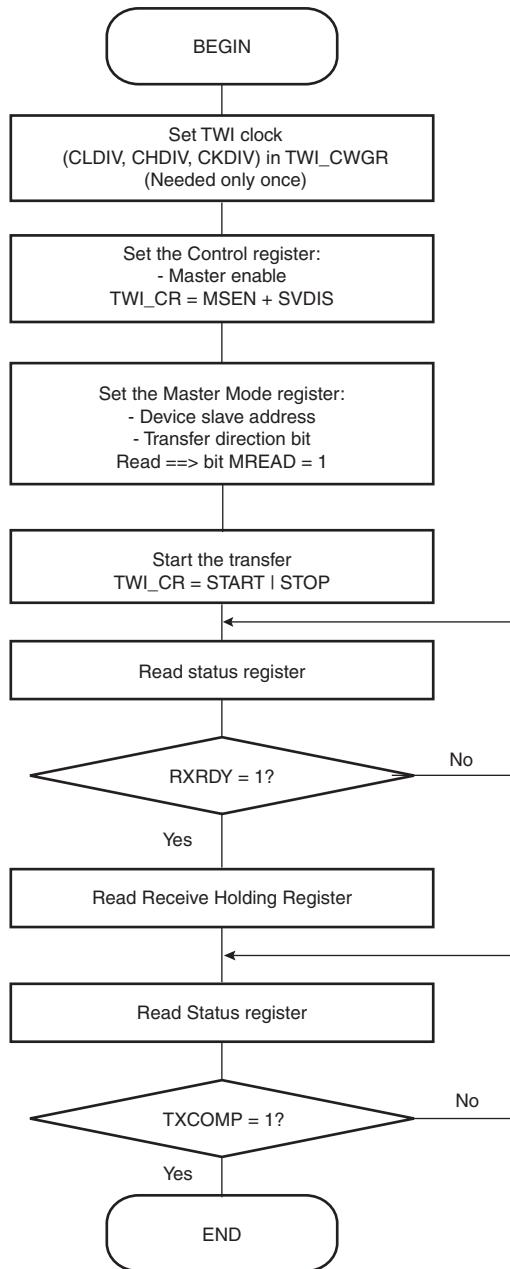


**Figure 28-16.** TWI Write Operation with Single Data Byte and Internal Address

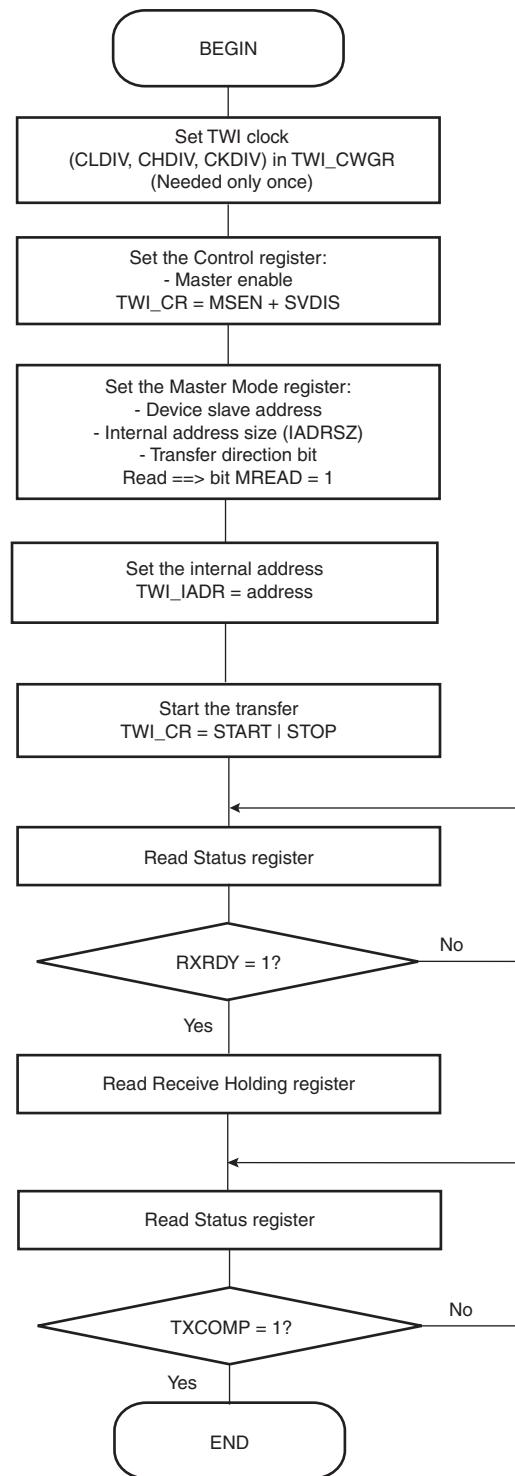


**Figure 28-17.** TWI Write Operation with Multiple Data Bytes with or without Internal Address

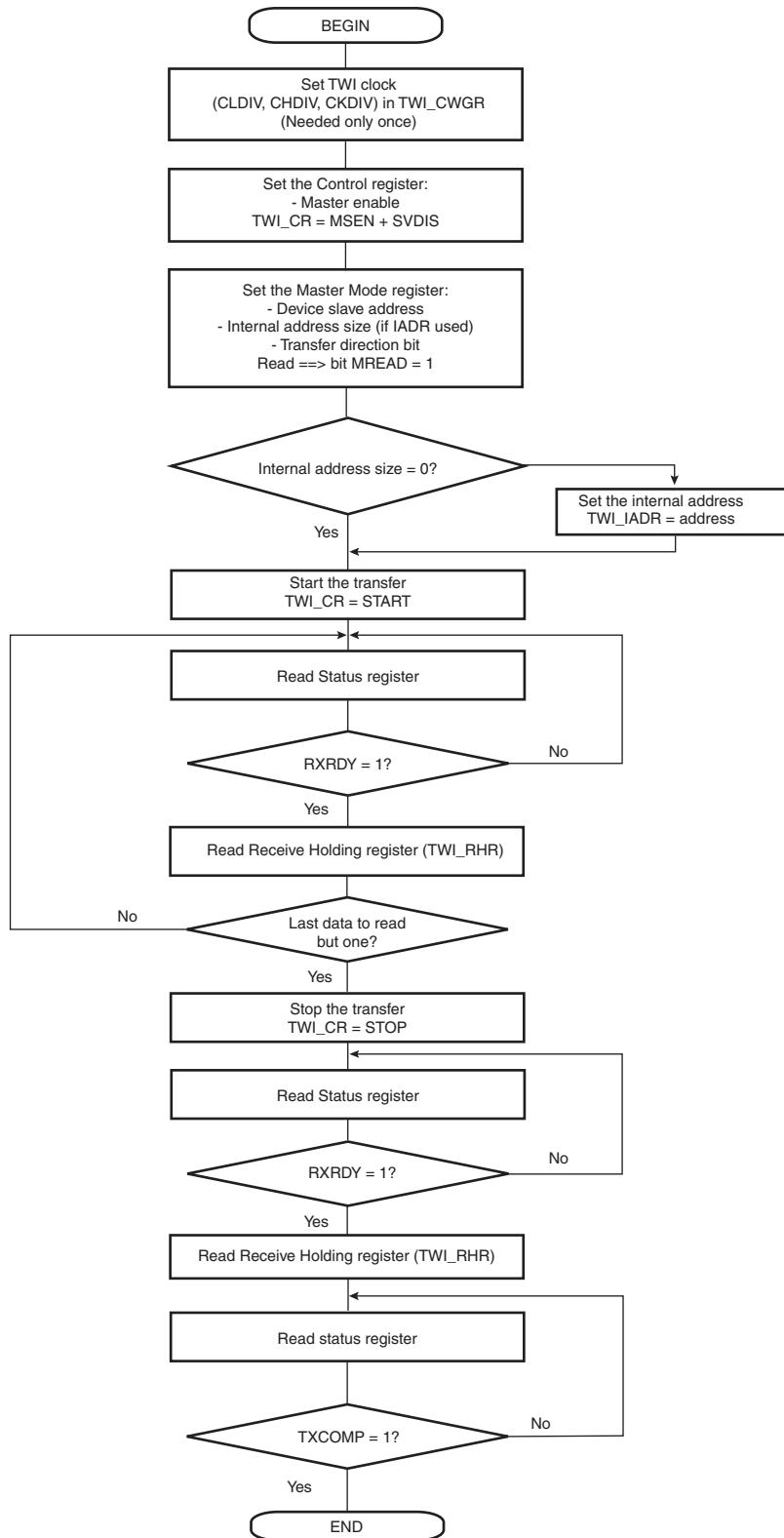


**Figure 28-18.** TWI Read Operation with Single Data Byte without Internal Address

**Figure 28-19.** TWI Read Operation with Single Data Byte and Internal Address



**Figure 28-20.** TWI Read Operation with Multiple Data Bytes with or without Internal Address



## 28.9 Multi-master Mode

### 28.9.1 Definition

More than one master may handle the bus at the same time without data corruption by using arbitration.

Arbitration starts as soon as two or more masters place information on the bus at the same time, and stops (arbitration is lost) for the master that intends to send a logical one while the other master sends a logical zero.

As soon as arbitration is lost by a master, it stops sending data and listens to the bus in order to detect a stop. When the stop is detected, the master who has lost arbitration may put its data on the bus by respecting arbitration.

Arbitration is illustrated in [Figure 28-22 on page 481](#).

### 28.9.2 Different Multi-master Modes

Two multi-master modes may be distinguished:

1. TWI is considered as a Master only and will never be addressed.
2. TWI may be either a Master or a Slave and may be addressed.

Note: In both Multi-master modes arbitration is supported.

#### 28.9.2.1 *TWI as Master Only*

In this mode, TWI is considered as a Master only (MSEN is always at one) and must be driven like a Master with the ARBLST (ARBitration Lost) flag in addition.

If arbitration is lost (ARBLST = 1), the programmer must reinitiate the data transfer.

If the user starts a transfer (ex.: DADR + START + W + Write in THR) and if the bus is busy, the TWI automatically waits for a STOP condition on the bus to initiate the transfer (see [Figure 28-21 on page 481](#)).

Note: The state of the bus (busy or free) is not indicated in the user interface.

#### 28.9.2.2 *TWI as Master or Slave*

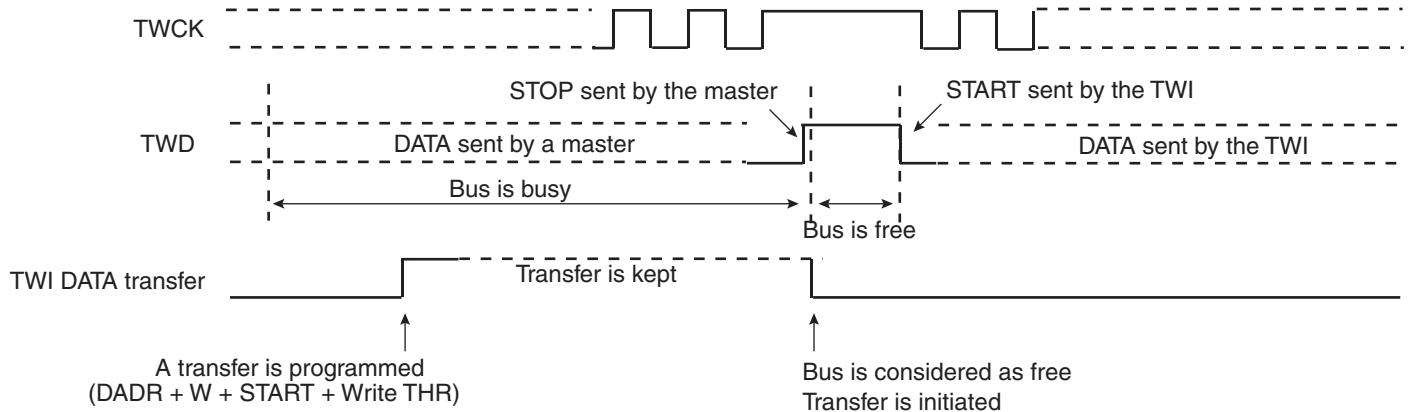
The automatic reversal from Master to Slave is not supported in case of a lost arbitration.

Then, in the case where TWI may be either a Master or a Slave, the programmer must manage the pseudo Multi-master mode described in the steps below.

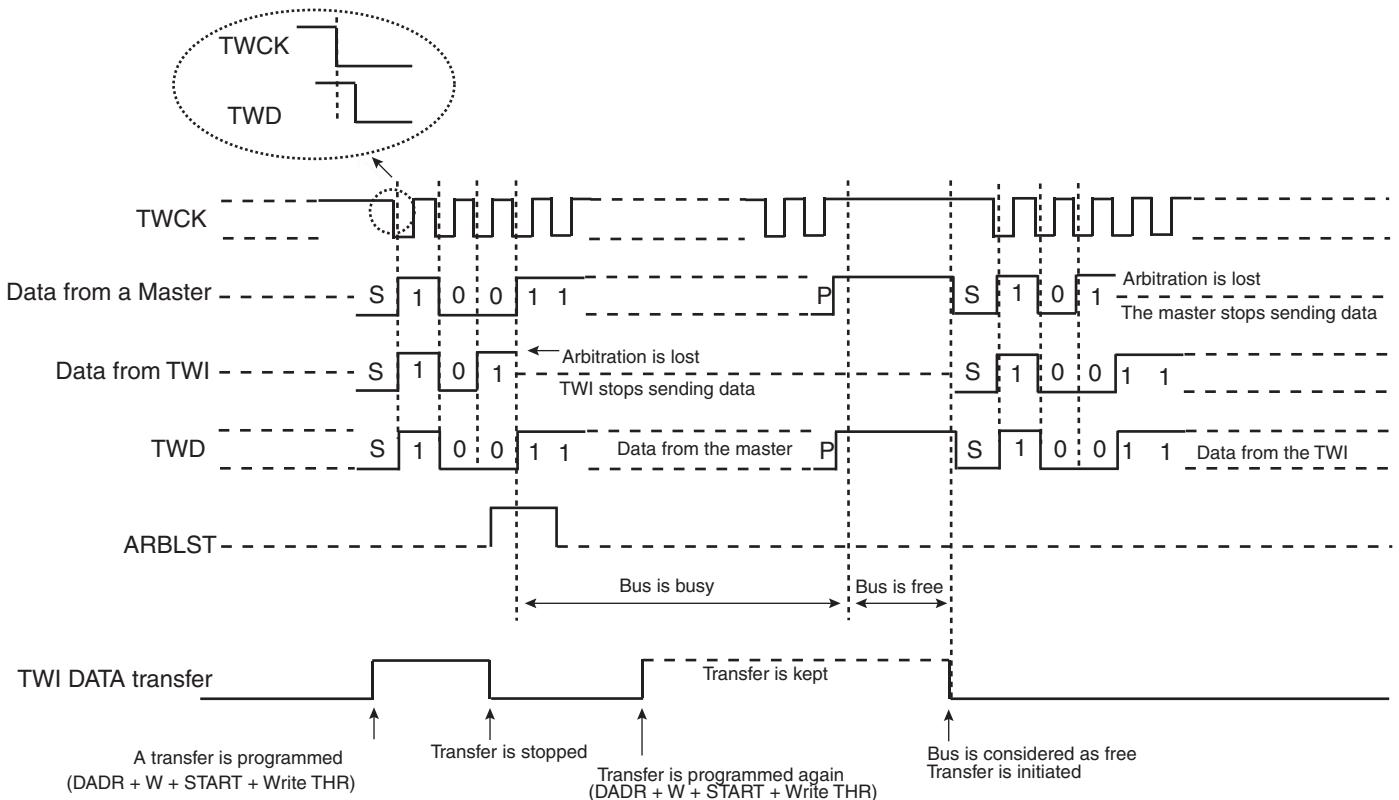
1. Program TWI in Slave mode (SADR + MSDIS + SVEN) and perform Slave Access (if TWI is addressed).
2. If TWI has to be set in Master mode, wait until TXCOMP flag is at 1.
3. Program Master mode (DADR + SVDIS + MSEN) and start the transfer (ex: START + Write in THR).
4. As soon as the Master mode is enabled, TWI scans the bus in order to detect if it is busy or free. When the bus is considered as free, TWI initiates the transfer.
5. As soon as the transfer is initiated and until a STOP condition is sent, the arbitration becomes relevant and the user must monitor the ARBLST flag.
6. If the arbitration is lost (ARBLST is set to 1), the user must program the TWI in Slave mode in the case where the Master that won the arbitration wanted to access the TWI.
7. If TWI has to be set in Slave mode, wait until TXCOMP flag is at 1 and then program the Slave mode.

Note: In the case where the arbitration is lost and TWI is addressed, TWI will not acknowledge even if it is programmed in Slave mode as soon as ARBLST is set to 1. Then, the Master must repeat SADR.

**Figure 28-21.** Programmer Sends Data While the Bus is Busy

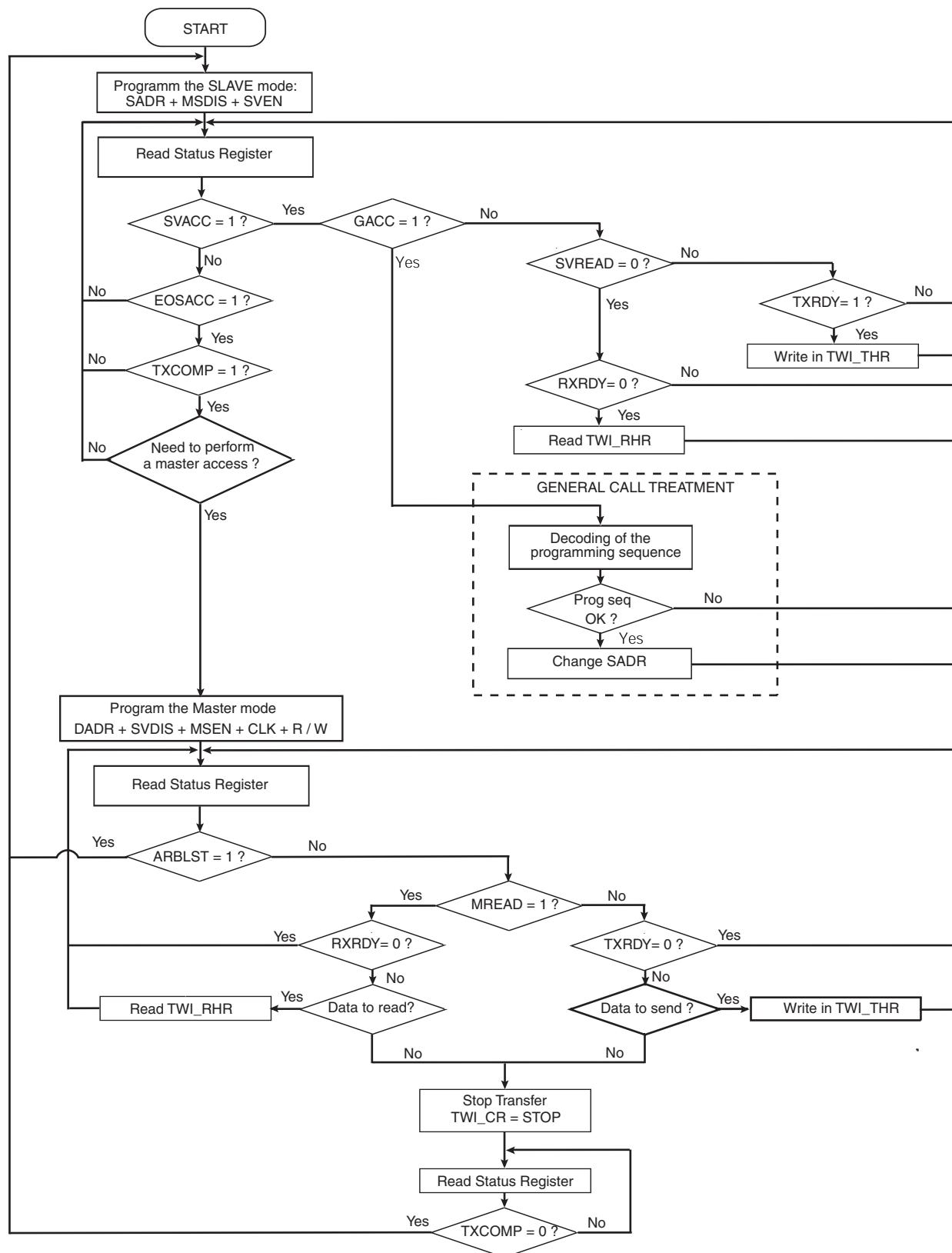


**Figure 28-22.** Arbitration Cases



The flowchart shown in [Figure 28-23 on page 482](#) gives an example of read and write operations in Multi-master mode.

**Figure 28-23.** Multi-master Flowchart



## 28.10 Slave Mode

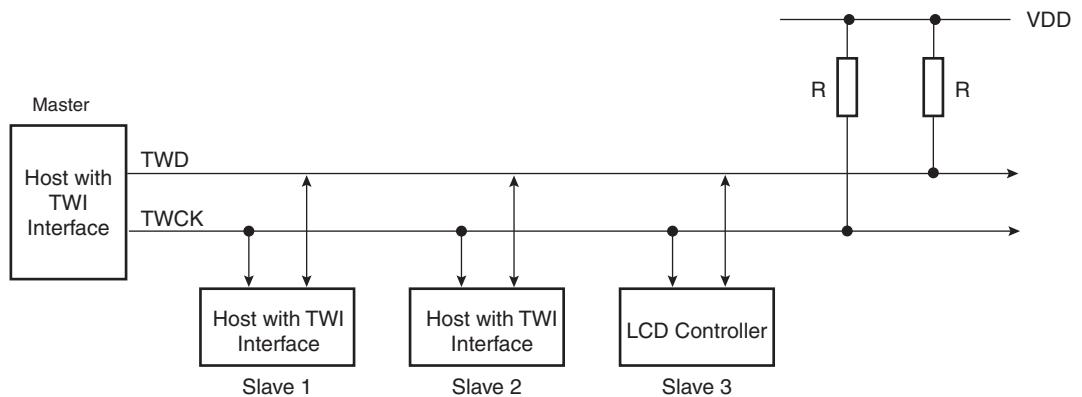
### 28.10.1 Definition

The Slave Mode is defined as a mode where the device receives the clock and the address from another device called the master.

In this mode, the device never initiates and never completes the transmission (START, REPEATED\_START and STOP conditions are always provided by the master).

### 28.10.2 Application Block Diagram

**Figure 28-24.** Slave Mode Typical Application Block Diagram



### 28.10.3 Programming Slave Mode

The following fields must be programmed before entering Slave mode:

1. SADR (TWI\_SMR): The slave device address is used in order to be accessed by master devices in read or write mode.
2. MSDIS (TWI\_CR): Disable the master mode.
3. SVEN (TWI\_CR): Enable the slave mode.

As the device receives the clock, values written in TWI\_CWGR are not taken into account.

### 28.10.4 Receiving Data

After a Start or Repeated Start condition is detected and if the address sent by the Master matches with the Slave address programmed in the SADR (Slave ADdress) field, SVACC (Slave ACCess) flag is set and SVREAD (Slave READ) indicates the direction of the transfer.

SVACC remains high until a STOP condition or a repeated START is detected. When such a condition is detected, EOSACC (End Of Slave ACCcess) flag is set.

#### 28.10.4.1 Read Sequence

In the case of a Read sequence (SVREAD is high), TWI transfers data written in the TWI\_THR (TWI Transmit Holding Register) until a STOP condition or a REPEATED\_START + an address different from SADR is detected. Note that at the end of the read sequence TXCOMP (Transmission Complete) flag is set and SVACC reset.

As soon as data is written in the TWI\_THR, TXRDY (Transmit Holding Register Ready) flag is reset, and it is set when the shift register is empty and the sent data acknowledged or not. If the data is not acknowledged, the NACK flag is set.

Note that a STOP or a repeated START always follows a NACK.

See [Figure 28-25 on page 485](#).

#### 28.10.4.2 Write Sequence

In the case of a Write sequence (SVREAD is low), the RXRDY (Receive Holding Register Ready) flag is set as soon as a character has been received in the TWI\_RHR (TWI Receive Holding Register). RXRDY is reset when reading the TWI\_RHR.

TWI continues receiving data until a STOP condition or a REPEATED\_START + an address different from SADR is detected. Note that at the end of the write sequence TXCOMP flag is set and SVACC reset.

See [Figure 28-26 on page 485](#).

#### 28.10.4.3 Clock Synchronization Sequence

In the case where TWI\_THR or TWI\_RHR is not written/read in time, TWI performs a clock synchronization.

Clock stretching information is given by the SCLWS (Clock Wait state) bit.

See [Figure 28-28 on page 487](#) and [Figure 28-29 on page 488](#).

#### 28.10.4.4 General Call

In the case where a GENERAL CALL is performed, GACC (General Call ACCess) flag is set.

After GACC is set, it is up to the programmer to interpret the meaning of the GENERAL CALL and to decode the new address programming sequence.

See [Figure 28-27 on page 486](#).

#### 28.10.4.5 PDC

As it is impossible to know the exact number of data to receive/send, the use of PDC is NOT recommended in SLAVE mode.

#### 28.10.4.6 DMAC

As it is impossible to know the exact number of data to receive/send, the use of DMAC is NOT recommended in SLAVE mode.

### 28.10.5 Data Transfer

#### 28.10.5.1 Read Operation

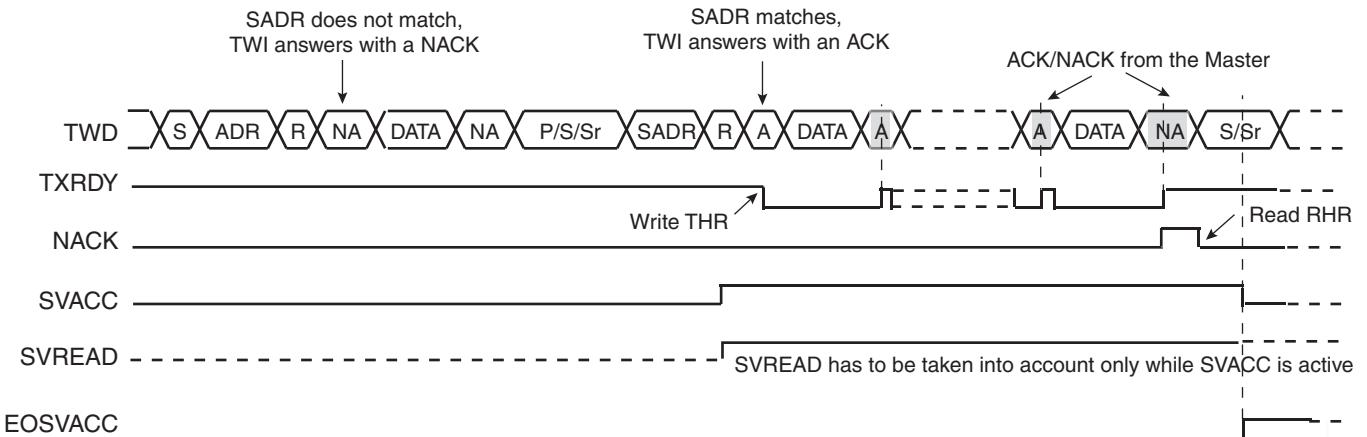
The read mode is defined as a data requirement from the master.

After a START or a REPEATED START condition is detected, the decoding of the address starts. If the slave address (SADR) is decoded, SVACC is set and SVREAD indicates the direction of the transfer.

Until a STOP or REPEATED START condition is detected, TWI continues sending data loaded in the TWI\_THR register.

If a STOP condition or a REPEATED START + an address different from SADR is detected, SVACC is reset.

[Figure 28-25 on page 485](#) describes the write operation.

**Figure 28-25.** Read Access Ordered by a MASTER

Notes: 1. When SVACC is low, the state of SVREAD becomes irrelevant.

2. TXRDY is reset when data has been transmitted from TWI\_THR to the shift register and set when this data has been acknowledged or non acknowledged.

#### 28.10.5.2 Write Operation

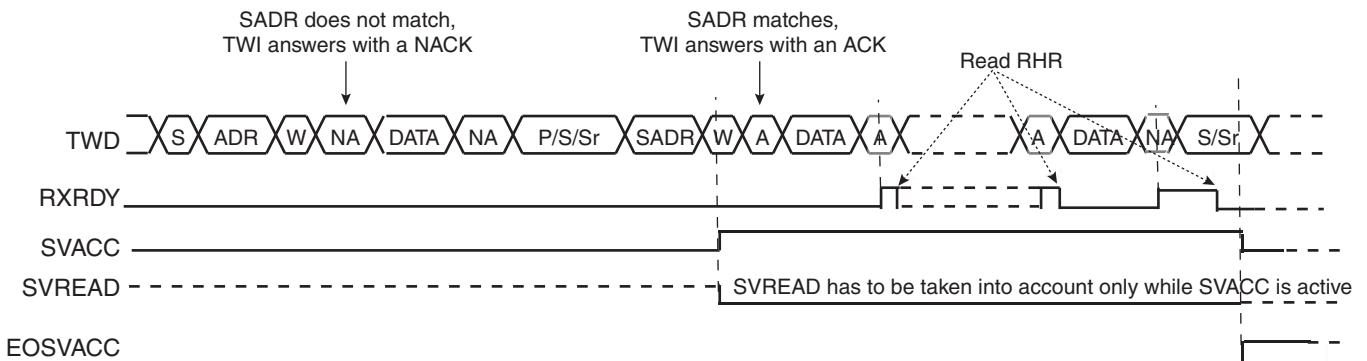
The write mode is defined as a data transmission from the master.

After a START or a REPEATED START, the decoding of the address starts. If the slave address is decoded, SVACC is set and SVREAD indicates the direction of the transfer (SVREAD is low in this case).

Until a STOP or REPEATED START condition is detected, TWI stores the received data in the TWI\_RHR register.

If a STOP condition or a REPEATED START + an address different from SADR is detected, SVACC is reset.

[Figure 28-26 on page 485](#) describes the Write operation.

**Figure 28-26.** Write Access Ordered by a Master

Notes: 1. When SVACC is low, the state of SVREAD becomes irrelevant.

2. RXRDY is set when data has been transmitted from the shift register to the TWI\_RHR and reset when this data is read.

#### 28.10.5.3 General Call

The general call is performed in order to change the address of the slave.

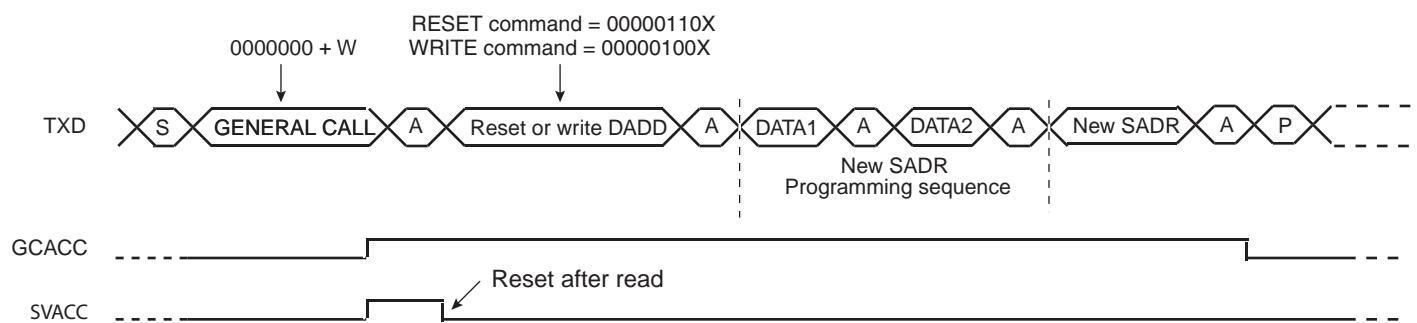
If a GENERAL CALL is detected, GACC is set.

After the detection of General Call, it is up to the programmer to decode the commands which come afterwards.

In case of a WRITE command, the programmer has to decode the programming sequence and program a new SADR if the programming sequence matches.

[Figure 28-27 on page 486](#) describes the General Call access.

**Figure 28-27.** Master Performs a General Call



#### 28.10.5.4 Clock Synchronization

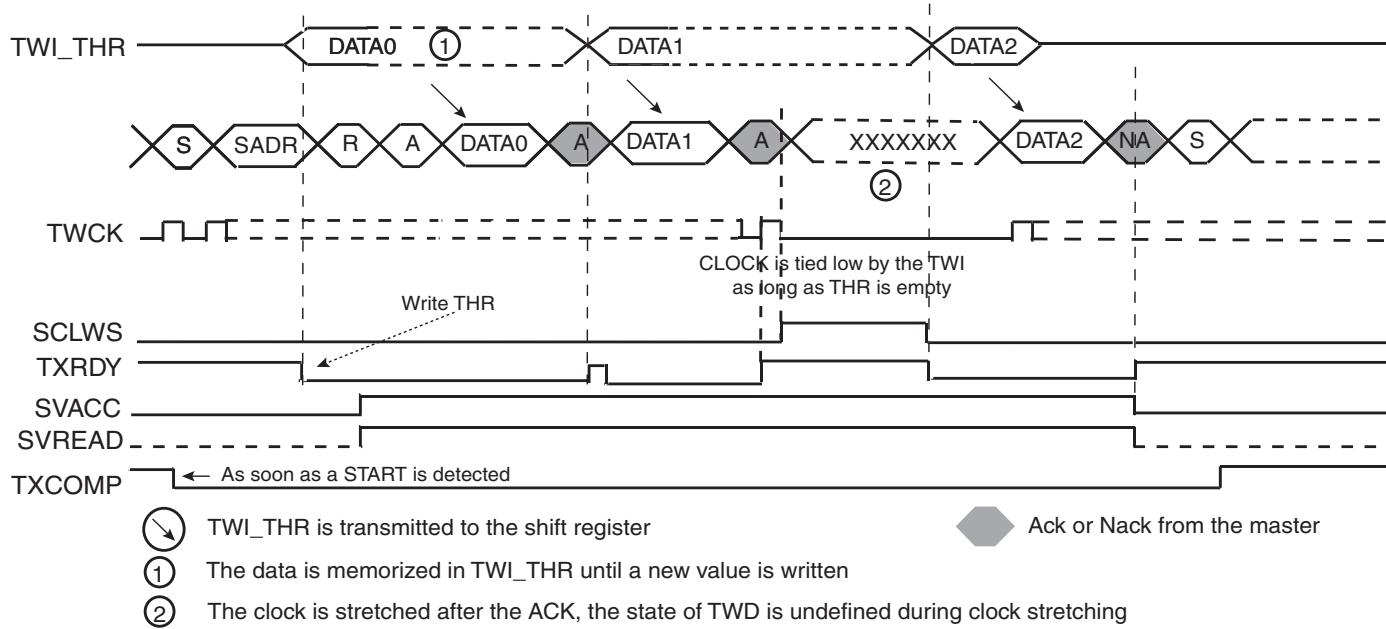
In both read and write modes, it may happen that TWI\_THR/TWI\_RHR buffer is not filled /emptied before the emission/reception of a new character. In this case, to avoid sending/receiving undesired data, a clock stretching mechanism is implemented.

##### Clock Synchronization in Read Mode

The clock is tied low if the shift register is empty and if a STOP or REPEATED START condition was not detected. It is tied low until the shift register is loaded.

[Figure 28-28 on page 487](#) describes the clock synchronization in Read mode.

**Figure 28-28.** Clock Synchronization in Read Mode



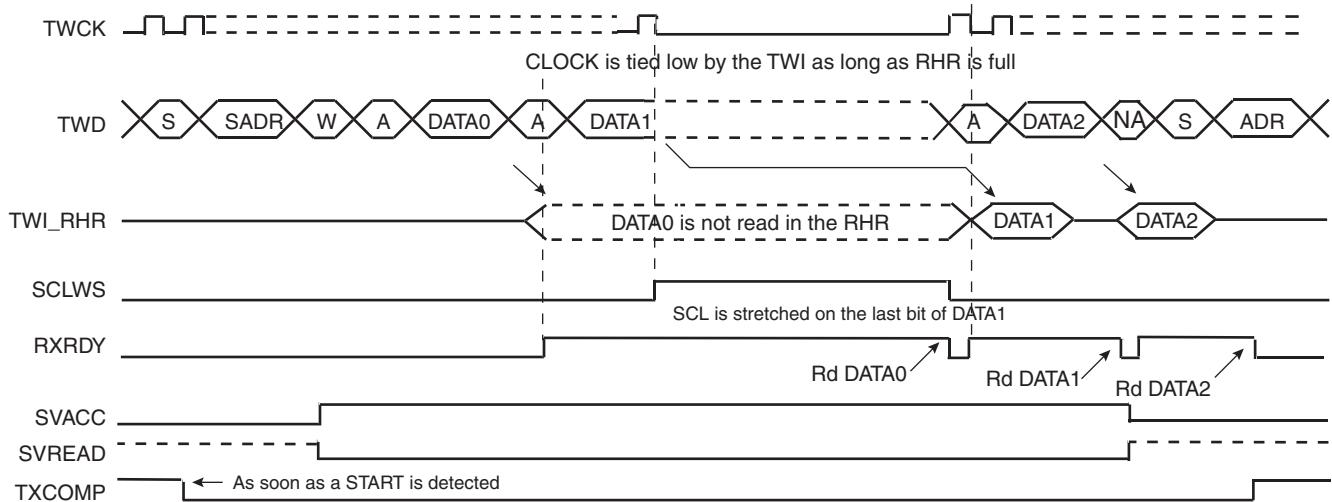
- Notes:
1. TXRDY is reset when data has been written in the TWI\_THR to the shift register and set when this data has been acknowledged or non acknowledged.
  2. At the end of the read sequence, TXCOMP is set after a STOP or after a REPEATED\_START + an address different from SADR.
  3. SCLWS is automatically set when the clock synchronization mechanism is started.

### Clock Synchronization in Write Mode

The clock is tied low if the shift register and the TWI\_RHR is full. If a STOP or REPEATED\_START condition was not detected, it is tied low until TWI\_RHR is read.

[Figure 28-29 on page 488](#) describes the clock synchronization in Read mode.

**Figure 28-29.** Clock Synchronization in Write Mode



- Notes:
1. At the end of the read sequence, TXCOMP is set after a STOP or after a REPEATED\_START + an address different from SADR.
  2. SCLWS is automatically set when the clock synchronization mechanism is started and automatically reset when the mechanism is finished.

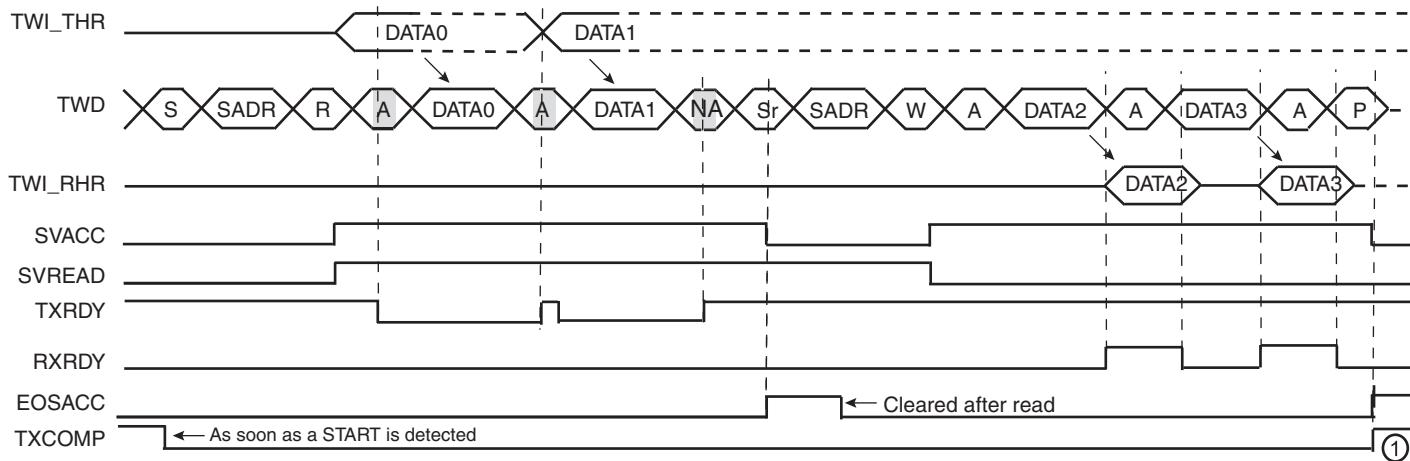
### 28.10.5.5 Reversal after a Repeated Start

#### Reversal of Read to Write

The master initiates the communication by a read command and finishes it by a write command.

[Figure 28-30 on page 489](#) describes the repeated start + reversal from Read to Write mode.

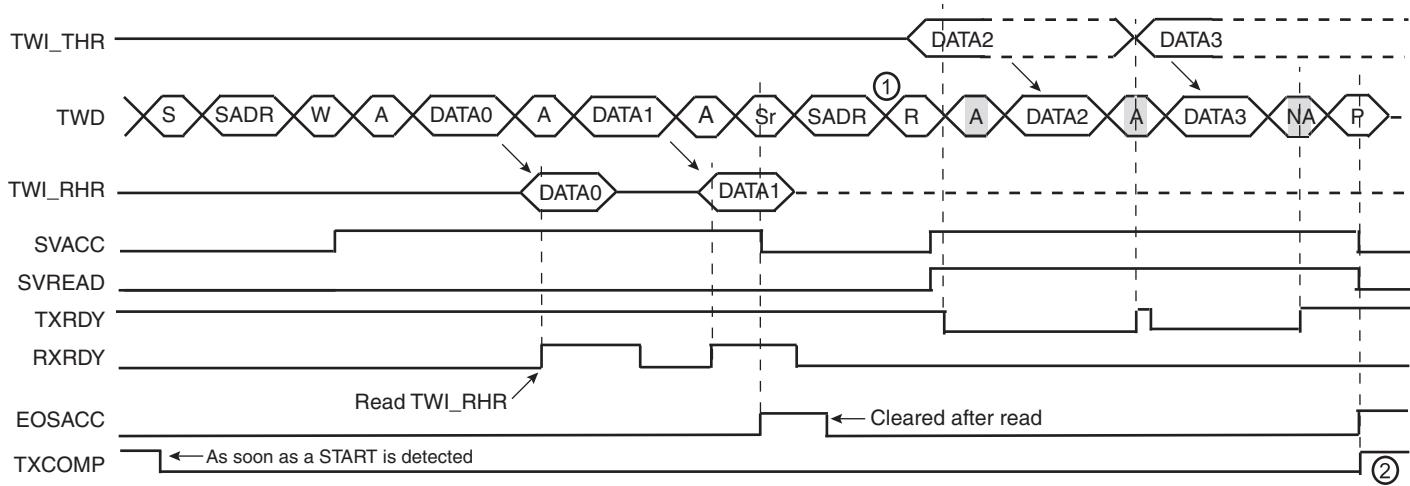
**Figure 28-30.** Repeated Start + Reversal from Read to Write Mode



#### Reversal of Write to Read

The master initiates the communication by a write command and finishes it by a read command. [Figure 28-31 on page 489](#) describes the repeated start + reversal from Write to Read mode.

**Figure 28-31.** Repeated Start + Reversal from Write to Read Mode

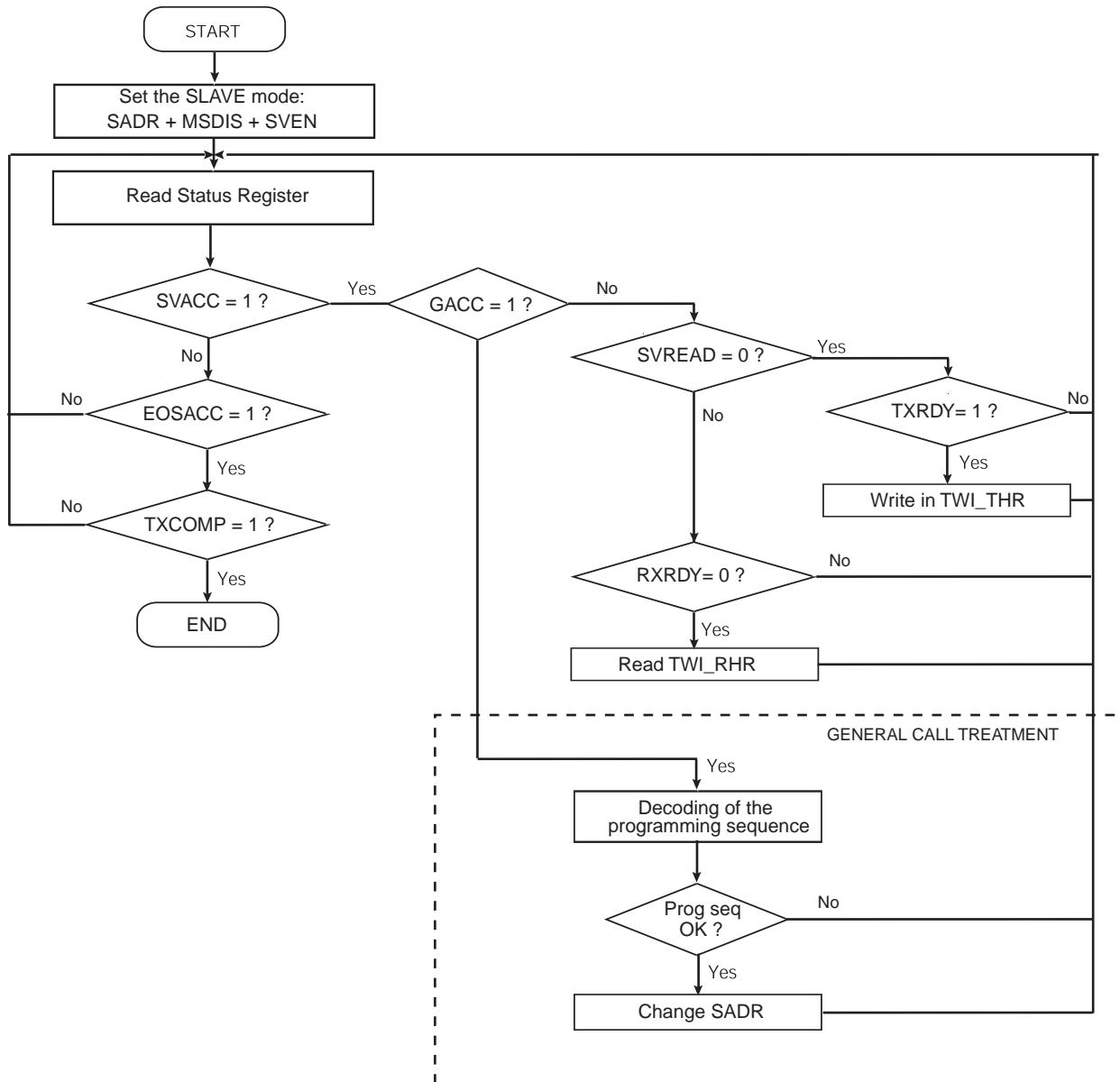


- Notes:
1. In this case, if TWI\_THR has not been written at the end of the read command, the clock is automatically stretched before the ACK.
  2. TXCOMP is only set at the end of the transmission because after the repeated start, SADR is detected again.

### 28.10.6 Read Write Flowcharts

The flowchart shown in Figure 28-32 on page 490 gives an example of read and write operations in Slave mode. A polling or interrupt method can be used to check the status bits. The interrupt method requires that the interrupt enable register (TWI\_IER) be configured first.

**Figure 28-32.** Read Write Flowchart in Slave Mode



## 28.11 Two-wire Interface (TWI) User Interface

**Table 28-6.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Control Register	TWI_CR	Write-only	N / A
0x04	Master Mode Register	TWI_MMR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x08	Slave Mode Register	TWI_SMR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0C	Internal Address Register	TWI_IADR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x10	Clock Waveform Generator Register	TWI_CWGR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x14 - 0x1C	Reserved	-	-	-
0x20	Status Register	TWI_SR	Read-only	0x0000F009
0x24	Interrupt Enable Register	TWI_IER	Write-only	N / A
0x28	Interrupt Disable Register	TWI_IDR	Write-only	N / A
0x2C	Interrupt Mask Register	TWI_IMR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x30	Receive Holding Register	TWI_RHR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x34	Transmit Holding Register	TWI_THR	Write-only	0x00000000
0xEC - 0xFC <sup>(1)</sup>	Reserved	-	-	-
0x100 - 0x124	Reserved for the PDC	-	-	-

Note: 1. All unlisted offset values are considered as "reserved".

### 28.11.1 TWI Control Register

Name: TWI\_CR

**Addresses:** 0x40018000 (0), 0x4001C000 (1)

Access: Write-only

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SWRST	QUICK	SVDIS	SVEN	MSDIS	MSEN	STOP	START

- **START: Send a START Condition**

0 = No effect.

1 = A frame beginning with a START bit is transmitted according to the features defined in the mode register.

This action is necessary when the TWI peripheral wants to read data from a slave. When configured in Master Mode with a write operation, a frame is sent as soon as the user writes a character in the Transmit Holding Register (TWI\_THR).

- **STOP: Send a STOP Condition**

0 = No effect.

1 = STOP Condition is sent just after completing the current byte transmission in master read mode.

- In single data byte master read, the START and STOP must both be set.
- In multiple data bytes master read, the STOP must be set after the last data received but one.
- In master read mode, if a NACK bit is received, the STOP is automatically performed.
- In master data write operation, a STOP condition will be sent after the transmission of the current data is finished.

- **MSEN: TWI Master Mode Enabled**

0 = No effect.

1 = If MSDIS = 0, the master mode is enabled.

Note: Switching from Slave to Master mode is only permitted when TXCOMP = 1.

- **MSDIS: TWI Master Mode Disabled**

0 = No effect.

1 = The master mode is disabled, all pending data is transmitted. The shifter and holding characters (if it contains data) are transmitted in case of write operation. In read operation, the character being transferred must be completely received before disabling.

- **SVEN: TWI Slave Mode Enabled**

0 = No effect.

1 = If SVDIS = 0, the slave mode is enabled.

Note: Switching from Master to Slave mode is only permitted when TXCOMP = 1.

- **SVDIS: TWI Slave Mode Disabled**

0 = No effect.

1 = The slave mode is disabled. The shifter and holding characters (if it contains data) are transmitted in case of read operation. In write operation, the character being transferred must be completely received before disabling.

- **QUICK: SMBUS Quick Command**

0 = No effect.

1 = If Master mode is enabled, a SMBUS Quick Command is sent.

- **SWRST: Software Reset**

0 = No effect.

1 = Equivalent to a system reset.



### 28.11.2 TWI Master Mode Register

**Name:** TWI\_MMR

**Addresses:** 0x40018004 (0), 0x4001C004 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—				DADR			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
—	—	—	MREAD	—	—	IADRSZ	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

- **IADRSZ: Internal Device Address Size**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	No internal device address
1	1_BYTE	One-byte internal device address
2	2_BYTE	Two-byte internal device address
3	3_BYTE	Three-byte internal device address

- **MREAD: Master Read Direction**

0 = Master write direction.

1 = Master read direction.

- **DADR: Device Address**

The device address is used to access slave devices in read or write mode. Those bits are only used in Master mode.

### 28.11.3 TWI Slave Mode Register

Name: TWI\_SMR

**Addresses:** 0x40018008 (0), 0x4001C008 (1)

Access: Read-write

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-				SADR			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-		
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

- **SADR: Slave Address**

The slave device address is used in Slave mode in order to be accessed by master devices in read or write mode.

SADR must be programmed before enabling the Slave mode or after a general call. Writes at other times have no effect.

#### 28.11.4 TWI Internal Address Register

Name: TWI\_IADR

**Addresses:** 0x4001800C (0), 0x4001C00C (1)

Access: Read-write

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
IADR							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
IADR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
IADR							

- **IADR: Internal Address**

0, 1, 2 or 3 bytes depending on IADRSZ.

### 28.11.5 TWI Clock Waveform Generator Register

Name: TWI\_CWGR

**Addresses:** 0x40018010 (0), 0x4001C010 (1)

Access: Read-write

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
						CKDIV	
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
				CHDIV			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				CLDIV			

TWI\_CWGR is only used in Master mode.

- **CLDIV: Clock Low Divider**

The SCL low period is defined as follows:

$$T_{low} = ((CLDIV \times 2^{CKDIV}) + 4) \times T_{MCK}$$

- **CHDIV: Clock High Divider**

The SCL high period is defined as follows:

$$T_{high} = ((CHDIV \times 2^{CKDIV}) + 4) \times T_{MCK}$$

- **CKDIV: Clock Divider**

The CKDIV is used to increase both SCL high and low periods.

### 28.11.6 TWI Status Register

Name: TWI\_SR

**Addresses:** 0x40018020 (0), 0x4001C020 (1)

Access: Read-only

**Reset:** 0x0000F009

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXBUFE	RXBUFF	ENDTX	ENDRX	EOSACC	SCLWS	ARBLST	NACK
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	OVRE	GACC	SVACC	SVREAD	TXRDY	RXRDY	TXCOMP

- **TXCOMP: Transmission Completed (automatically set / reset)**

TXCOMP used in Master mode:

0 = During the length of the current frame.

1 = When both holding and shifter registers are empty and STOP condition has been sent.

*TXCOMP behavior in Master mode* can be seen in [Figure 28-8 on page 470](#) and in [Figure 28-10 on page 471](#).

TXCOMP used in Slave mode:

0 = As soon as a Start is detected.

1 = After a Stop or a Repeated Start + an address different from SADR is detected.

*TXCOMP behavior in Slave mode* can be seen in [Figure 28-28 on page 487](#), [Figure 28-29 on page 488](#), [Figure 28-30 on page 489](#) and [Figure 28-31 on page 489](#).

- **RXRDY: Receive Holding Register Ready (automatically set / reset)**

0 = No character has been received since the last TWI\_RHR read operation.

1 = A byte has been received in the TWI\_RHR since the last read.

*RXRDY behavior in Master mode* can be seen in [Figure 28-10 on page 471](#).

*RXRDY behavior in Slave mode* can be seen in [Figure 28-26 on page 485](#), [Figure 28-29 on page 488](#), [Figure 28-30 on page 489](#) and [Figure 28-31 on page 489](#).

- **TXRDY: Transmit Holding Register Ready (automatically set / reset)**

TXRDY used in Master mode:

0 = The transmit holding register has not been transferred into shift register. Set to 0 when writing into TWI\_THR register.

1 = As soon as a data byte is transferred from TWI\_THR to internal shifter or if a NACK error is detected, TXRDY is set at the same time as TXCOMP and NACK. TXRDY is also set when MSEN is set (enable TWI).

*TXRDY behavior in Master mode* can be seen in [Figure 28-8 on page 470](#).

**TXRDY used in Slave mode:**

0 = As soon as data is written in the TWI\_THR, until this data has been transmitted and acknowledged (ACK or NACK).

1 = It indicates that the TWI\_THR is empty and that data has been transmitted and acknowledged.

If TXRDY is high and if a NACK has been detected, the transmission will be stopped. Thus when TRDY = NACK = 1, the programmer must not fill TWI\_THR to avoid losing it.

*TXRDY behavior in Slave mode* can be seen in [Figure 28-25 on page 485](#), [Figure 28-28 on page 487](#), [Figure 28-30 on page 489](#) and [Figure 28-31 on page 489](#).

- **SVREAD: Slave Read (automatically set / reset)**

This bit is only used in Slave mode. When SVACC is low (no Slave access has been detected) SVREAD is irrelevant.

0 = Indicates that a write access is performed by a Master.

1 = Indicates that a read access is performed by a Master.

*SVREAD behavior* can be seen in [Figure 28-25 on page 485](#), [Figure 28-26 on page 485](#), [Figure 28-30 on page 489](#) and [Figure 28-31 on page 489](#).

- **SVACC: Slave Access (automatically set / reset)**

This bit is only used in Slave mode.

0 = TWI is not addressed. SVACC is automatically cleared after a NACK or a STOP condition is detected.

1 = Indicates that the address decoding sequence has matched (A Master has sent SADR). SVACC remains high until a NACK or a STOP condition is detected.

*SVACC behavior* can be seen in [Figure 28-25 on page 485](#), [Figure 28-26 on page 485](#), [Figure 28-30 on page 489](#) and [Figure 28-31 on page 489](#).

- **GACC: General Call Access (clear on read)**

This bit is only used in Slave mode.

0 = No General Call has been detected.

1 = A General Call has been detected. After the detection of General Call, if need be, the programmer may acknowledge this access and decode the following bytes and respond according to the value of the bytes.

*GACC behavior* can be seen in [Figure 28-27 on page 486](#).

- **OVRE: Overrun Error (clear on read)**

This bit is only used in Master mode.

0 = TWI\_RHR has not been loaded while RXRDY was set

1 = TWI\_RHR has been loaded while RXRDY was set. Reset by read in TWI\_SR when TXCOMP is set.

- **NACK: Not Acknowledged (clear on read)**

**NACK used in Master mode:**

0 = Each data byte has been correctly received by the far-end side TWI slave component.

1 = A data byte has not been acknowledged by the slave component. Set at the same time as TXCOMP.

**NACK used in Slave Read mode:**

0 = Each data byte has been correctly received by the Master.



1 = In read mode, a data byte has not been acknowledged by the Master. When NACK is set the programmer must not fill TWI\_THR even if TXRDY is set, because it means that the Master will stop the data transfer or re initiate it.

Note that in Slave Write mode all data are acknowledged by the TWI.

- **ARBLST: Arbitration Lost (clear on read)**

This bit is only used in Master mode.

0: Arbitration won.

1: Arbitration lost. Another master of the TWI bus has won the multi-master arbitration. TXCOMP is set at the same time.

- **SCLWS: Clock Wait State (automatically set / reset)**

This bit is only used in Slave mode.

0 = The clock is not stretched.

1 = The clock is stretched. TWI\_THR / TWI\_RHR buffer is not filled / emptied before the emission / reception of a new character.

*SCLWS* behavior can be seen in [Figure 28-28 on page 487](#) and [Figure 28-29 on page 488](#).

- **EOSACC: End Of Slave Access (clear on read)**

This bit is only used in Slave mode.

0 = A slave access is being performing.

1 = The Slave Access is finished. End Of Slave Access is automatically set as soon as SVACC is reset.

*EOSACC* behavior can be seen in [Figure 28-30 on page 489](#) and [Figure 28-31 on page 489](#)

- **ENDRX: End of RX buffer**

This bit is only used in Master mode.

0 = The Receive Counter Register has not reached 0 since the last write in TWI\_RCR or TWI\_RNCR.

1 = The Receive Counter Register has reached 0 since the last write in TWI\_RCR or TWI\_RNCR.

- **ENDTX: End of TX buffer**

This bit is only used in Master mode.

0 = The Transmit Counter Register has not reached 0 since the last write in TWI\_TCR or TWI\_TNCR.

1 = The Transmit Counter Register has reached 0 since the last write in TWI\_TCR or TWI\_TNCR.

- **RXBUFF: RX Buffer Full**

This bit is only used in Master mode.

0 = TWI\_RCR or TWI\_RNCR have a value other than 0.

1 = Both TWI\_RCR and TWI\_RNCR have a value of 0.

- **TXBUFE: TX Buffer Empty**

This bit is only used in Master mode.

0 = TWI\_TCR or TWI\_TNCR have a value other than 0.

1 = Both TWI\_TCR and TWI\_TNCR have a value of 0.

### 28.11.7 TWI Interrupt Enable Register

Name: TWI\_IER

**Addresses:** 0x40018024 (0), 0x4001C024 (1)

Access: Write-only

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXBUFE	RXBUFF	ENDTX	ENDRX	EOSACC	SCL_WS	ARBLST	NACK
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	OVRE	GACC	SVACC	-	TXRDY	RXRDY	TXCOMP

- **TXCOMP:** Transmission Completed Interrupt Enable
- **RXRDY:** Receive Holding Register Ready Interrupt Enable
- **TXRDY:** Transmit Holding Register Ready Interrupt Enable
- **SVACC:** Slave Access Interrupt Enable
- **GACC:** General Call Access Interrupt Enable
- **OVRE:** Overrun Error Interrupt Enable
- **NACK:** Not Acknowledge Interrupt Enable
- **ARBLST:** Arbitration Lost Interrupt Enable
- **SCL\_WS:** Clock Wait State Interrupt Enable
- **EOSACC:** End Of Slave Access Interrupt Enable
- **ENDRX:** End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Enable
- **ENDTX:** End of Transmit Buffer Interrupt Enable
- **RXBUFF:** Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Enable
- **TXBUFE:** Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the corresponding interrupt.

### 28.11.8 TWI Interrupt Disable Register

Name: TWI\_IDR

**Addresses:** 0x40018028 (0), 0x4001C028 (1)

Access: Write-only

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXBUFE	RXBUFF	ENDTX	ENDRX	EOSACC	SCL_WS	ARBLST	NACK
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	OVRE	GACC	SVACC	-	TXRDY	RXRDY	TXCOMP

- **TXCOMP:** Transmission Completed Interrupt Disable
  - **RXRDY:** Receive Holding Register Ready Interrupt Disable
  - **TXRDY:** Transmit Holding Register Ready Interrupt Disable
  - **SVACC:** Slave Access Interrupt Disable
  - **GACC:** General Call Access Interrupt Disable
  - **OVRE:** Overrun Error Interrupt Disable
  - **NACK:** Not Acknowledge Interrupt Disable
  - **ARBLST:** Arbitration Lost Interrupt Disable
  - **SCL\_WS:** Clock Wait State Interrupt Disable
  - **EOSACC:** End Of Slave Access Interrupt Disable
  - **ENDRX:** End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Disable
  - **ENDTX:** End of Transmit Buffer Interrupt Disable
  - **RXBUFF:** Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Disable
  - **TXBUFE:** Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Disable
- 0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the corresponding interrupt.

### 28.11.9 TWI Interrupt Mask Register

Name: TWI\_IMR

**Addresses:** 0x4001802C (0), 0x4001C02C (1)

Access: Read-only

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXBUFE	RXBUFF	ENDTX	ENDRX	EOSACC	SCL_WS	ARBLST	NACK
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	OVRE	GACC	SVACC	-	TXRDY	RXRDY	TXCOMP

- **TXCOMP:** Transmission Completed Interrupt Mask
- **RXRDY:** Receive Holding Register Ready Interrupt Mask
- **TXRDY:** Transmit Holding Register Ready Interrupt Mask
- **SVACC:** Slave Access Interrupt Mask
- **GACC:** General Call Access Interrupt Mask
- **OVRE:** Overrun Error Interrupt Mask
- **NACK:** Not Acknowledge Interrupt Mask
- **ARBLST:** Arbitration Lost Interrupt Mask
- **SCL\_WS:** Clock Wait State Interrupt Mask
- **EOSACC:** End Of Slave Access Interrupt Mask
- **ENDRX:** End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Mask
- **ENDTX:** End of Transmit Buffer Interrupt Mask
- **RXBUFF:** Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Mask
- **TXBUFE:** Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Mask

0 = The corresponding interrupt is disabled.

1 = The corresponding interrupt is enabled.

### 28.11.10 TWI Receive Holding Register

Name: TWI\_RHR

**Addresses:** 0x40018030 (0), 0x4001C030 (1)

Access: Read-only

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RXDATA							

- RXDATA: Master or Slave Receive Holding Data

### 28.11.11 TWI Transmit Holding Register

Name: TWI\_THR

**Addresses:** 0x40018034 (0), 0x4001C034 (1)

Access: Read-write

**Reset:** 0x00000000

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXDATA							

- TXDATA: Master or Slave Transmit Holding Data

## 29. Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transceiver (UART)

### 29.1 Description

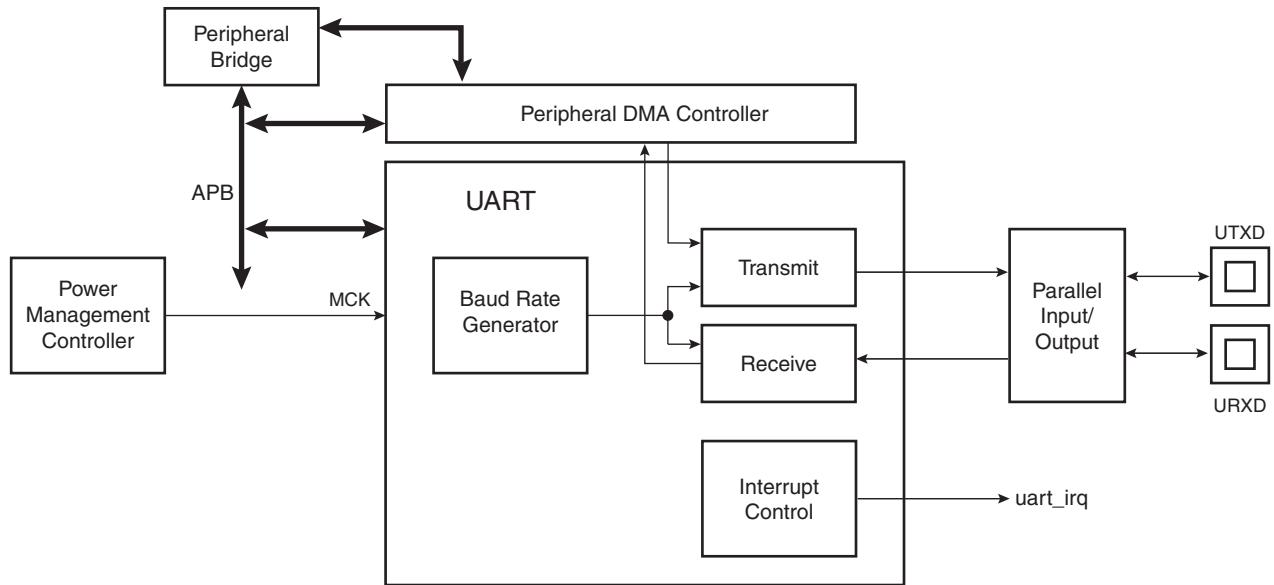
The Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter features a two-pin UART that can be used for communication and trace purposes and offers an ideal medium for in-situ programming solutions. Moreover, the association with two peripheral DMA controller (PDC) channels permits packet handling for these tasks with processor time reduced to a minimum.

### 29.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Two-pin UART
  - Implemented Features are USART Compatible
  - Independent Receiver and Transmitter with a Common Programmable Baud Rate Generator
  - Even, Odd, Mark or Space Parity Generation
  - Parity, Framing and Overrun Error Detection
  - Automatic Echo, Local Loopback and Remote Loopback Channel Modes
  - Interrupt Generation
  - Support for Two PDC Channels with Connection to Receiver and Transmitter

## 29.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 29-1.** UART Functional Block Diagram



**Table 29-1.** UART Pin Description

Pin Name	Description	Type
URXD	UART Receive Data	Input
UTXD	UART Transmit Data	Output

## 29.4 Product Dependencies

### 29.4.1 I/O Lines

The UART pins are multiplexed with PIO lines. The programmer must first configure the corresponding PIO Controller to enable I/O line operations of the UART.

**Table 29-2.** I/O Lines

Instance	Signal	I/O Line	Peripheral
UART0	URXD0	PA9	A
UART0	UTXD0	PA10	A
UART1	URXD1	PB2	A
UART1	UTXD1	PB3	A

### 29.4.2 Power Management

The UART clock is controllable through the Power Management Controller. In this case, the programmer must first configure the PMC to enable the UART clock. Usually, the peripheral identifier used for this purpose is 1.

### 29.4.3 Interrupt Source

The UART interrupt line is connected to one of the interrupt sources of the Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC). Interrupt handling requires programming of the NVIC before configuring the UART.

## 29.5 UART Operations

The UART operates in asynchronous mode only and supports only 8-bit character handling (with parity). It has no clock pin.

The UART is made up of a receiver and a transmitter that operate independently, and a common baud rate generator. Receiver timeout and transmitter time guard are not implemented. However, all the implemented features are compatible with those of a standard USART.

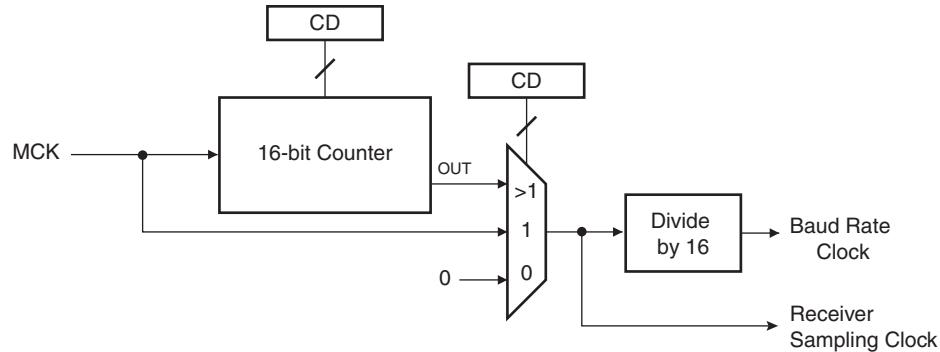
### 29.5.1 Baud Rate Generator

The baud rate generator provides the bit period clock named baud rate clock to both the receiver and the transmitter.

The baud rate clock is the master clock divided by 16 times the value (CD) written in UART\_BRGR (Baud Rate Generator Register). If UART\_BRGR is set to 0, the baud rate clock is disabled and the UART remains inactive. The maximum allowable baud rate is Master Clock divided by 16. The minimum allowable baud rate is Master Clock divided by (16 x 65536).

$$\text{Baud Rate} = \frac{\text{MCK}}{16 \times \text{CD}}$$

**Figure 29-2.** Baud Rate Generator



### 29.5.2 Receiver

#### 29.5.2.1 Receiver Reset, Enable and Disable

After device reset, the UART receiver is disabled and must be enabled before being used. The receiver can be enabled by writing the control register UART\_CR with the bit RXEN at 1. At this command, the receiver starts looking for a start bit.

The programmer can disable the receiver by writing UART\_CR with the bit RXDIS at 1. If the receiver is waiting for a start bit, it is immediately stopped. However, if the receiver has already detected a start bit and is receiving the data, it waits for the stop bit before actually stopping its operation.

The programmer can also put the receiver in its reset state by writing UART\_CR with the bit RSTRX at 1. In doing so, the receiver immediately stops its current operations and is disabled, whatever its current state. If RSTRX is applied when data is being processed, this data is lost.

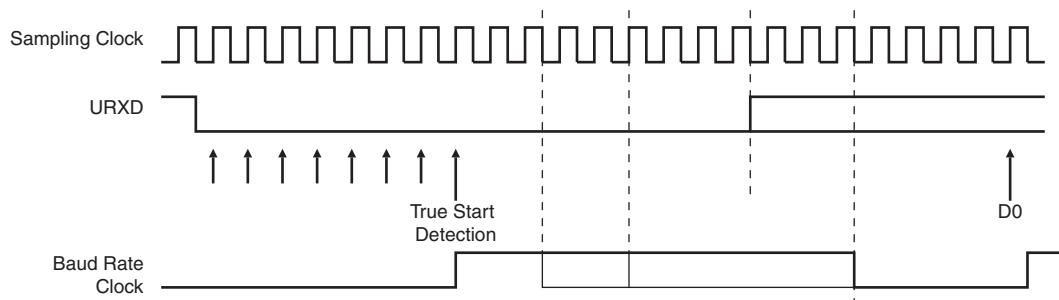
#### 29.5.2.2 Start Detection and Data Sampling

The UART only supports asynchronous operations, and this affects only its receiver. The UART receiver detects the start of a received character by sampling the URXD signal until it detects a valid start bit. A low level (space) on URXD is interpreted as a valid start bit if it is detected for more than 7 cycles of the sampling clock, which is 16 times the baud rate. Hence, a space that is longer than 7/16 of the bit period is detected as a valid start bit. A space which is 7/16 of a bit period or shorter is ignored and the receiver continues to wait for a valid start bit.

When a valid start bit has been detected, the receiver samples the URXD at the theoretical mid-point of each bit. It is assumed that each bit lasts 16 cycles of the sampling clock (1-bit period) so the bit sampling point is eight cycles (0.5-bit period) after the start of the bit. The first sampling point is therefore 24 cycles (1.5-bit periods) after the falling edge of the start bit was detected.

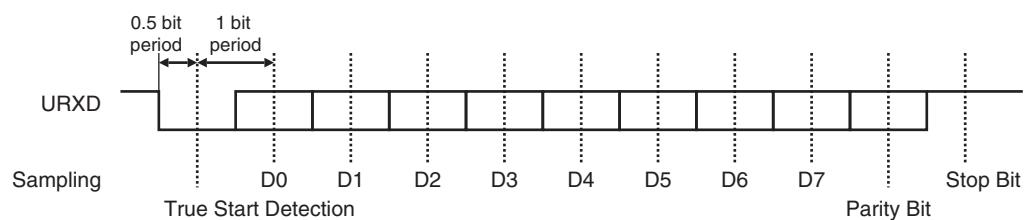
Each subsequent bit is sampled 16 cycles (1-bit period) after the previous one.

**Figure 29-3.** Start Bit Detection



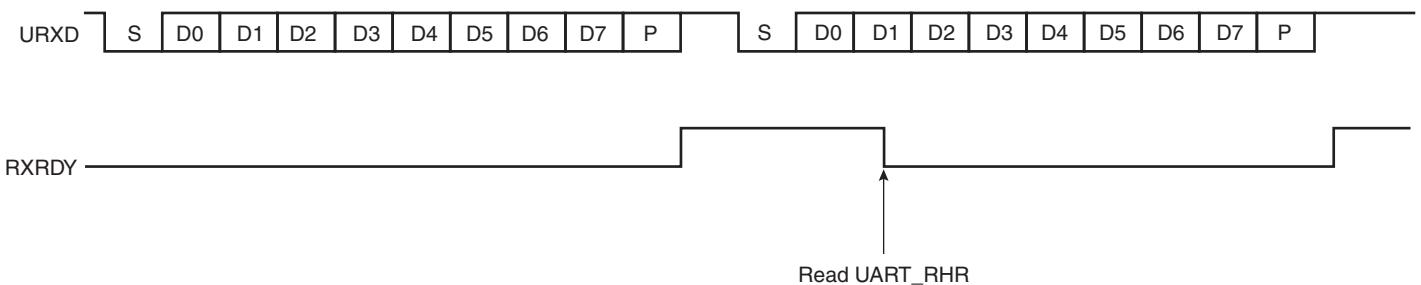
**Figure 29-4.** Character Reception

Example: 8-bit, parity enabled 1 stop

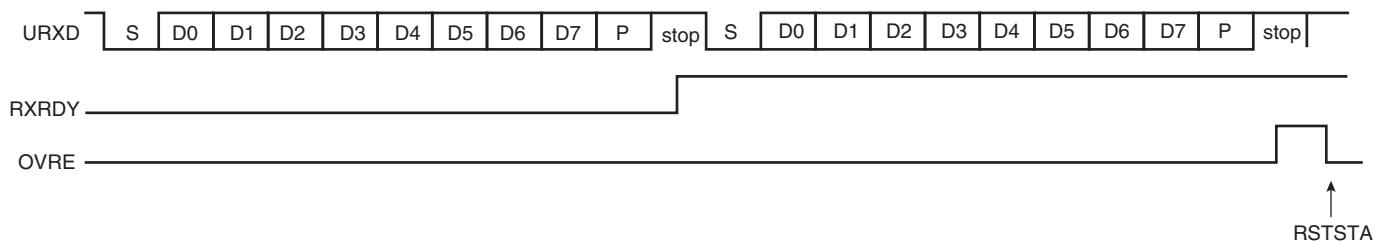


#### 29.5.2.3 Receiver Ready

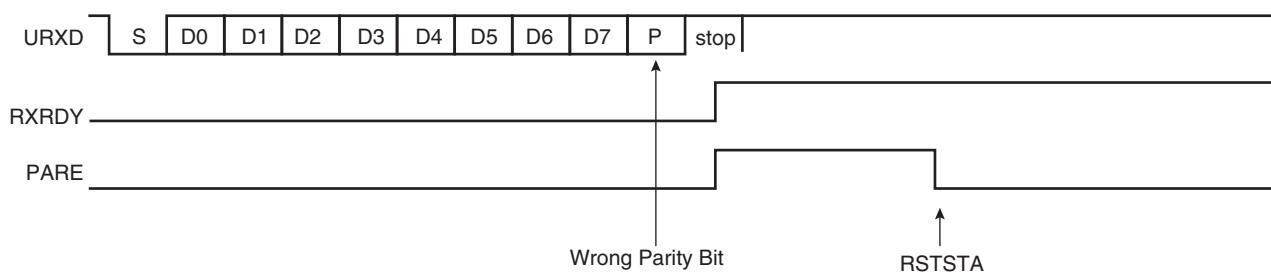
When a complete character is received, it is transferred to the UART\_RHR and the RXRDY status bit in UART\_SR (Status Register) is set. The bit RXRDY is automatically cleared when the receive holding register UART\_RHR is read.

**Figure 29-5.** Receiver Ready**29.5.2.4 Receiver Overrun**

If UART\_RHR has not been read by the software (or the Peripheral Data Controller or DMA Controller) since the last transfer, the RXRDY bit is still set and a new character is received, the OVRE status bit in UART\_SR is set. OVRE is cleared when the software writes the control register UART\_CR with the bit RSTSTA (Reset Status) at 1.

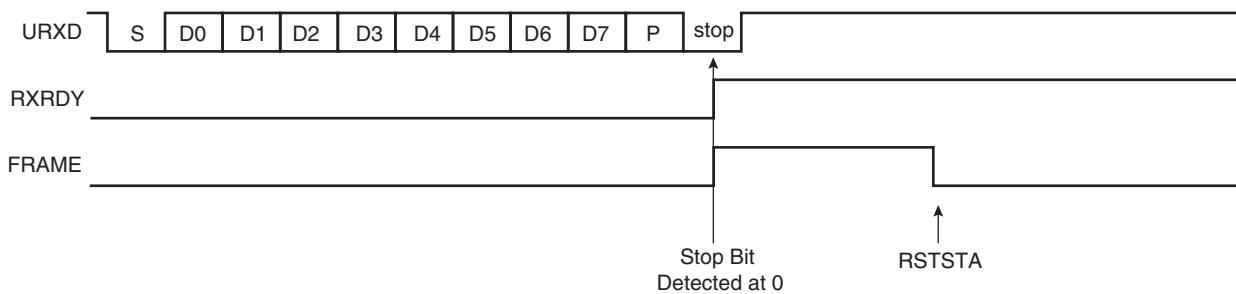
**Figure 29-6.** Receiver Overrun**29.5.2.5 Parity Error**

Each time a character is received, the receiver calculates the parity of the received data bits, in accordance with the field PAR in UART\_MR. It then compares the result with the received parity bit. If different, the parity error bit PARE in UART\_SR is set at the same time the RXRDY is set. The parity bit is cleared when the control register UART\_CR is written with the bit RSTSTA (Reset Status) at 1. If a new character is received before the reset status command is written, the PARE bit remains at 1.

**Figure 29-7.** Parity Error**29.5.2.6 Receiver Framing Error**

When a start bit is detected, it generates a character reception when all the data bits have been sampled. The stop bit is also sampled and when it is detected at 0, the FRAME (Framing Error) bit in UART\_SR is set at the same time the RXRDY bit is set. The FRAME bit remains high until the control register UART\_CR is written with the bit RSTSTA at 1.

**Figure 29-8.** Receiver Framing Error



### 29.5.3 Transmitter

#### 29.5.3.1 Transmitter Reset, Enable and Disable

After device reset, the UART transmitter is disabled and it must be enabled before being used. The transmitter is enabled by writing the control register `UART_CR` with the bit `TXEN` at 1. From this command, the transmitter waits for a character to be written in the Transmit Holding Register (`UART_THR`) before actually starting the transmission.

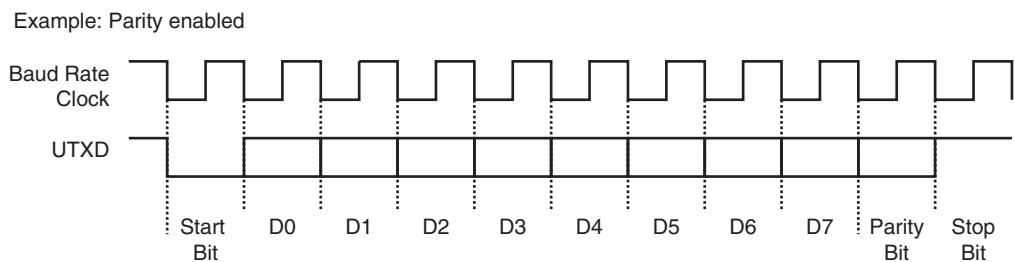
The programmer can disable the transmitter by writing `UART_CR` with the bit `TXDIS` at 1. If the transmitter is not operating, it is immediately stopped. However, if a character is being processed into the Shift Register and/or a character has been written in the Transmit Holding Register, the characters are completed before the transmitter is actually stopped.

The programmer can also put the transmitter in its reset state by writing the `UART_CR` with the bit `RSTTX` at 1. This immediately stops the transmitter, whether or not it is processing characters.

#### 29.5.3.2 Transmit Format

The UART transmitter drives the pin `UTXD` at the baud rate clock speed. The line is driven depending on the format defined in the Mode Register and the data stored in the Shift Register. One start bit at level 0, then the 8 data bits, from the lowest to the highest bit, one optional parity bit and one stop bit at 1 are consecutively shifted out as shown in the following figure. The field `PARE` in the mode register `UART_MR` defines whether or not a parity bit is shifted out. When a parity bit is enabled, it can be selected between an odd parity, an even parity, or a fixed space or mark bit.

**Figure 29-9.** Character Transmission



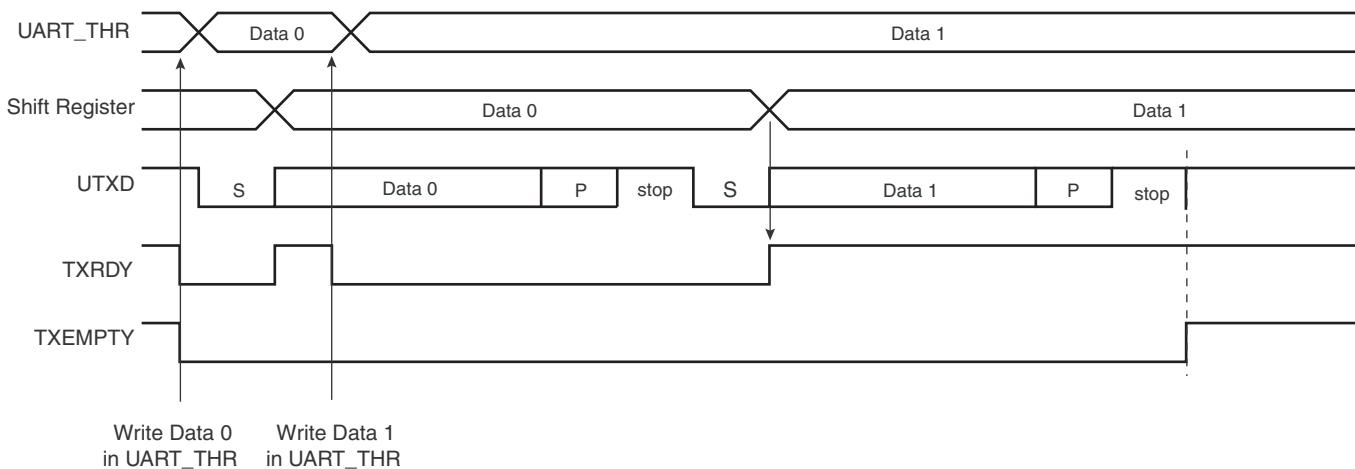
#### 29.5.3.3 Transmitter Control

When the transmitter is enabled, the bit `TXRDY` (Transmitter Ready) is set in the status register `UART_SR`. The transmission starts when the programmer writes in the Transmit Holding Register (`UART_THR`), and after the written character is transferred from `UART_THR` to the Shift

Register. The TXRDY bit remains high until a second character is written in UART\_THR. As soon as the first character is completed, the last character written in UART\_THR is transferred into the shift register and TXRDY rises again, showing that the holding register is empty.

When both the Shift Register and UART\_THR are empty, i.e., all the characters written in UART\_THR have been processed, the TXEMPTY bit rises after the last stop bit has been completed.

**Figure 29-10.** Transmitter Control



#### 29.5.4 Peripheral DMA Controller

Both the receiver and the transmitter of the UART are connected to a Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC) channel.

The peripheral data controller channels are programmed via registers that are mapped within the UART user interface from the offset 0x100. The status bits are reported in the UART status register (UART\_SR) and can generate an interrupt.

The RXRDY bit triggers the PDC channel data transfer of the receiver. This results in a read of the data in UART\_RHR. The TXRDY bit triggers the PDC channel data transfer of the transmitter. This results in a write of data in UART\_THR.

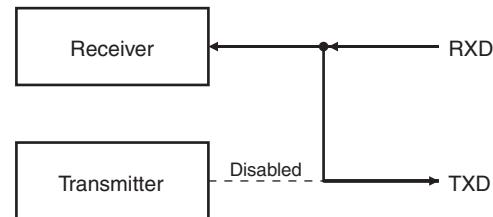
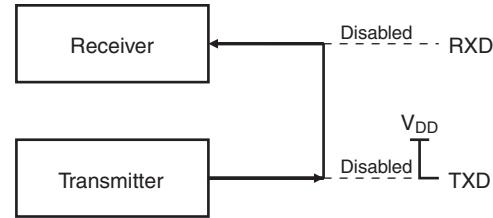
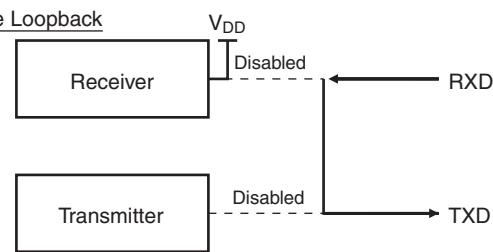
#### 29.5.5 Test Modes

The UART supports three test modes. These modes of operation are programmed by using the field CHMODE (Channel Mode) in the mode register (UART\_MR).

The Automatic Echo mode allows bit-by-bit retransmission. When a bit is received on the URXD line, it is sent to the UTXD line. The transmitter operates normally, but has no effect on the UTXD line.

The Local Loopback mode allows the transmitted characters to be received. UTXD and URXD pins are not used and the output of the transmitter is internally connected to the input of the receiver. The URXD pin level has no effect and the UTXD line is held high, as in idle state.

The Remote Loopback mode directly connects the URXD pin to the UTXD line. The transmitter and the receiver are disabled and have no effect. This mode allows a bit-by-bit retransmission.

**Figure 29-11.** Test ModesAutomatic EchoLocal LoopbackRemote Loopback

## 29.6 Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART) User Interface

**Table 29-3.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0000	Control Register	UART_CR	Write-only	–
0x0004	Mode Register	UART_MR	Read-write	0x0
0x0008	Interrupt Enable Register	UART_IER	Write-only	–
0x000C	Interrupt Disable Register	UART_IDR	Write-only	–
0x0010	Interrupt Mask Register	UART_IMR	Read-only	0x0
0x0014	Status Register	UART_SR	Read-only	–
0x0018	Receive Holding Register	UART_RHR	Read-only	0x0
0x001C	Transmit Holding Register	UART_THR	Write-only	–
0x0020	Baud Rate Generator Register	UART_BRGR	Read-write	0x0
0x0024 - 0x003C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x004C - 0x00FC	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0100 - 0x0124	PDC Area	–	–	–

### 29.6.1 UART Control Register

**Name:** UART\_CR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0600 (0), 0x400E0800 (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	RSTSTA
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXDIS	TXEN	RXDIS	RXEN	RSTTX	RSTRX	–	–

- RSTRX: Reset Receiver**

0 = No effect.

1 = The receiver logic is reset and disabled. If a character is being received, the reception is aborted.

- RSTTX: Reset Transmitter**

0 = No effect.

1 = The transmitter logic is reset and disabled. If a character is being transmitted, the transmission is aborted.

- RXEN: Receiver Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The receiver is enabled if RXDIS is 0.

- RXDIS: Receiver Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The receiver is disabled. If a character is being processed and RSTRX is not set, the character is completed before the receiver is stopped.

- TXEN: Transmitter Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The transmitter is enabled if TXDIS is 0.

- TXDIS: Transmitter Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = The transmitter is disabled. If a character is being processed and a character has been written in the UART\_THR and RSTTX is not set, both characters are completed before the transmitter is stopped.

- RSTSTA: Reset Status Bits**

0 = No effect.

1 = Resets the status bits PARE, FRAME and OVRE in the UART\_SR.

### 29.6.2 UART Mode Register

**Name:** UART\_MR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0604 (0), 0x400E0804 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CHMODE		-	-		PAR		-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

- **PAR: Parity Type**

Value	Name	Description
0	EVEN	Even parity
1	ODD	Odd parity
2	SPACE	Space: parity forced to 0
3	MARK	Mark: parity forced to 1
4	NO	No parity

- **CHMODE: Channel Mode**

Value	Name	Description
0	NORMAL	Normal Mode
1	AUTOMATIC	Automatic Echo
2	LOCAL_LOOPBACK	Local Loopback
3	REMOTE_LOOPBACK	Remote Loopback

### 29.6.3 UART Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** **UART\_IER**

**Addresses:** 0x400E0608 (0), 0x400E0808 (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	RXBUFF	TXBUFE	–	TXEMPTY	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PARE	FRAME	OVRE	ENDTX	ENDRX	–	TXRDY	RXRDY

- **RXRDY:** Enable RXRDY Interrupt
- **TXRDY:** Enable TXRDY Interrupt
- **ENDRX:** Enable End of Receive Transfer Interrupt
- **ENDTX:** Enable End of Transmit Interrupt
- **OVRE:** Enable Overrun Error Interrupt
- **FRAME:** Enable Framing Error Interrupt
- **PARE:** Enable Parity Error Interrupt
- **TXEMPTY:** Enable TXEMPTY Interrupt
- **TXBUFE:** Enable Buffer Empty Interrupt
- **RXBUFF:** Enable Buffer Full Interrupt

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the corresponding interrupt.

#### 29.6.4 UART Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** UART\_IDR

**Addresses:** 0x400E060C (0), 0x400E080C (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	RXBUFF	TXBUFE	–	TXEMPTY	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PARE	FRAME	OVRE	ENDTX	ENDRX	–	TXRDY	RXRDY

- **RXRDY:** Disable RXRDY Interrupt
  - **TXRDY:** Disable TXRDY Interrupt
  - **ENDRX:** Disable End of Receive Transfer Interrupt
  - **ENDTX:** Disable End of Transmit Interrupt
  - **OVRE:** Disable Overrun Error Interrupt
  - **FRAME:** Disable Framing Error Interrupt
  - **PARE:** Disable Parity Error Interrupt
  - **TXEMPTY:** Disable TXEMPTY Interrupt
  - **TXBUFE:** Disable Buffer Empty Interrupt
  - **RXBUFF:** Disable Buffer Full Interrupt
- 0 = No effect.  
1 = Disables the corresponding interrupt.

### 29.6.5 UART Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** UART\_IMR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0610 (0), 0x400E0810 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	RXBUFF	TXBUFE	–	TXEMPTY	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PARE	FRAME	OVRE	ENDTX	ENDRX	–	TXRDY	RXRDY

- **RXRDY:** Mask RXRDY Interrupt
- **TXRDY:** Disable TXRDY Interrupt
- **ENDRX:** Mask End of Receive Transfer Interrupt
- **ENDTX:** Mask End of Transmit Interrupt
- **OVRE:** Mask Overrun Error Interrupt
- **FRAME:** Mask Framing Error Interrupt
- **PARE:** Mask Parity Error Interrupt
- **TXEMPTY:** Mask TXEMPTY Interrupt
- **TXBUFE:** Mask TXBUFE Interrupt
- **RXBUFF:** Mask RXBUFF Interrupt

0 = The corresponding interrupt is disabled.

1 = The corresponding interrupt is enabled.

### 29.6.6 UART Status Register

**Name:** UART\_SR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0614 (0), 0x400E0814 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	RXBUFF	TXBUFE	–	TXEMPTY	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PARE	FRAME	OVRE	ENDTX	ENDRX	–	TXRDY	RXRDY

- RXRDY: Receiver Ready**

0 = No character has been received since the last read of the UART\_RHR or the receiver is disabled.

1 = At least one complete character has been received, transferred to UART\_RHR and not yet read.

- TXRDY: Transmitter Ready**

0 = A character has been written to UART\_THR and not yet transferred to the Shift Register, or the transmitter is disabled.

1 = There is no character written to UART\_THR not yet transferred to the Shift Register.

- ENDRX: End of Receiver Transfer**

0 = The End of Transfer signal from the receiver Peripheral Data Controller channel is inactive.

1 = The End of Transfer signal from the receiver Peripheral Data Controller channel is active.

- ENDTX: End of Transmitter Transfer**

0 = The End of Transfer signal from the transmitter Peripheral Data Controller channel is inactive.

1 = The End of Transfer signal from the transmitter Peripheral Data Controller channel is active.

- OVRE: Overrun Error**

0 = No overrun error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

1 = At least one overrun error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

- FRAME: Framing Error**

0 = No framing error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

1 = At least one framing error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

- PARE: Parity Error**

0 = No parity error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

1 = At least one parity error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

- TXEMPTY: Transmitter Empty**

0 = There are characters in UART\_THR, or characters being processed by the transmitter, or the transmitter is disabled.



1 = There are no characters in UART\_THR and there are no characters being processed by the transmitter.

- **TXBUFE: Transmission Buffer Empty**

0 = The buffer empty signal from the transmitter PDC channel is inactive.

1 = The buffer empty signal from the transmitter PDC channel is active.

- **RXBUFF: Receive Buffer Full**

0 = The buffer full signal from the receiver PDC channel is inactive.

1 = The buffer full signal from the receiver PDC channel is active.

**29.6.7 UART Receiver Holding Register****Name:** UART\_RHR**Addresses:** 0x400E0618 (0), 0x400E0818 (1)**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RXCHR							

- **RXCHR: Received Character**

Last received character if RXRDY is set.

**29.6.8 UART Transmit Holding Register****Name:** UART\_THR**Addresses:** 0x400E061C (0), 0x400E081C (1)**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXCHR							

- **TXCHR: Character to be Transmitted**

Next character to be transmitted after the current character if TXRDY is not set.

### 29.6.9 UART Baud Rate Generator Register

**Name:** UART\_BRGR

**Addresses:** 0x400E0620 (0), 0x400E0820 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CD							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CD							

- **CD: Clock Divisor**

0 = Baud Rate Clock is disabled

1 to 65,535 = MCK / (CD x 16)

## 30. Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART)

### 30.1 Description

The Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transceiver (USART) provides one full duplex universal synchronous asynchronous serial link. Data frame format is widely programmable (data length, parity, number of stop bits) to support a maximum of standards. The receiver implements parity error, framing error and overrun error detection. The receiver time-out enables handling variable-length frames and the transmitter timeguard facilitates communications with slow remote devices. Multidrop communications are also supported through address bit handling in reception and transmission.

The USART features three test modes: remote loopback, local loopback and automatic echo.

The USART supports specific operating modes providing interfaces on RS485 and SPI buses, with ISO7816 T = 0 or T = 1 smart card slots and infrared transceivers (ISO7816 only on USART0). The hardware handshaking feature enables an out-of-band flow control by automatic management of the pins RTS and CTS.

The USART supports the connection to the Peripheral DMA Controller, which enables data transfers to the transmitter and from the receiver. The PDC provides chained buffer management without any intervention of the processor.

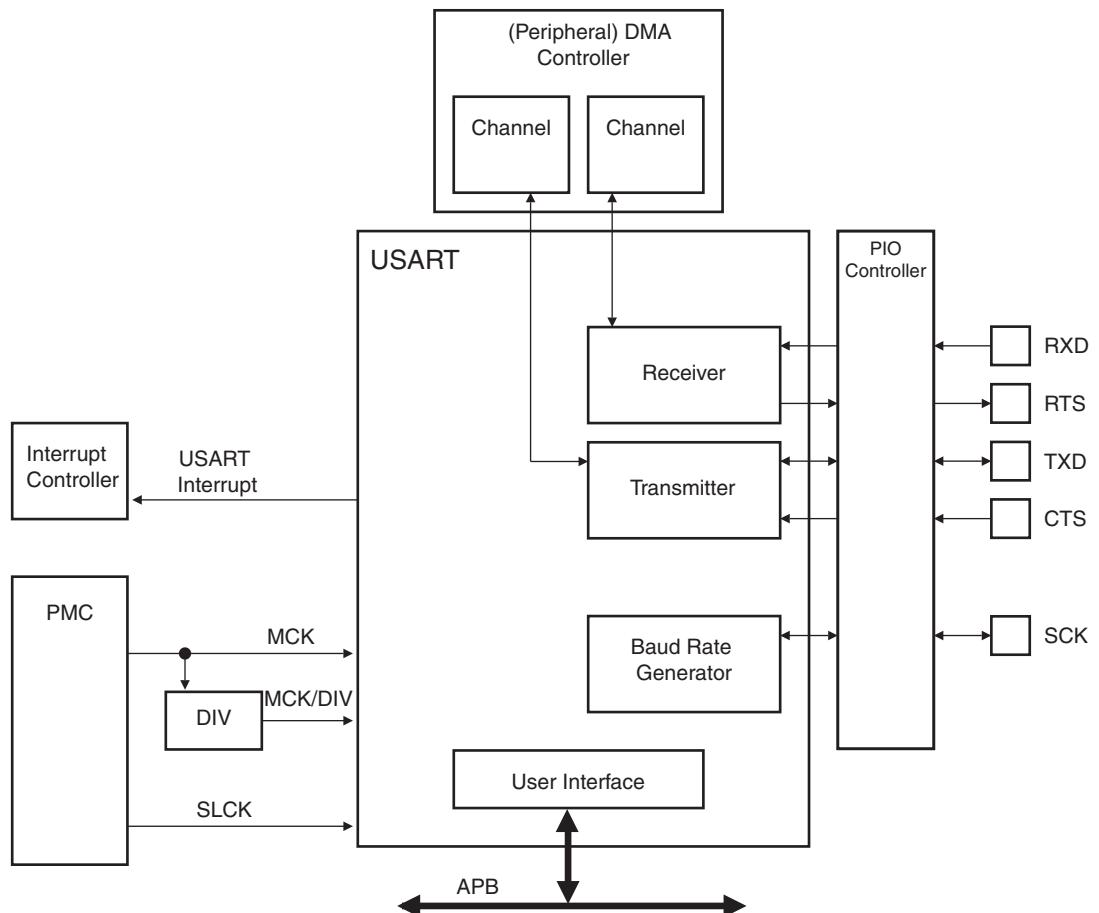
### 30.2 Embedded Characteristics

- Programmable Baud Rate Generator
- 5- to 9-bit Full-duplex Synchronous or Asynchronous Serial Communications
  - 1, 1.5 or 2 Stop Bits in Asynchronous Mode or 1 or 2 Stop Bits in Synchronous Mode
  - Parity Generation and Error Detection
  - Framing Error Detection, Overrun Error Detection
  - MSB- or LSB-first
  - Optional Break Generation and Detection
  - By 8 or by 16 Over-sampling Receiver Frequency
  - Optional Hardware Handshaking RTS-CTS
  - Receiver Time-out and Transmitter Timeguard
  - Optional Multidrop Mode with Address Generation and Detection
- RS485 with Driver Control Signal
- ISO7816, T = 0 or T = 1 Protocols for Interfacing with Smart Cards (Only on USART0)
  - NACK Handling, Error Counter with Repetition and Iteration Limit
- IrDA Modulation and Demodulation (Only on USART0)
  - Communication at up to 115.2 Kbps
- SPI Mode
  - Master or Slave
  - Serial Clock Programmable Phase and Polarity
  - SPI Serial Clock (SCK) Frequency up to Internal Clock Frequency MCK/6
- Test Modes
  - Remote Loopback, Local Loopback, Automatic Echo
- Supports Connection of Two Peripheral DMA Controller Channels (PDC)
  - Offers Buffer Transfer without Processor Intervention



### 30.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 30-1.** USART Block Diagram

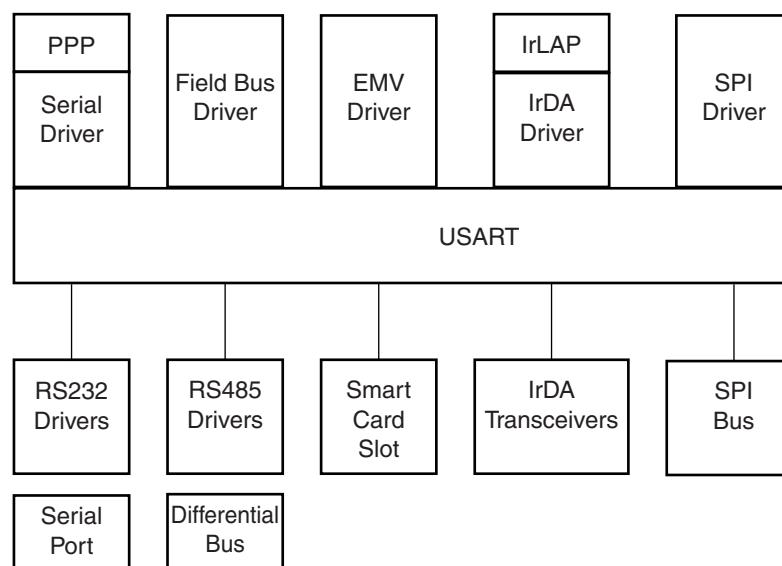


**Table 30-1.** SPI Operating Mode

PIN	USART	SPI Slave	SPI Master
RXD	RXD	MOSI	MISO
TXD	TXD	MISO	MOSI
RTS	RTS	–	CS
CTS	CTS	CS	–

## 30.4 Application Block Diagram

**Figure 30-2.** Application Block Diagram



## 30.5 I/O Lines Description

Table 30-2. I/O Line Description

Name	Description	Type	Active Level
SCK	Serial Clock	I/O	
TXD	Transmit Serial Data or Master Out Slave In (MOSI) in SPI Master Mode or Master In Slave Out (MISO) in SPI Slave Mode	I/O	
RXD	Receive Serial Data or Master In Slave Out (MISO) in SPI Master Mode or Master Out Slave In (MOSI) in SPI Slave Mode	Input	
CTS	Clear to Send or Slave Select (NSS) in SPI Slave Mode	Input	Low
RTS	Request to Send or Slave Select (NSS) in SPI Master Mode	Output	Low

## 30.6 Product Dependencies

### 30.6.1 I/O Lines

The pins used for interfacing the USART may be multiplexed with the PIO lines. The programmer must first program the PIO controller to assign the desired USART pins to their peripheral function. If I/O lines of the USART are not used by the application, they can be used for other purposes by the PIO Controller.

To prevent the TXD line from falling when the USART is disabled, the use of an internal pull up is mandatory. If the hardware handshaking feature is used, the internal pull up on TXD must also be enabled.

**Table 30-3.** I/O Lines

Instance	Signal	I/O Line	Peripheral
USART0	CTS0	PA8	A
USART0	RTS0	PA7	A
USART0	RXD0	PA5	A
USART0	SCK0	PA2	B
USART0	TXD0	PA6	A
USART1	CTS1	PA25	A
USART1	RTS1	PA24	A
USART1	RXD1	PA21	A
USART1	SCK1	PA23	A
USART1	TXD1	PA22	A

### 30.6.2 Power Management

The USART is not continuously clocked. The programmer must first enable the USART Clock in the Power Management Controller (PMC) before using the USART. However, if the application does not require USART operations, the USART clock can be stopped when not needed and be restarted later. In this case, the USART will resume its operations where it left off.

Configuring the USART does not require the USART clock to be enabled.

### 30.6.3 Interrupt

The USART interrupt line is connected on one of the internal sources of the Interrupt Controller. Using the USART interrupt requires the Interrupt Controller to be programmed first. Note that it is not recommended to use the USART interrupt line in edge sensitive mode.

**Table 30-4.** Peripheral IDs

Instance	ID
USART0	14
USART1	15

## 30.7 Functional Description

The USART is capable of managing several types of serial synchronous or asynchronous communications.

It supports the following communication modes:

- 5- to 9-bit full-duplex asynchronous serial communication
  - MSB- or LSB-first
  - 1, 1.5 or 2 stop bits
  - Parity even, odd, marked, space or none
  - By 8 or by 16 over-sampling receiver frequency
  - Optional hardware handshaking
  - Optional break management
  - Optional multidrop serial communication
- High-speed 5- to 9-bit full-duplex synchronous serial communication
  - MSB- or LSB-first
  - 1 or 2 stop bits
  - Parity even, odd, marked, space or none
  - By 8 or by 16 over-sampling frequency
  - Optional hardware handshaking
  - Optional break management
  - Optional multidrop serial communication
- RS485 with driver control signal
- ISO7816, T0 or T1 protocols for interfacing with smart cards (Only on USART0)
  - NACK handling, error counter with repetition and iteration limit, inverted data.
- InfraRed IrDA Modulation and Demodulation
- SPI Mode
  - Master or Slave
  - Serial Clock Programmable Phase and Polarity
  - SPI Serial Clock (SCK) Frequency up to Internal Clock Frequency MCK/6
- Test modes
  - Remote loopback, local loopback, automatic echo

### 30.7.1 Baud Rate Generator

The Baud Rate Generator provides the bit period clock named the Baud Rate Clock to both the receiver and the transmitter.

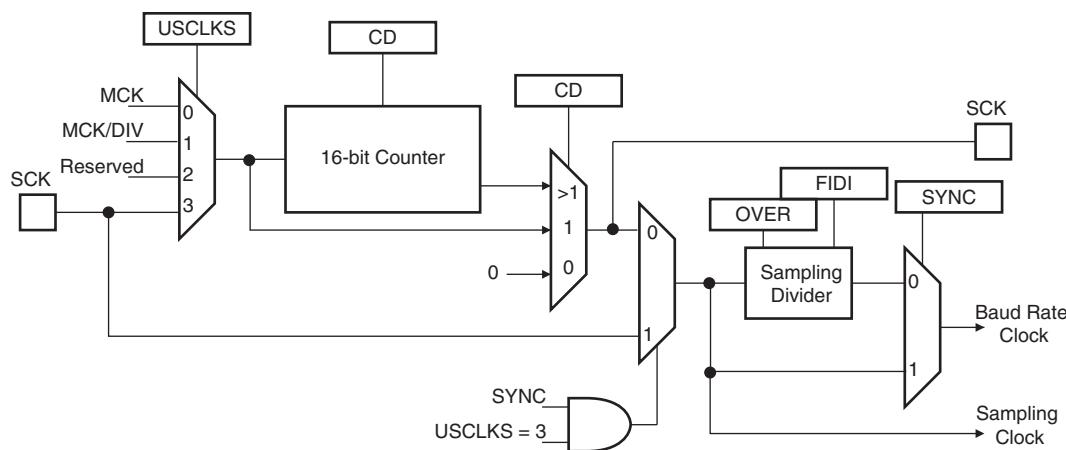
The Baud Rate Generator clock source can be selected by setting the USCLKS field in the Mode Register (US\_MR) between:

- the Master Clock MCK
- a division of the Master Clock, the divider being product dependent, but generally set to 8
- the external clock, available on the SCK pin

The Baud Rate Generator is based upon a 16-bit divider, which is programmed with the CD field of the Baud Rate Generator Register (US\_BRGR). If CD is programmed to 0, the Baud Rate Generator does not generate any clock. If CD is programmed to 1, the divider is bypassed and becomes inactive.

If the external SCK clock is selected, the duration of the low and high levels of the signal provided on the SCK pin must be longer than a Master Clock (MCK) period. The frequency of the signal provided on SCK must be at least 3 times lower than MCK in USART mode, or 6 in SPI mode.

**Figure 30-3.** Baud Rate Generator



#### 30.7.1.1 Baud Rate in Asynchronous Mode

If the USART is programmed to operate in asynchronous mode, the selected clock is first divided by CD, which is field programmed in the Baud Rate Generator Register (US\_BRGR). The resulting clock is provided to the receiver as a sampling clock and then divided by 16 or 8, depending on the programming of the OVER bit in US\_MR.

If OVER is set to 1, the receiver sampling is 8 times higher than the baud rate clock. If OVER is cleared, the sampling is performed at 16 times the baud rate clock.

The following formula performs the calculation of the Baud Rate.

$$\text{Baudrate} = \frac{\text{SelectedClock}}{(8(2 - \text{Over})\text{CD})}$$

This gives a maximum baud rate of MCK divided by 8, assuming that MCK is the highest possible clock and that OVER is programmed to 1.

### Baud Rate Calculation Example

**Table 30-5** shows calculations of CD to obtain a baud rate at 38400 bauds for different source clock frequencies. This table also shows the actual resulting baud rate and the error.

**Table 30-5.** Baud Rate Example (OVER = 0)

Source Clock	Expected Baud Rate	Calculation Result	CD	Actual Baud Rate	Error
MHz	Bit/s			Bit/s	
3 686 400	38 400	6.00	6	38 400.00	0.00%
4 915 200	38 400	8.00	8	38 400.00	0.00%
5 000 000	38 400	8.14	8	39 062.50	1.70%
7 372 800	38 400	12.00	12	38 400.00	0.00%
8 000 000	38 400	13.02	13	38 461.54	0.16%
12 000 000	38 400	19.53	20	37 500.00	2.40%
12 288 000	38 400	20.00	20	38 400.00	0.00%
14 318 180	38 400	23.30	23	38 908.10	1.31%
14 745 600	38 400	24.00	24	38 400.00	0.00%
18 432 000	38 400	30.00	30	38 400.00	0.00%
24 000 000	38 400	39.06	39	38 461.54	0.16%
24 576 000	38 400	40.00	40	38 400.00	0.00%
25 000 000	38 400	40.69	40	38 109.76	0.76%
32 000 000	38 400	52.08	52	38 461.54	0.16%
32 768 000	38 400	53.33	53	38 641.51	0.63%
33 000 000	38 400	53.71	54	38 194.44	0.54%
40 000 000	38 400	65.10	65	38 461.54	0.16%
50 000 000	38 400	81.38	81	38 580.25	0.47%

The baud rate is calculated with the following formula:

$$\text{BaudRate} = \text{MCK} / \text{CD} \times 16$$

The baud rate error is calculated with the following formula. It is not recommended to work with an error higher than 5%.

$$\text{Error} = 1 - \left( \frac{\text{ExpectedBaudRate}}{\text{ActualBaudRate}} \right)$$

#### 30.7.1.2 Fractional Baud Rate in Asynchronous Mode

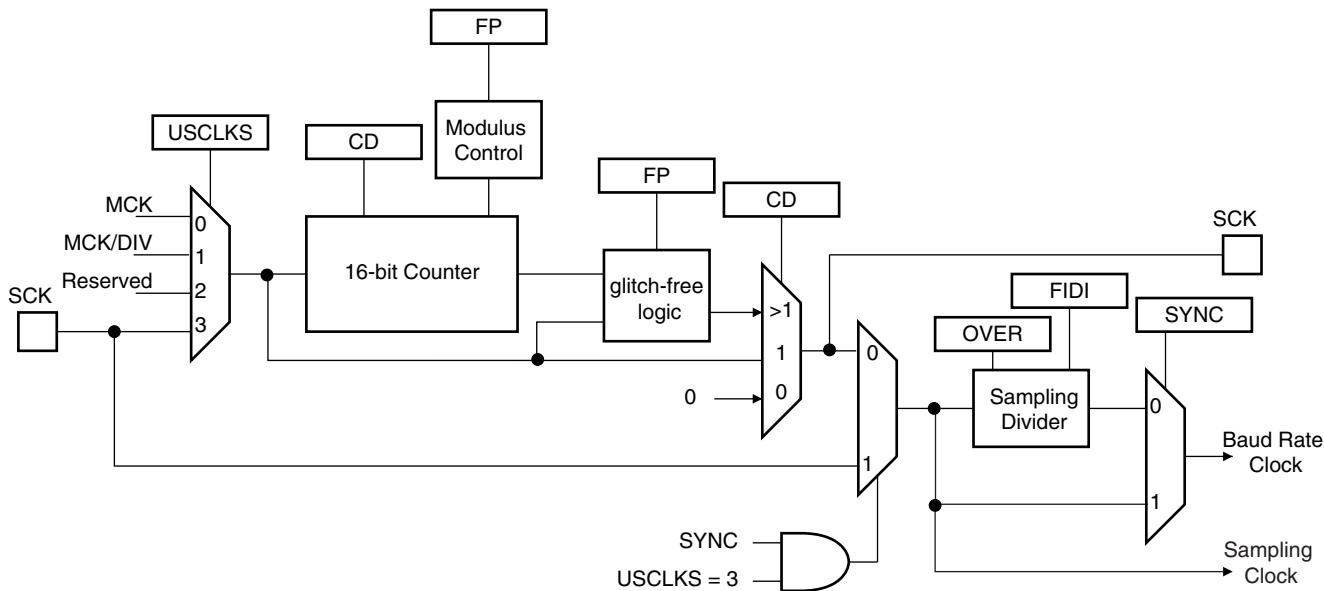
The Baud Rate generator previously defined is subject to the following limitation: the output frequency changes by only integer multiples of the reference frequency. An approach to this problem is to integrate a fractional N clock generator that has a high resolution. The generator architecture is modified to obtain Baud Rate changes by a fraction of the reference source clock. This fractional part is programmed with the FP field in the Baud Rate Generator Register (US\_BRGR). If FP is not 0, the fractional part is activated. The resolution is one eighth of the

clock divider. This feature is only available when using USART normal mode. The fractional Baud Rate is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{Baudrate} = \frac{\text{SelectedClock}}{\left(8(2 - \text{Over})\left(\text{CD} + \frac{\text{FP}}{8}\right)\right)}$$

The modified architecture is presented below:

**Figure 30-4.** Fractional Baud Rate Generator



#### 30.7.1.3 Baud Rate in Synchronous Mode or SPI Mode

If the USART is programmed to operate in synchronous mode, the selected clock is simply divided by the field CD in US\_BRGR.

$$\text{BaudRate} = \frac{\text{SelectedClock}}{\text{CD}}$$

In synchronous mode, if the external clock is selected (USCLKS = 3), the clock is provided directly by the signal on the USART SCK pin. No division is active. The value written in US\_BRGR has no effect. The external clock frequency must be at least 3 times lower than the system clock. In synchronous mode master (USCLKS = 0 or 1, CLK0 set to 1), the receive part limits the SCK maximum frequency to MCK/3 in USART mode, or MCK/6 in SPI mode.

When either the external clock SCK or the internal clock divided (MCK/DIV) is selected, the value programmed in CD must be even if the user has to ensure a 50:50 mark/space ratio on the SCK pin. If the internal clock MCK is selected, the Baud Rate Generator ensures a 50:50 duty cycle on the SCK pin, even if the value programmed in CD is odd.

#### 30.7.1.4 Baud Rate in ISO 7816 Mode

The ISO7816 specification defines the bit rate with the following formula:

$$B = \frac{Di}{Fi} \times f$$

where:

- B is the bit rate
- Di is the bit-rate adjustment factor
- Fi is the clock frequency division factor
- f is the ISO7816 clock frequency (Hz)

Di is a binary value encoded on a 4-bit field, named DI, as represented in [Table 30-6](#).

**Table 30-6.** Binary and Decimal Values for Di

DI field	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	1000	1001
Di (decimal)	1	2	4	8	16	32	12	20

Fi is a binary value encoded on a 4-bit field, named FI, as represented in [Table 30-7](#).

**Table 30-7.** Binary and Decimal Values for Fi

FI field	0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	1001	1010	1011	1100	1101
Fi (decimal)	372	372	558	744	1116	1488	1860	512	768	1024	1536	2048

[Table 30-8](#) shows the resulting Fi/Di Ratio, which is the ratio between the ISO7816 clock and the baud rate clock.

**Table 30-8.** Possible Values for the Fi/Di Ratio

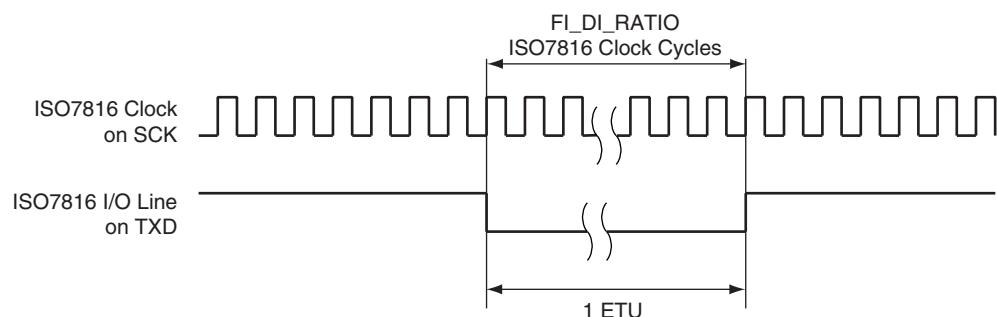
Fi/Di	372	558	774	1116	1488	1806	512	768	1024	1536	2048
1	372	558	744	1116	1488	1860	512	768	1024	1536	2048
2	186	279	372	558	744	930	256	384	512	768	1024
4	93	139.5	186	279	372	465	128	192	256	384	512
8	46.5	69.75	93	139.5	186	232.5	64	96	128	192	256
16	23.25	34.87	46.5	69.75	93	116.2	32	48	64	96	128
32	11.62	17.43	23.25	34.87	46.5	58.13	16	24	32	48	64
12	31	46.5	62	93	124	155	42.66	64	85.33	128	170.6
20	18.6	27.9	37.2	55.8	74.4	93	25.6	38.4	51.2	76.8	102.4

If the USART is configured in ISO7816 Mode, the clock selected by the USCLKS field in the Mode Register (US\_MR) is first divided by the value programmed in the field CD in the Baud Rate Generator Register (US\_BRGR). The resulting clock can be provided to the SCK pin to feed the smart card clock inputs. This means that the CLKO bit can be set in US\_MR.

This clock is then divided by the value programmed in the FI\_DI\_RATIO field in the FI\_DI\_Ratio register (US\_FIDI). This is performed by the Sampling Divider, which performs a division by up to 2047 in ISO7816 Mode. The non-integer values of the Fi/Di Ratio are not supported and the user must program the FI\_DI\_RATIO field to a value as close as possible to the expected value.

The FI\_DI\_RATIO field resets to the value 0x174 (372 in decimal) and is the most common divider between the ISO7816 clock and the bit rate (Fi = 372, Di = 1).

[Figure 30-5](#) shows the relation between the Elementary Time Unit, corresponding to a bit time, and the ISO 7816 clock.

**Figure 30-5.** Elementary Time Unit (ETU)

### 30.7.2 Receiver and Transmitter Control

After reset, the receiver is disabled. The user must enable the receiver by setting the RXEN bit in the Control Register (US\_CR). However, the receiver registers can be programmed before the receiver clock is enabled.

After reset, the transmitter is disabled. The user must enable it by setting the TXEN bit in the Control Register (US\_CR). However, the transmitter registers can be programmed before being enabled.

The Receiver and the Transmitter can be enabled together or independently.

At any time, the software can perform a reset on the receiver or the transmitter of the USART by setting the corresponding bit, RSTRX and RSTTX respectively, in the Control Register (US\_CR). The software resets clear the status flag and reset internal state machines but the user interface configuration registers hold the value configured prior to software reset. Regardless of what the receiver or the transmitter is performing, the communication is immediately stopped.

The user can also independently disable the receiver or the transmitter by setting RXDIS and TXDIS respectively in US\_CR. If the receiver is disabled during a character reception, the USART waits until the end of reception of the current character, then the reception is stopped. If the transmitter is disabled while it is operating, the USART waits the end of transmission of both the current character and character being stored in the Transmit Holding Register (US\_THR). If a timeguard is programmed, it is handled normally.

### 30.7.3 Synchronous and Asynchronous Modes

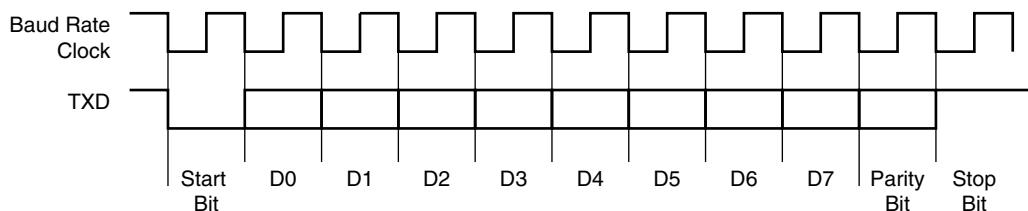
#### 30.7.3.1 Transmitter Operations

The transmitter performs the same in both synchronous and asynchronous operating modes (SYNC = 0 or SYNC = 1). One start bit, up to 9 data bits, one optional parity bit and up to two stop bits are successively shifted out on the TXD pin at each falling edge of the programmed serial clock.

The number of data bits is selected by the CHRL field and the MODE 9 bit in the Mode Register (US\_MR). Nine bits are selected by setting the MODE 9 bit regardless of the CHRL field. The parity bit is set according to the PAR field in US\_MR. The even, odd, space, marked or none parity bit can be configured. The MSBF field in US\_MR configures which data bit is sent first. If written to 1, the most significant bit is sent first. If written to 0, the less significant bit is sent first. The number of stop bits is selected by the NBSTOP field in US\_MR. The 1.5 stop bit is supported in asynchronous mode only.

**Figure 30-6.** Character Transmit

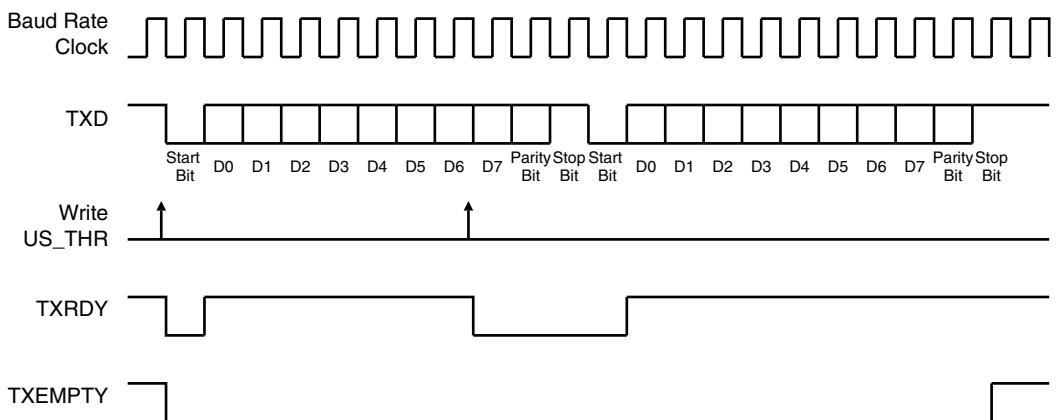
Example: 8-bit, Parity Enabled One Stop



The characters are sent by writing in the Transmit Holding Register (US\_THR). The transmitter reports two status bits in the Channel Status Register (US\_CSR): TXRDY (Transmitter Ready), which indicates that US\_THR is empty and TXEMPTY, which indicates that all the characters written in US\_THR have been processed. When the current character processing is completed, the last character written in US\_THR is transferred into the Shift Register of the transmitter and US\_THR becomes empty, thus TXRDY rises.

Both TXRDY and TXEMPTY bits are low when the transmitter is disabled. Writing a character in US\_THR while TXRDY is low has no effect and the written character is lost.

**Figure 30-7.** Transmitter Status



### 30.7.3.2 Asynchronous Receiver

If the USART is programmed in asynchronous operating mode (SYNC = 0), the receiver oversamples the RXD input line. The oversampling is either 16 or 8 times the Baud Rate clock, depending on the OVER bit in the Mode Register (US\_MR).

The receiver samples the RXD line. If the line is sampled during one half of a bit time to 0, a start bit is detected and data, parity and stop bits are successively sampled on the bit rate clock.

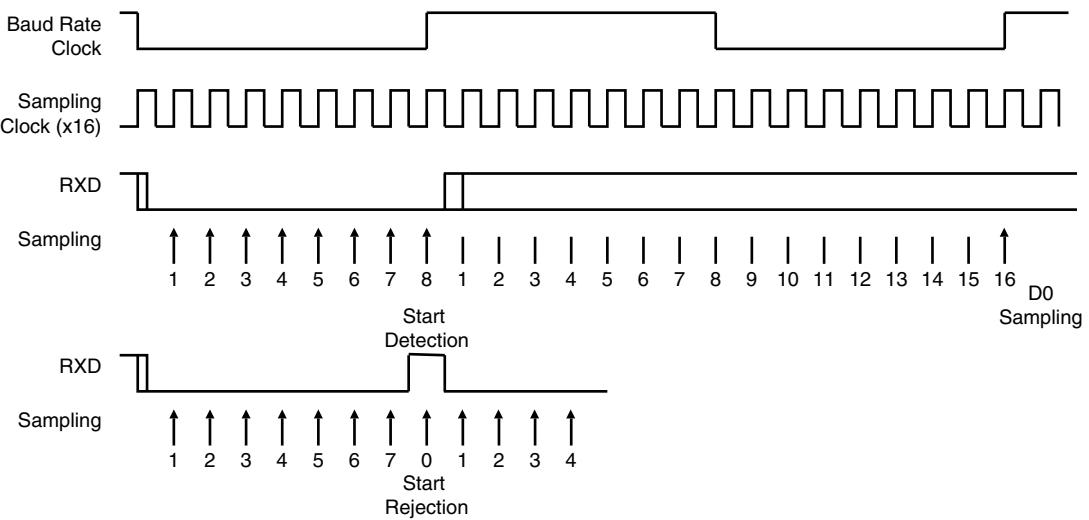
If the oversampling is 16, (OVER to 0), a start is detected at the eighth sample to 0. Then, data bits, parity bit and stop bit are sampled on each 16 sampling clock cycle. If the oversampling is 8 (OVER to 1), a start bit is detected at the fourth sample to 0. Then, data bits, parity bit and stop bit are sampled on each 8 sampling clock cycle.

The number of data bits, first bit sent and parity mode are selected by the same fields and bits as the transmitter, i.e. respectively CHRL, MODE9, MSBF and PAR. For the synchronization mechanism **only**, the number of stop bits has no effect on the receiver as it considers only one stop bit, regardless of the field NBSTOP, so that resynchronization between the receiver and the

transmitter can occur. Moreover, as soon as the stop bit is sampled, the receiver starts looking for a new start bit so that resynchronization can also be accomplished when the transmitter is operating with one stop bit.

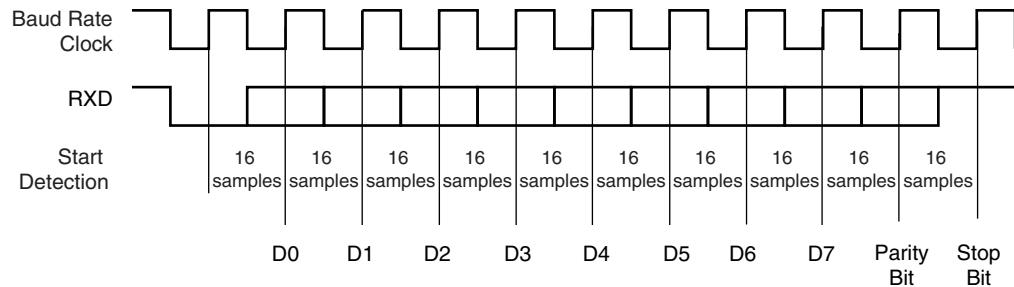
[Figure 30-8](#) and [Figure 30-9](#) illustrate start detection and character reception when USART operates in asynchronous mode.

**Figure 30-8.** Asynchronous Start Detection



**Figure 30-9.** Asynchronous Character Reception

Example: 8-bit, Parity Enabled



### 30.7.3.3 Synchronous Receiver

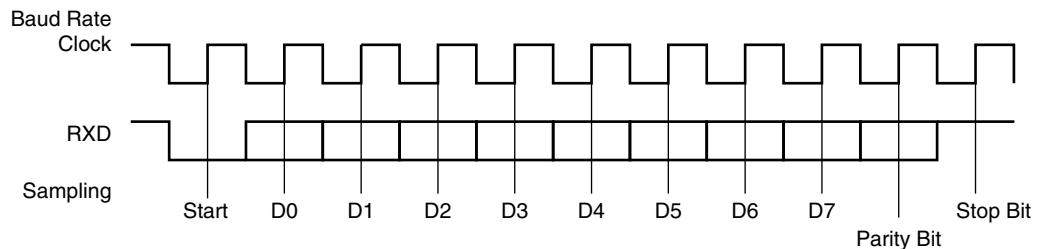
In synchronous mode (SYNC = 1), the receiver samples the RXD signal on each rising edge of the Baud Rate Clock. If a low level is detected, it is considered as a start. All data bits, the parity bit and the stop bits are sampled and the receiver waits for the next start bit. Synchronous mode operations provide a high speed transfer capability.

Configuration fields and bits are the same as in asynchronous mode.

[Figure 30-10](#) illustrates a character reception in synchronous mode.

**Figure 30-10.** Synchronous Mode Character Reception

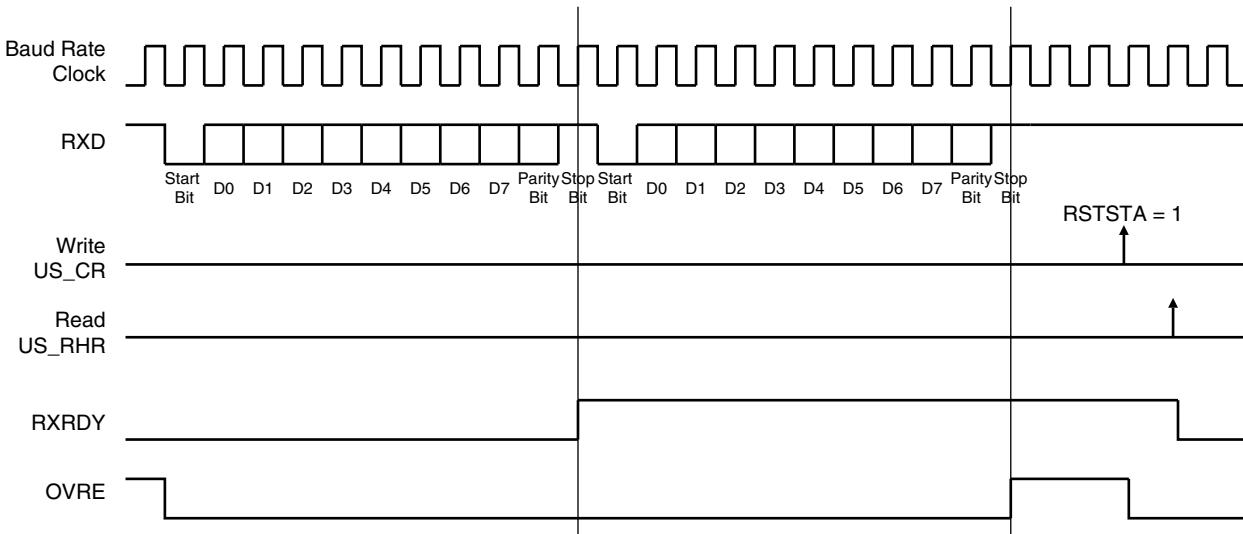
Example: 8-bit, Parity Enabled 1 Stop



#### 30.7.3.4 Receiver Operations

When a character reception is completed, it is transferred to the Receive Holding Register (US\_RHR) and the RXRDY bit in the Status Register (US\_CSR) rises. If a character is completed while the RXRDY is set, the OVRE (Overrun Error) bit is set. The last character is transferred into US\_RHR and overwrites the previous one. The OVRE bit is cleared by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the RSTSTA (Reset Status) bit to 1.

**Figure 30-11.** Receiver Status



## 30.7.3.5 Parity

The USART supports five parity modes selected by programming the PAR field in the Mode Register (US\_MR). The PAR field also enables the Multidrop mode, see “[Multidrop Mode](#)” on [page 538](#). Even and odd parity bit generation and error detection are supported.

If even parity is selected, the parity generator of the transmitter drives the parity bit to 0 if a number of 1s in the character data bit is even, and to 1 if the number of 1s is odd. Accordingly, the receiver parity checker counts the number of received 1s and reports a parity error if the sampled parity bit does not correspond. If odd parity is selected, the parity generator of the transmitter drives the parity bit to 1 if a number of 1s in the character data bit is even, and to 0 if the number of 1s is odd. Accordingly, the receiver parity checker counts the number of received 1s and reports a parity error if the sampled parity bit does not correspond. If the mark parity is used, the parity generator of the transmitter drives the parity bit to 1 for all characters. The receiver parity checker reports an error if the parity bit is sampled to 0. If the space parity is used, the parity generator of the transmitter drives the parity bit to 0 for all characters. The receiver parity checker reports an error if the parity bit is sampled to 1. If parity is disabled, the transmitter does not generate any parity bit and the receiver does not report any parity error.

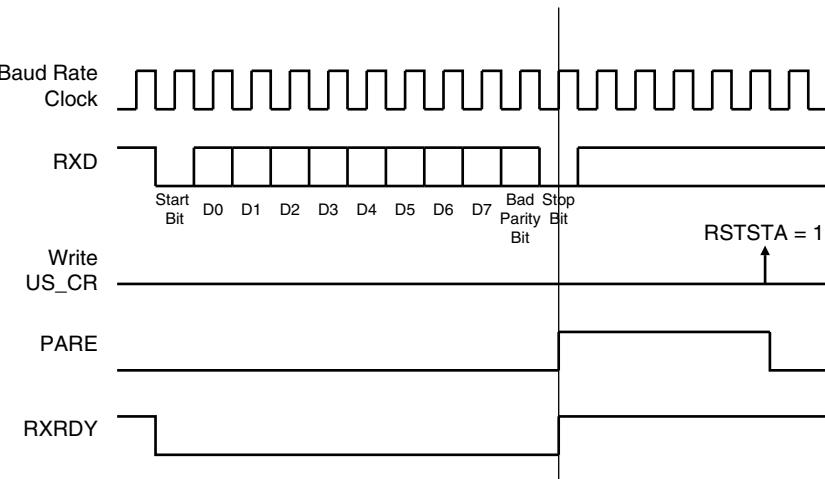
[Table 30-9](#) shows an example of the parity bit for the character 0x41 (character ASCII “A”) depending on the configuration of the USART. Because there are two bits to 1, 1 bit is added when a parity is odd, or 0 is added when a parity is even.

**Table 30-9.** Parity Bit Examples

Character	Hexa	Binary	Parity Bit	Parity Mode
A	0x41	0100 0001	1	Odd
A	0x41	0100 0001	0	Even
A	0x41	0100 0001	1	Mark
A	0x41	0100 0001	0	Space
A	0x41	0100 0001	None	None

When the receiver detects a parity error, it sets the PARE (Parity Error) bit in the Channel Status Register (US\_CSR). The PARE bit can be cleared by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the RSTSTA bit to 1. [Figure 30-12](#) illustrates the parity bit status setting and clearing.

**Figure 30-12.** Parity Error



#### 30.7.3.6 Multidrop Mode

If the PAR field in the Mode Register (US\_MR) is programmed to the value 0x6 or 0x07, the USART runs in Multidrop Mode. This mode differentiates the data characters and the address characters. Data is transmitted with the parity bit to 0 and addresses are transmitted with the parity bit to 1.

If the USART is configured in multidrop mode, the receiver sets the PARE parity error bit when the parity bit is high and the transmitter is able to send a character with the parity bit high when the Control Register is written with the SENDA bit to 1.

To handle parity error, the PARE bit is cleared when the Control Register is written with the bit RSTSTA to 1.

The transmitter sends an address byte (parity bit set) when SENDA is written to US\_CR. In this case, the next byte written to US\_THR is transmitted as an address. Any character written in US\_THR without having written the command SENDA is transmitted normally with the parity to 0.

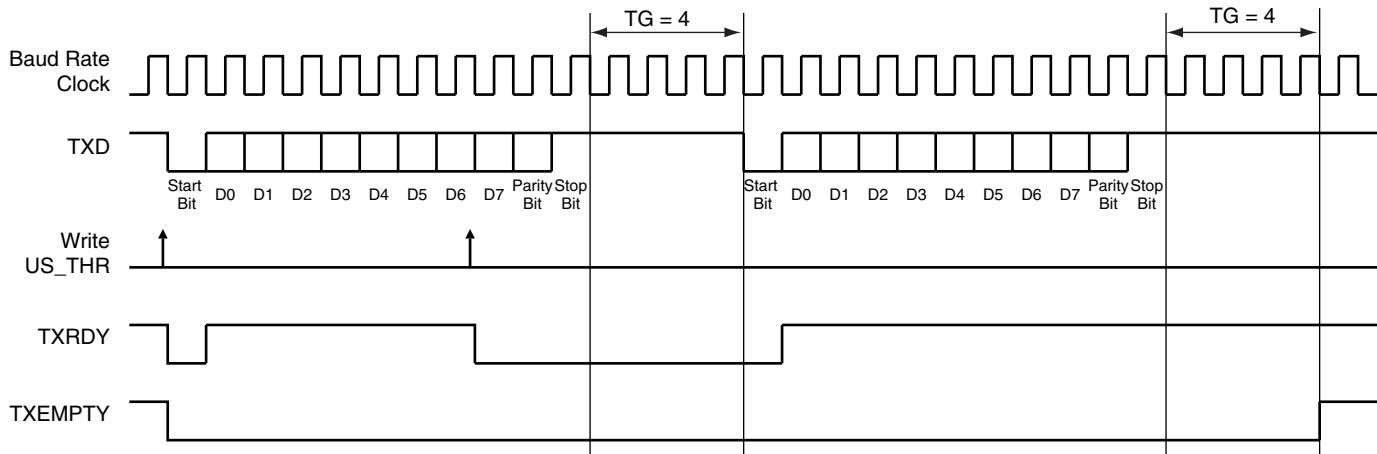
#### 30.7.3.7 Transmitter Timeguard

The timeguard feature enables the USART interface with slow remote devices.

The timeguard function enables the transmitter to insert an idle state on the TXD line between two characters. This idle state actually acts as a long stop bit.

The duration of the idle state is programmed in the TG field of the Transmitter Timeguard Register (US\_TTGR). When this field is programmed to zero no timeguard is generated. Otherwise, the transmitter holds a high level on TXD after each transmitted byte during the number of bit periods programmed in TG in addition to the number of stop bits.

As illustrated in [Figure 30-13](#), the behavior of TXRDY and TXEMPTY status bits is modified by the programming of a timeguard. TXRDY rises only when the start bit of the next character is sent, and thus remains to 0 during the timeguard transmission if a character has been written in US\_THR. TXEMPTY remains low until the timeguard transmission is completed as the timeguard is part of the current character being transmitted.

**Figure 30-13.** Timeguard Operations

**Table 30-10** indicates the maximum length of a timeguard period that the transmitter can handle in relation to the function of the Baud Rate.

**Table 30-10.** Maximum Timeguard Length Depending on Baud Rate

Baud Rate Bit/sec	Bit time μs	Timeguard ms
1 200	833	212.50
9 600	104	26.56
14400	69.4	17.71
19200	52.1	13.28
28800	34.7	8.85
33400	29.9	7.63
56000	17.9	4.55
57600	17.4	4.43
115200	8.7	2.21

### 30.7.3.8 Receiver Time-out

The Receiver Time-out provides support in handling variable-length frames. This feature detects an idle condition on the RXD line. When a time-out is detected, the bit TIMEOUT in the Channel Status Register (US\_CSR) rises and can generate an interrupt, thus indicating to the driver an end of frame.

The time-out delay period (during which the receiver waits for a new character) is programmed in the TO field of the Receiver Time-out Register (US\_RTOR). If the TO field is programmed to 0, the Receiver Time-out is disabled and no time-out is detected. The TIMEOUT bit in US\_CSR remains to 0. Otherwise, the receiver loads a 16-bit counter with the value programmed in TO. This counter is decremented at each bit period and reloaded each time a new character is received. If the counter reaches 0, the TIMEOUT bit in the Status Register rises. Then, the user can either:

- Stop the counter clock until a new character is received. This is performed by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the STTTO (Start Time-out) bit to 1. In this case, the idle state

on RXD before a new character is received will not provide a time-out. This prevents having to handle an interrupt before a character is received and allows waiting for the next idle state on RXD after a frame is received.

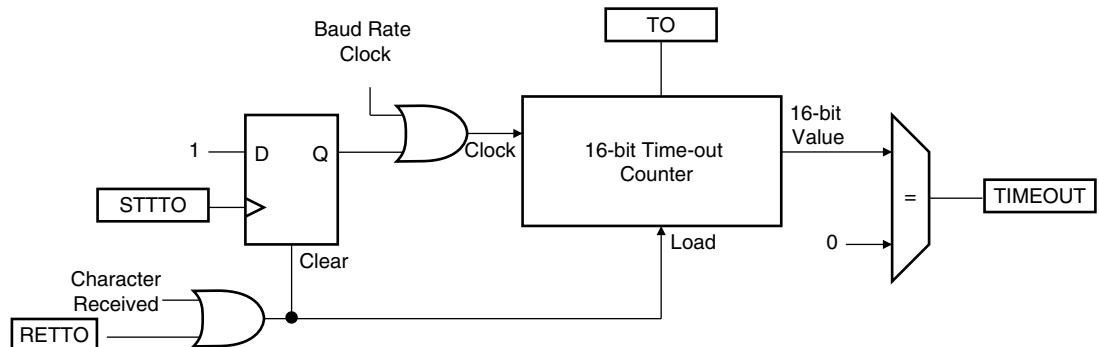
- Obtain an interrupt while no character is received. This is performed by writing US\_CR with the RETTO (Reload and Start Time-out) bit to 1. If RETTO is performed, the counter starts counting down immediately from the value TO. This enables generation of a periodic interrupt so that a user time-out can be handled, for example when no key is pressed on a keyboard.

If STTTO is performed, the counter clock is stopped until a first character is received. The idle state on RXD before the start of the frame does not provide a time-out. This prevents having to obtain a periodic interrupt and enables a wait of the end of frame when the idle state on RXD is detected.

If RETTO is performed, the counter starts counting down immediately from the value TO. This enables generation of a periodic interrupt so that a user time-out can be handled, for example when no key is pressed on a keyboard.

[Figure 30-14](#) shows the block diagram of the Receiver Time-out feature.

**Figure 30-14.** Receiver Time-out Block Diagram



[Table 30-11](#) gives the maximum time-out period for some standard baud rates.

**Table 30-11.** Maximum Time-out Period

Baud Rate bit/sec	Bit Time μs	Time-out ms
600	1 667	109 225
1 200	833	54 613
2 400	417	27 306
4 800	208	13 653
9 600	104	6 827
14400	69	4 551
19200	52	3 413
28800	35	2 276
33400	30	1 962

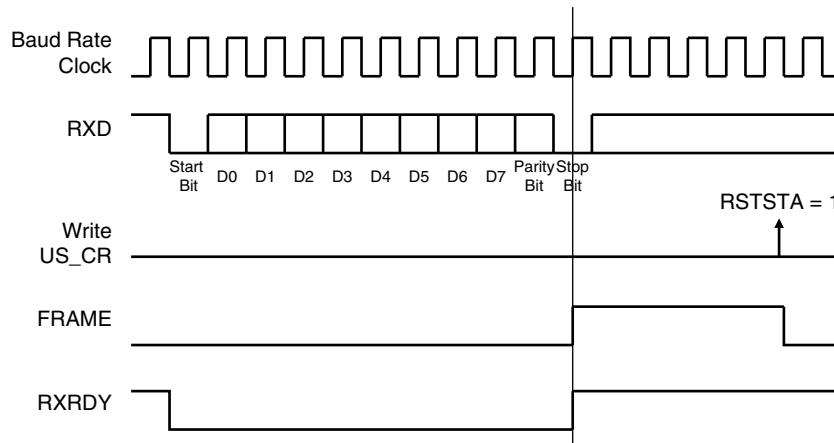
**Table 30-11.** Maximum Time-out Period (Continued)

Baud Rate	Bit Time	Time-out
56000	18	1 170
57600	17	1 138
200000	5	328

### 30.7.3.9 Framing Error

The receiver is capable of detecting framing errors. A framing error happens when the stop bit of a received character is detected at level 0. This can occur if the receiver and the transmitter are fully desynchronized.

A framing error is reported on the FRAME bit of the Channel Status Register (US\_CSR). The FRAME bit is asserted in the middle of the stop bit as soon as the framing error is detected. It is cleared by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the RSTSTA bit to 1.

**Figure 30-15.** Framing Error Status

### 30.7.3.10 Transmit Break

The user can request the transmitter to generate a break condition on the TXD line. A break condition drives the TXD line low during at least one complete character. It appears the same as a 0x00 character sent with the parity and the stop bits to 0. However, the transmitter holds the TXD line at least during one character until the user requests the break condition to be removed.

A break is transmitted by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the STTBRK bit to 1. This can be performed at any time, either while the transmitter is empty (no character in either the Shift Register or in US\_THR) or when a character is being transmitted. If a break is requested while a character is being shifted out, the character is first completed before the TXD line is held low.

Once STTBRK command is requested further STTBRK commands are ignored until the end of the break is completed.

The break condition is removed by writing US\_CR with the STPBRK bit to 1. If the STPBRK is requested before the end of the minimum break duration (one character, including start, data, parity and stop bits), the transmitter ensures that the break condition completes.

The transmitter considers the break as though it is a character, i.e. the STTBRK and STPBRK commands are taken into account only if the TXRDY bit in US\_CSR is to 1 and the start of the break condition clears the TXRDY and TXEMPTY bits as if a character is processed.

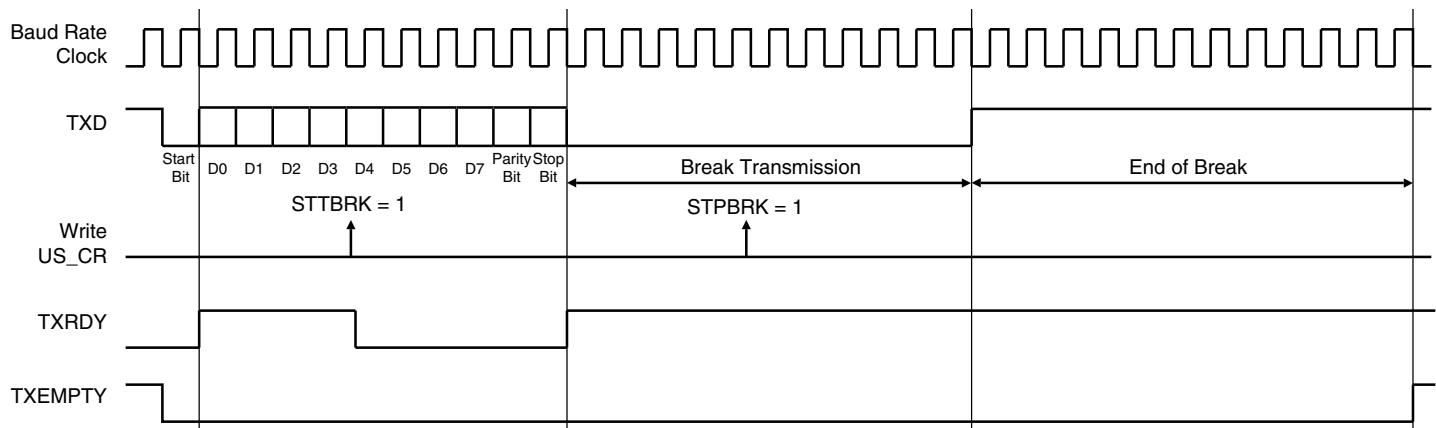
Writing US\_CR with both STTBRK and STPBRK bits to 1 can lead to an unpredictable result. All STPBRK commands requested without a previous STTBRK command are ignored. A byte written into the Transmit Holding Register while a break is pending, but not started, is ignored.

After the break condition, the transmitter returns the TXD line to 1 for a minimum of 12 bit times. Thus, the transmitter ensures that the remote receiver detects correctly the end of break and the start of the next character. If the timeguard is programmed with a value higher than 12, the TXD line is held high for the timeguard period.

After holding the TXD line for this period, the transmitter resumes normal operations.

[Figure 30-16](#) illustrates the effect of both the Start Break (STTBRK) and Stop Break (STPBRK) commands on the TXD line.

**Figure 30-16.** Break Transmission



#### 30.7.3.11 Receive Break

The receiver detects a break condition when all data, parity and stop bits are low. This corresponds to detecting a framing error with data to 0x00, but FRAME remains low.

When the low stop bit is detected, the receiver asserts the RXBRK bit in US\_CSR. This bit may be cleared by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the bit RSTSTA to 1.

An end of receive break is detected by a high level for at least 2/16 of a bit period in asynchronous operating mode or one sample at high level in synchronous operating mode. The end of break detection also asserts the RXBRK bit.

#### 30.7.3.12 Hardware Handshaking

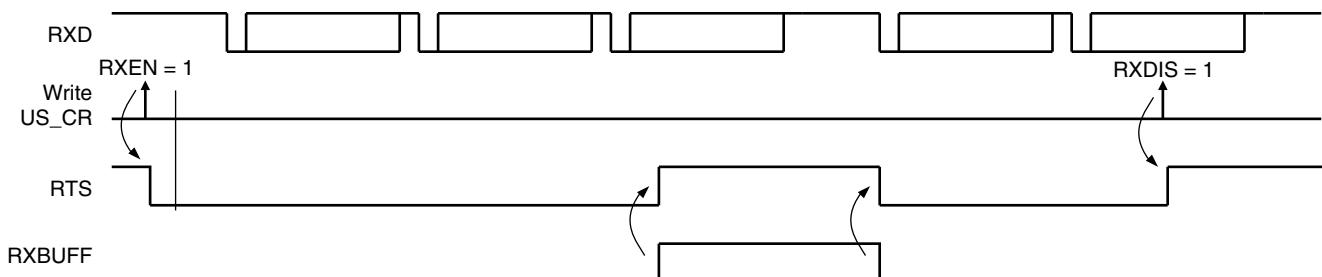
The USART features a hardware handshaking out-of-band flow control. The RTS and CTS pins are used to connect with the remote device, as shown in [Figure 30-17](#).

**Figure 30-17.** Connection with a Remote Device for Hardware Handshaking

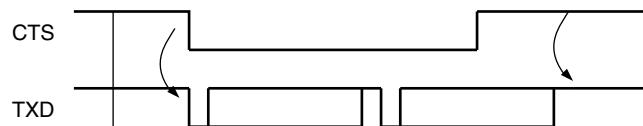
Setting the USART to operate with hardware handshaking is performed by writing the USART\_MODE field in the Mode Register (US\_MR) to the value 0x2.

The USART behavior when hardware handshaking is enabled is the same as the behavior in standard synchronous or asynchronous mode, except that the receiver drives the RTS pin as described below and the level on the CTS pin modifies the behavior of the transmitter as described below. Using this mode requires using the PDC channel for reception. The transmitter can handle hardware handshaking in any case.

[Figure 30-18](#) shows how the receiver operates if hardware handshaking is enabled. The RTS pin is driven high if the receiver is disabled and if the status RXBUFF (Receive Buffer Full) coming from the PDC channel is high. Normally, the remote device does not start transmitting while its CTS pin (driven by RTS) is high. As soon as the Receiver is enabled, the RTS falls, indicating to the remote device that it can start transmitting. Defining a new buffer to the PDC clears the status bit RXBUFF and, as a result, asserts the pin RTS low.

**Figure 30-18.** Receiver Behavior when Operating with Hardware Handshaking

[Figure 30-19](#) shows how the transmitter operates if hardware handshaking is enabled. The CTS pin disables the transmitter. If a character is being processed, the transmitter is disabled only after the completion of the current character and transmission of the next character happens as soon as the pin CTS falls.

**Figure 30-19.** Transmitter Behavior when Operating with Hardware Handshaking

### 30.7.4 ISO7816 Mode

The USART features an ISO7816-compatible operating mode (Only on USART0). This mode permits interfacing with smart cards and Security Access Modules (SAM) communicating through an ISO7816 link. Both T = 0 and T = 1 protocols defined by the ISO7816 specification are supported.

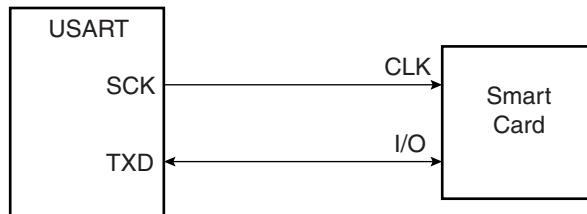
Setting the USART in ISO7816 mode is performed by writing the USART\_MODE field in the Mode Register (US\_MR) to the value 0x4 for protocol T = 0 and to the value 0x5 for protocol T = 1.

#### 30.7.4.1 ISO7816 Mode Overview

The ISO7816 is a half duplex communication on only one bidirectional line. The baud rate is determined by a division of the clock provided to the remote device (see “[Baud Rate Generator](#)” on page 529).

The USART connects to a smart card as shown in [Figure 30-20](#). The TXD line becomes bidirectional and the Baud Rate Generator feeds the ISO7816 clock on the SCK pin. As the TXD pin becomes bidirectional, its output remains driven by the output of the transmitter but only when the transmitter is active while its input is directed to the input of the receiver. The USART is considered as the master of the communication as it generates the clock.

**Figure 30-20.** Connection of a Smart Card to the USART



When operating in ISO7816, either in T = 0 or T = 1 modes, the character format is fixed. The configuration is 8 data bits, even parity and 1 or 2 stop bits, regardless of the values programmed in the CHRL, MODE9, PAR and CHMODE fields. MSBF can be used to transmit LSB or MSB first. Parity Bit (PAR) can be used to transmit in normal or inverse mode. Refer to “[USART Mode Register](#)” on page 561 and “[PAR: Parity Type](#)” on page 562.

The USART cannot operate concurrently in both receiver and transmitter modes as the communication is unidirectional at a time. It has to be configured according to the required mode by enabling or disabling either the receiver or the transmitter as desired. Enabling both the receiver and the transmitter at the same time in ISO7816 mode may lead to unpredictable results.

The ISO7816 specification defines an inverse transmission format. Data bits of the character must be transmitted on the I/O line at their negative value. The USART does not support this format and the user has to perform an exclusive OR on the data before writing it in the Transmit Holding Register (US\_THR) or after reading it in the Receive Holding Register (US\_RHR).

#### 30.7.4.2 Protocol T = 0

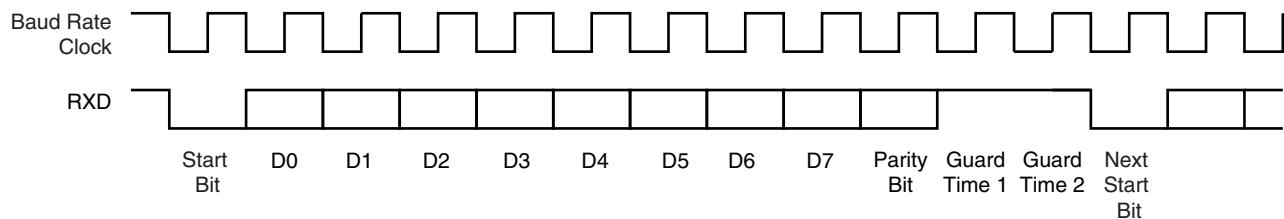
In T = 0 protocol, a character is made up of one start bit, eight data bits, one parity bit and one guard time, which lasts two bit times. The transmitter shifts out the bits and does not drive the I/O line during the guard time.

If no parity error is detected, the I/O line remains to 1 during the guard time and the transmitter can continue with the transmission of the next character, as shown in [Figure 30-21](#).

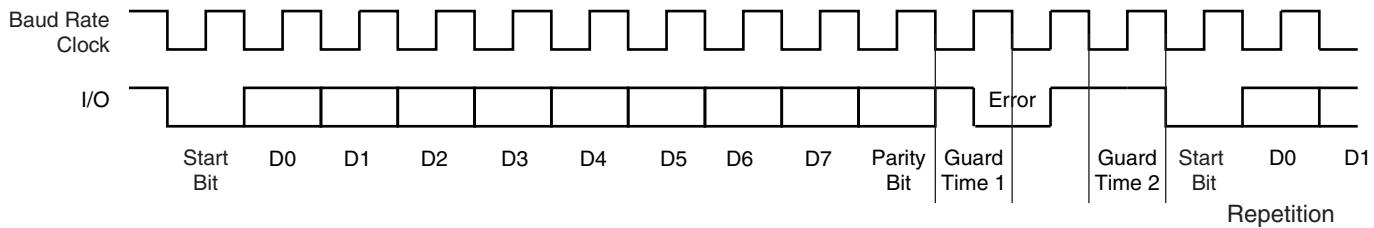
If a parity error is detected by the receiver, it drives the I/O line to 0 during the guard time, as shown in [Figure 30-22](#). This error bit is also named NACK, for Non Acknowledge. In this case, the character lasts 1 bit time more, as the guard time length is the same and is added to the error bit time which lasts 1 bit time.

When the USART is the receiver and it detects an error, it does not load the erroneous character in the Receive Holding Register (US\_RHR). It appropriately sets the PARE bit in the Status Register (US\_SR) so that the software can handle the error.

**Figure 30-21.** T = 0 Protocol without Parity Error



**Figure 30-22.** T = 0 Protocol with Parity Error



#### Receive Error Counter

The USART receiver also records the total number of errors. This can be read in the Number of Error (US\_NER) register. The NB\_ERRORS field can record up to 255 errors. Reading US\_NER automatically clears the NB\_ERRORS field.

#### Receive NACK Inhibit

The USART can also be configured to inhibit an error. This can be achieved by setting the INACK bit in the Mode Register (US\_MR). If INACK is to 1, no error signal is driven on the I/O line even if a parity bit is detected.

Moreover, if INACK is set, the erroneous received character is stored in the Receive Holding Register, as if no error occurred and the RXRDY bit does rise.

#### Transmit Character Repetition

When the USART is transmitting a character and gets a NACK, it can automatically repeat the character before moving on to the next one. Repetition is enabled by writing the MAX\_ITERATION field in the Mode Register (US\_MR) at a value higher than 0. Each character can be transmitted up to eight times; the first transmission plus seven repetitions.

If MAX\_ITERATION does not equal zero, the USART repeats the character as many times as the value loaded in MAX\_ITERATION.

When the USART repetition number reaches MAX\_ITERATION, the ITERATION bit is set in the Channel Status Register (US\_CSR). If the repetition of the character is acknowledged by the receiver, the repetitions are stopped and the iteration counter is cleared.

The ITERATION bit in US\_CSR can be cleared by writing the Control Register with the RSIT bit to 1.

#### *Disable Successive Receive NACK*

The receiver can limit the number of successive NACKs sent back to the remote transmitter. This is programmed by setting the bit DSNACK in the Mode Register (US\_MR). The maximum number of NACK transmitted is programmed in the MAX\_ITERATION field. As soon as MAX\_ITERATION is reached, the character is considered as correct, an acknowledge is sent on the line and the ITERATION bit in the Channel Status Register is set.

#### 30.7.4.3 Protocol T = 1

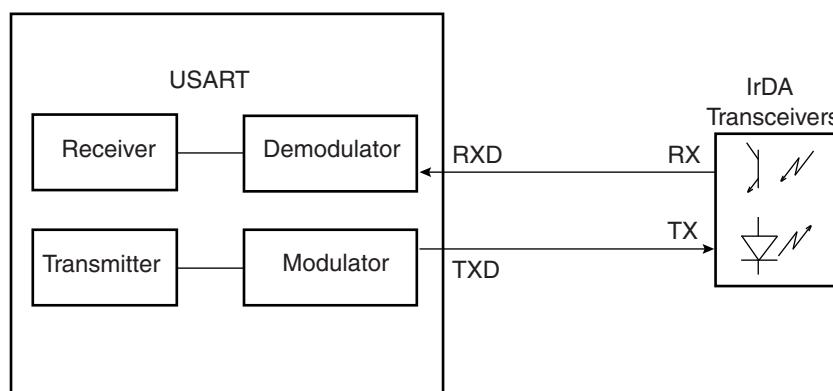
When operating in ISO7816 protocol T = 1, the transmission is similar to an asynchronous format with only one stop bit. The parity is generated when transmitting and checked when receiving. Parity error detection sets the PARE bit in the Channel Status Register (US\_CSR).

#### 30.7.5 IrDA Mode

The USART features an IrDA mode (Only on USART0) supplying half-duplex point-to-point wireless communication. It embeds the modulator and demodulator which allows a glueless connection to the infrared transceivers, as shown in [Figure 30-23](#). The modulator and demodulator are compliant with the IrDA specification version 1.1 and support data transfer speeds ranging from 2.4 Kb/s to 115.2 Kb/s.

The USART IrDA mode is enabled by setting the USART\_MODE field in the Mode Register (US\_MR) to the value 0x8. The IrDA Filter Register (US\_IF) allows configuring the demodulator filter. The USART transmitter and receiver operate in a normal asynchronous mode and all parameters are accessible. Note that the modulator and the demodulator are activated.

**Figure 30-23.** Connection to IrDA Transceivers



The receiver and the transmitter must be enabled or disabled according to the direction of the transmission to be managed.

To receive IrDA signals, the following needs to be done:

- Disable TX and Enable RX

- Configure the TXD pin as PIO and set it as an output to 0 (to avoid LED emission). Disable the internal pull-up (better for power consumption).
- Receive data

#### 30.7.5.1 IrDA Modulation

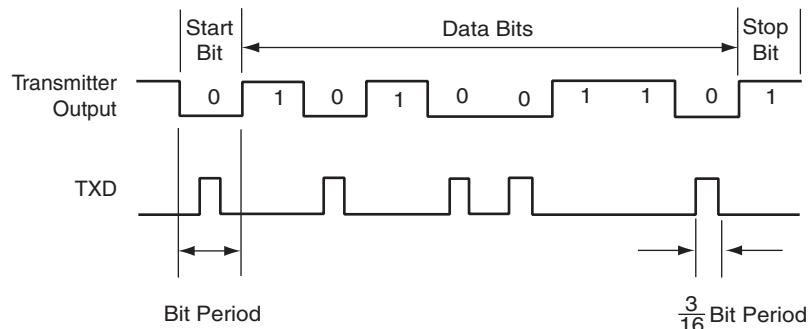
For baud rates up to and including 115.2 Kbits/sec, the RZI modulation scheme is used. "0" is represented by a light pulse of 3/16th of a bit time. Some examples of signal pulse duration are shown in [Table 30-12](#).

**Table 30-12.** IrDA Pulse Duration

Baud Rate	Pulse Duration (3/16)
2.4 Kb/s	78.13 µs
9.6 Kb/s	19.53 µs
19.2 Kb/s	9.77 µs
38.4 Kb/s	4.88 µs
57.6 Kb/s	3.26 µs
115.2 Kb/s	1.63 µs

[Figure 30-24](#) shows an example of character transmission.

**Figure 30-24.** IrDA Modulation



#### 30.7.5.2 IrDA Baud Rate

[Table 30-13](#) gives some examples of CD values, baud rate error and pulse duration. Note that the requirement on the maximum acceptable error of  $\pm 1.87\%$  must be met.

**Table 30-13.** IrDA Baud Rate Error

Peripheral Clock	Baud Rate	CD	Baud Rate Error	Pulse Time
3 686 400	115 200	2	0.00%	1.63
20 000 000	115 200	11	1.38%	1.63
32 768 000	115 200	18	1.25%	1.63
40 000 000	115 200	22	1.38%	1.63
3 686 400	57 600	4	0.00%	3.26
20 000 000	57 600	22	1.38%	3.26
32 768 000	57 600	36	1.25%	3.26

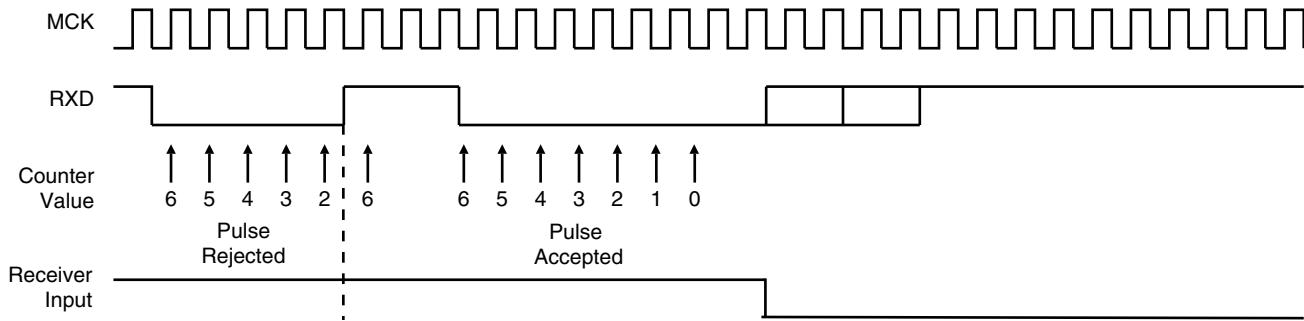
**Table 30-13.** IrDA Baud Rate Error (Continued)

Peripheral Clock	Baud Rate	CD	Baud Rate Error	Pulse Time
40 000 000	57 600	43	0.93%	3.26
3 686 400	38 400	6	0.00%	4.88
20 000 000	38 400	33	1.38%	4.88
32 768 000	38 400	53	0.63%	4.88
40 000 000	38 400	65	0.16%	4.88
3 686 400	19 200	12	0.00%	9.77
20 000 000	19 200	65	0.16%	9.77
32 768 000	19 200	107	0.31%	9.77
40 000 000	19 200	130	0.16%	9.77
3 686 400	9 600	24	0.00%	19.53
20 000 000	9 600	130	0.16%	19.53
32 768 000	9 600	213	0.16%	19.53
40 000 000	9 600	260	0.16%	19.53
3 686 400	2 400	96	0.00%	78.13
20 000 000	2 400	521	0.03%	78.13
32 768 000	2 400	853	0.04%	78.13

### 30.7.5.3 IrDA Demodulator

The demodulator is based on the IrDA Receive filter comprised of an 8-bit down counter which is loaded with the value programmed in US\_IF. When a falling edge is detected on the RXD pin, the Filter Counter starts counting down at the Master Clock (MCK) speed. If a rising edge is detected on the RXD pin, the counter stops and is reloaded with US\_IF. If no rising edge is detected when the counter reaches 0, the input of the receiver is driven low during one bit time.

Figure 30-25 illustrates the operations of the IrDA demodulator.

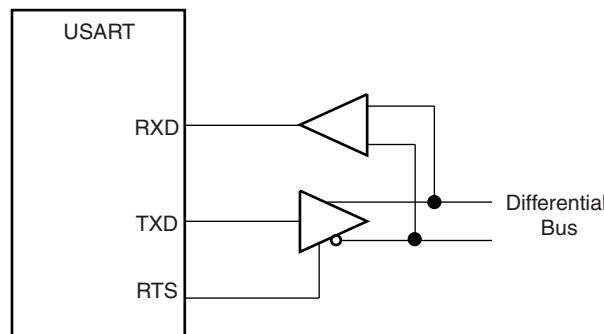
**Figure 30-25.** IrDA Demodulator Operations

As the IrDA mode uses the same logic as the ISO7816, note that the FI\_DI\_RATIO field in US\_FIDI must be set to a value higher than 0 in order to assure IrDA communications operate correctly.

### 30.7.6 RS485 Mode

The USART features the RS485 mode to enable line driver control. While operating in RS485 mode, the USART behaves as though in asynchronous or synchronous mode and configuration of all the parameters is possible. The difference is that the RTS pin is driven high when the transmitter is operating. The behavior of the RTS pin is controlled by the TXEMPTY bit. A typical connection of the USART to a RS485 bus is shown in [Figure 30-26](#).

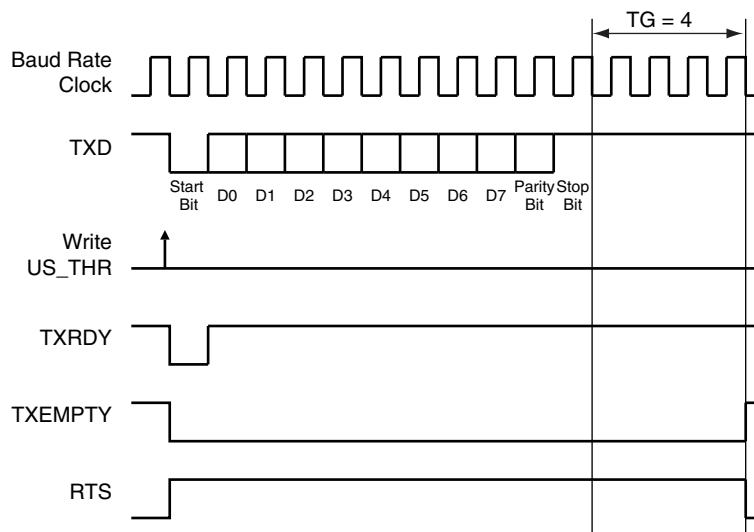
**Figure 30-26.** Typical Connection to a RS485 Bus



The USART is set in RS485 mode by programming the USART\_MODE field in the Mode Register (US\_MR) to the value 0x1.

The RTS pin is at a level inverse to the TXEMPTY bit. Significantly, the RTS pin remains high when a timeguard is programmed so that the line can remain driven after the last character completion. [Figure 30-27](#) gives an example of the RTS waveform during a character transmission when the timeguard is enabled.

**Figure 30-27.** Example of RTS Drive with Timeguard



### 30.7.7 SPI Mode

The Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) Mode is a synchronous serial data link that provides communication with external devices in Master or Slave Mode. It also enables communication between processors if an external processor is connected to the system.

The Serial Peripheral Interface is essentially a shift register that serially transmits data bits to other SPIs. During a data transfer, one SPI system acts as the “master” which controls the data flow, while the other devices act as “slaves” which have data shifted into and out by the master. Different CPUs can take turns being masters and one master may simultaneously shift data into multiple slaves. (Multiple Master Protocol is the opposite of Single Master Protocol, where one CPU is always the master while all of the others are always slaves.) However, only one slave may drive its output to write data back to the master at any given time.

A slave device is selected when its NSS signal is asserted by the master. The USART in SPI Master mode can address only one SPI Slave because it can generate only one NSS signal.

The SPI system consists of two data lines and two control lines:

- Master Out Slave In (MOSI): This data line supplies the output data from the master shifted into the input of the slave.
- Master In Slave Out (MISO): This data line supplies the output data from a slave to the input of the master.
- Serial Clock (SCK): This control line is driven by the master and regulates the flow of the data bits. The master may transmit data at a variety of baud rates. The SCK line cycles once for each bit that is transmitted.
- Slave Select (NSS): This control line allows the master to select or deselect the slave.

#### 30.7.7.1 Modes of Operation

The USART can operate in SPI Master Mode or in SPI Slave Mode.

Operation in SPI Master Mode is programmed by writing to 0xE the USART\_MODE field in the Mode Register. In this case the SPI lines must be connected as described below:

- the MOSI line is driven by the output pin TXD
- the MISO line drives the input pin RXD
- the SCK line is driven by the output pin SCK
- the NSS line is driven by the output pin RTS

Operation in SPI Slave Mode is programmed by writing to 0xF the USART\_MODE field in the Mode Register. In this case the SPI lines must be connected as described below:

- the MOSI line drives the input pin RXD
- the MISO line is driven by the output pin TXD
- the SCK line drives the input pin SCK
- the NSS line drives the input pin CTS

In order to avoid unpredicted behavior, any change of the SPI Mode must be followed by a software reset of the transmitter and of the receiver (except the initial configuration after a hardware reset). (See [Section 30.7.7.4](#)).

#### 30.7.7.2 Baud Rate

In SPI Mode, the baudrate generator operates in the same way as in USART synchronous mode: [See “Baud Rate in Synchronous Mode or SPI Mode” on page 531](#). However, there are some restrictions:



In SPI Master Mode:

- the external clock SCK must not be selected (`USCLKS` ≠ 0x3), and the bit CLKO must be set to “1” in the Mode Register (`US_MR`), in order to generate correctly the serial clock on the SCK pin.
- to obtain correct behavior of the receiver and the transmitter, the value programmed in CD must be superior or equal to 6.
- if the internal clock divided (MCK/DIV) is selected, the value programmed in CD must be even to ensure a 50:50 mark/space ratio on the SCK pin, this value can be odd if the internal clock is selected (MCK).

In SPI Slave Mode:

- the external clock (SCK) selection is forced regardless of the value of the `USCLKS` field in the Mode Register (`US_MR`). Likewise, the value written in `US_BRGR` has no effect, because the clock is provided directly by the signal on the USART SCK pin.
- to obtain correct behavior of the receiver and the transmitter, the external clock (SCK) frequency must be at least 6 times lower than the system clock.

30.7.7.3 *Data Transfer*

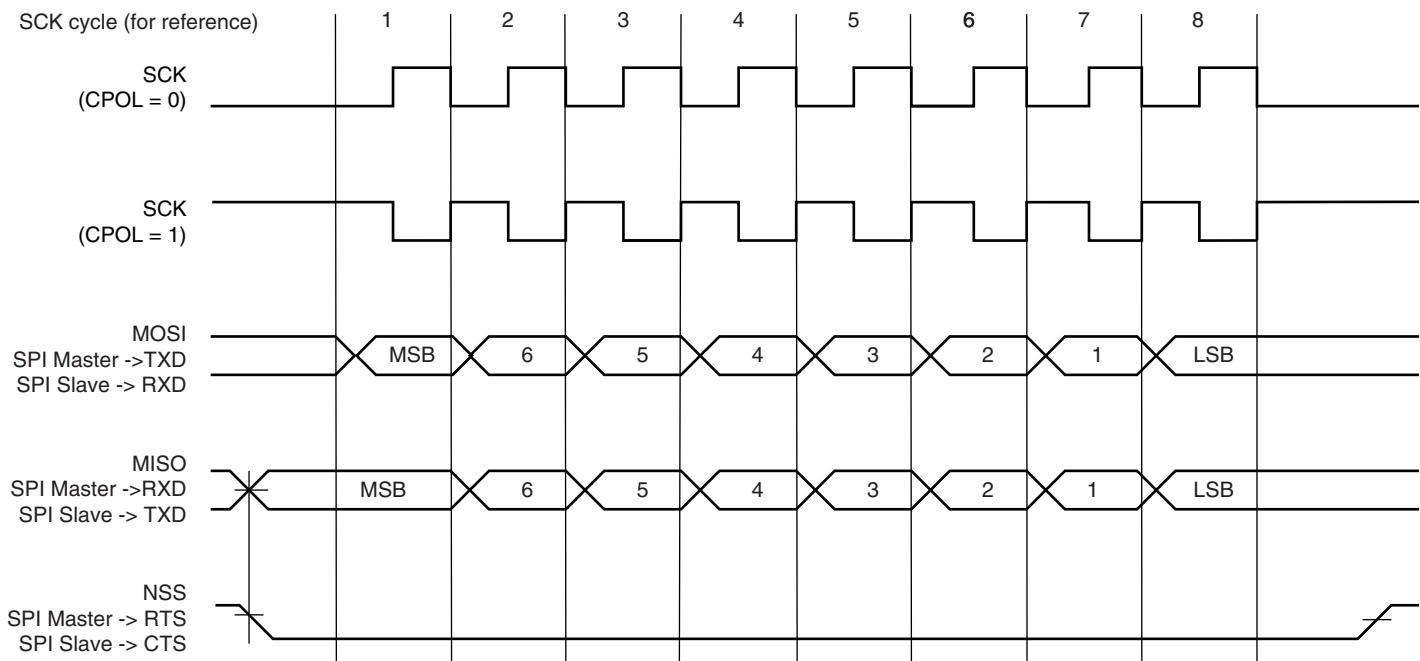
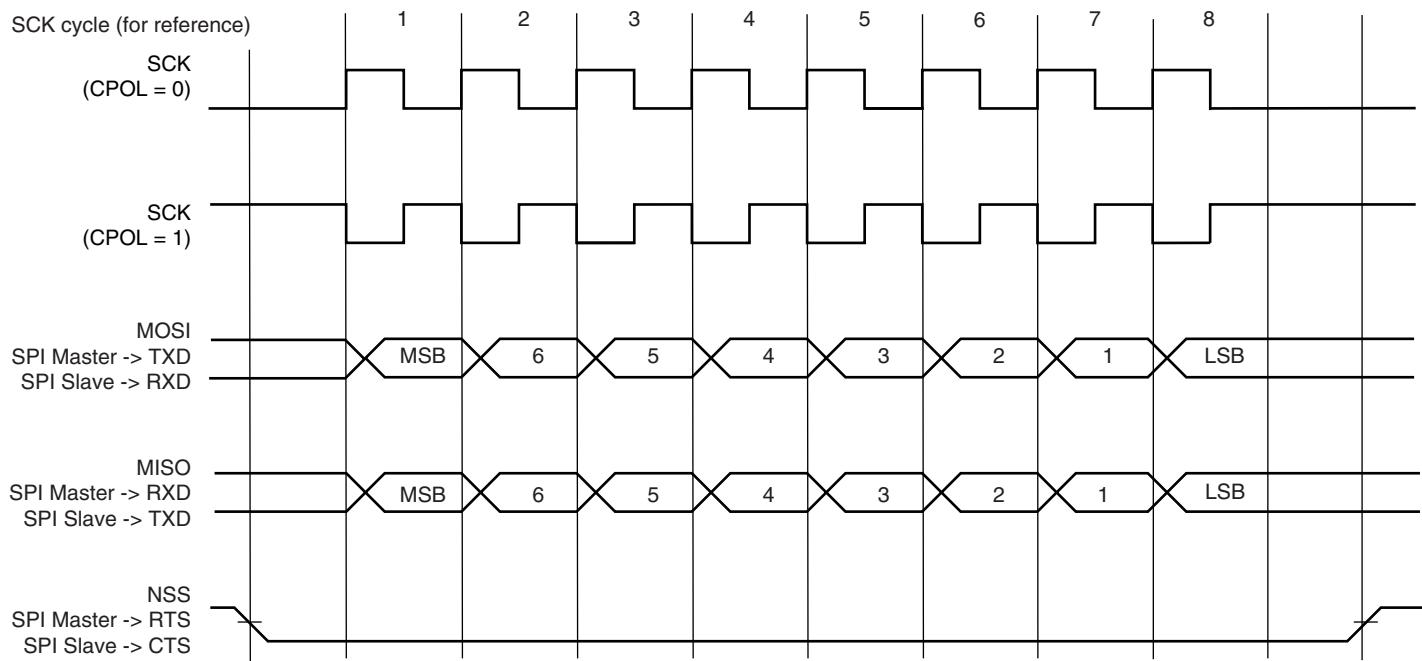
Up to 9 data bits are successively shifted out on the TXD pin at each rising or falling edge (depending of CPOL and CPHA) of the programmed serial clock. There is no Start bit, no Parity bit and no Stop bit.

The number of data bits is selected by the CHRL field and the MODE 9 bit in the Mode Register (US\_MR). The 9 bits are selected by setting the MODE 9 bit regardless of the CHRL field. The MSB data bit is always sent first in SPI Mode (Master or Slave).

Four combinations of polarity and phase are available for data transfers. The clock polarity is programmed with the CPOL bit in the Mode Register. The clock phase is programmed with the CPHA bit. These two parameters determine the edges of the clock signal upon which data is driven and sampled. Each of the two parameters has two possible states, resulting in four possible combinations that are incompatible with one another. Thus, a master/slave pair must use the same parameter pair values to communicate. If multiple slaves are used and fixed in different configurations, the master must reconfigure itself each time it needs to communicate with a different slave.

**Table 30-14.** SPI Bus Protocol Mode

SPI Bus Protocol Mode	CPOL	CPHA
0	0	1
1	0	0
2	1	1
3	1	0

**Figure 30-28.** SPI Transfer Format (CPHA=1, 8 bits per transfer)**Figure 30-29.** SPI Transfer Format (CPHA=0, 8 bits per transfer)

#### 30.7.7.4 Receiver and Transmitter Control

See “[Receiver and Transmitter Control](#)” on page 533.

### 30.7.7.5 Character Transmission

The characters are sent by writing in the Transmit Holding Register (US\_THR). An additional condition for transmitting a character can be added when the USART is configured in SPI master mode. In the USART\_MR register, the value configured on INACK field can prevent any character transmission (even if US\_THR has been written) while the receiver side is not ready (character not read). When INACK equals 0, the character is transmitted whatever the receiver status. If INACK is set to 1, the transmitter waits for the receiver holding register to be read before transmitting the character (RXRDY flag cleared), thus preventing any overflow (character loss) on the receiver side.

The transmitter reports two status bits in the Channel Status Register (US\_CSR): TXRDY (Transmitter Ready), which indicates that US\_THR is empty and TXEMPTY, which indicates that all the characters written in US\_THR have been processed. When the current character processing is completed, the last character written in US\_THR is transferred into the Shift Register of the transmitter and US\_THR becomes empty, thus TXRDY rises.

Both TXRDY and TXEMPTY bits are low when the transmitter is disabled. Writing a character in US\_THR while TXRDY is low has no effect and the written character is lost.

If the USART is in SPI Slave Mode and if a character must be sent while the Transmit Holding Register (US\_THR) is empty, the UNRE (Underrun Error) bit is set. The TXD transmission line stays at high level during all this time. The UNRE bit is cleared by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the RSTSTA (Reset Status) bit to 1.

In SPI Master Mode, the slave select line (NSS) is asserted at low level 1 Tbit (Time bit) before the transmission of the MSB bit and released at high level 1 Tbit after the transmission of the LSB bit. So, the slave select line (NSS) is always released between each character transmission and a minimum delay of 3 Tbits always inserted. However, in order to address slave devices supporting the CSAAT mode (Chip Select Active After Transfer), the slave select line (NSS) can be forced at low level by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the RTSEN bit to 1. The slave select line (NSS) can be released at high level only by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the RTSDIS bit to 1 (for example, when all data have been transferred to the slave device).

In SPI Slave Mode, the transmitter does not require a falling edge of the slave select line (NSS) to initiate a character transmission but only a low level. However, this low level must be present on the slave select line (NSS) at least 1 Tbit before the first serial clock cycle corresponding to the MSB bit.

### 30.7.7.6 Character Reception

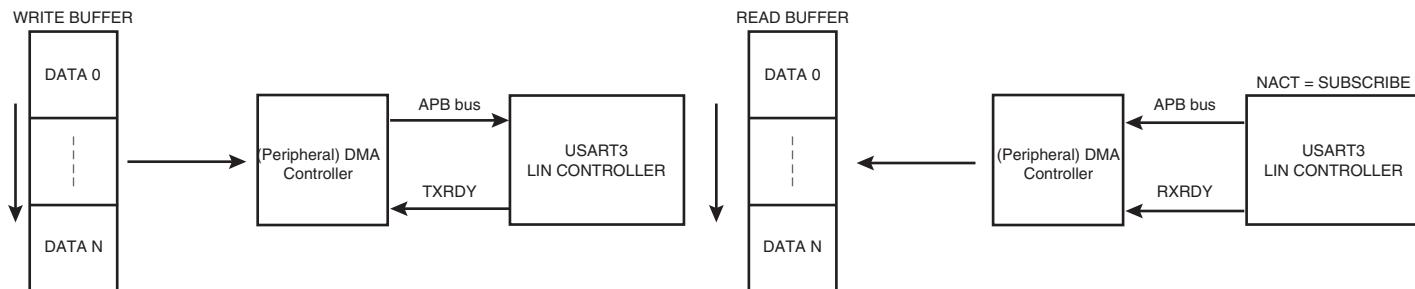
When a character reception is completed, it is transferred to the Receive Holding Register (US\_RHR) and the RXRDY bit in the Status Register (US\_CSR) rises. If a character is completed while RXRDY is set, the OVRE (Overrun Error) bit is set. The last character is transferred into US\_RHR and overwrites the previous one. The OVRE bit is cleared by writing the Control Register (US\_CR) with the RSTSTA (Reset Status) bit to 1.

To ensure correct behavior of the receiver in SPI Slave Mode, the master device sending the frame must ensure a minimum delay of 1 Tbit between each character transmission. The receiver does not require a falling edge of the slave select line (NSS) to initiate a character reception but only a low level. However, this low level must be present on the slave select line (NSS) at least 1 Tbit before the first serial clock cycle corresponding to the MSB bit.

### 30.7.7.7 Receiver Timeout

Because the receiver baudrate clock is active only during data transfers in SPI Mode, a receiver timeout is impossible in this mode, whatever the Time-out value is (field TO) in the Time-out Register (US\_RTOR).

### 30.7.8 Test Modes

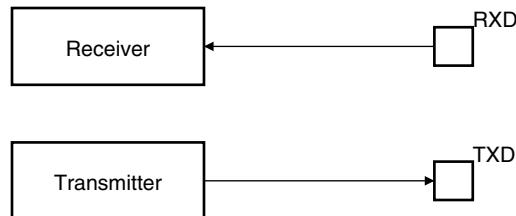


The USART can be programmed to operate in three different test modes. The internal loopback capability allows on-board diagnostics. In the loopback mode the USART interface pins are disconnected or not and reconfigured for loopback internally or externally.

#### 30.7.8.1 Normal Mode

Normal mode connects the RXD pin on the receiver input and the transmitter output on the TXD pin.

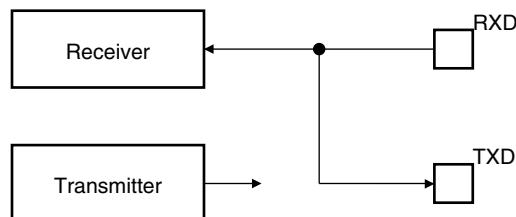
**Figure 30-30.** Normal Mode Configuration



#### 30.7.8.2 Automatic Echo Mode

Automatic echo mode allows bit-by-bit retransmission. When a bit is received on the RXD pin, it is sent to the TXD pin, as shown in [Figure 30-31](#). Programming the transmitter has no effect on the TXD pin. The RXD pin is still connected to the receiver input, thus the receiver remains active.

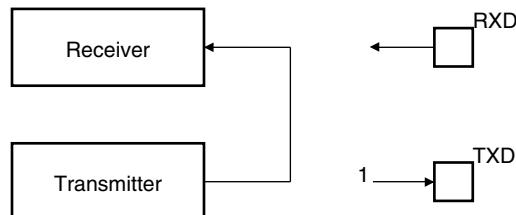
**Figure 30-31.** Automatic Echo Mode Configuration



### 30.7.8.3 Local Loopback Mode

Local loopback mode connects the output of the transmitter directly to the input of the receiver, as shown in [Figure 30-32](#). The TXD and RXD pins are not used. The RXD pin has no effect on the receiver and the TXD pin is continuously driven high, as in idle state.

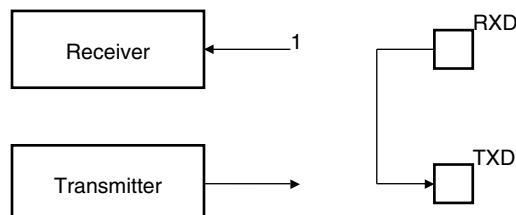
**Figure 30-32.** Local Loopback Mode Configuration



### 30.7.8.4 Remote Loopback Mode

Remote loopback mode directly connects the RXD pin to the TXD pin, as shown in [Figure 30-33](#). The transmitter and the receiver are disabled and have no effect. This mode allows bit-by-bit retransmission.

**Figure 30-33.** Remote Loopback Mode Configuration



## 30.7.9 Write Protection Registers

To prevent any single software error that may corrupt USART behavior, certain address spaces can be write-protected by setting the WPEN bit in the USART Write Protect Mode Register (US\_WPMR).

If a write access to the protected registers is detected, then the WPVS flag in the USART Write Protect Status Register (US\_WPSR) is set and the field WPVSR indicates in which register the write access has been attempted.

The WPVS flag is reset by writing the USART Write Protect Mode Register (US\_WPMR) with the appropriate access key, WPKEY.

The protected registers are:

- [“USART Mode Register”](#)
- [“USART Baud Rate Generator Register”](#)
- [“USART Receiver Time-out Register”](#)
- [“USART Transmitter Timeguard Register”](#)
- [“USART FI DI RATIO Register”](#)
- [“USART IrDA FILTER Register”](#)

## 30.8 Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) User Interface

**Table 30-15.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x0000	Control Register	US_CR	Write-only	–
0x0004	Mode Register	US_MR	Read-write	–
0x0008	Interrupt Enable Register	US_IER	Write-only	–
0x000C	Interrupt Disable Register	US_IDR	Write-only	–
0x0010	Interrupt Mask Register	US_IMR	Read-only	0x0
0x0014	Channel Status Register	US_CSR	Read-only	–
0x0018	Receiver Holding Register	US_RHR	Read-only	0x0
0x001C	Transmitter Holding Register	US_THR	Write-only	–
0x0020	Baud Rate Generator Register	US_BRGR	Read-write	0x0
0x0024	Receiver Time-out Register	US_RTOR	Read-write	0x0
0x0028	Transmitter Timeguard Register	US_TTGR	Read-write	0x0
0x2C - 0x3C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x0040	FI DI Ratio Register	US_FIDI	Read-write	0x174
0x0044	Number of Errors Register	US_NER	Read-only	–
0x0048	Reserved	–	–	–
0x004C	IrDA Filter Register	US_IF	Read-write	0x0
0xE4	Write Protect Mode Register	US_WPMR	Read-write	0x0
0xE8	Write Protect Status Register	US_WPSR	Read-only	0x0
0x5C - 0xFC	Reserved	–	–	–
0x100 - 0x128	Reserved for PDC Registers	–	–	–

### 30.8.1 USART Control Register

**Name:** US\_CR

**Addresses:** 0x40024000 (0), 0x40028000 (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	RTSDIS/RCS	RTSEN/FCS	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RETTO	RSTNACK	RSTIT	SENDA	STTTO	STPBRK	STTBRK	RSTSTA
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXDIS	TXEN	RXDIS	RXEN	RSTTX	RSTRX	-	-

- **RSTRX: Reset Receiver**

0: No effect.

1: Resets the receiver.

- **RSTTX: Reset Transmitter**

0: No effect.

1: Resets the transmitter.

- **RXEN: Receiver Enable**

0: No effect.

1: Enables the receiver, if RXDIS is 0.

- **RXDIS: Receiver Disable**

0: No effect.

1: Disables the receiver.

- **TXEN: Transmitter Enable**

0: No effect.

1: Enables the transmitter if TXDIS is 0.

- **TXDIS: Transmitter Disable**

0: No effect.

1: Disables the transmitter.

- **RSTSTA: Reset Status Bits**

0: No effect.

1: Resets the status bits PARE, FRAME, OVRE, **UNRE** and RXBRK in US\_CSR.

- **STTBRK: Start Break**

0: No effect.

1: Starts transmission of a break after the characters present in US\_THR and the Transmit Shift Register have been transmitted. No effect if a break is already being transmitted.

- **STPBRK: Stop Break**

0: No effect.

1: Stops transmission of the break after a minimum of one character length and transmits a high level during 12-bit periods. No effect if no break is being transmitted.

- **STTTO: Start Time-out**

0: No effect.

1: Starts waiting for a character before clocking the time-out counter. Resets the status bit TIMEOUT in US\_CSR.

- **SENDA: Send Address**

0: No effect.

1: In Multidrop Mode only, the next character written to the US\_THR is sent with the address bit set.

- **RSTIT: Reset Iterations**

0: No effect.

1: Resets ITERATION in US\_CSR. No effect if the ISO7816 is not enabled.

- **RSTNACK: Reset Non Acknowledge**

0: No effect

1: Resets NACK in US\_CSR.

- **RETTTO: Rearm Time-out**

0: No effect

1: Restart Time-out

- **RTSEN: Request to Send Enable**

0: No effect.

1: Drives the pin RTS to 0.

- **FCS: Force SPI Chip Select**

– Applicable if USART operates in SPI Master Mode (USART\_MODE = 0xE):

FCS = 0: No effect.

FCS = 1: Forces the Slave Select Line NSS (RTS pin) to 0, even if USART is no transmitting, in order to address SPI slave devices supporting the CSAAT Mode (Chip Select Active After Transfer).



- **RTSDIS: Request to Send Disable**

0: No effect.

1: Drives the pin RTS to 1.

- **RCS: Release SPI Chip Select**

– Applicable if USART operates in SPI Master Mode (USART\_MODE = 0xE):

RCS = 0: No effect.

RCS = 1: Releases the Slave Select Line NSS (RTS pin).

### 30.8.2 USART Mode Register

**Name:** US\_MR

**Addresses:** 0x40024004 (0), 0x40028004 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	FILTER	-	MAX_ITERATION		
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
INVDATA	-	DSNACK	INACK	OVER	CLKO	MODE9	MSBF/CPOL
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CHMODE		NBSTOP		PAR		SYNC/CPHA	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CHRL		USCLKS		USART_MODE			

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “USART Write Protect Mode Register” on page 577.

- **USART\_MODE**

Value	Name	Description
0x0	NORMAL	Normal mode
0x1	RS485	RS485
0x2	HW_HANDSHAKING	Hardware Handshaking
0x4	IS07816_T_0	IS07816 Protocol: T = 0
0x6	IS07816_T_1	IS07816 Protocol: T = 1
0x8	IRDA	IrDA
0xE	SPI_MASTER	SPI Master
0xF	SPI_SLAVE	SPI Slave

- **USCLKS: Clock Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	MCK	Master Clock MCK is selected
1	DIV	Internal Clock Divided MCK/DIV (DIV=8) is selected
3	SCK	Serial Clock SLK is selected

- **CHRL: Character Length.**

Value	Name	Description
0	5_BIT	Character length is 5 bits
1	6_BIT	Character length is 6 bits
2	7_BIT	Character length is 7 bits
3	8_BIT	Character length is 8 bits

- SYNC: Synchronous Mode Select**

0: USART operates in Asynchronous Mode.

1: USART operates in Synchronous Mode.

- CPHA: SPI Clock Phase**

– Applicable if USART operates in SPI Mode (USART\_MODE = 0xE or 0xF):

CPHA = 0: Data is changed on the leading edge of SPCK and captured on the following edge of SPCK.

CPHA = 1: Data is captured on the leading edge of SPCK and changed on the following edge of SPCK.

CPHA determines which edge of SPCK causes data to change and which edge causes data to be captured. CPHA is used with CPOL to produce the required clock/data relationship between master and slave devices.

- PAR: Parity Type**

Value	Name	Description
0	EVEN	Even parity
1	ODD	Odd parity
2	SPACE	Parity forced to 0 (Space)
3	MARK	Parity forced to 1 (Mark)
4	NO	No parity
6	MULTIDROP	Multidrop mode

- NBSTOP: Number of Stop Bits**

Value	Name	Description
0	1_BIT	1 stop bit
1	1_5_BIT	1.5 stop bit (SYNC = 0) or reserved (SYNC = 1)
2	2_BIT	2 stop bits

- CHMODE: Channel Mode**

Value	Name	Description
0	NORMAL	Normal Mode
1	AUTOMATIC	Automatic Echo. Receiver input is connected to the TXD pin.
2	LOCAL_LOOPBACK	Local Loopback. Transmitter output is connected to the Receiver Input.
3	REMOTE_LOOPBACK	Remote Loopback. RXD pin is internally connected to the TXD pin.

- MSBF: Bit Order**

0: Least Significant Bit is sent/received first.

1: Most Significant Bit is sent/received first.

- CPOL: SPI Clock Polarity**

– Applicable if USART operates in SPI Mode (Slave or Master, USART\_MODE = 0xE or 0xF):

CPOL = 0: The inactive state value of SPCK is logic level zero.

CPOL = 1: The inactive state value of SPCK is logic level one.



CPOL is used to determine the inactive state value of the serial clock (SPCK). It is used with CPHA to produce the required clock/data relationship between master and slave devices.

- MODE9: 9-bit Character Length**

0: CHRL defines character length.

1: 9-bit character length.

- CLKO: Clock Output Select**

0: The USART does not drive the SCK pin.

1: The USART drives the SCK pin if USCLKS does not select the external clock SCK.

- OVER: Oversampling Mode**

0: 16x Oversampling.

1: 8x Oversampling.

- INACK: Inhibit Non Acknowledge**

0: The NACK is generated.

1: The NACK is not generated.

Note: In SPI master mode, if INACK = 0 the character transmission starts as soon as a character is written into US\_THR register (assuming TXRDY was set). When INACK is 1, an additional condition must be met. The character transmission starts when a character is written and only if RXRDY flag is cleared (Receiver Holding Register has been read).

- DSNACK: Disable Successive NACK**

0: NACK is sent on the ISO line as soon as a parity error occurs in the received character (unless INACK is set).

1: Successive parity errors are counted up to the value specified in the MAX\_ITERATION field. These parity errors generate a NACK on the ISO line. As soon as this value is reached, no additional NACK is sent on the ISO line. The flag ITERATION is asserted.

- INVDATA: INverted Data**

0: The data field transmitted on TXD line is the same as the one written in US\_THR register or the content read in US\_RHR is the same as RXD line. Normal mode of operation.

1: The data field transmitted on TXD line is inverted (voltage polarity only) compared to the value written on US\_THR register or the content read in US\_RHR is inverted compared to what is received on RXD line (or ISO7816 IO line). Inverted Mode of operation, useful for contactless card application. To be used with configuration bit MSBF.

- MAX\_ITERATION**

Defines the maximum number of iterations in mode ISO7816, protocol T= 0.

- FILTER: Infrared Receive Line Filter**

0: The USART does not filter the receive line.

1: The USART filters the receive line using a three-sample filter (1/16-bit clock) (2 over 3 majority).

### 30.8.3 USART Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** US\_IER

**Addresses:** 0x40024008 (0), 0x40028008 (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	CTSIC	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	NACK	RXBUFF	TXBUFE	ITER/UNRE	TXEMPTY	TIMEOUT
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PARE	FRAME	OVRE	ENDTX	ENDRX	RXBRK	TXRDY	RXRDY

0: No effect

1: Enables the corresponding interrupt.

- **RXRDY: RXRDY Interrupt Enable**
- **TXRDY: TXRDY Interrupt Enable**
- **RXBRK: Receiver Break Interrupt Enable**
- **ENDRX: End of Receive Transfer Interrupt Enable**
- **ENDTX: End of Transmit Interrupt Enable**
- **OVRE: Overrun Error Interrupt Enable**
- **FRAME: Framing Error Interrupt Enable**
- **PARE: Parity Error Interrupt Enable**
- **TIMEOUT: Time-out Interrupt Enable**
- **TXEMPTY: TXEMPTY Interrupt Enable**
- **ITER: Max number of Repetitions Reached**
- **UNRE: SPI Underrun Error**
- **TXBUFE: Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable**
- **RXBUFF: Buffer Full Interrupt Enable**
- **NACK: Non AcknowledgeInterrupt Enable**
- **CTSIC: Clear to Send Input Change Interrupt Enable**

### 30.8.4 USART Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** US\_IDR

**Addresses:** 0x4002400C (0), 0x4002800C (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	CTSIC	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	NACK	RXBUFF	TXBUFE	ITER/UNRE	TXEMPTY	TIMEOUT
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PARE	FRAME	OVRE	ENDTX	ENDRX	RXBRK	TXRDY	RXRDY

0: No effect

1: Disables the corresponding interrupt.

- **RXRDY: RXRDY Interrupt Disable**
- **TXRDY: TXRDY Interrupt Disable**
- **RXBRK: Receiver Break Interrupt Disable**
- **ENDRX: End of Receive Transfer Interrupt Disable**
- **ENDTX: End of Transmit Interrupt Disable**
- **OVRE: Overrun Error Interrupt Disable**
- **FRAME: Framing Error Interrupt Disable**
- **PARE: Parity Error Interrupt Disable**
- **TIMEOUT: Time-out Interrupt Disable**
- **TXEMPTY: TXEMPTY Interrupt Disable**
- **ITER: Max number of Repetitions Reached Disable**
- **UNRE: SPI Underrun Error Disable**
- **TXBUFE: Buffer Empty Interrupt Disable**
- **RXBUFF: Buffer Full Interrupt Disable**
- **NACK: Non AcknowledgeInterrupt Disable**
- **CTSIC: Clear to Send Input Change Interrupt Disable**

### 30.8.5 USART Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** US\_IMR

**Addresses:** 0x40024010 (0), 0x40028010 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	CTSIC	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	NACK	RXBUFF	TXBUFE	ITER/UNRE	TXEMPTY	TIMEOUT
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PARE	FRAME	OVRE	ENDTX	ENDRX	RXBRK	TXRDY	RXRDY

0: The corresponding interrupt is not enabled.

1: The corresponding interrupt is enabled.

- **RXRDY: RXRDY Interrupt Mask**
- **TXRDY: TXRDY Interrupt Mask**
- **RXBRK: Receiver Break Interrupt Mask**
- **ENDRX: End of Receive Transfer Interrupt Mask**
- **ENDTX: End of Transmit Interrupt Mask**
- **OVRE: Overrun Error Interrupt Mask**
- **FRAME: Framing Error Interrupt Mask**
- **PARE: Parity Error Interrupt Mask**
- **TIMEOUT: Time-out Interrupt Mask**
- **TXEMPTY: TXEMPTY Interrupt Mask**
- **ITER: Max number of Repetitions Reached Mask**
- **UNRE: SPI Underrun Error Mask**
- **TXBUFE: Buffer Empty Interrupt Mask**
- **RXBUFF: Buffer Full Interrupt Mask**
- **NACK: Non AcknowledgeInterrupt Mask**
- **CTSIC: Clear to Send Input Change Interrupt Mask**



### 30.8.6 USART Channel Status Register

**Name:** US\_CSR

**Addresses:** 0x40024014 (0), 0x40028014 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
CTS	-	-	-	CTSIC	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	NACK	RXBUFF	TXBUFE	ITER/UNRE	TXEMPTY	TIMEOUT
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PARE	FRAME	OVRE	ENDTX	ENDRX	RXBRK	TXRDY	RXRDY

- **RXRDY: Receiver Ready**

0: No complete character has been received since the last read of US\_RHR or the receiver is disabled. If characters were being received when the receiver was disabled, RXRDY changes to 1 when the receiver is enabled.

1: At least one complete character has been received and US\_RHR has not yet been read.

- **TXRDY: Transmitter Ready**

0: A character is in the US THR waiting to be transferred to the Transmit Shift Register, or an STTBRK command has been requested, or the transmitter is disabled. As soon as the transmitter is enabled, TXRDY becomes 1.

1: There is no character in the US THR.

- **RXBRK: Break Received/End of Break**

0: No Break received or End of Break detected since the last RSTSTA.

1: Break Received or End of Break detected since the last RSTSTA.

- **ENDRX: End of Receiver Transfer**

0: The End of Transfer signal from the Receive PDC channel is inactive.

1: The End of Transfer signal from the Receive PDC channel is active.

- **ENDTX: End of Transmitter Transfer**

0: The End of Transfer signal from the Transmit PDC channel is inactive.

1: The End of Transfer signal from the Transmit PDC channel is active.

- **OVRE: Overrun Error**

0: No overrun error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

1: At least one overrun error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

- **FRAME: Framing Error**

0: No stop bit has been detected low since the last RSTSTA.

1: At least one stop bit has been detected low since the last RSTSTA.



- **PARE: Parity Error**

0: No parity error has been detected since the last RSTSTA.

1: At least one parity error has been detected since the last RSTSTA.

- **TIMEOUT: Receiver Time-out**

0: There has not been a time-out since the last Start Time-out command (STTTO in US\_CR) or the Time-out Register is 0.

1: There has been a time-out since the last Start Time-out command (STTTO in US\_CR).

- **TXEMPTY: Transmitter Empty**

0: There are characters in either US\_THR or the Transmit Shift Register, or the transmitter is disabled.

1: There are no characters in US\_THR, nor in the Transmit Shift Register.

- **ITER: Max number of Repetitions Reached**

0: Maximum number of repetitions has not been reached since the last RSTSTA.

1: Maximum number of repetitions has been reached since the last RSTSTA.

- **UNRE: SPI Underrun Error**

– Applicable if USART operates in SPI Slave Mode (USART\_MODE = 0xF):

UNRE = 0: No SPI underrun error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

UNRE = 1: At least one SPI underrun error has occurred since the last RSTSTA.

- **TXBUFE: Transmission Buffer Empty**

0: The signal Buffer Empty from the Transmit PDC channel is inactive.

1: The signal Buffer Empty from the Transmit PDC channel is active.

- **RXBUFF: Reception Buffer Full**

0: The signal Buffer Full from the Receive PDC channel is inactive.

1: The signal Buffer Full from the Receive PDC channel is active.

- **NACK: Non AcknowledgeInterrupt**

0: Non Acknowledge has not been detected since the last RSTNACK.

1: At least one Non Acknowledge has been detected since the last RSTNACK.

- **CTSIC: Clear to Send Input Change Flag**

0: No input change has been detected on the CTS pin since the last read of US\_CSR.

1: At least one input change has been detected on the CTS pin since the last read of US\_CSR.

- **CTS: Image of CTS Input**

0: CTS is set to 0.

1: CTS is set to 1.

### 30.8.7 USART Receive Holding Register

**Name:** US\_RHR

**Addresses:** 0x40024018 (0), 0x40028018 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RXSYNH	-	-	-	-	-	-	RXCHR
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RXCHR							

- **RXCHR: Received Character**

Last character received if RXRDY is set.

- **RXSYNH: Received Sync**

0: Last Character received is a Data.

1: Last Character received is a Command.

### 30.8.8 USART Transmit Holding Register

**Name:** US\_THR

**Addresses:** 0x4002401C (0), 0x4002801C (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TXSYNH	-	-	-	-	-	-	TXCHR
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TXCHR							

- **TXCHR: Character to be Transmitted**

Next character to be transmitted after the current character if TXRDY is not set.

- **TXSYNH: Sync Field to be transmitted**

0: The next character sent is encoded as a data. Start Frame Delimiter is DATA SYNC.

1: The next character sent is encoded as a command. Start Frame Delimiter is COMMAND SYNC.

### 30.8.9 USART Baud Rate Generator Register

**Name:** US\_BRGR

**Addresses:** 0x40024020 (0), 0x40028020 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	FP	
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CD							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CD							

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “USART Write Protect Mode Register” on page 577.

- **CD: Clock Divider**

CD	USART_MODE ≠ ISO7816			USART_MODE = ISO7816
	SYNC = 0		SYNC = 1 or USART_MODE = SPI (Master or Slave)	
	OVER = 0	OVER = 1		
0	Baud Rate Clock Disabled			
1 to 65535	Baud Rate = Selected Clock/(16*CD)	Baud Rate = Selected Clock/(8*CD)	Baud Rate = Selected Clock /CD	Baud Rate = Selected Clock/(FI_DI_RATIO*CD)

- **FP: Fractional Part**

0: Fractional divider is disabled.

1 - 7: Baudrate resolution, defined by FP x 1/8.

### 30.8.10 USART Receiver Time-out Register

**Name:** US\_RTOR

**Addresses:** 0x40024024 (0), 0x40028024 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
TO							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TO							

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “USART Write Protect Mode Register” on page 577.

- **TO: Time-out Value**

0: The Receiver Time-out is disabled.

1 - 65535: The Receiver Time-out is enabled and the Time-out delay is TO x Bit Period.

### 30.8.11 USART Transmitter Timeguard Register

**Name:** US\_TTGR

**Addresses:** 0x40024028 (0), 0x40028028 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TG							

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “USART Write Protect Mode Register” on page 577.

- **TG: Timeguard Value**

0: The Transmitter Timeguard is disabled.

1 - 255: The Transmitter timeguard is enabled and the timeguard delay is TG x Bit Period.

### 30.8.12 USART FI DI RATIO Register

**Name:** US\_FIDI

**Addresses:** 0x40024040 (0), 0x40028040 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

**Reset Value:** 0x174

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	FI_DI_RATIO	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				FI_DI_RATIO			

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “USART Write Protect Mode Register” on page 577.

- **FI\_DI\_RATIO: FI Over DI Ratio Value**

0: If ISO7816 mode is selected, the Baud Rate Generator generates no signal.

1 - 2047: If ISO7816 mode is selected, the Baud Rate is the clock provided on SCK divided by FI\_DI\_RATIO.

### 30.8.13 USART Number of Errors Register

**Name:** US\_NER

**Addresses:** 0x40024044 (0), 0x40028044 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
NB_ERRORS							

- NB\_ERRORS: Number of Errors**

Total number of errors that occurred during an ISO7816 transfer. This register automatically clears when read.

### 30.8.14 USART IrDA FILTER Register

**Name:** US\_IF

**Addresses:** 0x4002404C (0), 0x4002804C (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
IRDA_FILTER							

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “USART Write Protect Mode Register” on page 577.

- **IRDA\_FILTER: IrDA Filter**

Sets the filter of the IrDA demodulator.

### 30.8.15 USART Write Protect Mode Register

**Name:** US\_WPMR

**Addresses:** 0x400240E4 (0), 0x400280E4 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

**Reset:** See [Table 30-15](#)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPEN

- **WPEN: Write Protect Enable**

0 = Disables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x555341 ("USA" in ASCII).

1 = Enables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x555341 ("USA" in ASCII).

Protects the registers:

- ["USART Mode Register" on page 561](#)
- ["USART Baud Rate Generator Register" on page 571](#)
- ["USART Receiver Time-out Register" on page 572](#)
- ["USART Transmitter Timeguard Register" on page 573](#)
- ["USART F1 DI RATIO Register" on page 574](#)
- ["USART IrDA FILTER Register" on page 576](#)

- **WPKEY: Write Protect KEY**

Should be written at value 0x555341 ("USA" in ASCII). Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation of the WPEN bit. Always reads as 0.

### 30.8.16 USART Write Protect Status Register

**Name:** US\_WPSR

**Addresses:** 0x400240E8 (0), 0x400280E8 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

**Reset:** See [Table 30-15](#)

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPVSRC							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPVSRC							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPVS

- **WPVS: Write Protect Violation Status**

0 = No Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last read of the US\_WPSR register.

1 = A Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last read of the US\_WPSR register. If this violation is an unauthorized attempt to write a protected register, the associated violation is reported into field WPVSRC.

- **WPVSRC: Write Protect Violation Source**

When WPVS is active, this field indicates the write-protected register (through address offset or code) in which a write access has been attempted.

Note: Reading US\_WPSR automatically clears all fields.

## 31. Timer Counter (TC)

### 31.1 Description

The Timer Counter (TC) includes three identical 16-bit Timer Counter channels.

Each channel can be independently programmed to perform a wide range of functions including frequency measurement, event counting, interval measurement, pulse generation, delay timing and pulse width modulation.

Each channel has three external clock inputs, five internal clock inputs and two multi-purpose input/output signals which can be configured by the user. Each channel drives an internal interrupt signal which can be programmed to generate processor interrupts.

The Timer Counter (TC) embeds a quadrature decoder logic connected in front of the 3 timers and driven by TIOA0, TIOB0 and TIOA1 inputs. When enabled, the quadrature decoder performs the input lines filtering, decoding of quadrature signals and connects to the 3 timers/counters in order to read the position and speed of the motor through user interface.

The Timer Counter block has two global registers which act upon all three TC channels.

The Block Control Register allows the three channels to be started simultaneously with the same instruction.

The Block Mode Register defines the external clock inputs for each channel, allowing them to be chained.

[Table 31-1](#) gives the assignment of the device Timer Counter clock inputs common to Timer Counter 0 to 2.

**Table 31-1.** Timer Counter Clock Assignment

Name	Definition
TIMER_CLOCK1	MCK/2
TIMER_CLOCK2	MCK/8
TIMER_CLOCK3	MCK/32
TIMER_CLOCK4	MCK/128
TIMER_CLOCK5 <sup>(1)</sup>	SLCK

Note: 1. When Slow Clock is selected for Master Clock (CSS = 0 in PMC Master Clock Register), TIMER\_CLOCK5 input is Master Clock, i.e., Slow Clock modified by PRES and MDIV fields.

### 31.2 Embedded Characteristics

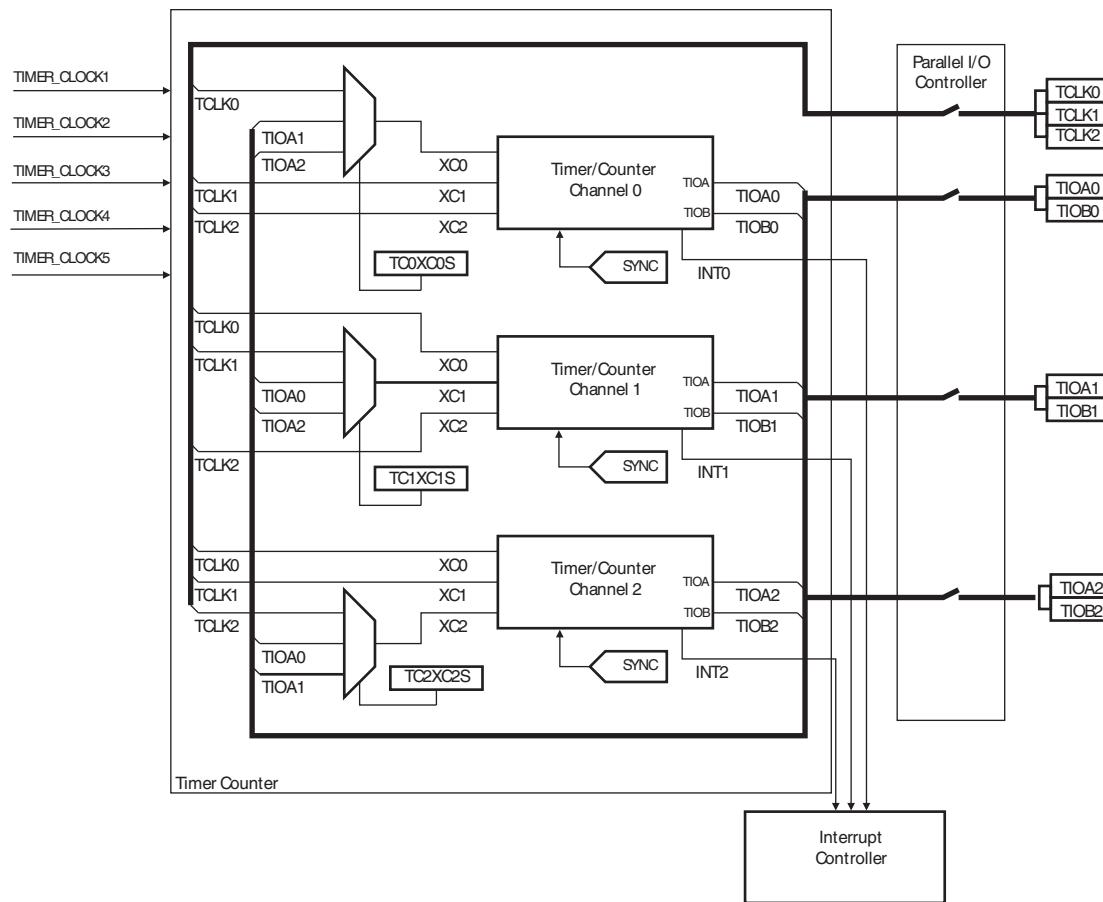
- Three 16-bit Timer Counter Channels
- A Wide Range of Functions Including:
  - Frequency Measurement
  - Event Counting
  - Interval Measurement
  - Pulse Generation
  - Delay Timing
  - Pulse Width Modulation
  - Up/down Capabilities



- Quadrature Decoder Logic
- 2-bit Gray Up/Down Count for Stepper Motor
- Each Channel is User-configurable and Contains:
  - Three External Clock Inputs
  - Five Internal Clock Inputs
  - Two Multi-purpose Input/Output Signals
- Internal Interrupt Signal
- Two Global Registers that Act on All Three TC Channels
- Configuration Registers can be write protected

### 31.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 31-1.** Timer Counter Block Diagram



**Table 31-2.** Signal Name Description

Block/Channel	Signal Name	Description
Channel Signal	XC0, XC1, XC2	External Clock Inputs
	TIOA	Capture Mode: Timer Counter Input Waveform Mode: Timer Counter Output
	TIOB	Capture Mode: Timer Counter Input Waveform Mode: Timer Counter Input/Output
	INT	Interrupt Signal Output
	SYNC	Synchronization Input Signal

## 31.4 Pin Name List

Pin Name	Description	Type
TCLK0-TCLK2	External Clock Input	Input
TIOA0-TIOA2	I/O Line A	I/O
TIOB0-TIOB2	I/O Line B	I/O

## 31.5 Product Dependencies

### 31.5.1 I/O Lines

The pins used for interfacing the compliant external devices may be multiplexed with PIO lines. The programmer must first program the PIO controllers to assign the TC pins to their peripheral functions.

**Table 31-3. I/O Lines**

Instance	Signal	I/O Line	Peripheral
TC0	TCLK0	PA4	B
TC0	TCLK1	PA28	B
TC0	TCLK2	PA29	B
TC0	TIOA0	PA0	B
TC0	TIOA1	PA15	B
TC0	TIOA2	PA26	B
TC0	TIOB0	PA1	B
TC0	TIOB1	PA16	B
TC0	TIOB2	PA27	B
TC1	TCLK3	PC25	B
TC1	TCLK4	PC28	B
TC1	TCLK5	PC31	B
TC1	TIOA3	PC23	B
TC1	TIOA4	PC26	B
TC1	TIOA5	PC29	B
TC1	TIOB3	PC24	B
TC1	TIOB4	PC27	B
TC1	TIOB5	PC30	B

### 31.5.2 Power Management

The TC is clocked through the Power Management Controller (PMC), thus the programmer must first configure the PMC to enable the Timer Counter clock.

### 31.5.3 Interrupt

The TC has an interrupt line connected to the Interrupt Controller (IC). Handling the TC interrupt requires programming the IC before configuring the TC.

## 31.6 Functional Description

### 31.6.1 TC Description

The three channels of the Timer Counter are independent and identical in operation except when quadrature decoder is enabled. The registers for channel programming are listed in [Table 31-4 on page 603](#).

### 31.6.2 16-bit Counter

Each channel is organized around a 16-bit counter. The value of the counter is incremented at each positive edge of the selected clock. When the counter has reached the value 0xFFFF and passes to 0x0000, an overflow occurs and the COVFS bit in TC\_SR (Status Register) is set.

The current value of the counter is accessible in real time by reading the Counter Value Register, TC\_CV. The counter can be reset by a trigger. In this case, the counter value passes to 0x0000 on the next valid edge of the selected clock.

### 31.6.3 Clock Selection

At block level, input clock signals of each channel can either be connected to the external inputs TCLK0, TCLK1 or TCLK2, or be connected to the internal I/O signals TIOA0, TIOA1 or TIOA2 for chaining by programming the TC\_BMR (Block Mode). See [Figure 31-2 "Clock Chaining Selection"](#).

Each channel can independently select an internal or external clock source for its counter:

- Internal clock signals: TIMER\_CLOCK1, TIMER\_CLOCK2, TIMER\_CLOCK3, TIMER\_CLOCK4, TIMER\_CLOCK5
- External clock signals: XC0, XC1 or XC2

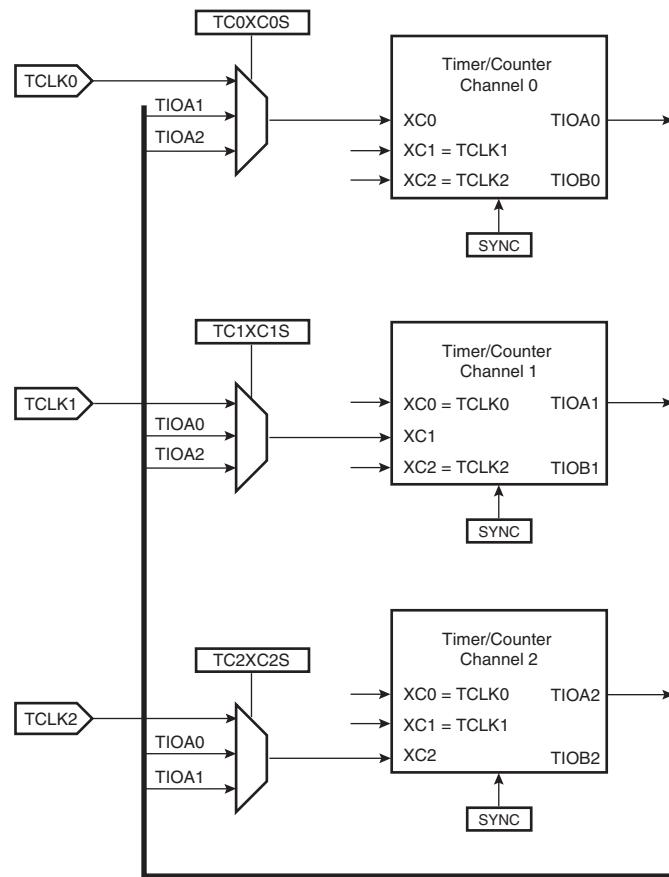
This selection is made by the TCCLKS bits in the TC Channel Mode Register.

The selected clock can be inverted with the CLKI bit in TC\_CMR. This allows counting on the opposite edges of the clock.

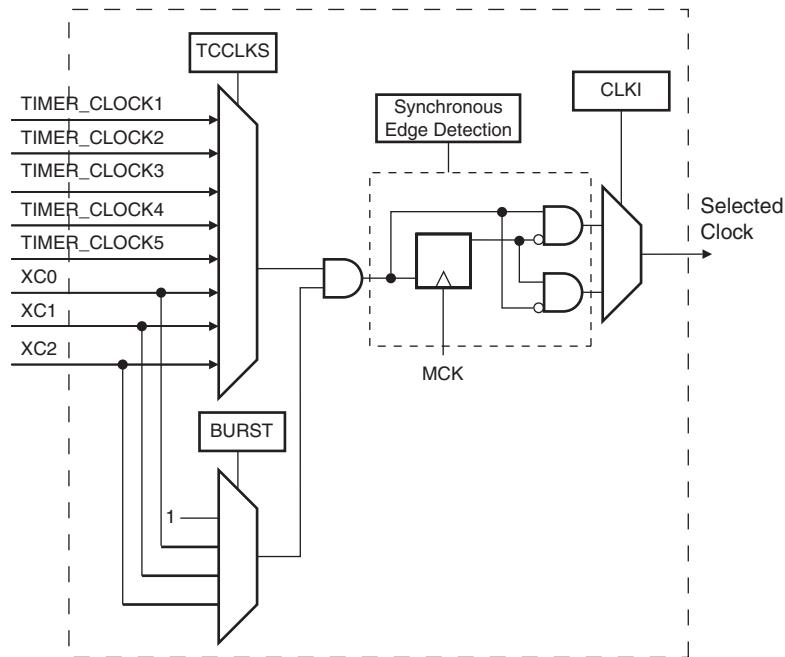
The burst function allows the clock to be validated when an external signal is high. The BURST parameter in the Mode Register defines this signal (none, XC0, XC1, XC2). See [Figure 31-3 "Clock Selection"](#)

**Note:** In all cases, if an external clock is used, the duration of each of its levels must be longer than the master clock period. The external clock frequency must be at least 2.5 times lower than the master clock

**Figure 31-2.** Clock Chaining Selection



**Figure 31-3.** Clock Selection

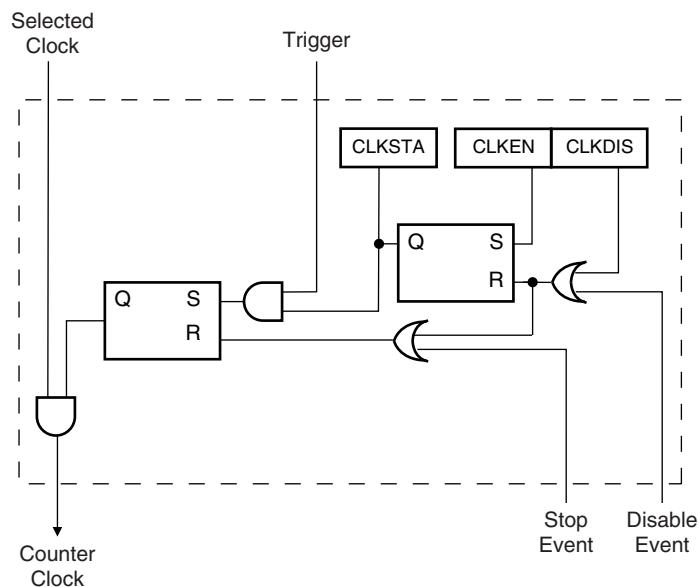


### 31.6.4 Clock Control

The clock of each counter can be controlled in two different ways: it can be enabled/disabled and started/stopped. See [Figure 31-4](#).

- The clock can be enabled or disabled by the user with the CLKEN and the CLKDIS commands in the Control Register. In Capture Mode it can be disabled by an RB load event if LDBDIS is set to 1 in TC\_CM.R. In Waveform Mode, it can be disabled by an RC Compare event if CPCDIS is set to 1 in TC\_CM.R. When disabled, the start or the stop actions have no effect: only a CLKEN command in the Control Register can re-enable the clock. When the clock is enabled, the CLKSTA bit is set in the Status Register.
- The clock can also be started or stopped: a trigger (software, synchro, external or compare) always starts the clock. The clock can be stopped by an RB load event in Capture Mode (LDBSTOP = 1 in TC\_CM.R) or a RC compare event in Waveform Mode (CPCSTOP = 1 in TC\_CM.R). The start and the stop commands have effect only if the clock is enabled.

**Figure 31-4.** Clock Control



### 31.6.5 TC Operating Modes

Each channel can independently operate in two different modes:

- Capture Mode provides measurement on signals.
- Waveform Mode provides wave generation.

The TC Operating Mode is programmed with the WAVE bit in the TC Channel Mode Register.

In Capture Mode, TIOA and TIOB are configured as inputs.

In Waveform Mode, TIOA is always configured to be an output and TIOB is an output if it is not selected to be the external trigger.

### 31.6.6 Trigger

A trigger resets the counter and starts the counter clock. Three types of triggers are common to both modes, and a fourth external trigger is available to each mode.

Regardless of the trigger used, it will be taken into account at the following active edge of the selected clock. This means that the counter value can be read differently from zero just after a trigger, especially when a low frequency signal is selected as the clock.

The following triggers are common to both modes:

- Software Trigger: Each channel has a software trigger, available by setting SWTRG in TC\_CCR.
- SYNC: Each channel has a synchronization signal SYNC. When asserted, this signal has the same effect as a software trigger. The SYNC signals of all channels are asserted simultaneously by writing TC\_BCR (Block Control) with SYNC set.
- Compare RC Trigger: RC is implemented in each channel and can provide a trigger when the counter value matches the RC value if CPCTRG is set in TC\_CM.R.

The channel can also be configured to have an external trigger. In Capture Mode, the external trigger signal can be selected between TIOA and TIOB. In Waveform Mode, an external event can be programmed on one of the following signals: TIOB, XC0, XC1 or XC2. This external event can then be programmed to perform a trigger by setting ENETRG in TC\_CM.R.

If an external trigger is used, the duration of the pulses must be longer than the master clock period in order to be detected.

### 31.6.7 Capture Operating Mode

This mode is entered by clearing the WAVE parameter in TC\_CM.R (Channel Mode Register).

Capture Mode allows the TC channel to perform measurements such as pulse timing, frequency, period, duty cycle and phase on TIOA and TIOB signals which are considered as inputs.

[Figure 31-5](#) shows the configuration of the TC channel when programmed in Capture Mode.

### 31.6.8 Capture Registers A and B

Registers A and B (RA and RB) are used as capture registers. This means that they can be loaded with the counter value when a programmable event occurs on the signal TIOA.

The LDRA parameter in TC\_CM.R defines the TIOA edge for the loading of register A, and the LDRB parameter defines the TIOA edge for the loading of Register B.

RA is loaded only if it has not been loaded since the last trigger or if RB has been loaded since the last loading of RA.

RB is loaded only if RA has been loaded since the last trigger or the last loading of RB.

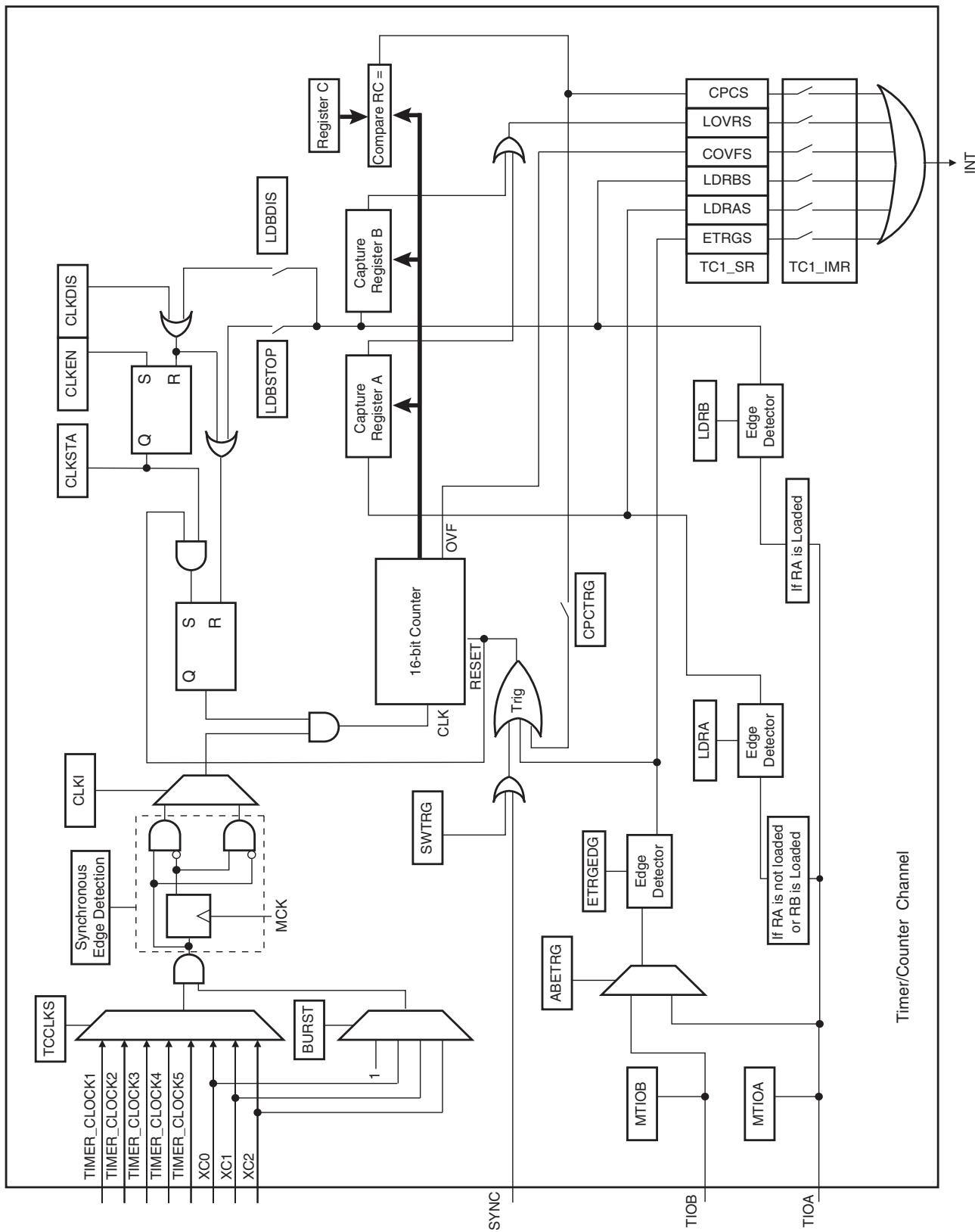
Loading RA or RB before the read of the last value loaded sets the Overrun Error Flag (LOVRS) in TC\_SR (Status Register). In this case, the old value is overwritten.

### 31.6.9 Trigger Conditions

In addition to the SYNC signal, the software trigger and the RC compare trigger, an external trigger can be defined.

The ABETRG bit in TC\_CM.R selects TIOA or TIOB input signal as an external trigger. The ETRGEDG parameter defines the edge (rising, falling or both) detected to generate an external trigger. If ETRGEDG = 0 (none), the external trigger is disabled.

Figure 31-5. Capture Mode



### 31.6.10 Waveform Operating Mode

Waveform operating mode is entered by setting the WAVE parameter in TC\_CMR (Channel Mode Register).

In Waveform Operating Mode the TC channel generates 1 or 2 PWM signals with the same frequency and independently programmable duty cycles, or generates different types of one-shot or repetitive pulses.

In this mode, TIOA is configured as an output and TIOB is defined as an output if it is not used as an external event (EEVT parameter in TC\_CMR).

[Figure 31-6](#) shows the configuration of the TC channel when programmed in Waveform Operating Mode.

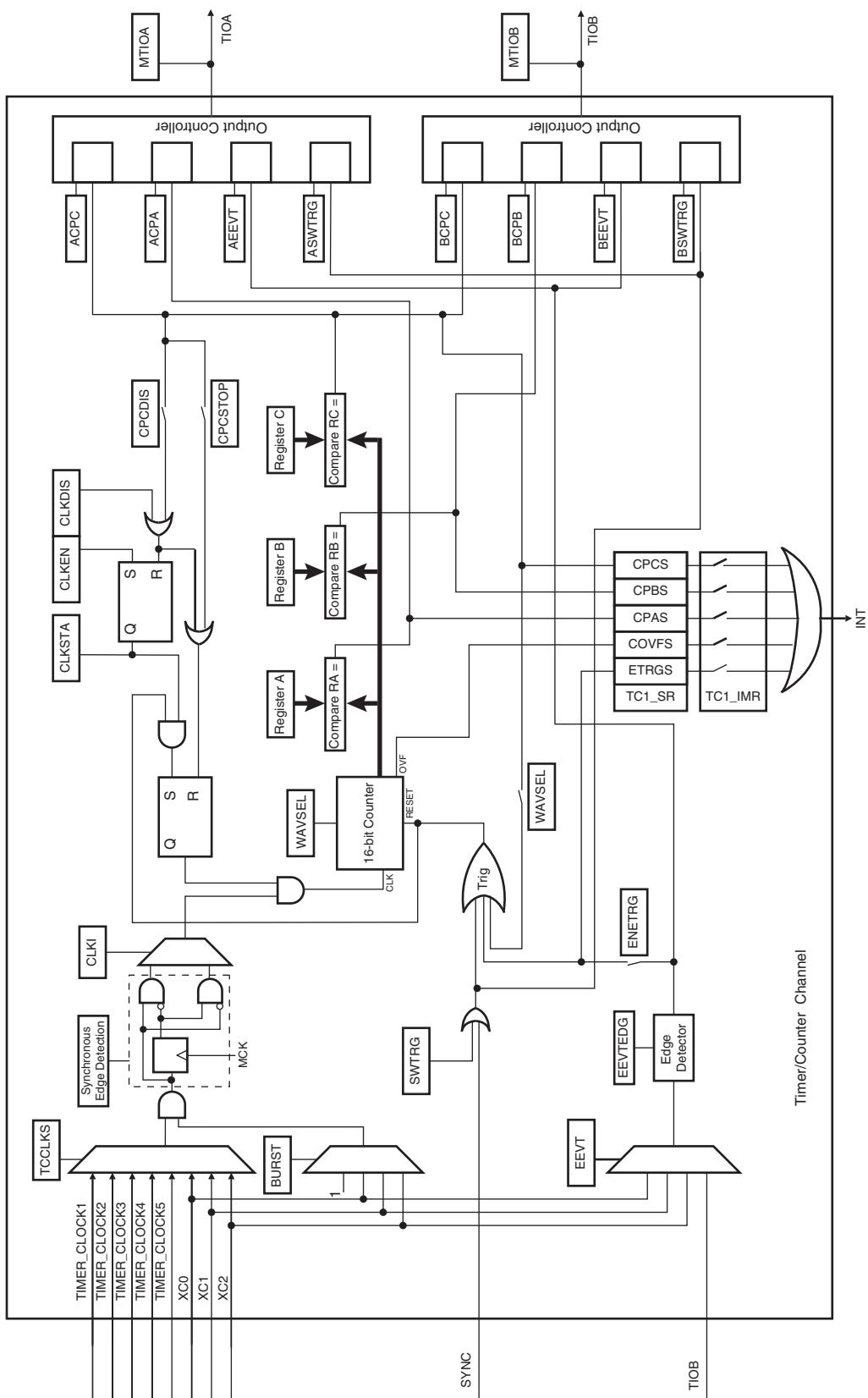
### 31.6.11 Waveform Selection

Depending on the WAVSEL parameter in TC\_CMR (Channel Mode Register), the behavior of TC\_CV varies.

With any selection, RA, RB and RC can all be used as compare registers.

RA Compare is used to control the TIOA output, RB Compare is used to control the TIOB output (if correctly configured) and RC Compare is used to control TIOA and/or TIOB outputs.

Figure 31-6. Waveform Mode



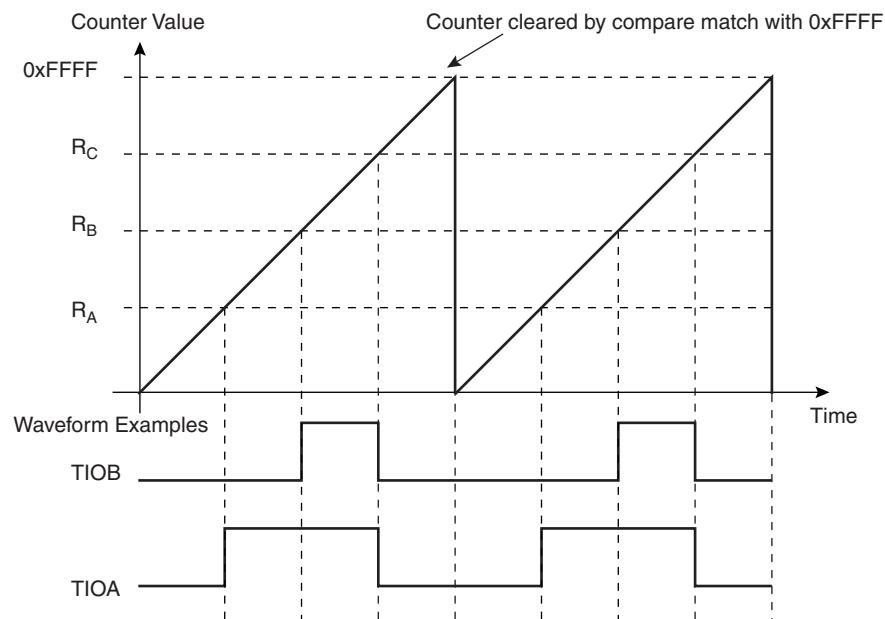
### 31.6.11.1 WAVSEL = 00

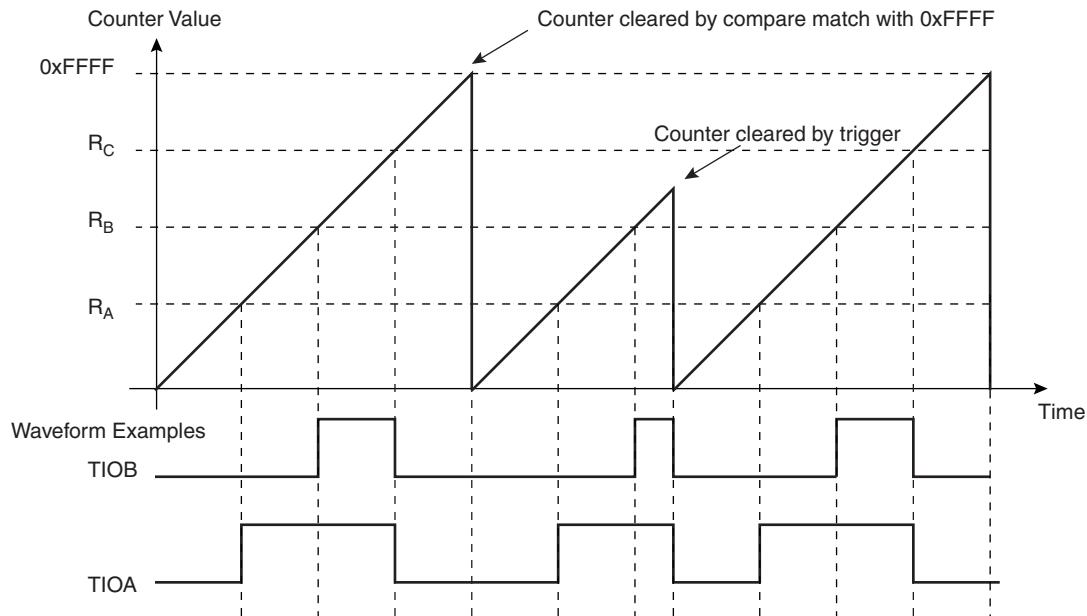
When WAVSEL = 00, the value of TC\_CV is incremented from 0 to 0xFFFF. Once 0xFFFF has been reached, the value of TC\_CV is reset. Incrementation of TC\_CV starts again and the cycle continues. See [Figure 31-7](#).

An external event trigger or a software trigger can reset the value of TC\_CV. It is important to note that the trigger may occur at any time. See [Figure 31-8](#).

RC Compare cannot be programmed to generate a trigger in this configuration. At the same time, RC Compare can stop the counter clock (CPCSTOP = 1 in TC\_CMRR) and/or disable the counter clock (CPCCDIS = 1 in TC\_CMRR).

**Figure 31-7.** WAVSEL= 00 without trigger



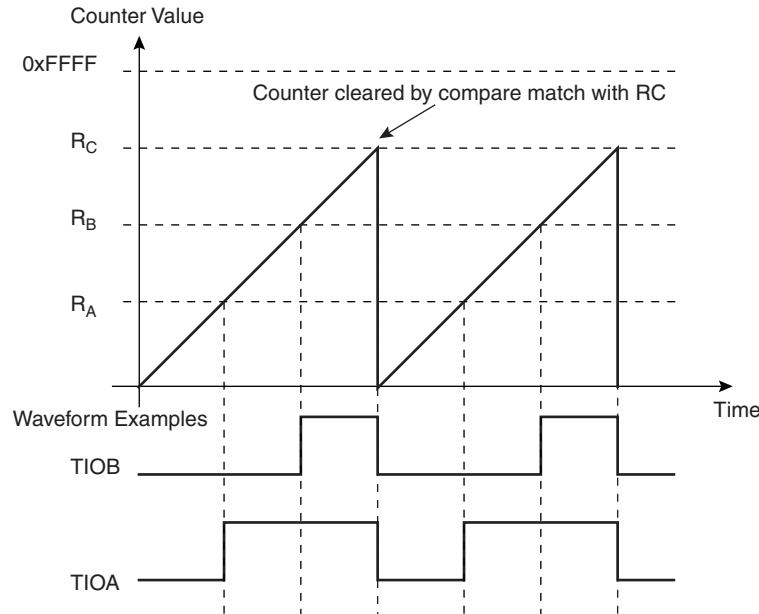
**Figure 31-8.** WAVSEL= 00 with trigger

### 31.6.11.2 WAVSEL = 10

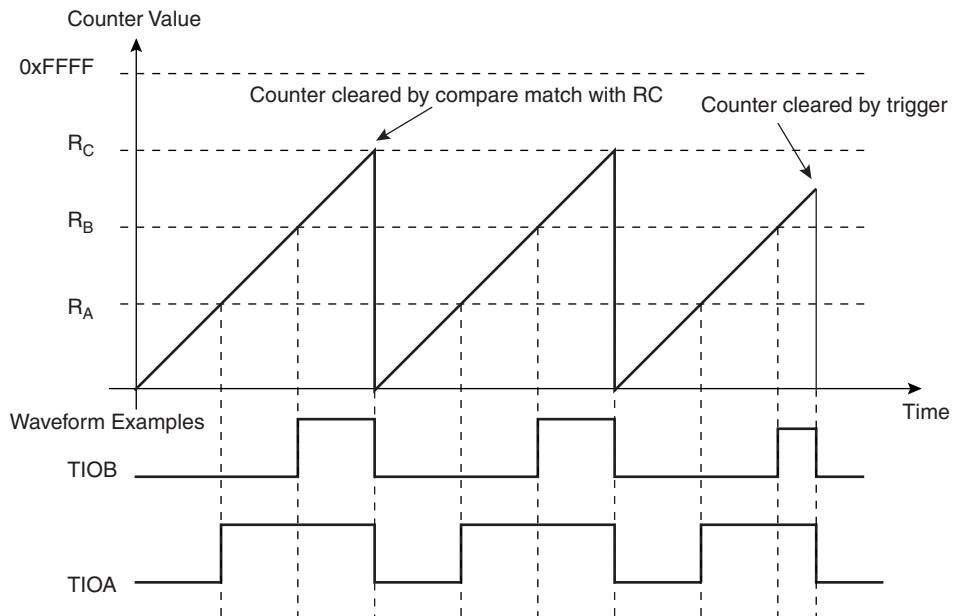
When WAVSEL = 10, the value of TC\_CV is incremented from 0 to the value of RC, then automatically reset on a RC Compare. Once the value of TC\_CV has been reset, it is then incremented and so on. See [Figure 31-9](#).

It is important to note that TC\_CV can be reset at any time by an external event or a software trigger if both are programmed correctly. See [Figure 31-10](#).

In addition, RC Compare can stop the counter clock (CPCSTOP = 1 in TC\_CMRR) and/or disable the counter clock (CPCDIS = 1 in TC\_CMRR).

**Figure 31-9.** WAVSEL = 10 Without Trigger

**Figure 31-10. WAVSEL = 10 With Trigger**



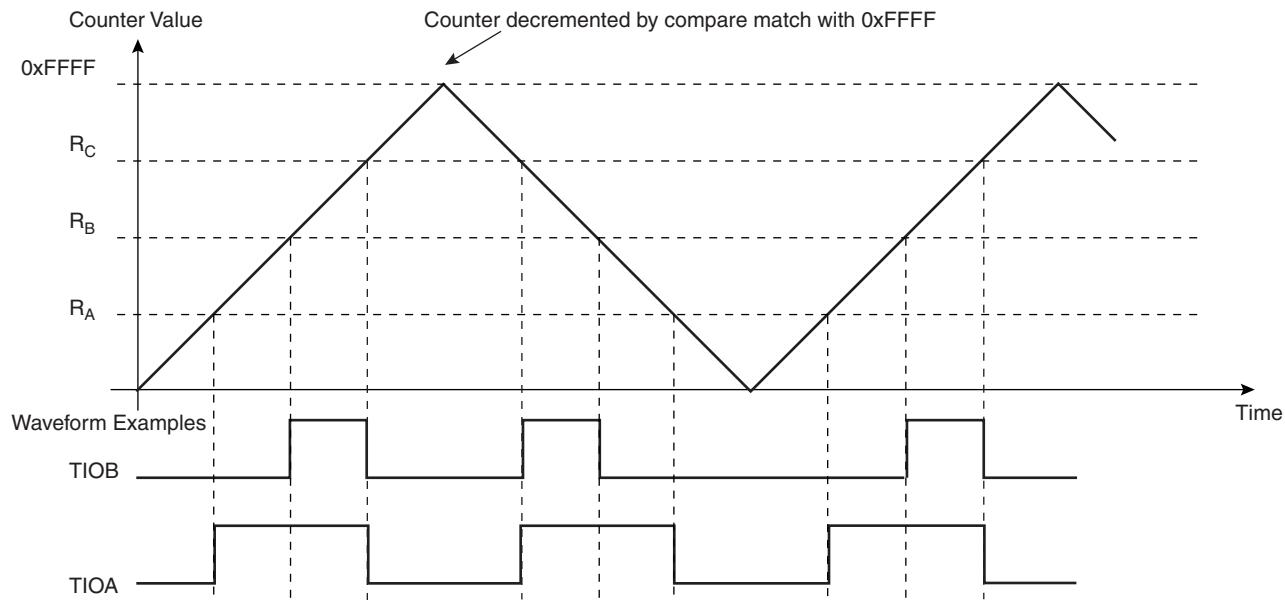
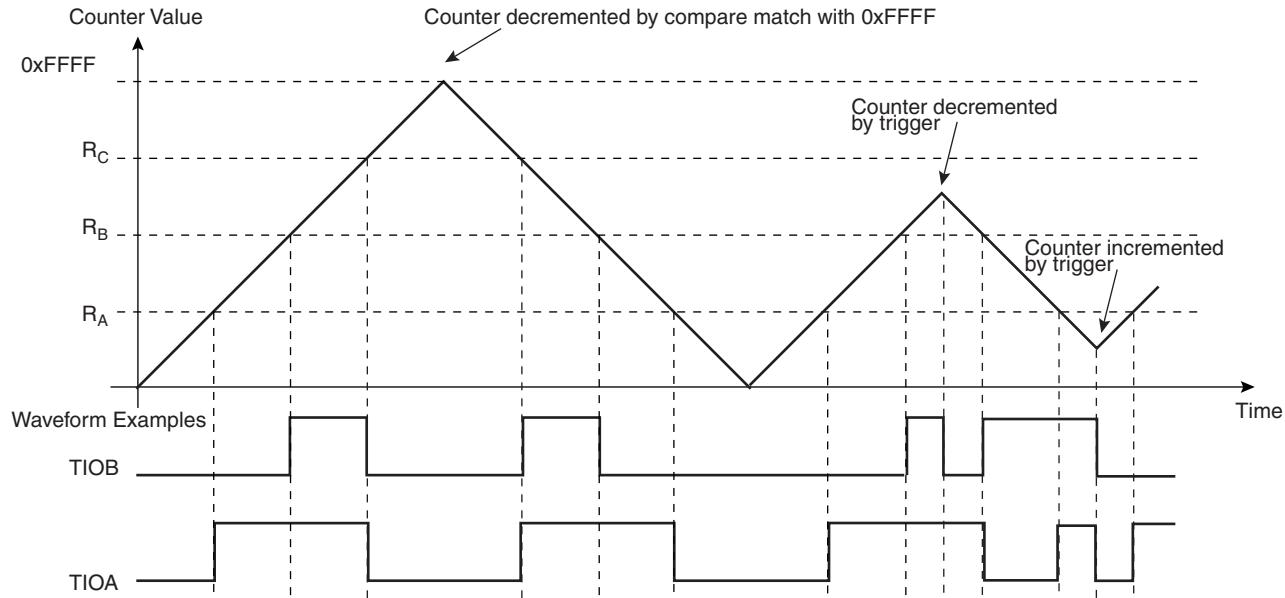
#### 31.6.11.3 $\text{WAVSEL} = 01$

When  $\text{WAVSEL} = 01$ , the value of  $\text{TC\_CV}$  is incremented from 0 to  $0xFFFF$ . Once  $0xFFFF$  is reached, the value of  $\text{TC\_CV}$  is decremented to 0, then re-incremented to  $0xFFFF$  and so on. See [Figure 31-11](#).

A trigger such as an external event or a software trigger can modify  $\text{TC\_CV}$  at any time. If a trigger occurs while  $\text{TC\_CV}$  is incrementing,  $\text{TC\_CV}$  then decrements. If a trigger is received while  $\text{TC\_CV}$  is decrementing,  $\text{TC\_CV}$  then increments. See [Figure 31-12](#).

RC Compare cannot be programmed to generate a trigger in this configuration.

At the same time, RC Compare can stop the counter clock ( $\text{CPCSTOP} = 1$ ) and/or disable the counter clock ( $\text{CPCDIS} = 1$ ).

**Figure 31-11.** WAVSEL = 01 Without Trigger**Figure 31-12.** WAVSEL = 01 With Trigger

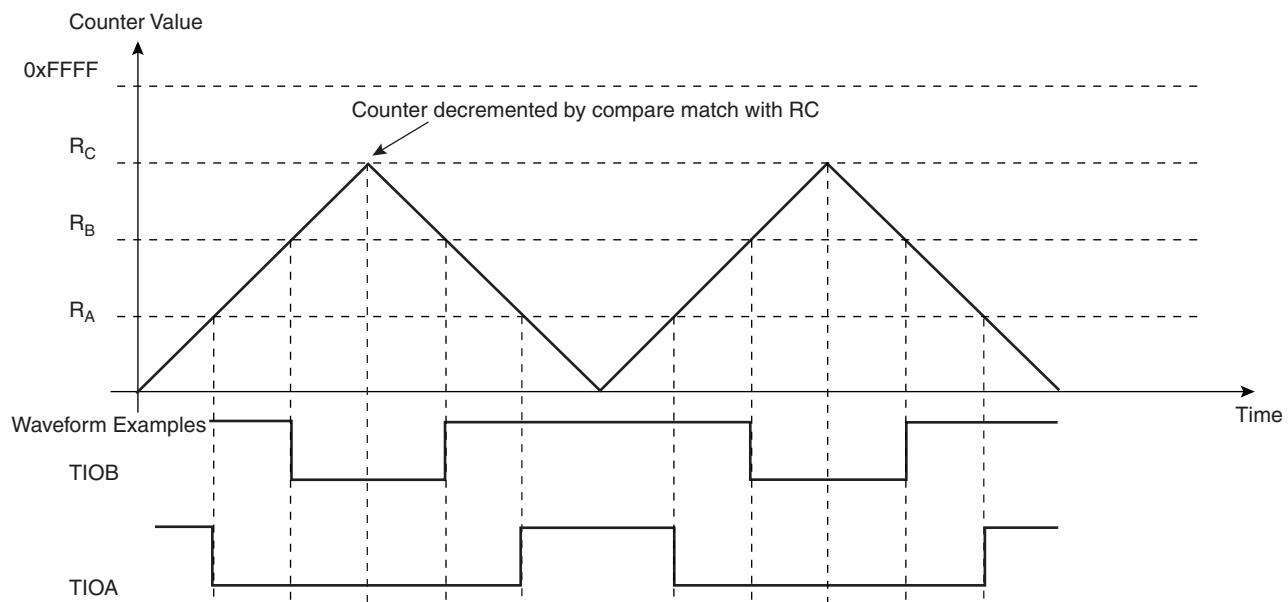
#### 31.6.11.4 WAVSEL = 11

When WAVSEL = 11, the value of TC\_CV is incremented from 0 to RC. Once RC is reached, the value of TC\_CV is decremented to 0, then re-incremented to RC and so on. See [Figure 31-13](#).

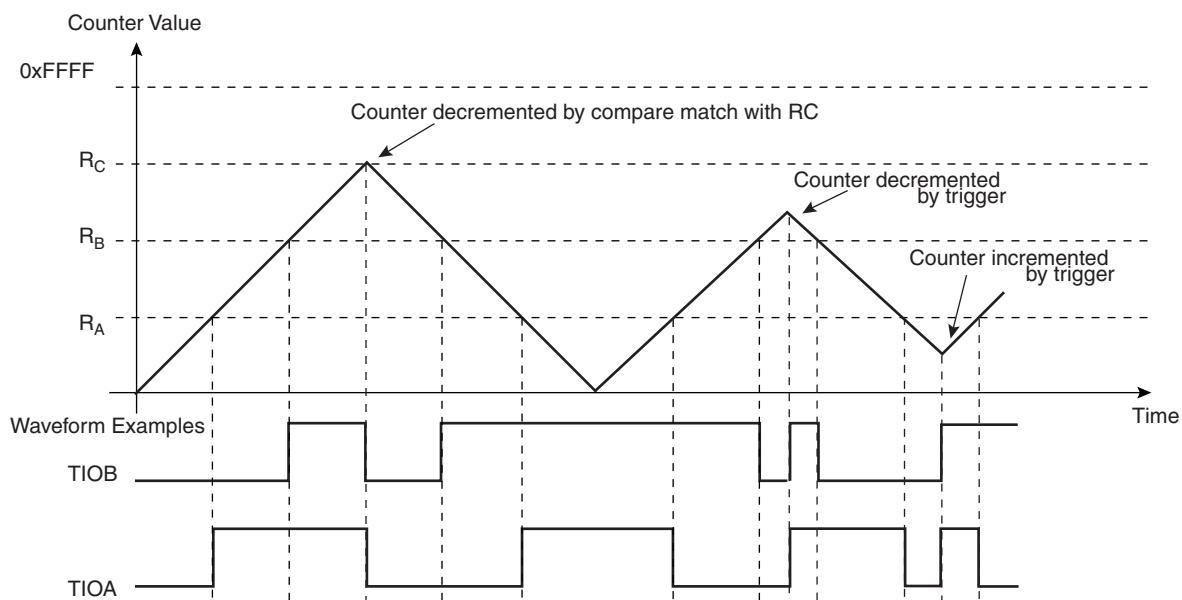
A trigger such as an external event or a software trigger can modify TC\_CV at any time. If a trigger occurs while TC\_CV is incrementing, TC\_CV then decrements. If a trigger is received while TC\_CV is decrementing, TC\_CV then increments. See [Figure 31-14](#).

RC Compare can stop the counter clock (CPCSTOP = 1) and/or disable the counter clock (CPCDIS = 1).

**Figure 31-13.** WAVSEL = 11 Without Trigger



**Figure 31-14.** WAVSEL = 11 With Trigger



### 31.6.12 External Event/Trigger Conditions

An external event can be programmed to be detected on one of the clock sources (XC0, XC1, XC2) or TIOB. The external event selected can then be used as a trigger.

The EEVT parameter in TC\_CMR selects the external trigger. The EEVTEDG parameter defines the trigger edge for each of the possible external triggers (rising, falling or both). If EEVTEDG is cleared (none), no external event is defined.

If TIOB is defined as an external event signal (EEVT = 0), TIOB is no longer used as an output and the compare register B is not used to generate waveforms and subsequently no IRQs. In this case the TC channel can only generate a waveform on TIOA.

When an external event is defined, it can be used as a trigger by setting bit ENETRG in TC\_CMR.

As in Capture Mode, the SYNC signal and the software trigger are also available as triggers. RC Compare can also be used as a trigger depending on the parameter WAVSEL.

### 31.6.13 Output Controller

The output controller defines the output level changes on TIOA and TIOB following an event. TIOB control is used only if TIOB is defined as output (not as an external event).

The following events control TIOA and TIOB: software trigger, external event and RC compare. RA compare controls TIOA and RB compare controls TIOB. Each of these events can be programmed to set, clear or toggle the output as defined in the corresponding parameter in TC\_CMR.

### 31.6.14 Quadrature Decoder Logic

#### 31.6.14.1 Description

The quadrature decoder logic is driven by TIOA0, TIOB0, TIOA1 input pins and drives the timer/counter of channel 0 and 1. Channel 2 can be used as a time base in case of speed measurement requirements (refer to [Figure 31.7 "Timer Counter \(TC\) User Interface"](#)).

When writing 0 in the QDEN field of the TC\_BMR register, the quadrature decoder logic is totally transparent.

TIOA0 and TIOB0 are to be driven by the 2 dedicated quadrature signals from a rotary sensor mounted on the shaft of the off-chip motor.

A third signal from the rotary sensor can be processed through pin TIOA1 and is typically dedicated to be driven by an index signal if it is provided by the sensor. This signal is not required to decode the quadrature signals PHA, PHB.

TCCLKS field of TC\_CMR channels must be configured to select XC0 input (i.e. 0x101). TC0XC0S field has no effect as soon as quadrature decoder is enabled.

Either speed or position/revolution can be measured. Position channel 0 accumulates the edges of PHA, PHB input signals giving a high accuracy on motor position whereas channel 1 accumulates the index pulses of the sensor, therefore the number of rotations. Concatenation of both values provides a high level of precision on motion system position.

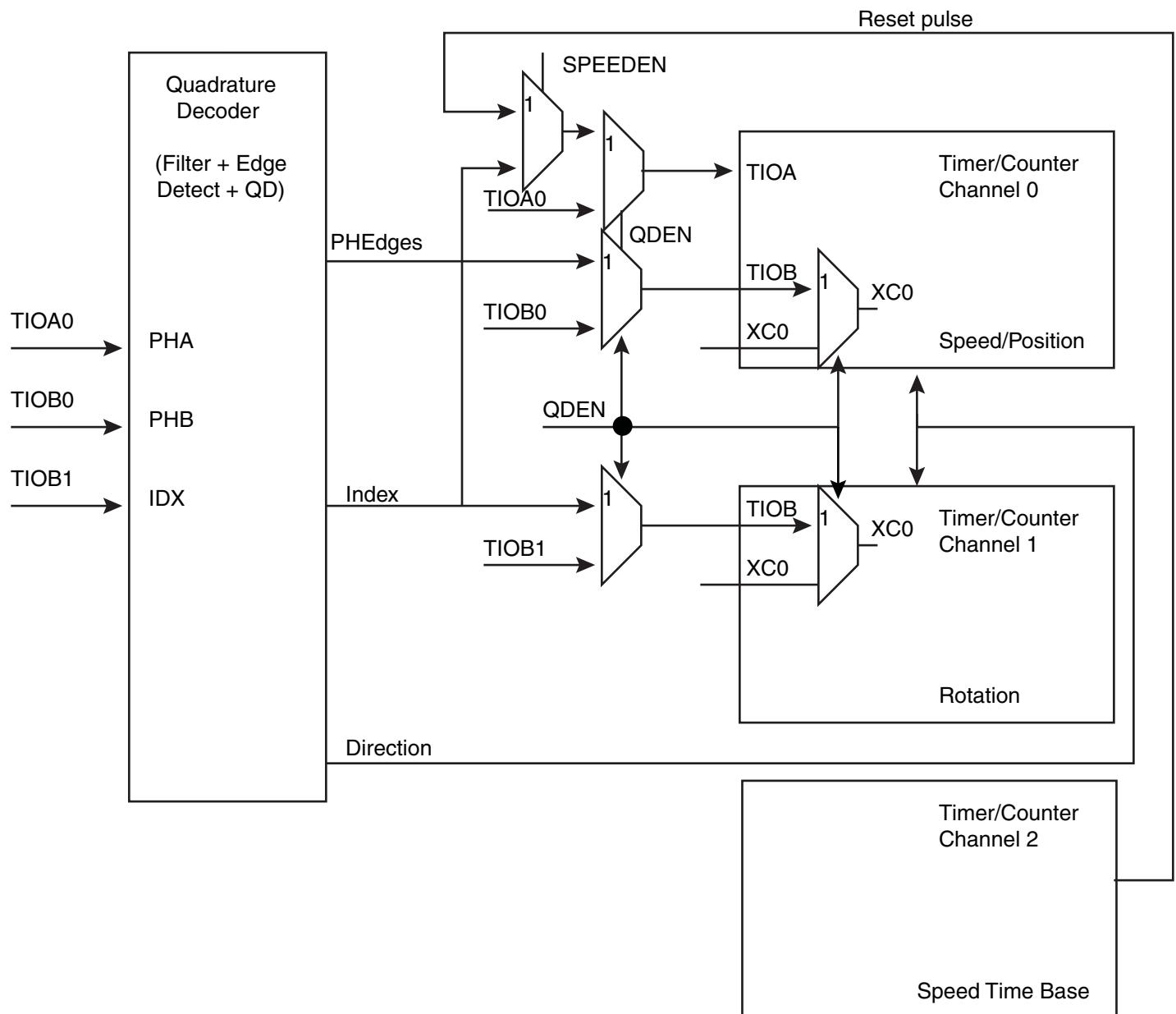
In speed mode, position cannot be measured but revolution can be measured.

Inputs from the rotary sensor can be filtered prior to down-stream processing. Accommodation of input polarity, phase definition and other factors are configurable.

Interruptions can be generated on different events.

A compare function (using TC\_RC register) is available on channel 0 (speed/position) or channel 1 (rotation) and can generate an interrupt by means of the CPCS flag in the TC\_SR registers.

**Figure 31-15.** Predefined Connection of the Quadrature Decoder with Timer Counters



#### 31.6.14.2 Input Pre-processing

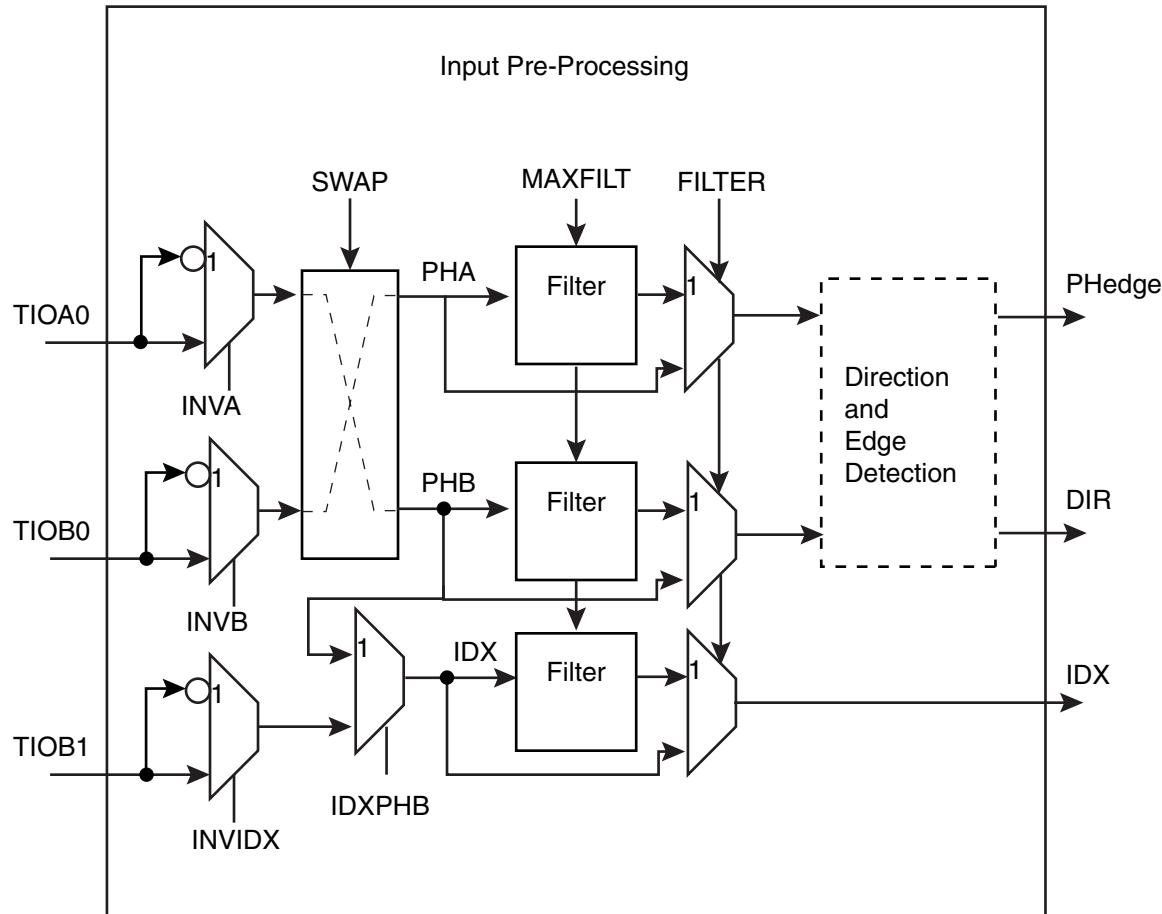
Input pre-processing consists of capabilities to take into account rotary sensor factors such as polarities and phase definition followed by configurable digital filtering.

Each input can be negated and swapping PHA, PHB is also configurable.

By means of the MAXFILT field in TC\_BMR, it is possible to configure a minimum duration for which the pulse is stated as valid. When the filter is active, pulses with a duration lower than MAXFILT+1 \* tMCK ns are not passed to down-stream logic.

Filters can be disabled using the FILTER field in the TC\_BMR register.

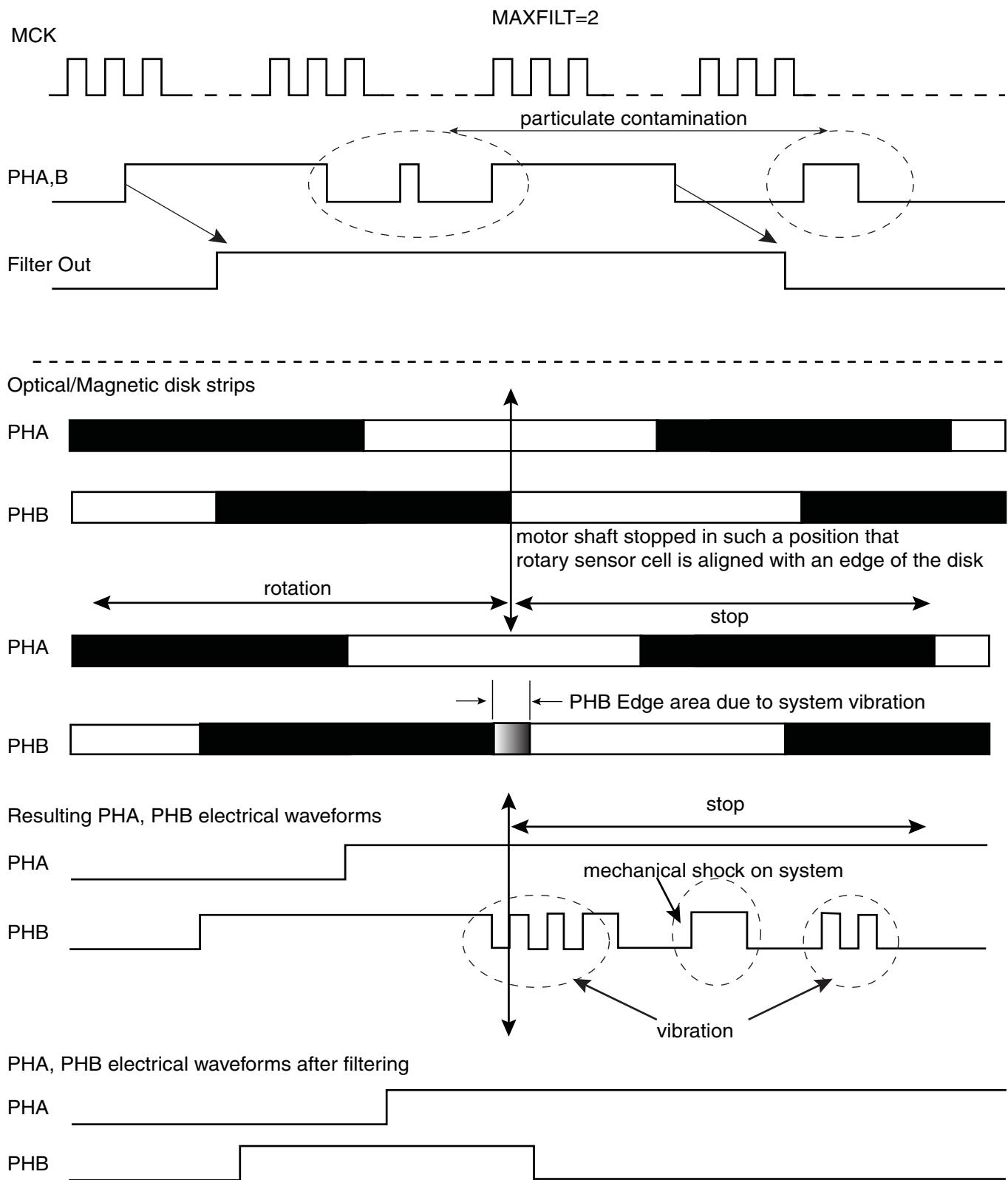
**Figure 31-16.** Input Stage



Input filtering can efficiently remove spurious pulses that might be generated by the presence of particulate contamination on the optical or magnetic disk of the rotary sensor.

Spurious pulses can also occur in environments with high levels of electro-magnetic interference. Or, simply if vibration occurs even when rotation is fully stopped and the shaft of the motor is in such a position that the beginning of one of the reflective or magnetic bars on the rotary sensor disk is aligned with the light or magnetic (Hall) receiver cell of the rotary sensor. Any vibration can make the PHA, PHB signals toggle for a short duration.

### **Figure 31-17. Filtering Examples**



### 31.6.14.3 Direction Status and Change Detection

After filtering, the quadrature signals are analyzed to extract the rotation direction and edges of the 2 quadrature signals detected in order to be counted by timer/counter logic downstream.

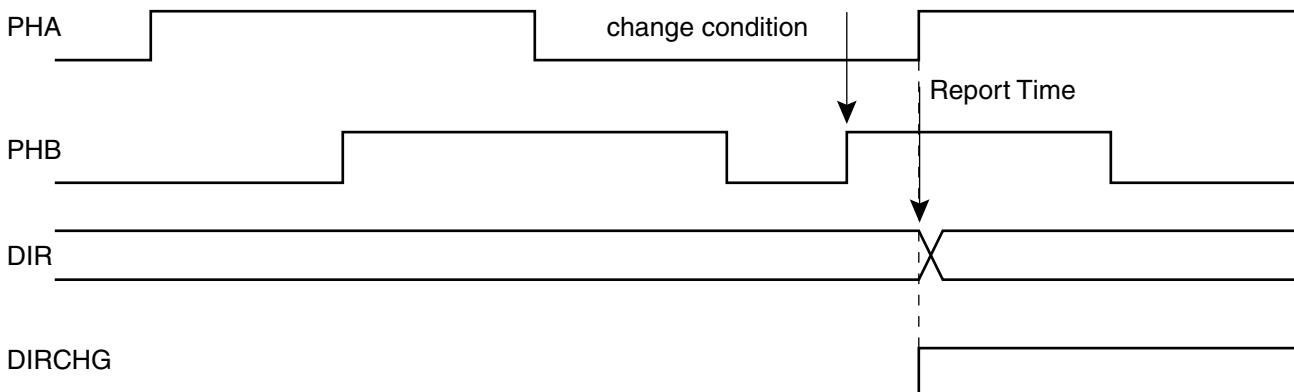
The direction status can be directly read at anytime on TC\_QISR register. The polarity of the direction flag status depends on the configuration written in TC\_BMR register. INVA, INVB, INVIDX, SWAP modify the polarity of DIR flag.

Any change in rotation direction is reported on TC\_QISR register and can generate an interrupt.

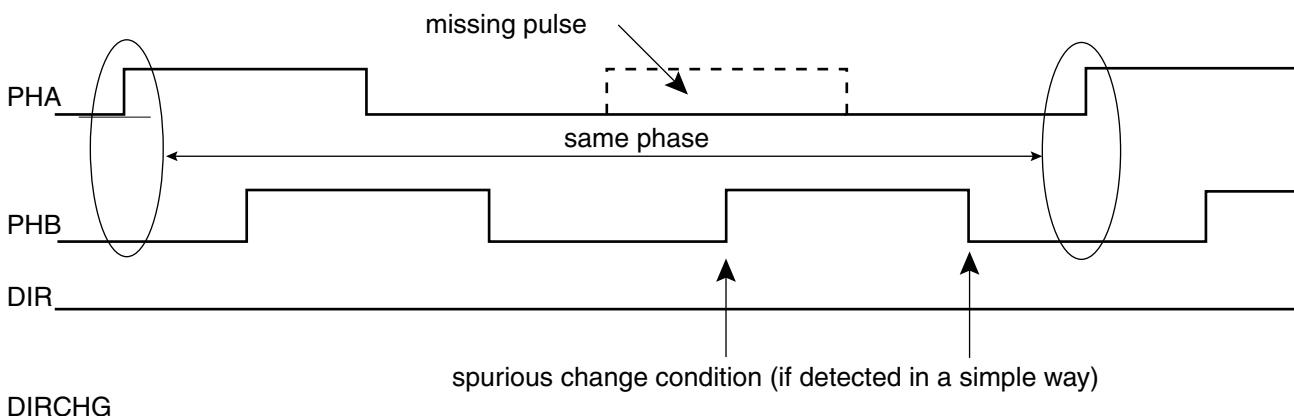
The direction change condition is reported as soon as 2 consecutive edges on a phase signal have sampled the same value on the other phase signal and there is an edge on the other signal. The 2 consecutive edges of 1 phase signal sampling the same value on other phase signal is not sufficient to declare a direction change, for the reason that particulate contamination may mask one or more reflective bar on the optical or magnetic disk of the sensor. (Refer to [Figure 31-18 "Rotation Change Detection"](#) for waveforms.)

**Figure 31-18.** Rotation Change Detection

Direction Change under normal conditions



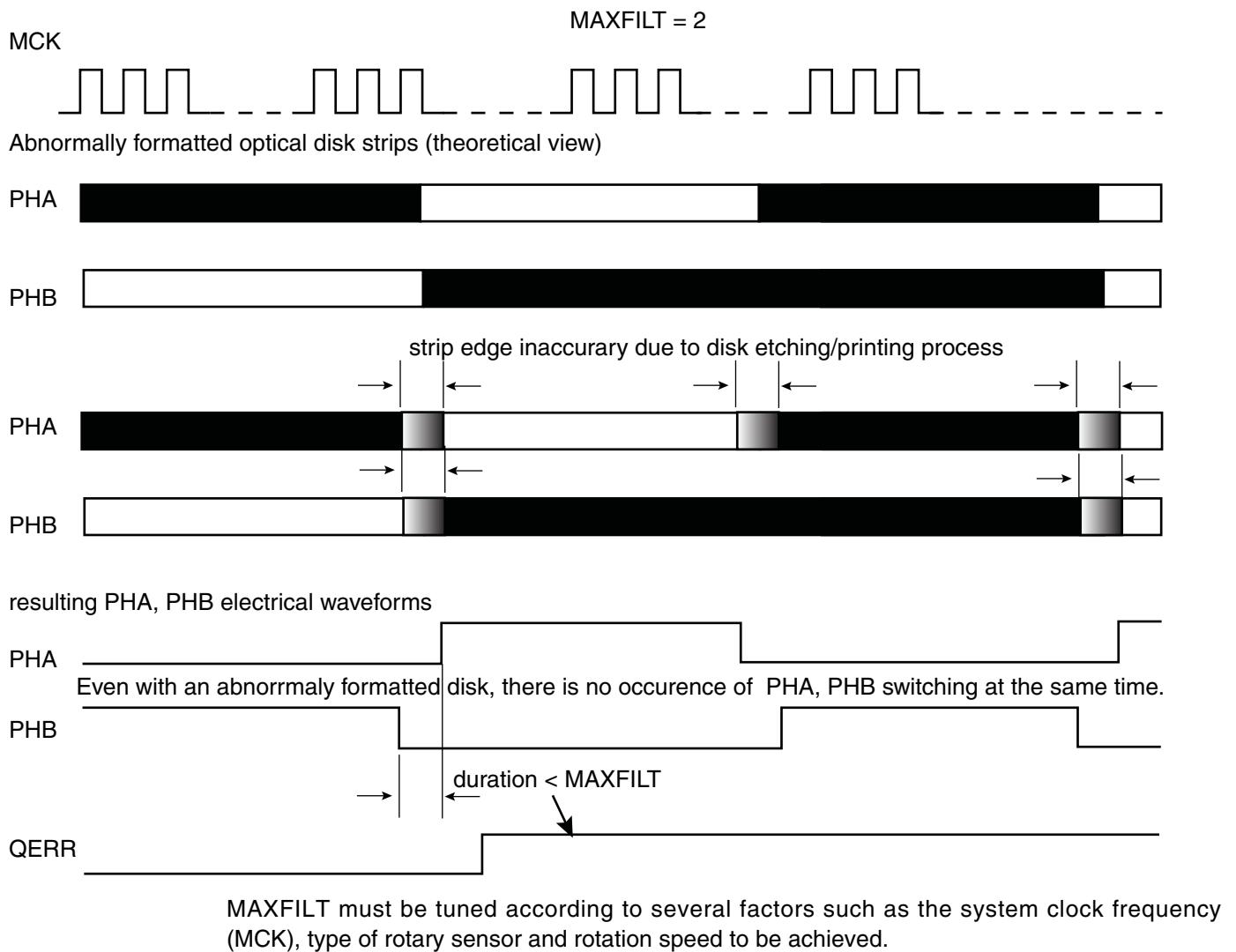
No direction change due to particulate contamination masking a reflective bar



The direction change detection is disabled when QDTRANS is set to 1 in TC\_BMR. In this case the DIR flag report must not be used.

A quadrature error is also reported by the quadrature decoder logic. Rather than reporting an error only when 2 edges occur at the same time on PHA and PHB, which is unlikely to occur in real life, there is a report if the time difference between 2 edges on PHA, PHB is lower than a predefined value. This predefined value is configurable and corresponds to  $(\text{MAXFILT}+1) * \text{tMCK}$  ns. After being filtered there is no reason to have 2 edges closer than  $(\text{MAXFILT}+1) * \text{tMCK}$  ns under normal mode of operation. In the instance an anomaly occurs, a quadrature error is reported on QERR flag on TC\_QISR register.

**Figure 31-19.** Quadrature Error Detection



#### 31.6.14.4 Position and Rotation Measurement

When POSEN is set in TC\_BMR register, position is processed on channel 0 (by means of the PHA,PHB edge detections) and motor revolutions are accumulated in channel 1 timer/counter and can be read through TC\_CV0 and/or TC\_CV1 register if the IDX signal is provided on TIOA1 input.

Channel 0 and 1 must be configured in capture mode (WAVE = 0 in TC\_CMRO).

In parallel, the number of edges are accumulated on timer/counter channel 0 and can be read on the TC\_CV0 register.

Therefore, the accurate position can be read on both TC\_CV registers and concatenated to form a 32-bit word.

The timer/counter channel 0 is cleared for each increment of IDX count value.

Depending on the quadrature signals, the direction is decoded and allows to count up or down in timer/counter channels 0 and 1. The direction status is reported on TC\_QISR register.

#### 31.6.14.5 Speed Measurement

When SPEEDEN is set in TC\_BMR register, the speed measure is enabled on channel 0.

A time base must be defined on channel 2 by writing the TC\_RC2 period register. Channel 2 must be configured in waveform mode (WAVE bit field set) in TC\_CMRR2 register. WAVSEL bit field must be defined with 0x10 to clear the counter by comparison and matching with TC\_RC value. ACPC field must be defined at 0x11 to toggle TIOA output.

This time base is automatically fed back to TIOA of channel 0 when QDEN and SPEEDEN are set.

Channel 0 must be configured in capture mode (WAVE = 0 in TC\_CMRR0). ABETRG bit field of TC\_CMRR0 must be configured at 1 to get TIOA as a trigger for this channel.

EDGTRG can be set to 0x01, to clear the counter on a rising edge of the TIOA signal and LDRA field must be set accordingly to 0x01, to load TC\_RA0 at the same time as the counter is cleared (LDRB must be set to 0x01). As a consequence, at the end of each time base period the differentiation required for the speed calculation is performed.

The process must be started by configuring the TC\_CR register with CLKEN and SWTRG.

The speed can be read on TC\_RA0 register in TC\_CMRR0.

Channel 1 can still be used to count the number of revolutions of the motor.

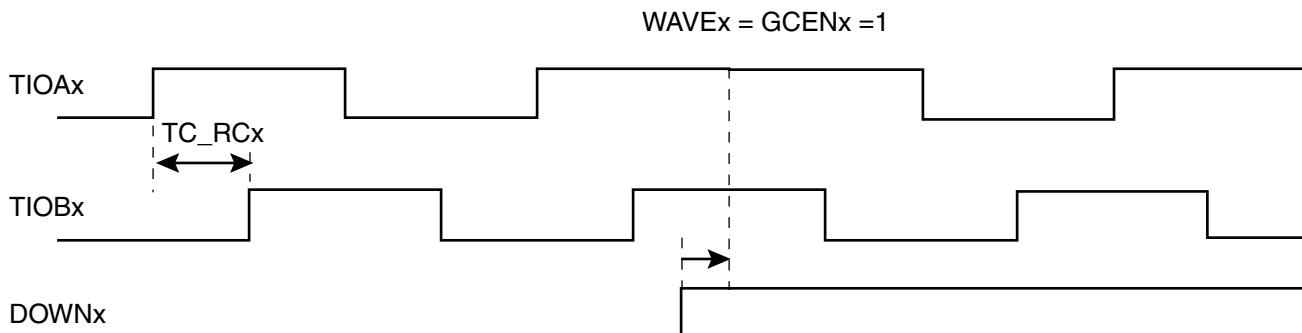
#### 31.6.15 2-bit Gray Up/Down Counter for Stepper Motor

Each channel can be independently configured to generate a 2-bit gray count waveform on corresponding TIOA,TIOB outputs by means of GCEN bit in TC\_SMMRx registers.

Up or Down count can be defined by writing bit DOWN in TC\_SMMRx registers.

It is mandatory to configure the channel in WAVE mode in TC\_CMRR register.

The period of the counters can be programmed on TC\_RCx registers.

**Figure 31-20.** 2-bit Gray Up/Down Counter.

### 31.6.16 Write Protection System

In order to bring security to the Timer Counter, a write protection system has been implemented.

The write protection mode prevent the write of TC\_BMR, TC\_CMRx, TC\_SMMRx, TC\_RAx, TC\_RBx, TC\_RCx registers. When this mode is enabled and one of the protected registers write, the register write request canceled.

Due to the nature of the write protection feature, enabling and disabling the write protection mode requires the use of a security code. Thus when enabling or disabling the write protection mode the WPKEY field of the TC\_WPMR register must be filled with the "TIM" ASCII code (corresponding to 0x54494D) otherwise the register write will be canceled.

### 31.7 Timer Counter (TC) User Interface

**Table 31-4.** Register Mapping

Offset <sup>(1)</sup>	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x00	Channel Control Register	TC_CCR	Write-only	–
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x04	Channel Mode Register	TC_CMR	Read-write	0
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x08	Stepper Motor Mode Register	TC_SMMR	Read-write	0
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x0C	Reserved			
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x10	Counter Value	TC_CV	Read-only	0
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x14	Register A	TC_RA	Read-write <sup>(2)</sup>	0
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x18	Register B	TC_RB	Read-write <sup>(2)</sup>	0
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x1C	Register C	TC_RC	Read-write	0
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x20	Status Register	TC_SR	Read-only	0
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x24	Interrupt Enable Register	TC_IER	Write-only	–
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x28	Interrupt Disable Register	TC_IDR	Write-only	–
0x00 + channel * 0x40 + 0x2C	Interrupt Mask Register	TC_IMR	Read-only	0
0xC0	Block Control Register	TC_BCR	Write-only	–
0xC4	Block Mode Register	TC_BMR	Read-write	0
0xC8	QDEC Interrupt Enable Register	TC_QIER	Write-only	–
0xCC	QDEC Interrupt Disable Register	TC_QIDR	Write-only	–
0xD0	QDEC Interrupt Mask Register	TC_QIMR	Read-only	0
0xD4	QDEC Interrupt Status Register	TC_QISR	Read-only	0
0xE4	Write Protect Mode Register	TC_WPMR	Read-write	0
0xFC	Reserved	–	–	–

Notes:

1. Channel index ranges from 0 to 2.

2. Read-only if WAVE = 0

**31.7.1 TC Block Control Register****Name:** TC\_BCR**Addresses:** 0x400100C0 (0), 0x400140C0 (1)**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	SYNC

• **SYNC: Synchro Command**

0 = no effect.

1 = asserts the SYNC signal which generates a software trigger simultaneously for each of the channels.

### 31.7.2 TC Block Mode Register

**Name:** TC\_BMR

**Addresses:** 0x400100C4 (0), 0x400140C4 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	MAXFILT	
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
		MAXFILT		FILTER	-	IDXPHB	SWAP
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
INVIDX	INVB	INVA	EDGPHA	QDTRANS	SPEEDEN	POSEN	QDEN
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	TC2XC2S		TC1XC1S		TC0XC0S	

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[TC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 612.

- **TC0XC0S: External Clock Signal 0 Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	TCLK0	Signal connected to XC0: TCLK0
1	-	Reserved
2	TIOA1	Signal connected to XC0: TIOA1
3	TIOA2	Signal connected to XC0: TIOA2

- **TC1XC1S: External Clock Signal 1 Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	TCLK1	Signal connected to XC1: TCLK1
1	-	Reserved
2	TIOA0	Signal connected to XC1: TIOA0
3	TIOA2	Signal connected to XC1: TIOA2

- **TC2XC2S: External Clock Signal 2 Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	TCLK2	Signal connected to XC2: TCLK2
1	-	Reserved
2	TIOA1	Signal connected to XC2: TIOA1
3	TIOA2	Signal connected to XC2: TIOA2

- **QDEN: Quadrature Decoder ENabled**

0 = disabled.

1 = enables the quadrature decoder logic (filter, edge detection and quadrature decoding).

quadrature decoding (direction change) can be disabled using QDTRANS bit.

One of the POSEN or SPEEDEN bits must be also enabled.



- **POSEN: POSition ENabled**

0 = disable position.

1 = enables the position measure on channel 0 and 1

- **SPEEDEN: SPEED ENabled**

0 = disabled.

1 = enables the speed measure on channel 0, the time base being provided by channel 2.

- **QDTRANS: Quadrature Decoding TRANSparent**

0 = full quadrature decoding logic is active (direction change detected).

1 = quadrature decoding logic is inactive (direction change inactive) but input filtering and edge detection are performed.

- **EDGPHA: EDGe on PHA count mode**

0 = edges are detected on both PHA and PHB.

1 = edges are detected on PHA only.

- **INVA: INVerted phA**

0 = PHA (TIOA0) is directly driving quadrature decoder logic.

1 = PHA is inverted before driving quadrature decoder logic.

- **INVB: INVerted phB**

0 = PHB (TIOB0) is directly driving quadrature decoder logic.

1 = PHB is inverted before driving quadrature decoder logic.

- **SWAP: SWAP PHA and PHB**

0 = no swap between PHA and PHB.

1 = swap PHA and PHB internally, prior to driving quadrature decoder logic.

- **INVIDX: INVerted InDeX**

0 = IDX (TIOA1) is directly driving quadrature logic.

1 = IDX is inverted before driving quadrature logic.

- **IDXPHB: InDeX pin is PHB pin**

0 = IDX pin of the rotary sensor must drive TIOA1.

1 = IDX pin of the rotary sensor must drive TIOB0.

- **FILTER:**

0 = IDX,PHA, PHB input pins are not filtered.

1 = IDX,PHA, PHB input pins are filtered using MAXFILT value.

- **MAXFILT: MAXimum FILTer**

1.. 63: defines the filtering capabilities

Pulses with a period shorter than MAXFILT+1 MCK clock cycles are discarded.

### 31.7.3 TC Channel Control Register

**Name:** TC\_CCRx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x40010000 (0)[0], 0x40010040 (0)[1], 0x40010080 (0)[2], 0x40014000 (1)[0], 0x40014040 (1)[1],  
0x40014080 (1)[2]

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	SWTRG	CLKDIS	CLKEN

- CLKEN: Counter Clock Enable Command**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the clock if CLKDIS is not 1.

- CLKDIS: Counter Clock Disable Command**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the clock.

- SWTRG: Software Trigger Command**

0 = no effect.

1 = a software trigger is performed: the counter is reset and the clock is started.

### 31.7.4 TC QDEC Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** TC\_QIER

**Addresses:** 0x400100C8 (0), 0x400140C8 (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	QERR	DIRCHG	IDX

- **IDX: InDeX**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the interrupt when a rising edge occurs on IDX input.

- **DIRCHG: DIRection CHanGe**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the interrupt when a change on rotation direction is detected.

- **QERR: Quadrature ERRor**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the interrupt when a quadrature error occurs on PHA,PHB.

### 31.7.5 TC QDEC Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** TC\_QIDR

**Addresses:** 0x400100CC (0), 0x400140CC (1)

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	QERR	DIRCHG	IDX

- **IDX: InDeX**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the interrupt when a rising edge occurs on IDX input.

- **DIRCHG: DIRection CHanGe**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the interrupt when a change on rotation direction is detected.

- **QERR: Quadrature ERRor**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the interrupt when a quadrature error occurs on PHA, PHB.

### 31.7.6 TC QDEC Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** TC\_QIMR

**Addresses:** 0x400100D0 (0), 0x400140D0 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	QERR	DIRCHG	IDX

- **IDX: InDeX**

0 = the interrupt on IDX input is disabled.

1 = the interrupt on IDX input is enabled.

- **DIRCHG: DIRection CHanGe**

0 = the interrupt on rotation direction change is disabled.

1 = the interrupt on rotation direction change is enabled.

- **QERR: Quadrature ERRor**

0 = the interrupt on quadrature error is disabled.

1 = the interrupt on quadrature error is enabled.

### 31.7.7 TC QDEC Interrupt Status Register

**Name:** TC\_QISR

**Addresses:** 0x400100D4 (0), 0x400140D4 (1)

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	DIR
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	QERR	DIRCHG	IDX

- **IDX: InDeX**

0 = no Index input change since the last read of TC\_QISR.

1 = the IDX input has change since the last read of TC\_QISR.

- **DIRCHG: DIRection CHanGe**

0 = no change on rotation direction since the last read of TC\_QISR.

1 = the rotation direction changed since the last read of TC\_QISR.

- **QERR: Quadrature ERRor**

0 = no quadrature error since the last read of TC\_QISR.

1 = A quadrature error occurred since the last read of TC\_QISR.

- **DIR: Direction**

Returns an image of the actual rotation direction.

### 31.7.8 TC Write Protect Mode Register

**Name:** TC\_WPMR

**Addresses:** 0x400100E4 (0), 0x400140E4 (1)

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	WPEN

- **WPEN: Write Protect Enable**

0 = disables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x54494D ("TIM" in ASCII).

1 = enables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x54494D ("TIM" in ASCII).

Protects the registers:

["TC Block Mode Register"](#)

["TC Channel Mode Register: Capture Mode"](#)

["TC Channel Mode Register: Waveform Mode"](#)

["TC Stepper Motor Mode Register"](#)

["TC Register A"](#)

["TC Register B"](#)

["TC Register C"](#)

- **WPKEY: Write Protect KEY**

This security code is needed to set/reset the WPROT bit value (see for details).

Must be filled with "TIM" ASCII code.

### 31.7.9 TC Channel Mode Register: Capture Mode

**Name:** TC\_CMRx [x=0..2] (WAVE = 0)

**Addresses:** 0x40010004 (0)[0], 0x40010044 (0)[1], 0x40010084 (0)[2], 0x40014004 (1)[0], 0x40014044 (1)[1],  
0x40014084 (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	LDRB	LDRA		
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WAVE	CPCTRGS	-	-	-	ABETRG	ETRGEDG	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
LDBDIS	LDBSTOP	BURST		CLKI		TCCLKS	

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[TC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 612

- **TCCLKS: Clock Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	TIMER_CLOCK1	Clock selected: TCLK1
1	TIMER_CLOCK2	Clock selected: TCLK2
2	TIMER_CLOCK3	Clock selected: TCLK3
3	TIMER_CLOCK4	Clock selected: TCLK4
4	TIMER_CLOCK5	Clock selected: TCLK5
5	XC0	Clock selected: XC0
6	XC1	Clock selected: XC1
7	XC2	Clock selected: XC2

- **CLKI: Clock Invert**

0 = counter is incremented on rising edge of the clock.

1 = counter is incremented on falling edge of the clock.

- **BURST: Burst Signal Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	The clock is not gated by an external signal.
1	XC0	XC0 is ANDed with the selected clock.
2	XC1	XC1 is ANDed with the selected clock.
3	XC2	XC2 is ANDed with the selected clock.

- **LDBSTOP: Counter Clock Stopped with RB Loading**

0 = counter clock is not stopped when RB loading occurs.

1 = counter clock is stopped when RB loading occurs.



- LDBDIS: Counter Clock Disable with RB Loading**

0 = counter clock is not disabled when RB loading occurs.

1 = counter clock is disabled when RB loading occurs.

- ETRGEDG: External Trigger Edge Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	The clock is not gated by an external signal.
1	RISING	Rising edge
2	FALLING	Falling edge
3	EDGE	Each edge

- ABETRG: TIOA or TIOB External Trigger Selection**

0 = TIOB is used as an external trigger.

1 = TIOA is used as an external trigger.

- CPCTRG: RC Compare Trigger Enable**

0 = RC Compare has no effect on the counter and its clock.

1 = RC Compare resets the counter and starts the counter clock.

- WAVE**

0 = Capture Mode is enabled.

1 = Capture Mode is disabled (Waveform Mode is enabled).

- LDRA: RA Loading Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	RISING	Rising edge of TIOA
2	FALLING	Falling edge of TIOA
3	EDGE	Each edge of TIOA

- LDRB: RB Loading Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	RISING	Rising edge of TIOA
2	FALLING	Falling edge of TIOA
3	EDGE	Each edge of TIOA

### 31.7.10 TC Channel Mode Register: Waveform Mode

**Name:** TC\_CMRx [x=0..2] (WAVE = 1)

**Addresses:** 0x40010004 (0)[0], 0x40010044 (0)[1], 0x40010084 (0)[2], 0x40014004 (1)[0], 0x40014044 (1)[1],  
0x40014084 (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
BSWTRG		BEEVT		BCPC		BCPB	
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
ASWTRG		AEEVT		ACPC		ACPA	
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WAVE		WAVSEL		ENETRG		EEVT	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CPCDIS	CPCSTOP	BURST		CLKI		TCCLKS	

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[TC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 612

- **TCCLKS: Clock Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	TIMER_CLOCK1	Clock selected: TCLK1
1	TIMER_CLOCK2	Clock selected: TCLK2
2	TIMER_CLOCK3	Clock selected: TCLK3
3	TIMER_CLOCK4	Clock selected: TCLK4
4	TIMER_CLOCK5	Clock selected: TCLK5
5	XC0	Clock selected: XC0
6	XC1	Clock selected: XC1
7	XC2	Clock selected: XC2

- **CLKI: Clock Invert**

0 = counter is incremented on rising edge of the clock.

1 = counter is incremented on falling edge of the clock.

- **BURST: Burst Signal Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	The clock is not gated by an external signal.
1	XC0	XC0 is ANDed with the selected clock.
2	XC1	XC1 is ANDed with the selected clock.
3	XC2	XC2 is ANDed with the selected clock.

- **CPCSTOP: Counter Clock Stopped with RC Compare**

0 = counter clock is not stopped when counter reaches RC.

1 = counter clock is stopped when counter reaches RC.

- CPCDIS: Counter Clock Disable with RC Compare**

0 = counter clock is not disabled when counter reaches RC.

1 = counter clock is disabled when counter reaches RC.

- EEVTEDG: External Event Edge Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	RISING	Rising edge
2	FALLING	Falling edge
3	EDGE	Each edge

- EEVT: External Event Selection**

Signal selected as external event.

Value	Name	Description	TIOB Direction
0	TIOB	TIOB <sup>(1)</sup>	input
1	XC0	XC0	output
2	XC1	XC1	output
3	XC2	XC2	output

Note: 1. If TIOB is chosen as the external event signal, it is configured as an input and no longer generates waveforms and subsequently no IRQs.

- ENETRG: External Event Trigger Enable**

0 = the external event has no effect on the counter and its clock. In this case, the selected external event only controls the TIOA output.

1 = the external event resets the counter and starts the counter clock.

- WAVSEL: Waveform Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	UP	UP mode without automatic trigger on RC Compare
1	UPDOWN	UPDOWN mode without automatic trigger on RC Compare
2	UP_RC	UP mode with automatic trigger on RC Compare
3	UPDOWN_RC	UPDOWN mode with automatic trigger on RC Compare

- WAVE**

0 = Waveform Mode is disabled (Capture Mode is enabled).

1 = Waveform Mode is enabled.

- ACPA: RA Compare Effect on TIOA

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	SET	Set
2	CLEAR	Clear
3	TOGGLE	Toggle

- ACPC: RC Compare Effect on TIOA

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	SET	Set
2	CLEAR	Clear
3	TOGGLE	Toggle

- AEEVT: External Event Effect on TIOA

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	SET	Set
2	CLEAR	Clear
3	TOGGLE	Toggle

- ASWTRG: Software Trigger Effect on TIOA

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	SET	Set
2	CLEAR	Clear
3	TOGGLE	Toggle

- BCPB: RB Compare Effect on TIOB

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	SET	Set
2	CLEAR	Clear
3	TOGGLE	Toggle

- **BCPC: RC Compare Effect on TIOB**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	SET	Set
2	CLEAR	Clear
3	TOGGLE	Toggle

- **BEEVT: External Event Effect on TIOB**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	SET	Set
2	CLEAR	Clear
3	TOGGLE	Toggle

- **BSWTRG: Software Trigger Effect on TIOB**

Value	Name	Description
0	NONE	None
1	SET	Set
2	CLEAR	Clear
3	TOGGLE	Toggle

### 31.7.11 TC Stepper Motor Mode Register

**Name:** TC\_SMMRx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x40010008 (0)[0], 0x40010048 (0)[1], 0x40010088 (0)[2], 0x40014008 (1)[0], 0x40014048 (1)[1],  
0x40014088 (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
					–	DOWN	GCEN

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “TC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 612

- **GCEN: Gray Count Enable**

0 = TIOAx [x=0..2] and TIOBx [x=0..2] are driven by internal counter of channel x.

1 = TIOAx [x=0..2] and TIOBx [x=0..2] are driven by a 2-bit gray counter.

- **DOWN: DOWN Count**

0 = Up counter.

1 = Down counter.



### 31.7.12 TC Counter Value Register

**Name:** TC\_CVx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x40010010 (0)[0], 0x40010050 (0)[1], 0x40010090 (0)[2], 0x40014010 (1)[0], 0x40014050 (1)[1],  
0x40014090 (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CV							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CV							

- **CV: Counter Value**

CV contains the counter value in real time.

### 31.7.13 TC Register A

**Name:** TC\_RAx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x40010014 (0)[0], 0x40010054 (0)[1], 0x40010094 (0)[2], 0x40014014 (1)[0], 0x40014054 (1)[1],  
0x40014094 (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-only if WAVE = 0, Read-write if WAVE = 1

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RA							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RA							

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[TC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 612

- **RA: Register A**

RA contains the Register A value in real time.

### 31.7.14 TC Register B

**Name:** TC\_RBx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x40010018 (0)[0], 0x40010058 (0)[1], 0x40010098 (0)[2], 0x40014018 (1)[0], 0x40014058 (1)[1],  
0x40014098 (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-only if WAVE = 0, Read-write if WAVE = 1

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RB							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RB							

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[TC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 612

- **RB: Register B**

RB contains the Register B value in real time.

### 31.7.15 TC Register C

**Name:** TC\_RCx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x4001001C (0)[0], 0x4001005C (0)[1], 0x4001009C (0)[2], 0x4001401C (1)[0], 0x4001405C (1)[1],  
0x4001409C (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
RC							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
RC							

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[TC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 612

- **RC: Register C**

RC contains the Register C value in real time.

### 31.7.16 TC Status Register

**Name:** TC\_SR<sub>x</sub> [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x40010020 (0)[0], 0x40010060 (0)[1], 0x400100A0 (0)[2], 0x40014020 (1)[0], 0x40014060 (1)[1], 0x400140A0 (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	MTIOB	MTIOA	CLKSTA
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ETRGS	LDRBS	LDRAS	CPCS	CPBS	CPAS	LOVRS	COVFS

- **COVFS: Counter Overflow Status**

0 = no counter overflow has occurred since the last read of the Status Register.

1 = a counter overflow has occurred since the last read of the Status Register.

- **LOVRS: Load Overrun Status**

0 = Load overrun has not occurred since the last read of the Status Register or WAVE = 1.

1 = RA or RB have been loaded at least twice without any read of the corresponding register since the last read of the Status Register, if WAVE = 0.

- **CPAS: RA Compare Status**

0 = RA Compare has not occurred since the last read of the Status Register or WAVE = 0.

1 = RA Compare has occurred since the last read of the Status Register, if WAVE = 1.

- **CPBS: RB Compare Status**

0 = RB Compare has not occurred since the last read of the Status Register or WAVE = 0.

1 = RB Compare has occurred since the last read of the Status Register, if WAVE = 1.

- **CPCS: RC Compare Status**

0 = RC Compare has not occurred since the last read of the Status Register.

1 = RC Compare has occurred since the last read of the Status Register.

- **LDRAS: RA Loading Status**

0 = RA Load has not occurred since the last read of the Status Register or WAVE = 1.

1 = RA Load has occurred since the last read of the Status Register, if WAVE = 0.

- **LDRBS: RB Loading Status**

0 = RB Load has not occurred since the last read of the Status Register or WAVE = 1.

1 = RB Load has occurred since the last read of the Status Register, if WAVE = 0.

- **ETRGS: External Trigger Status**

0 = external trigger has not occurred since the last read of the Status Register.

1 = external trigger has occurred since the last read of the Status Register.

- **CLKSTA: Clock Enabling Status**

0 = clock is disabled.

1 = clock is enabled.

- **MTIOA: TIOA Mirror**

0 = TIOA is low. If WAVE = 0, this means that TIOA pin is low. If WAVE = 1, this means that TIOA is driven low.

1 = TIOA is high. If WAVE = 0, this means that TIOA pin is high. If WAVE = 1, this means that TIOA is driven high.

- **MTIOB: TIOB Mirror**

0 = TIOB is low. If WAVE = 0, this means that TIOB pin is low. If WAVE = 1, this means that TIOB is driven low.

1 = TIOB is high. If WAVE = 0, this means that TIOB pin is high. If WAVE = 1, this means that TIOB is driven high.

### 31.7.17 TC Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** TC\_IERx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x40010024 (0)[0], 0x40010064 (0)[1], 0x400100A4 (0)[2], 0x40014024 (1)[0], 0x40014064 (1)[1],  
0x400140A4 (1)[2]

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ETRGS	LDRBS	LDRAS	CPCS	CPBS	CPAS	LOVRS	COVFS

- **COVFS: Counter Overflow**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the Counter Overflow Interrupt.

- **LOVRS: Load Overrun**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the Load Overrun Interrupt.

- **CPAS: RA Compare**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the RA Compare Interrupt.

- **CPBS: RB Compare**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the RB Compare Interrupt.

- **CPCS: RC Compare**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the RC Compare Interrupt.

- **LDRAS: RA Loading**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the RA Load Interrupt.

- **LDRBS: RB Loading**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the RB Load Interrupt.

- **ETRGS: External Trigger**

0 = no effect.

1 = enables the External Trigger Interrupt.

### 31.7.18 TC Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** TC\_IDRx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x40010028 (0)[0], 0x40010068 (0)[1], 0x400100A8 (0)[2], 0x40014028 (1)[0], 0x40014068 (1)[1],  
0x400140A8 (1)[2]

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ETRGS	LDRBS	LDRAS	CPCS	CPBS	CPAS	LOVRS	COVFS

- **COVFS: Counter Overflow**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the Counter Overflow Interrupt.

- **LOVRS: Load Overrun**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the Load Overrun Interrupt (if WAVE = 0).

- **CPAS: RA Compare**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the RA Compare Interrupt (if WAVE = 1).

- **CPBS: RB Compare**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the RB Compare Interrupt (if WAVE = 1).

- **CPCS: RC Compare**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the RC Compare Interrupt.

- **LDRAS: RA Loading**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the RA Load Interrupt (if WAVE = 0).

- **LDRBS: RB Loading**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the RB Load Interrupt (if WAVE = 0).

- **ETRGS: External Trigger**

0 = no effect.

1 = disables the External Trigger Interrupt.



### 31.7.19 TC Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** TC\_IMRx [x=0..2]

**Addresses:** 0x4001002C (0)[0], 0x4001006C (0)[1], 0x400100AC (0)[2], 0x4001402C (1)[0], 0x4001406C (1)[1],  
0x400140AC (1)[2]

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ETRGS	LDRBS	LDRAS	CPCS	CPBS	CPAS	LOVRS	COVFS

- **COVFS: Counter Overflow**

0 = the Counter Overflow Interrupt is disabled.

1 = the Counter Overflow Interrupt is enabled.

- **LOVRS: Load Overrun**

0 = the Load Overrun Interrupt is disabled.

1 = the Load Overrun Interrupt is enabled.

- **CPAS: RA Compare**

0 = the RA Compare Interrupt is disabled.

1 = the RA Compare Interrupt is enabled.

- **CPBS: RB Compare**

0 = the RB Compare Interrupt is disabled.

1 = the RB Compare Interrupt is enabled.

- **CPCS: RC Compare**

0 = the RC Compare Interrupt is disabled.

1 = the RC Compare Interrupt is enabled.

- **LDRAS: RA Loading**

0 = the Load RA Interrupt is disabled.

1 = the Load RA Interrupt is enabled.

- **LDRBS: RB Loading**

0 = the Load RB Interrupt is disabled.

1 = the Load RB Interrupt is enabled.

- **ETRGS: External Trigger**

0 = the External Trigger Interrupt is disabled.

1 = the External Trigger Interrupt is enabled.

## 32. Pulse Width Modulation Controller (PWM)

### 32.1 Description

The PWM macrocell controls several channels independently. Each channel controls one square output waveform. Characteristics of the output waveform such as period, duty-cycle and polarity are configurable through the user interface. Each channel selects and uses one of the clocks provided by the clock generator. The clock generator provides several clocks resulting from the division of the PWM macrocell master clock.

All PWM macrocell accesses are made through APB mapped registers.

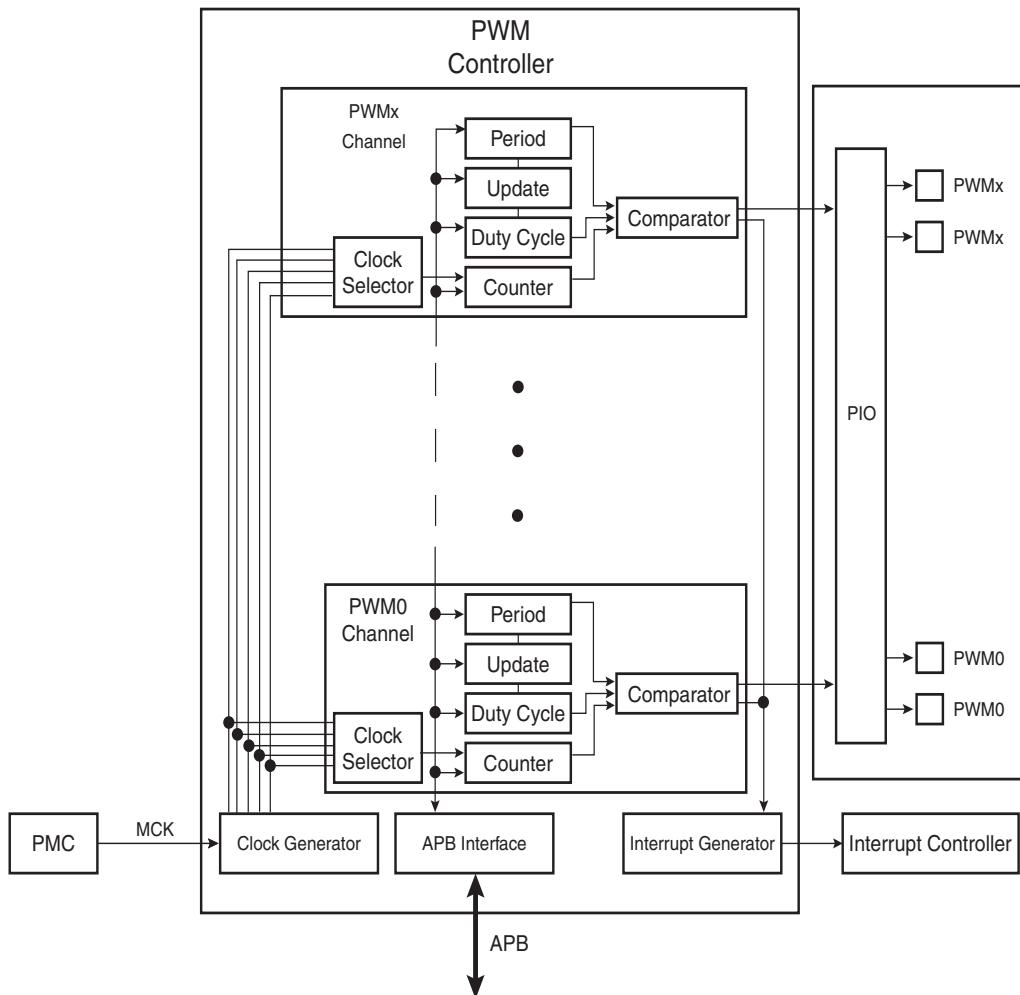
Channels can be synchronized, to generate non overlapped waveforms. All channels integrate a double buffering system in order to prevent an unexpected output waveform while modifying the period or the duty-cycle.

### 32.2 Embedded Characteristics

- 4 Channels
- One 16-bit Counter Per Channel
- Common Clock Generator Providing Thirteen Different Clocks
  - A Modulo n Counter Providing Eleven Clocks
  - Two Independent Linear Dividers Working on Modulo n Counter Outputs
- Independent Channels
  - Independent Enable Disable Command for Each Channel
  - Independent Clock Selection for Each Channel
  - Independent Period and Duty Cycle for Each Channel
  - Double Buffering of Period or Duty Cycle for Each Channel
  - Programmable Selection of The Output Waveform Polarity for Each Channel
  - Programmable Center or Left Aligned Output Waveform for Each Channel

### 32.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 32-1.** Pulse Width Modulation Controller Block Diagram



### 32.4 I/O Lines Description

Each channel outputs one waveform on one external I/O line.

**Table 32-1.** I/O Line Description

Name	Description	Type
PWMx	PWM Waveform Output for channel x	Output

### 32.5 Product Dependencies

#### 32.5.1 I/O Lines

The pins used for interfacing the PWM may be multiplexed with PIO lines. The programmer must first program the PIO controller to assign the desired PWM pins to their peripheral function. If I/O lines of the PWM are not used by the application, they can be used for other purposes by the PIO controller.

All of the PWM outputs may or may not be enabled. If an application requires only four channels, then only four PIO lines will be assigned to PWM outputs.

**Table 32-2.** I/O Lines

Instance	Signal	I/O Line	Peripheral
PWM	PWM0	PA0	A
PWM	PWM0	PA11	B
PWM	PWM0	PA23	B
PWM	PWM0	PB0	A
PWM	PWM0	PC8	B
PWM	PWM0	PC18	B
PWM	PWM0	PC22	B
PWM	PWM1	PA1	A
PWM	PWM1	PA12	B
PWM	PWM1	PA24	B
PWM	PWM1	PB1	A
PWM	PWM1	PC9	B
PWM	PWM1	PC19	B
PWM	PWM2	PA2	A
PWM	PWM2	PA13	B
PWM	PWM2	PA25	B
PWM	PWM2	PB4	B
PWM	PWM2	PC10	B
PWM	PWM2	PC20	B
PWM	PWM3	PA7	B
PWM	PWM3	PA14	B
PWM	PWM3	PB14	B
PWM	PWM3	PC11	B
PWM	PWM3	PC21	B

### 32.5.2 Power Management

The PWM is not continuously clocked. The programmer must first enable the PWM clock in the Power Management Controller (PMC) before using the PWM. However, if the application does not require PWM operations, the PWM clock can be stopped when not needed and be restarted later. In this case, the PWM will resume its operations where it left off.

Configuring the PWM does not require the PWM clock to be enabled.



### 32.5.3 Interrupt Sources

The PWM interrupt line is connected on one of the internal sources of the Interrupt Controller. Using the PWM interrupt requires the Interrupt Controller to be programmed first. Note that it is not recommended to use the PWM interrupt line in edge sensitive mode.

**Table 32-3.** Peripheral IDs

Instance	ID
PWM	31

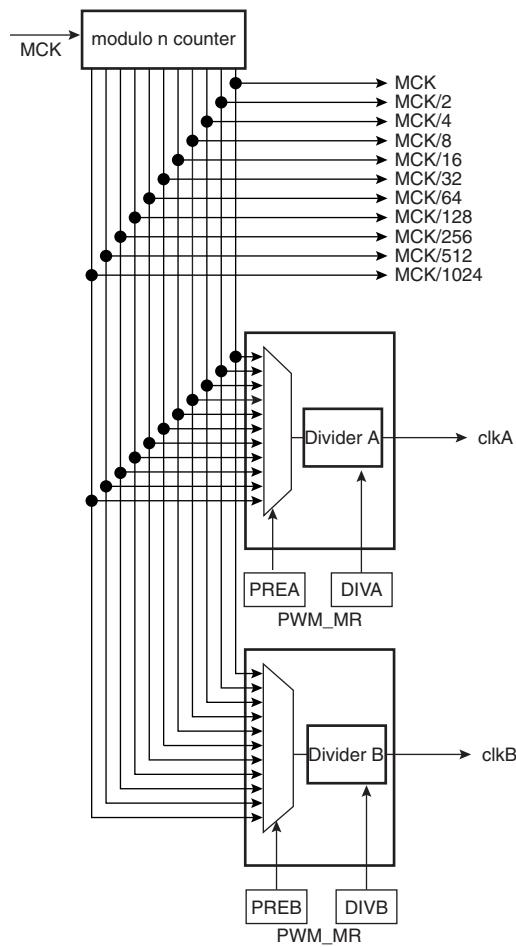
## 32.6 Functional Description

The PWM macrocell is primarily composed of a clock generator module and 4 channels.

- Clocked by the system clock, MCK, the clock generator module provides 13 clocks.
- Each channel can independently choose one of the clock generator outputs.
- Each channel generates an output waveform with attributes that can be defined independently for each channel through the user interface registers.

### 32.6.1 PWM Clock Generator

**Figure 32-2.** Functional View of the Clock Generator Block Diagram



**Caution:** Before using the PWM macrocell, the programmer must first enable the PWM clock in the Power Management Controller (PMC).

The PWM macrocell master clock, MCK, is divided in the clock generator module to provide different clocks available for all channels. Each channel can independently select one of the divided clocks.

The clock generator is divided in three blocks:

- a modulo n counter which provides 11 clocks:  $F_{MCK}$ ,  $F_{MCK}/2$ ,  $F_{MCK}/4$ ,  $F_{MCK}/8$ ,  $F_{MCK}/16$ ,  $F_{MCK}/32$ ,  $F_{MCK}/64$ ,  $F_{MCK}/128$ ,  $F_{MCK}/256$ ,  $F_{MCK}/512$ ,  $F_{MCK}/1024$
- two linear dividers (1, 1/2, 1/3, ... 1/255) that provide two separate clocks: clkA and clkB

Each linear divider can independently divide one of the clocks of the modulo n counter. The selection of the clock to be divided is made according to the PREA (PREB) field of the PWM Mode register (PWM\_MR). The resulting clock clkA (clkB) is the clock selected divided by DIVA (DIVB) field value in the PWM Mode register (PWM\_MR).

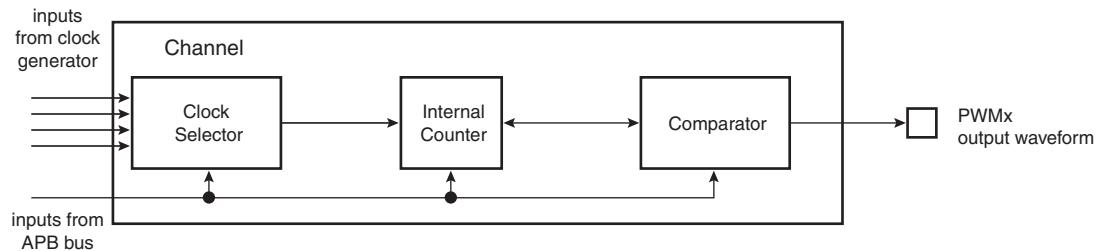
After a reset of the PWM controller, DIVA (DIVB) and PREA (PREB) in the PWM Mode register are set to 0. This implies that after reset clkA (clkB) are turned off.

At reset, all clocks provided by the modulo n counter are turned off except clock “clk”. This situation is also true when the PWM master clock is turned off through the Power Management Controller.

## 32.6.2 PWM Channel

### 32.6.2.1 Block Diagram

**Figure 32-3.** Functional View of the Channel Block Diagram



Each of the 4 channels is composed of three blocks:

- A clock selector which selects one of the clocks provided by the clock generator described in [Section 32.6.1 “PWM Clock Generator” on page 630](#).
- An internal counter clocked by the output of the clock selector. This internal counter is incremented or decremented according to the channel configuration and comparators events. The size of the internal counter is 16 bits.
- A comparator used to generate events according to the internal counter value. It also computes the PWMx output waveform according to the configuration.

### 32.6.2.2 Waveform Properties

The different properties of output waveforms are:

- the **internal clock selection**. The internal channel counter is clocked by one of the clocks provided by the clock generator described in the previous section. This channel parameter is defined in the CPRE field of the PWM\_CMRx register. This field is reset at 0.
- the **waveform period**. This channel parameter is defined in the CPRD field of the PWM\_CPRDx register.

- If the waveform is left aligned, then the output waveform period depends on the counter source clock and can be calculated:

By using the Master Clock (MCK) divided by an X given prescaler value (with X being 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, or 1024), the resulting period formula will be:

$$\frac{(X \times CPRD)}{MCK}$$

By using a Master Clock divided by one of both DIVA or DIVB divider, the formula becomes, respectively:

$$\frac{(X \times CPRD \times DIVA)}{MCK} \text{ or } \frac{(X \times CPRD \times DIVB)}{MCK}$$

If the waveform is center aligned then the output waveform period depends on the counter source clock and can be calculated:

By using the Master Clock (MCK) divided by an X given prescaler value (with X being 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, or 1024). The resulting period formula will be:

$$\frac{(2 \times X \times CPRD)}{MCK}$$

By using a Master Clock divided by one of both DIVA or DIVB divider, the formula becomes, respectively:

$$\frac{(2 \times X \times CPRD \times DIVA)}{MCK} \text{ or } \frac{(2 \times X \times CPRD \times DIVB)}{MCK}$$

- the **waveform duty cycle**. This channel parameter is defined in the CDTY field of the PWM\_CDTYx register.

If the waveform is left aligned then:

$$\text{duty cycle} = \frac{(\text{period} - 1 / \text{fchannel\_x\_clock} \times \text{CDTY})}{\text{period}}$$

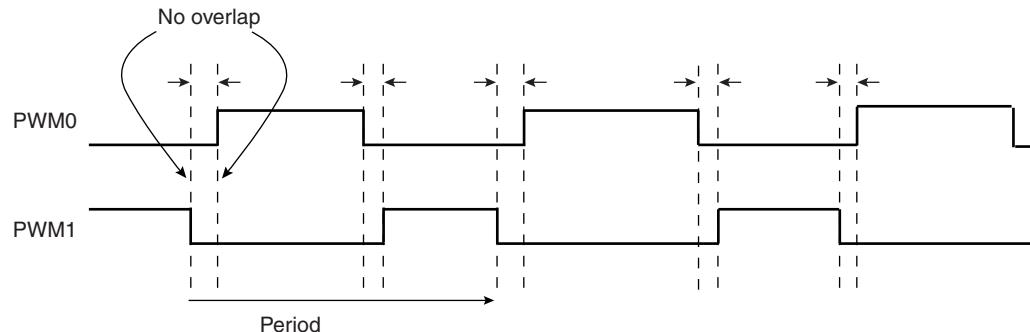
If the waveform is center aligned, then:

$$\text{duty cycle} = \frac{((\text{period} / 2) - 1 / \text{fchannel\_x\_clock} \times \text{CDTY}))}{(\text{period} / 2)}$$

- the **waveform polarity**. At the beginning of the period, the signal can be at high or low level. This property is defined in the CPOL field of the PWM\_CMRx register. By default the signal starts by a low level.

- the **waveform alignment**. The output waveform can be left or center aligned. Center aligned waveforms can be used to generate non overlapped waveforms. This property is defined in the CALG field of the PWM\_CMRx register. The default mode is left aligned.

**Figure 32-4.** Non Overlapped Center Aligned Waveforms



Note: 1. See [Figure 32-5 on page 634](#) for a detailed description of center aligned waveforms.

When center aligned, the internal channel counter increases up to CPRD and decreases down to 0. This ends the period.

When left aligned, the internal channel counter increases up to CPRD and is reset. This ends the period.

Thus, for the same CPRD value, the period for a center aligned channel is twice the period for a left aligned channel.

Waveforms are fixed at 0 when:

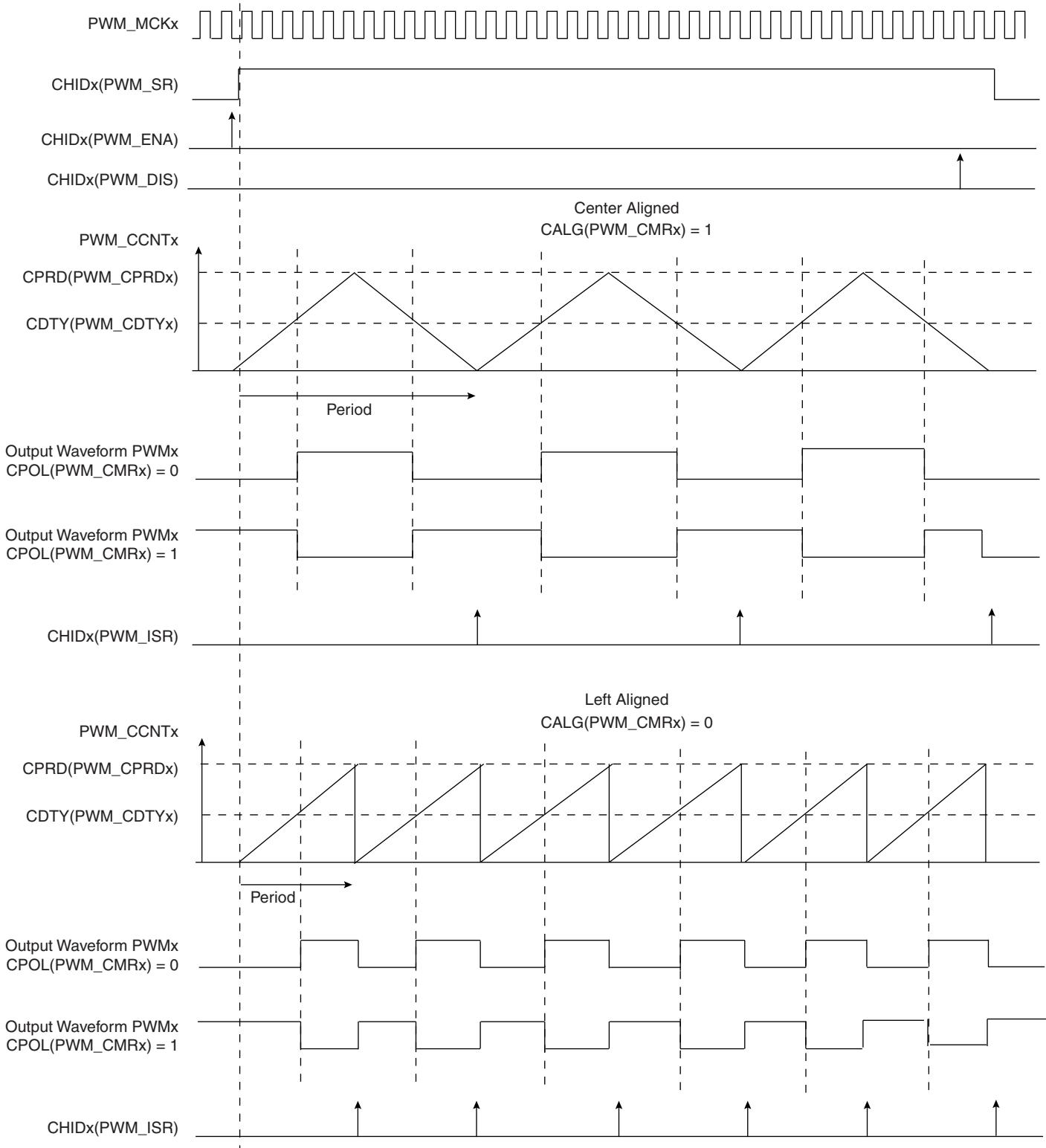
- CDTY = CPRD and CPOL = 0
- CDTY = 0 and CPOL = 1

Waveforms are fixed at 1 (once the channel is enabled) when:

- CDTY = 0 and CPOL = 0
- CDTY = CPRD and CPOL = 1

The waveform polarity must be set before enabling the channel. This immediately affects the channel output level. Changes on channel polarity are not taken into account while the channel is enabled.

**Figure 32-5.** Waveform Properties



### 32.6.3 PWM Controller Operations

#### 32.6.3.1 Initialization

Before enabling the output channel, this channel must have been configured by the software application:

- Configuration of the clock generator if DIVA and DIVB are required
- Selection of the clock for each channel (CPRE field in the PWM\_CMRx register)
- Configuration of the waveform alignment for each channel (CALG field in the PWM\_CMRx register)
- Configuration of the period for each channel (CPRD in the PWM\_CPRDx register). Writing in PWM\_CPRDx Register is possible while the channel is disabled. After validation of the channel, the user must use PWM\_CUPDx Register to update PWM\_CPRDx as explained below.
- Configuration of the duty cycle for each channel (CDTY in the PWM\_CDTYx register). Writing in PWM\_CDTYx Register is possible while the channel is disabled. After validation of the channel, the user must use PWM\_CUPDx Register to update PWM\_CDTYx as explained below.
- Configuration of the output waveform polarity for each channel (CPOL in the PWM\_CMRx register)
- Enable Interrupts (Writing CHIDx in the PWM\_IER register)
- Enable the PWM channel (Writing CHIDx in the PWM\_ENA register)

It is possible to synchronize different channels by enabling them at the same time by means of writing simultaneously several CHIDx bits in the PWM\_ENA register.

- In such a situation, all channels may have the same clock selector configuration and the same period specified.

#### 32.6.3.2 Source Clock Selection Criteria

The large number of source clocks can make selection difficult. The relationship between the value in the Period Register (PWM\_CPRDx) and the Duty Cycle Register (PWM\_CDTYx) can help the user in choosing. The event number written in the Period Register gives the PWM accuracy. The Duty Cycle quantum cannot be lower than  $1/PWM\_CPRDx$  value. The higher the value of PWM\_CPRDx, the greater the PWM accuracy.

For example, if the user sets 15 (in decimal) in PWM\_CPRDx, the user is able to set a value between 1 up to 14 in PWM\_CDTYx Register. The resulting duty cycle quantum cannot be lower than  $1/15$  of the PWM period.

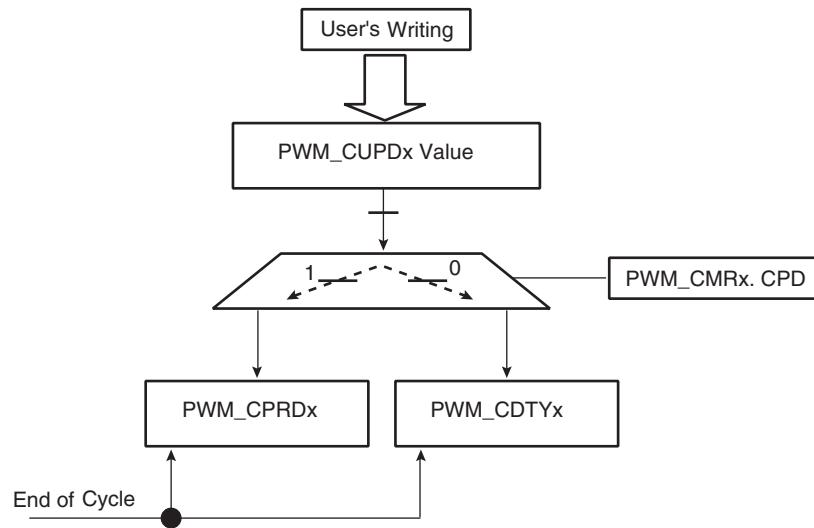
#### 32.6.3.3 Changing the Duty Cycle or the Period

It is possible to modulate the output waveform duty cycle or period.

To prevent unexpected output waveform, the user must use the update register (PWM\_CUPDx) to change waveform parameters while the channel is still enabled. The user can write a new period value or duty cycle value in the update register (PWM\_CUPDx). This register holds the new value until the end of the current cycle and updates the value for the next cycle. Depending on the CPD field in the PWM\_CMRx register, PWM\_CUPDx either updates PWM\_CPRDx or PWM\_CDTYx. Note that even if the update register is used, the period must not be smaller than the duty cycle.



**Figure 32-6.** Synchronized Period or Duty Cycle Update



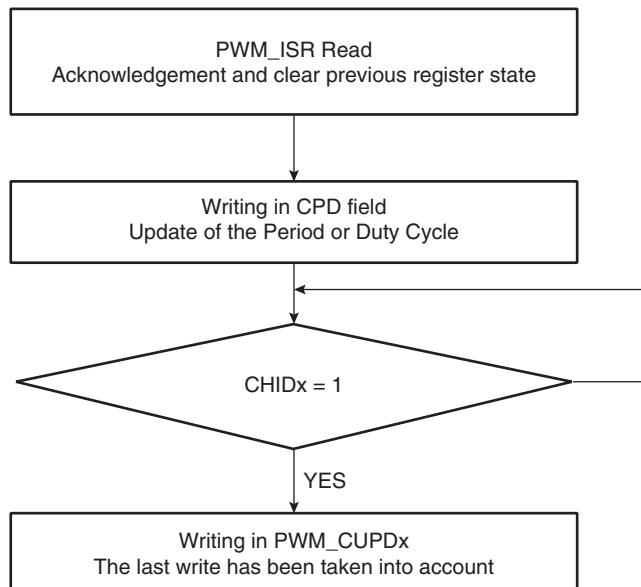
To prevent overwriting the PWM\_CUPDx by software, the user can use status events in order to synchronize his software. Two methods are possible. In both, the user must enable the dedicated interrupt in PWM\_IER at PWM Controller level.

The first method (polling method) consists of reading the relevant status bit in PWM\_ISR Register according to the enabled channel(s). See [Figure 32-7](#).

The second method uses an Interrupt Service Routine associated with the PWM channel.

Note: Reading the PWM\_ISR register automatically clears CHIDx flags.

**Figure 32-7.** Polling Method



Note: Polarity and alignment can be modified only when the channel is disabled.

### 32.6.3.4 *Interrupts*

Depending on the interrupt mask in the PWM\_IMR register, an interrupt is generated at the end of the corresponding channel period. The interrupt remains active until a read operation in the PWM\_ISR register occurs.

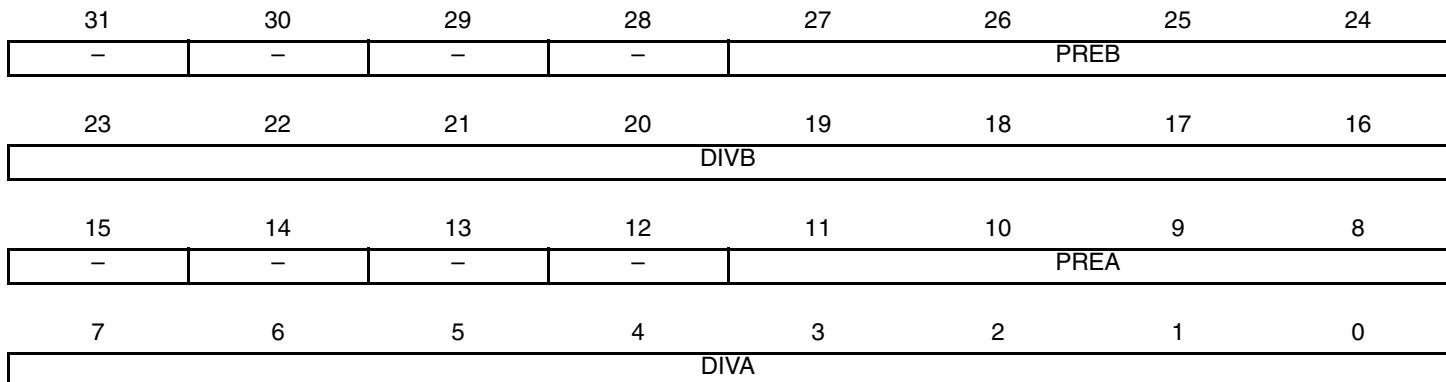
A channel interrupt is enabled by setting the corresponding bit in the PWM\_IER register. A channel interrupt is disabled by setting the corresponding bit in the PWM\_IDR register.

## 32.7 Pulse Width Modulation Controller (PWM) User Interface

**Table 32-4.** Register Mapping<sup>(2)</sup>

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	PWM Mode Register	PWM_MR	Read-write	0
0x04	PWM Enable Register	PWM_ENA	Write-only	-
0x08	PWM Disable Register	PWM_DIS	Write-only	-
0x0C	PWM Status Register	PWM_SR	Read-only	0
0x10	PWM Interrupt Enable Register	PWM_IER	Write-only	-
0x14	PWM Interrupt Disable Register	PWM_IDR	Write-only	-
0x18	PWM Interrupt Mask Register	PWM_IMR	Read-only	0
0x1C	PWM Interrupt Status Register	PWM_ISR	Read-only	0
0x20 - 0xFC	Reserved	-	-	-
0x100 - 0x1FC	Reserved			
0x200 + ch_num * 0x20 + 0x00	PWM Channel Mode Register	PWM_CMR	Read-write	0x0
0x200 + ch_num * 0x20 + 0x04	PWM Channel Duty Cycle Register	PWM_CDTY	Read-write	0x0
0x200 + ch_num * 0x20 + 0x08	PWM Channel Period Register	PWM_CPRD	Read-write	0x0
0x200 + ch_num * 0x20 + 0x0C	PWM Channel Counter Register	PWM_CCNT	Read-only	0x0
0x200 + ch_num * 0x20 + 0x10	PWM Channel Update Register	PWM_CUPD	Write-only	-

2. Some registers are indexed with “ch\_num” index ranging from 0 to 3.

**32.7.1 PWM Mode Register****Name:** PWM\_MR**Address:** 0x40020000**Access:** Read/Write

- DIVA, DIVB: CLKA, CLKKB Divide Factor

Value	Name	Description
0	CLK_OFF	CLKA, CLKKB clock is turned off
1	CLK_DIV1	CLKA, CLKKB clock is clock selected by PREA, PREB
2-255	—	CLKA, CLKKB clock is clock selected by PREA, PREB divided by DIVA, DIVB factor.

- PREA, PREB

Value	Name	Description
0000	MCK	Master Clock
0001	MCKDIV2	Master Clock divided by 2
0010	MCKDIV4	Master Clock divided by 4
0011	MCKDIV8	Master Clock divided by 8
0100	MCKDIV16	Master Clock divided by 16
0101	MCKDIV32	Master Clock divided by 32
0110	MCKDIV64	Master Clock divided by 64
0111	MCKDIV128	Master Clock divided by 128
1000	MCKDIV256	Master Clock divided by 256
1001	MCKDIV512	Master Clock divided by 512
1010	MCKDIV1024	Master Clock divided by 1024

Values which are not listed in the table must be considered as “reserved”.

**32.7.2 PWM Enable Register****Name:** PWM\_ENA**Address:** 0x40020004**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				CHID3	CHID2	CHID1	CHID0

• **CHID<sub>x</sub>:** Channel ID

0 = No effect.

1 = Enable PWM output for channel x.

**32.7.3 PWM Disable Register****Name:** PWM\_DIS**Address:** 0x40020008**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				CHID3	CHID2	CHID1	CHID0

• **CHID<sub>x</sub>:** Channel ID

0 = No effect.

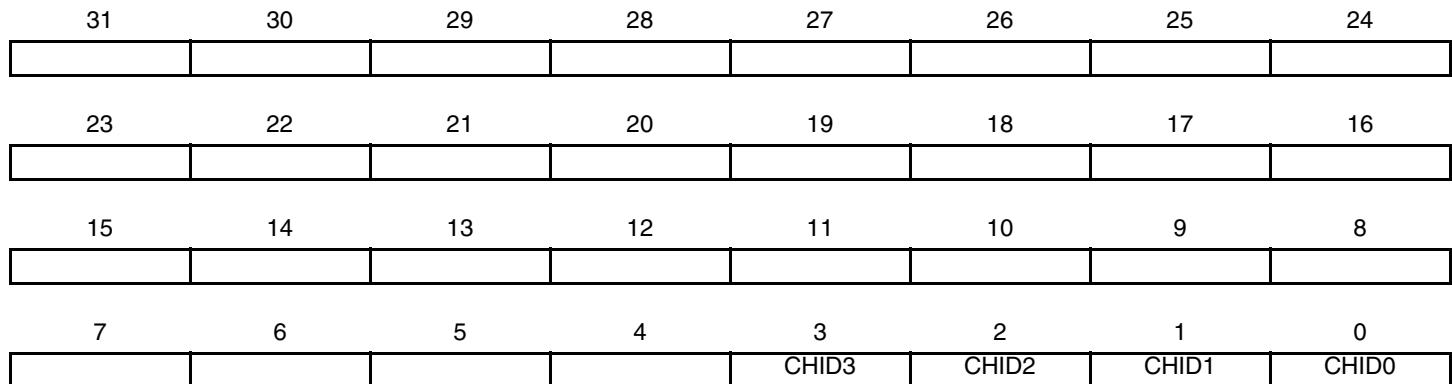
1 = Disable PWM output for channel x.

### 32.7.4 PWM Status Register

**Name:** PWM\_SR

**Address:** 0x4002000C

**Access:** Read-only



- **CHID<sub>x</sub>:** Channel ID

0 = PWM output for channel x is disabled.

1 = PWM output for channel x is enabled.

### 32.7.5 PWM Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** PWM\_IER

**Address:** 0x40020010

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				CHID3	CHID2	CHID1	CHID0

- **CHIDx: Channel ID.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enable interrupt for PWM channel x.

### 32.7.6 PWM Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** PWM\_IDR

**Address:** 0x40020014

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				CHID3	CHID2	CHID1	CHID0

- **CHIDx: Channel ID.**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disable interrupt for PWM channel x.

### 32.7.7 PWM Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** PWM\_IMR

**Address:** 0x40020018

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				CHID3	CHID2	CHID1	CHID0

- **CHID<sub>x</sub>:** Channel ID.

0 = Interrupt for PWM channel x is disabled.

1 = Interrupt for PWM channel x is enabled.

### 32.7.8 PWM Interrupt Status Register

**Name:** PWM\_ISR

**Address:** 0x4002001C

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				CHID3	CHID2	CHID1	CHID0

- **CHID<sub>x</sub>:** Channel ID

0 = No new channel period has been achieved since the last read of the PWM\_ISR register.

1 = At least one new channel period has been achieved since the last read of the PWM\_ISR register.

Note: Reading PWM\_ISR automatically clears CHID<sub>x</sub> flags.

### 32.7.9 PWM Channel Mode Register

**Name:** PWM\_CMR[0..3]

**Addresses:** 0x40020200 [0], 0x40020220 [1], 0x40020240 [2], 0x40020260 [3]

**Access:** Read/Write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	CPD	CPOL	CALG
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	CPRE			

- **CPRE: Channel Pre-scaler**

Value	Name	Description
0000	MCK	Master Clock
0001	MCKDIV2	Master Clock divided by 2
0010	MCKDIV4	Master Clock divided by 4
0011	MCKDIV8	Master Clock divided by 8
0100	MCKDIV16	Master Clock divided by 16
0101	MCKDIV32	Master Clock divided by 32
0110	MCKDIV64	Master Clock divided by 64
0111	MCKDIV128	Master Clock divided by 128
1000	MCKDIV256	Master Clock divided by 256
1001	MCKDIV512	Master Clock divided by 512
1010	MCKDIV1024	Master Clock divided by 1024
1011	CLKA	Clock A
1100	CLKB	Clock B

Values which are not listed in the table must be considered as “reserved”.

- **CALG: Channel Alignment**

0 = The period is left aligned.

1 = The period is center aligned.

- **CPOL: Channel Polarity**

0 = The output waveform starts at a low level.

1 = The output waveform starts at a high level.

- **CPD: Channel Update Period**

0 = Writing to the PWM\_CUPDx will modify the duty cycle at the next period start event.

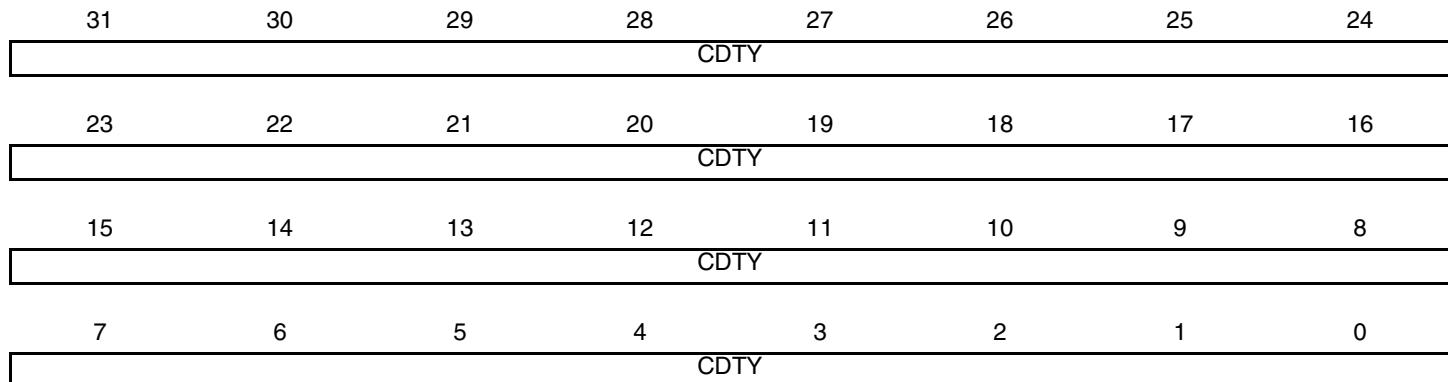
1 = Writing to the PWM\_CUPDx will modify the period at the next period start event.

### 32.7.10 PWM Channel Duty Cycle Register

**Name:** PWM\_CDTY[0..3]

**Addresses:** 0x40020204 [0], 0x40020224 [1], 0x40020244 [2], 0x40020264 [3]

**Access:** Read/Write



Only the first 16 bits (internal channel counter size) are significant.

- **CDTY: Channel Duty Cycle**

Defines the waveform duty cycle. This value must be defined between 0 and CPRD (PWM\_CPRx).

### 32.7.11 PWM Channel Period Register

**Name:** PWM\_CPRD[0..3]

**Addresses:** 0x40020208 [0], 0x40020228 [1], 0x40020248 [2], 0x40020268 [3]

**Access:** Read/Write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
CPRD							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
CPRD							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CPRD							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CPRD							

Only the first 16 bits (internal channel counter size) are significant.

- **CPRD: Channel Period**

If the waveform is left-aligned, then the output waveform period depends on the counter source clock and can be calculated:

- By using the Master Clock (MCK) divided by an X given prescaler value (with X being 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, or 1024). The resulting period formula will be:

$$\frac{(X \times CPRD)}{MCK}$$

- By using a Master Clock divided by one of both DIVA or DIVB divider, the formula becomes, respectively:

$$\frac{(CRPD \times DIVA)}{MCK} \text{ or } \frac{(CRPD \times DIVB)}{MCK}$$

If the waveform is center-aligned, then the output waveform period depends on the counter source clock and can be calculated:

- By using the Master Clock (MCK) divided by an X given prescaler value (with X being 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, or 1024). The resulting period formula will be:

$$\frac{(2 \times X \times CPRD)}{MCK}$$

- By using a Master Clock divided by one of both DIVA or DIVB divider, the formula becomes, respectively:

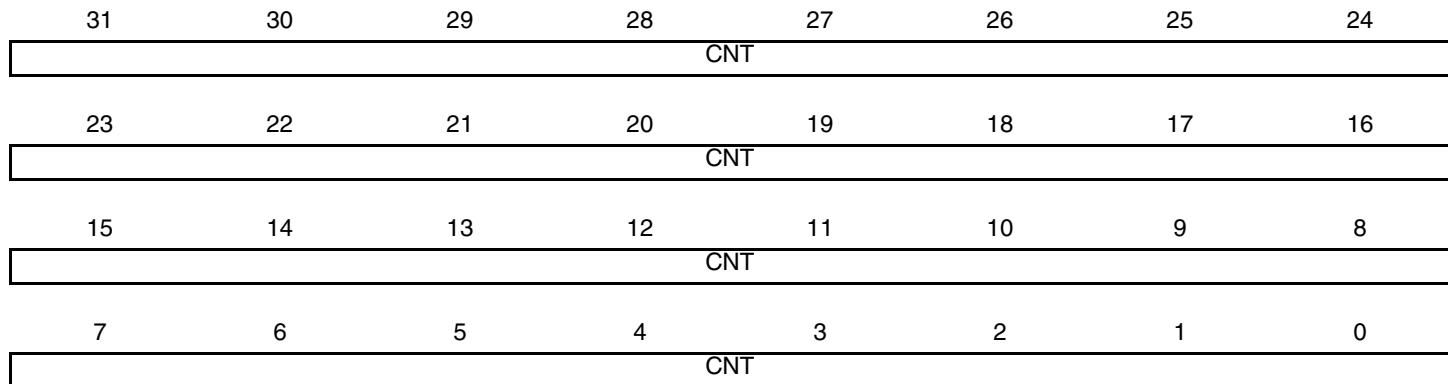
$$\frac{(2 \times CPRD \times DIVA)}{MCK} \text{ or } \frac{(2 \times CPRD \times DIVB)}{MCK}$$

### 32.7.12 PWM Channel Counter Register

**Name:** PWM\_CCNT[0..3]

**Addresses:** 0x4002020C [0], 0x4002022C [1], 0x4002024C [2], 0x4002026C [3]

**Access:** Read-only



- **CNT: Channel Counter Register**

Internal counter value. This register is reset when:

- the channel is enabled (writing CHID $x$  in the PWM\_ENA register).
- the counter reaches CPRD value defined in the PWM\_CPRD $x$  register if the waveform is left aligned.

### 32.7.13 PWM Channel Update Register

**Name:** PWM\_CUPD[0..3]

**Addresses:** 0x40020210 [0], 0x40020230 [1], 0x40020250 [2], 0x40020270 [3]

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
CUPD							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
CUPD							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CUPD							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CUPD							

CUPD: Channel Update Register

This register acts as a double buffer for the period or the duty cycle. This prevents an unexpected waveform when modifying the waveform period or duty-cycle.

Only the first 16 bits (internal channel counter size) are significant.

When CPD field of PWM\_CMRx register = 0, the duty-cycle (CDTY of PWM\_CDTYx register) is updated with the CUPD value at the beginning of the next period.

When CPD field of PWM\_CMRx register = 1, the period (CPRD of PWM\_CPRDx register) is updated with the CUPD value at the beginning of the next period.

## 33. Analog-to-digital Converter (ADC)

### 33.1 Description

The ADC is based on a 10-bit Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) managed by an ADC Controller. Refer to the Block Diagram: [Figure 33-1](#). It also integrates a 16-to-1 analog multiplexer, making possible the analog-to-digital conversions of 16 analog lines. The conversions extend from 0V to ADVREF. The ADC supports an 8-bit or 10-bit resolution mode, and conversion results are reported in a common register for all channels, as well as in a channel-dedicated register. Software trigger, external trigger on rising edge of the ADTRG pin or internal triggers from Timer Counter output(s) are configurable.

The comparison circuitry allows automatic detection of values below a threshold, higher than a threshold, in a given range or outside the range, thresholds and ranges being fully configurable.

The ADC also integrates a Sleep Mode and a conversion sequencer and connects with a PDC channel. These features reduce both power consumption and processor intervention.

A whole set of reference voltages is generated internally from a single external reference voltage node that may be equal to the analog supply voltage. An external decoupling capacitance is required for noise filtering.

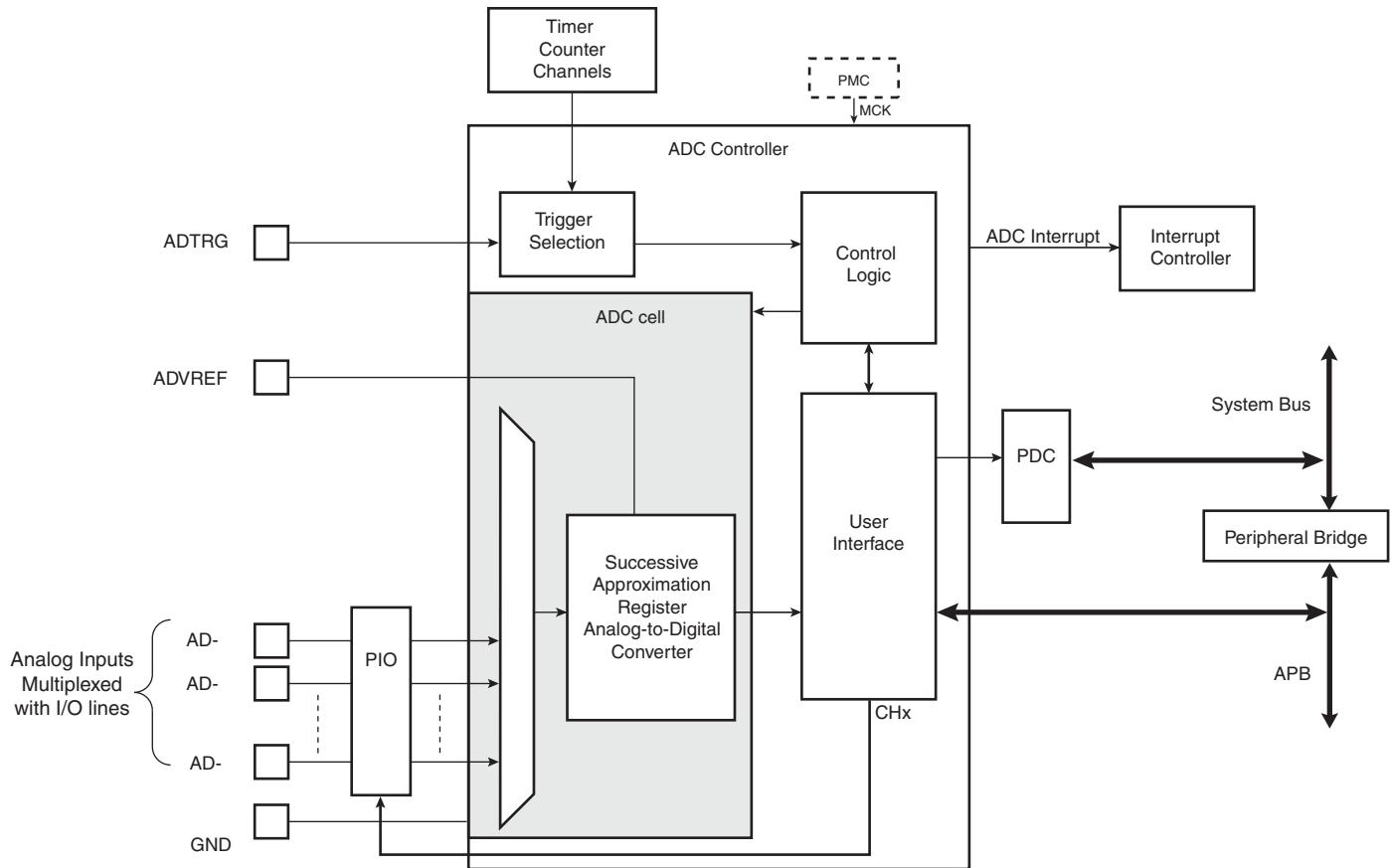
Finally, the user can configure ADC timings, such as Startup Time and Tracking Time.

### 33.2 Embedded Characteristics

- 10-bit Resolution
- 500 kHz Conversion Rate
- Wide Range Power Supply Operation
- Integrated Multiplexer Offering Up to 16 Independent Analog Inputs
- Individual Enable and Disable of Each Channel
- Hardware or Software Trigger
  - External Trigger Pin
  - Timer Counter Outputs (Corresponding TIOA Trigger)
- PDC Support
- Possibility of ADC Timings Configuration
- Two Sleep Modes and Conversion Sequencer
  - Automatic Wakeup on Trigger and Back to Sleep Mode after Conversions of all Enabled Channels
  - Possibility of Customized Channel Sequence
- Standby Mode for Fast Wakeup Time Response
  - Power Down Capability
- Automatic Window Comparison of Converted Values
- Write Protect Registers

### 33.3 Block Diagram

**Figure 33-1.** Analog-to-Digital Converter Block Diagram



### 33.4 Signal Description

**Table 33-1.** ADC Pin Description

Pin Name	Description
ADVREF	Reference voltage
AD0 - AD15	Analog input channels
ADTRG	External trigger

## 33.5 Product Dependencies

### 33.5.1 Power Management

The ADC Controller is not continuously clocked. The programmer must first enable the ADC Controller MCK in the Power Management Controller (PMC) before using the ADC Controller. However, if the application does not require ADC operations, the ADC Controller clock can be stopped when not needed and restarted when necessary. Configuring the ADC Controller does not require the ADC Controller clock to be enabled.

### 33.5.2 Interrupt Sources

The ADC interrupt line is connected on one of the internal sources of the Interrupt Controller. Using the ADC interrupt requires the NVIC to be programmed first.

**Table 33-2.** Peripheral IDs

Instance	ID
ADC	29

### 33.5.3 Analog Inputs

The analog input pins can be multiplexed with PIO lines. In this case, the assignment of the ADC input is automatically done as soon as the corresponding channel is enabled by writing the register ADC\_CHER. By default, after reset, the PIO line is configured as input with its pull-up enabled and the ADC input is connected to the GND.

### 33.5.4 I/O Lines

The pin ADTRG may be shared with other peripheral functions through the PIO Controller. In this case, the PIO Controller should be set accordingly to assign the pin ADTRG to the ADC function.

**Table 33-3.** I/O Lines

Instance	Signal	I/O Line	Peripheral
ADC	ADTRG	PA8	B
ADC	AD0	PA17	X1
ADC	AD1	PA18	X1
ADC	AD2/WKUP9	PA19	X1
ADC	AD3/WKUP10	PA20	X1
ADC	AD4	PB0	X1
ADC	AD5	PB1	X1
ADC	AD6/WKUP12	PB2	X1
ADC	AD7	PB3	X1
ADC	AD8	PA21	X1
ADC	AD9	PA22	X1
ADC	AD10	PC13	X1
ADC	AD11	PC15	X1
ADC	AD12	PC12	X1



**Table 33-3.** I/O Lines

ADC	AD13	PC29	X1
ADC	AD14	PC30	X1
ADC	AD15	PC31	X1

### 33.5.5 Timer Triggers

Timer Counters may or may not be used as hardware triggers depending on user requirements. Thus, some or all of the timer counters may be unconnected.

### 33.5.6 Conversion Performances

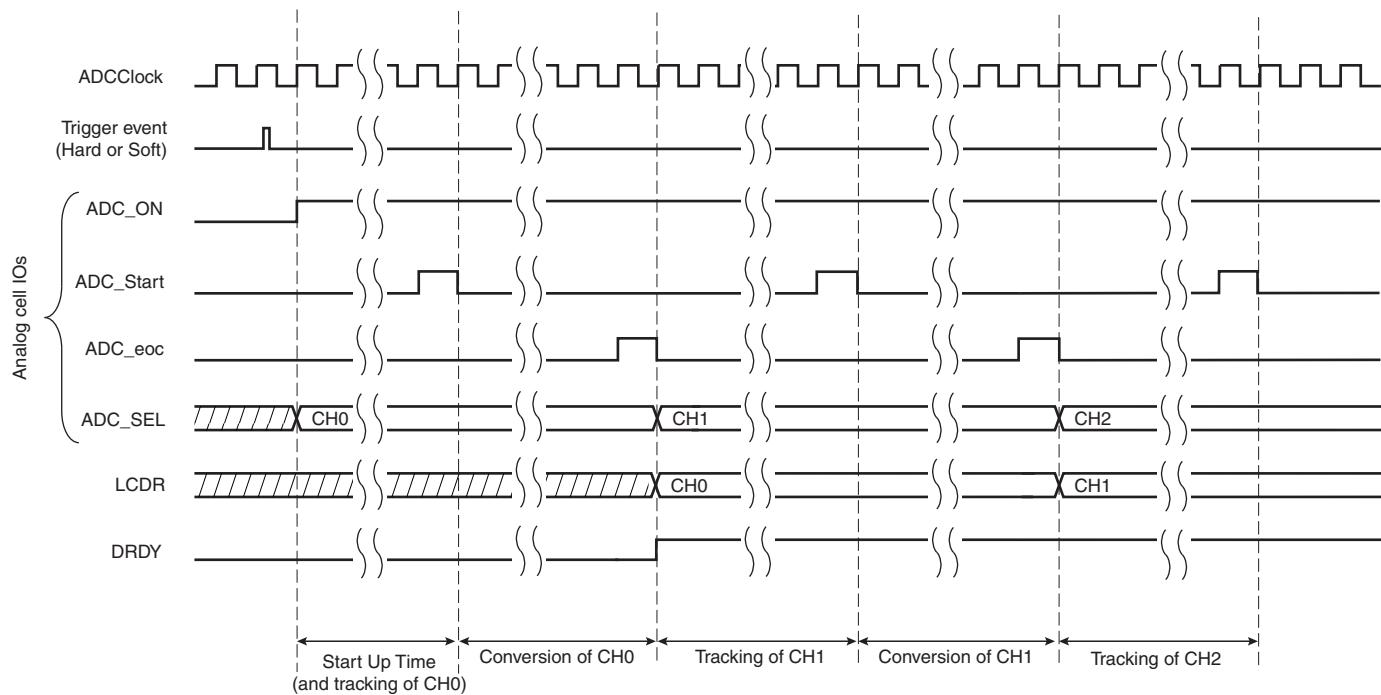
For performance and electrical characteristics of the ADC, see the product DC Characteristics section.

## 33.6 Functional Description

### 33.6.1 Analog-to-digital Conversion

The ADC uses the ADC Clock to perform conversions. Converting a single analog value to a 10-bit digital data requires Tracking Clock cycles as defined in the field TRACKTIM of the “[ADC Mode Register](#)” on page 661 and Transfer Clock cycles as defined in the field TRANSFER of the same register. The ADC Clock frequency is selected in the PRESCAL field of the Mode Register (ADC\_MR). The tracking phase starts during the conversion of the previous channel. If the tracking time is longer than the conversion time, the tracking phase is extended to the end of the previous conversion.

The ADC clock range is between MCK/2, if PRESCAL is 0, and MCK/512, if PRESCAL is set to 255 (0xFF). PRESCAL must be programmed in order to provide an ADC clock frequency according to the parameters given in the product Electrical Characteristics section.

**Figure 33-2.** Sequence of ADC conversions

### 33.6.2 Conversion Reference

The conversion is performed on a full range between 0V and the reference voltage pin ADVREF. Analog inputs between these voltages convert to values based on a linear conversion.

### 33.6.3 Conversion Resolution

The ADC supports 8-bit or 10-bit resolutions. The 8-bit selection is performed by setting the LOWRES bit in the ADC Mode Register (ADC\_MR). By default, after a reset, the resolution is the highest and the DATA field in the data registers is fully used. By setting the LOWRES bit, the ADC switches to the lowest resolution and the conversion results can be read in the lowest significant bits of the data registers. The two highest bits of the DATA field in the corresponding ADC\_CDR register and of the LDATA field in the ADC\_LCDR register read 0.

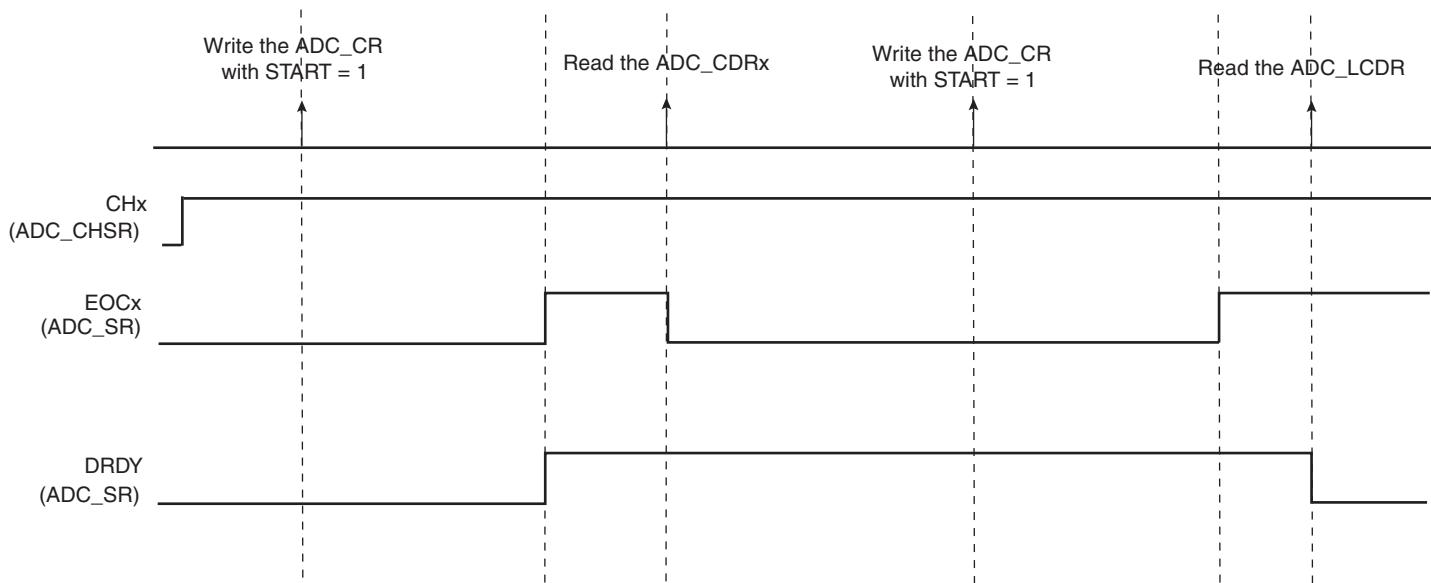
### 33.6.4 Conversion Results

When a conversion is completed, the resulting 10-bit digital value is stored in the Channel Data Register (ADC\_CDRx) of the current channel and in the ADC Last Converted Data Register (ADC\_LCDR). By setting the TAG option in the ADC\_EMR, the ADC\_LCDR presents the channel number associated to the last converted data in the CHNB field.

The channel EOC bit in the Status Register (ADC\_SR) is set and the DRDY is set. In the case of a connected PDC channel, DRDY rising triggers a data transfer request. In any case, either EOC and DRDY can trigger an interrupt.

Reading one of the ADC\_CDR registers clears the corresponding EOC bit. Reading ADC\_LCDR clears the DRDY bit and EOC bit corresponding to the last converted channel.

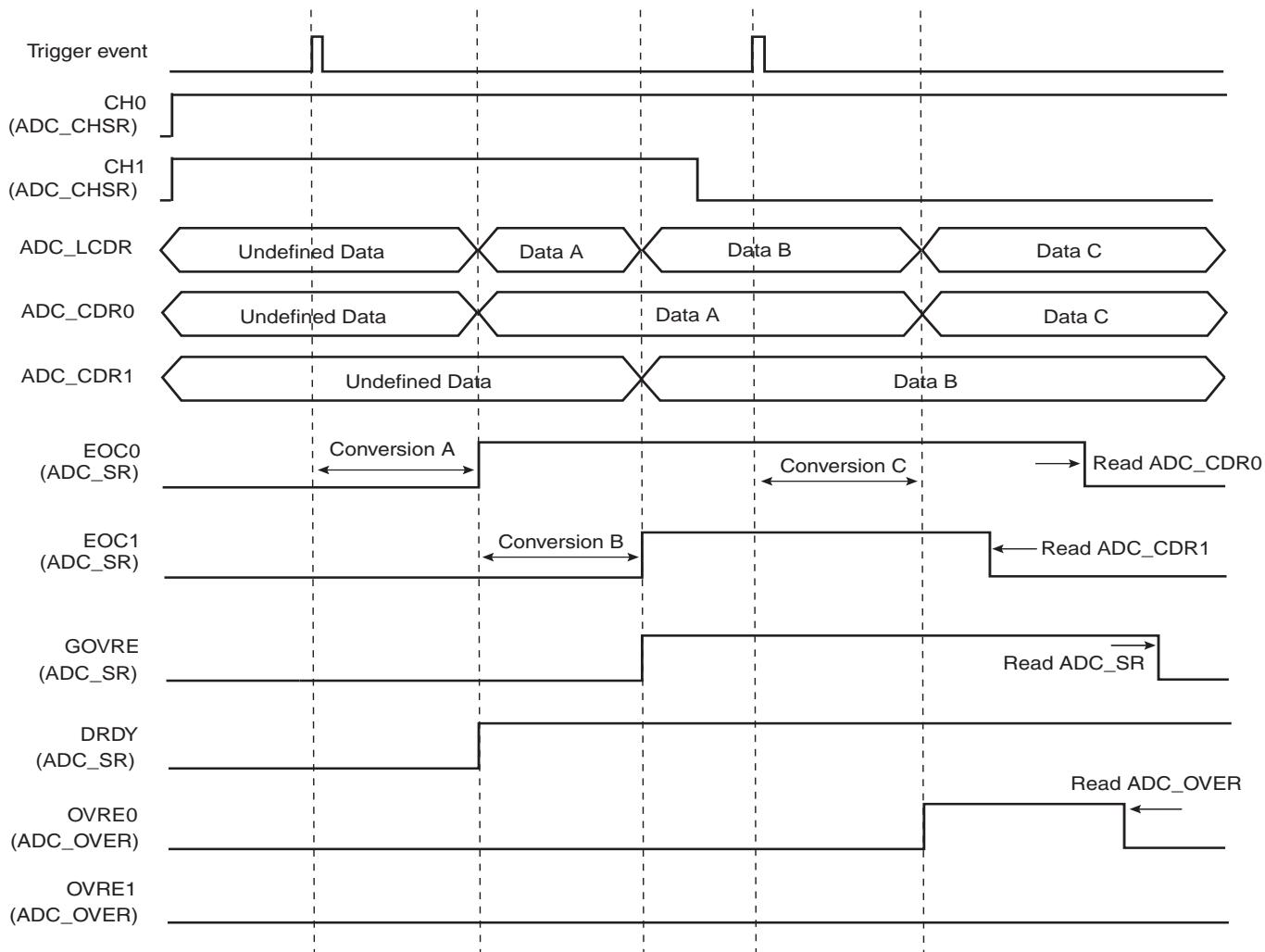
**Figure 33-3.** EOCx and DRDY Flag Behavior



If the ADC\_CDR is not read before further incoming data is converted, the corresponding Overrun Error (OVRE<sub>x</sub>) flag is set in the Overrun Status Register (ADC\_OVER).

Likewise, new data converted when DRDY is high sets the GOVRE bit (General Overrun Error) in ADC\_SR.

The OVRE<sub>x</sub> flag is automatically cleared when ADC\_OVER is read, and GOVRE flag is automatically cleared when ADC\_SR is read.

**Figure 33-4.** GOVRE and OVRE<sub>x</sub> Flag Behavior

**Warning:** If the corresponding channel is disabled during a conversion or if it is disabled and then reenabled during a conversion, its associated data and its corresponding EOC and OVRE flags in ADC\_SR are unpredictable.

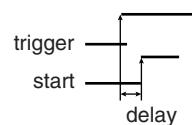
### 33.6.5 Conversion Triggers

Conversions of the active analog channels are started with a software or hardware trigger. The software trigger is provided by writing the Control Register (ADC\_CR) with the START bit at 1.

The hardware trigger can be one of the TIOA outputs of the Timer Counter channels or the external trigger input of the ADC (ADTRG). The hardware trigger is selected with the TRGSEL field in the Mode Register (ADC\_MR). The selected hardware trigger is enabled with the TRGEN bit in the Mode Register (ADC\_MR).

The minimum time between 2 consecutive trigger events must be strictly greater than the duration time of the longest conversion sequence according to configuration of registers ADC\_MR, ADC\_CHSR, ADC\_SEQR1, ADC\_SEQR2.

If a hardware trigger is selected, the start of a conversion is triggered after a delay starting at each rising edge of the selected signal. Due to asynchronous handling, the delay may vary in a range of 2 MCK clock periods to 1 ADC clock period.



If one of the TIOA outputs is selected, the corresponding Timer Counter channel must be programmed in Waveform Mode.

Only one start command is necessary to initiate a conversion sequence on all the channels. The ADC hardware logic automatically performs the conversions on the active channels, then waits for a new request. The Channel Enable (ADC\_CHER) and Channel Disable (ADC\_CHDR) Registers permit the analog channels to be enabled or disabled independently.

If the ADC is used with a PDC, only the transfers of converted data from enabled channels are performed and the resulting data buffers should be interpreted accordingly.

### 33.6.6 Sleep Mode and Conversion Sequencer

The ADC Sleep Mode maximizes power saving by automatically deactivating the ADC when it is not being used for conversions. Sleep Mode is selected by setting the SLEEP bit in the Mode Register ADC\_MR.

The Sleep mode is automatically managed by a conversion sequencer, which can automatically process the conversions of all channels at lowest power consumption.

This mode can be used when the minimum period of time between 2 successive trigger events is greater than the startup period of Analog-Digital converter (See the product ADC Characteristics section).

When a start conversion request occurs, the ADC is automatically activated. As the analog cell requires a start-up time, the logic waits during this time and starts the conversion on the enabled channels. When all conversions are complete, the ADC is deactivated until the next trigger. Triggers occurring during the sequence are not taken into account.

A fast wake-up mode is available in the ADC Mode Register (ADC\_MR) as a compromise between power saving strategy and responsiveness. Setting the FWUP bit to '1' enables the fast wake-up mode. In fast wake-up mode the ADC cell is not fully deactivated while no conversion is requested, thereby providing less power saving but faster wakeup.

The conversion sequencer allows automatic processing with minimum processor intervention and optimized power consumption. Conversion sequences can be performed periodically using

a Timer/Counter output. The periodic acquisition of several samples can be processed automatically without any intervention of the processor thanks to the PDC.

The sequence can be customized by programming the Sequence Channel Registers, ADC\_SEQR1 and ADC\_SEQR2 and setting to 1 the USEQ bit of the Mode Register (ADC\_MR). The user can choose a specific order of channels and can program up to 16 conversions by sequence. The user is totally free to create a personal sequence, by writing channel numbers in ADC\_SEQR1 and ADC\_SEQR2. Not only can channel numbers be written in any sequence, channel numbers can be repeated several times. Only enabled sequence bitfields are converted, consequently to program a 15-conversion sequence, the user can simply put a disable in ADC\_CHSR[15], thus disabling the 16THCH field of ADC\_SEQR2.

If all ADC channels (i.e. 16) are used on an application board, there is no restriction of usage of the user sequence. But as soon as some ADC channels are not enabled for conversion but rather used as pure digital inputs, the respective indexes of these channels cannot be used in the user sequence fields (ADC\_SEQR1, ADC\_SEQR2 bitfields). For example, if channel 4 is disabled (ADC\_CSR[4] = 0), ADC\_SEQR1, ADC\_SEQR2 register bitfields USCH1 up to USCH16 must not contain the value 4. Thus the length of the user sequence may be limited by this behavior.

As an example, if only 4 channels over 16 (CH0 up to CH3) are selected for ADC conversions, the user sequence length cannot exceed 4 channels. Each trigger event may launch up to 4 successive conversions of any combination of channels 0 up to 3 but no more (i.e. in this case the sequence CH0, CH0, CH1, CH1, CH1 is impossible).

A sequence that repeats several times the same channel requires more enabled channels than channels actually used for conversion. For example, a sequence like CH0, CH0, CH1, CH1 requires 4 enabled channels (4 free channels on application boards) whereas only CH0, CH1 are really converted.

Note: The reference voltage pins always remain connected in normal mode as in sleep mode.

### 33.6.7 Comparison Window

The ADC Controller features automatic comparison functions. It compares converted values to a low threshold or a high threshold or both, according to the CMPMODE function chosen in the Extended Mode Register (ADC\_EMR). The comparison can be done on all channels or only on the channel specified in CMPSEL field of ADC\_EMR. To compare all channels the CMP\_ALL parameter of ADC\_EMR should be set.

The flag can be read on the COMPE bit of the Interrupt Status Register (ADC\_ISR) and can trigger an interrupt.

The High Threshold and the Low Threshold can be read/write in the Comparison Window Register (ADC\_CWR).

### 33.6.8 ADC Timings

Each ADC has its own minimal Startup Time that is programmed through the field STARTUP in the Mode Register, ADC\_MR.

A minimal Tracking Time is necessary for the ADC to guarantee the best converted final value between two channel selections. This time has to be programmed through the TRACKTIM bit field in the Mode Register, ADC\_MR.



**Warning:** No input buffer amplifier to isolate the source is included in the ADC. This must be taken into consideration to program a precise value in the TRACKTIM field. See the product ADC Characteristics section.

### 33.6.9 Buffer Structure

The PDC read channel is triggered each time new data is stored in ADC\_LCDR register. The same structure of data is repeatedly stored in ADC\_LCDR register each time a trigger event occurs. Depending on user mode of operation (ADC\_MR, ADC\_CHSR, ADC\_SEQR1, ADC\_SEQR2) the structure differs. Each data transferred to PDC buffer, carried on a half-word (16-bit), consists of last converted data right aligned and when TAG is set in ADC\_EMR register, the 4 most significant bits are carrying the channel number thus allowing an easier post-processing in the PDC buffer or better checking the PDC buffer integrity.

### 33.6.10 Write Protection Registers

To prevent any single software error that may corrupt ADC behavior, certain address spaces can be write-protected by setting the WPEN bit in the “[ADC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” (ADC\_WPMR).

If a write access to the protected registers is detected, then the WPVS flag in the ADC Write Protect Status Register (ADC\_WPSR) is set and the field WPVSR indicates in which register the write access has been attempted.

The WPVS flag is reset by writing the ADC Write Protect Mode Register (ADC\_WPMR) with the appropriate access key, WPKEY.

The protected registers are:

[“ADC Mode Register” on page 661](#)

[“ADC Channel Sequence 1 Register” on page 663](#)

[“ADC Channel Sequence 2 Register” on page 664](#)

[“ADC Channel Enable Register” on page 665](#)

[“ADC Channel Disable Register” on page 666](#)

[“ADC Extended Mode Register” on page 674](#)

[“ADC Compare Window Register” on page 675](#)

### 33.7 Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) User Interface

Any offset not listed in Table 33-4 must be considered as “reserved”.

**Table 33-4.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Control Register	ADC_CR	Write-only	–
0x04	Mode Register	ADC_MR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x08	Channel Sequence Register 1	ADC_SEQR1	Read-write	0x00000000
0x0C	Channel Sequence Register 2	ADC_SEQR2	Read-write	0x00000000
0x10	Channel Enable Register	ADC_CHER	Write-only	–
0x14	Channel Disable Register	ADC_CHDR	Write-only	–
0x18	Channel Status Register	ADC_CHSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x1C	Reserved	–	–	–
0x20	Last Converted Data Register	ADC_LCDR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x24	Interrupt Enable Register	ADC_IER	Write-only	–
0x28	Interrupt Disable Register	ADC_IDR	Write-only	–
0x2C	Interrupt Mask Register	ADC_IMR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x30	Interrupt Status Register	ADC_ISR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x34	Reserved	–	–	–
0x38	Reserved	–	–	–
0x3C	Overrun Status Register	ADC_OVER	Read-only	0x00000000
0x40	Extended Mode Register	ADC_EMR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x44	Compare Window Register	ADC_CWR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x50	Channel Data Register 0	ADC_CDR0	Read-only	0x00000000
0x54	Channel Data Register 1	ADC_CDR1	Read-only	0x00000000
...	...	...	...	...
0x8C	Channel Data Register 15	ADC_CDR15	Read-only	0x00000000
- 0x90	Reserved	–	–	–
0x98 - 0xAC	Reserved	–	–	–
0xC4 - 0xE0	Reserved	–	–	–
0xE4	Write Protect Mode Register	ADC_WPMR	Read-write	0x00000000
0xE8	Write Protect Status Register	ADC_WPSR	Read-only	0x00000000
0xEC - 0xF8	Reserved	–	–	–
0xFC	Reserved	–	–	–

Note: If an offset is not listed in the table it must be considered as “reserved”.

### 33.7.1 ADC Control Register

**Name:** ADC\_CR

**Address:** 0x40038000

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	START	SWRST

- **SWRST: Software Reset**

0 = No effect.

1 = Resets the ADC simulating a hardware reset.

- **START: Start Conversion**

0 = No effect.

1 = Begins analog-to-digital conversion.

### 33.7.2 ADC Mode Register

**Name:** ADC\_MR

**Address:** 0x40038004

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
USEQ	-	-	-		TRACKTIM		
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-		STARTUP		
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
			PRESCL				
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
FREERUN	FWUP	SLEEP	LOWRES		TRGSEL		TRGEN

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[ADC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 677.

- **TRGEN: Trigger Enable**

Value	Name	Description
0	DIS	Hardware triggers are disabled. Starting a conversion is only possible by software.
1	EN	Hardware trigger selected by TRGSEL field is enabled.

- **TRGSEL: Trigger Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	ADC_TRIG0	External trigger
1	ADC_TRIG1	TIO Output of the Timer Counter Channel 0
2	ADC_TRIG2	TIO Output of the Timer Counter Channel 1
3	ADC_TRIG3	TIO Output of the Timer Counter Channel 2
4	ADC_TRIG4	Reserved
5	ADC_TRIG5	Reserved
6	ADC_TRIG6	Reserved
7	-	Reserved

- **LOWRES: Resolution**

Value	Name	Description
0	BITS_10	10-bit resolution
1	BITS_8	8-bit resolution

- **SLEEP: Sleep Mode**

Value	Name	Description
0	NORMAL	Normal Mode: The ADC Core and reference voltage circuitry are kept ON between conversions
1	SLEEP	Sleep Mode: The ADC Core and reference voltage circuitry are OFF between conversions

- FWUP: Fast Wake Up**

Value	Name	Description
0	OFF	Normal Sleep Mode: The sleep mode is defined by the SLEEP bit
1	ON	Fast Wake Up Sleep Mode: The Voltage reference is ON between conversions and ADC Core is OFF

- FREERUN: Free Run Mode**

Value	Name	Description
0	OFF	Normal Mode
1	ON	Free Run Mode: Never wait for any trigger.

- PRESCAL: Prescaler Rate Selection**

$$\text{ADCClock} = \text{MCK} / ((\text{PRESCAL}+1) * 2)$$

- STARTUP: Start Up Time**

Value	Name	Description
0	SUT0	0 periods of ADCClock
1	SUT8	8 periods of ADCClock
2	SUT16	16 periods of ADCClock
3	SUT24	24 periods of ADCClock
4	SUT64	64 periods of ADCClock
5	SUT80	80 periods of ADCClock
6	SUT96	96 periods of ADCClock
7	SUT112	112 periods of ADCClock
8	SUT512	512 periods of ADCClock
9	SUT576	576 periods of ADCClock
10	SUT640	640 periods of ADCClock
11	SUT704	704 periods of ADCClock
12	SUT768	768 periods of ADCClock
13	SUT832	832 periods of ADCClock
14	SUT896	896 periods of ADCClock
15	SUT960	960 periods of ADCClock

- TRACKTIM: Tracking Time**

$$\text{Tracking Time} = (\text{TRACKTIM} + 1) * \text{ADCClock periods}.$$

- USEQ: Use Sequence Enable**

Value	Name	Description
0	NUM_ORDER	Normal Mode: The controller converts channels in a simple numeric order.
1	REG_ORDER	User Sequence Mode: The sequence respects what is defined in ADC_SEQR1 and ADC_SEQR2 registers.

### 33.7.3 ADC Channel Sequence 1 Register

**Name:** ADC\_SEQR1

**Address:** 0x40038008

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
USCH8				USCH7			
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
USCH6				USCH5			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
USCH4				USCH3			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
USCH2				USCH1			

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[ADC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 677.

- **USCHx: User Sequence Number x**

The sequence number x (USCHx) can be programmed by the Channel number CHy where y is the value written in this field. The allowed range is 0 up to 15. So it is only possible to use the sequencer from CH0 to CH15.

This register activates only if ADC\_MR(USEQ) field is set to ‘1’.

Any USCHx field is taken into account only if ADC\_CHSR(CHx) register field reads logical ‘1’ else any value written in USCHx does not add the corresponding channel in the conversion sequence.

Configuring the same value in different fields leads to multiple samples of the same channel during the conversion sequence. This can be done consecutively, or not, according to user needs.

### 33.7.4 ADC Channel Sequence 2 Register

**Name:** ADC\_SEQR2

**Address:** 0x4003800C

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
USCH16				USCH15			
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
USCH14				USCH13			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
USCH12				USCH11			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
USCH10				USCH9			

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[ADC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 677.

- **USCHx: User Sequence Number x**

The sequence number x (USCHx) can be programmed by the Channel number CHy where y is the value written in this field. The allowed range is 0 up to 15. So it is only possible to use the sequencer from CH0 to CH15.

This register activates only if ADC\_MR(USEQ) field is set to ‘1’.

Any USCHx field is taken into account only if ADC\_CHSR(CHx) register field reads logical ‘1’ else any value written in USCHx does not add the corresponding channel in the conversion sequence.

Configuring the same value in different fields leads to multiple samples of the same channel during the conversion sequence. This can be done consecutively, or not, according to user needs.

### 33.7.5 ADC Channel Enable Register

**Name:** ADC\_CHER

**Address:** 0x40038010

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CH15	CH14	CH13	CH12	CH11	CH10	CH9	CH8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CH7	CH6	CH5	CH4	CH3	CH2	CH1	CH0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[ADC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 677.

- **CHx: Channel x Enable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Enables the corresponding channel.

Note: if USEQ = 1 in ADC\_MR register, CHx corresponds to the xth channel of the sequence described in ADC\_SEQR1 and ADC\_SEQR2.

**33.7.6 ADC Channel Disable Register****Name:** ADC\_CHDR**Address:** 0x40038014**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CH15	CH14	CH13	CH12	CH11	CH10	CH9	CH8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CH7	CH6	CH5	CH4	CH3	CH2	CH1	CH0

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[ADC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 677.

- **CHx: Channel x Disable**

0 = No effect.

1 = Disables the corresponding channel.

**Warning:** If the corresponding channel is disabled during a conversion or if it is disabled then reenabled during a conversion, its associated data and its corresponding EOC and OVRE flags in ADC\_SR are unpredictable.

### 33.7.7 ADC Channel Status Register

**Name:** ADC\_CHSR

**Address:** 0x40038018

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CH15	CH14	CH13	CH12	CH11	CH10	CH9	CH8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CH7	CH6	CH5	CH4	CH3	CH2	CH1	CH0

- **CHx: Channel x Status**

0 = Corresponding channel is disabled.

1 = Corresponding channel is enabled.

**33.7.8 ADC Last Converted Data Register****Name:** ADC\_LCDR**Address:** 0x40038020**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
CHNB				LDATA			
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
LDATA							

- **LDATA: Last Data Converted**

The analog-to-digital conversion data is placed into this register at the end of a conversion and remains until a new conversion is completed.

- **CHNB: Channel Number**

Indicates the last converted channel when the TAG option is set to 1 in ADC\_EMR register. If TAG option is not set, CHNB = 0.

### 33.7.9 ADC Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** ADC\_IER

**Address:** 0x40038024

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	RXBUFF	ENDRX	COMPE	GOVRE	DRDY
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
EOC15	EOC14	EOC13	EOC12	EOC11	EOC10	EOC9	EOC8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EOC7	EOC6	EOC5	EOC4	EOC3	EOC2	EOC1	EOC0

- **EOCx: End of Conversion Interrupt Enable x**
  - **DRDY: Data Ready Interrupt Enable**
  - **GOVRE: General Overrun Error Interrupt Enable**
  - **COMPE: Comparison Event Interrupt Enable**
  - **ENDRX: End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Enable**
  - **RXBUFF: Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Enable**
- 0 = No effect.
- 1 = Enables the corresponding interrupt.

### 33.7.10 ADC Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** ADC\_IDR

**Address:** 0x40038028

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	RXBUFF	ENDRX	COMPE	GOVRE	DRDY
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
EOC15	EOC14	EOC13	EOC12	EOC11	EOC10	EOC9	EOC8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EOC7	EOC6	EOC5	EOC4	EOC3	EOC2	EOC1	EOC0

- **EOCx: End of Conversion Interrupt Disable x**
  - **DRDY: Data Ready Interrupt Disable**
  - **GOVRE: General Overrun Error Interrupt Disable**
  - **COMPE: Comparison Event Interrupt Disable**
  - **ENDRX: End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Disable**
  - **RXBUFF: Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Disable**
- 0 = No effect.  
1 = Disables the corresponding interrupt.

### 33.7.11 ADC Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** ADC\_IMR

**Address:** 0x4003802C

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	RXBUFF	ENDRX	COMPE	GOVRE	DRDY
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
EOC15	EOC14	EOC13	EOC12	EOC11	EOC10	EOC9	EOC8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EOC7	EOC6	EOC5	EOC4	EOC3	EOC2	EOC1	EOC0

- **EOCx: End of Conversion Interrupt Mask x**
- **DRDY: Data Ready Interrupt Mask**
- **GOVRE: General Overrun Error Interrupt Mask**
- **COMPE: Comparison Event Interrupt Mask**
- **ENDRX: End of Receive Buffer Interrupt Mask**
- **RXBUFF: Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Mask**

0 = The corresponding interrupt is disabled.

1 = The corresponding interrupt is enabled.

### 33.7.12 ADC Interrupt Status Register

**Name:** ADC\_ISR

**Address:** 0x40038030

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	RXBUFF	ENDRX	COMPE	GOVRE	DRDY
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
EOC15	EOC14	EOC13	EOC12	EOC11	EOC10	EOC9	EOC8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EOC7	EOC6	EOC5	EOC4	EOC3	EOC2	EOC1	EOC0

- **EOCx: End of Conversion x**

0 = Corresponding analog channel is disabled, or the conversion is not finished. This flag is cleared when reading the corresponding ADC\_CDRx registers.

1 = Corresponding analog channel is enabled and conversion is complete.

- **DRDY: Data Ready**

0 = No data has been converted since the last read of ADC\_LCDR.

1 = At least one data has been converted and is available in ADC\_LCDR.

- **GOVRE: General Overrun Error**

0 = No General Overrun Error occurred since the last read of ADC\_ISR.

1 = At least one General Overrun Error has occurred since the last read of ADC\_ISR.

- **COMPE: Comparison Error**

0 = No Comparison Error since the last read of ADC\_ISR.

1 = At least one Comparison Error has occurred since the last read of ADC\_ISR.

- **ENDRX: End of RX Buffer**

0 = The Receive Counter Register has not reached 0 since the last write in ADC\_RCR or ADC\_RNCR.

1 = The Receive Counter Register has reached 0 since the last write in ADC\_RCR or ADC\_RNCR.

- **RXBUFF: RX Buffer Full**

0 = ADC\_RCR or ADC\_RNCR have a value other than 0.

1 = Both ADC\_RCR and ADC\_RNCR have a value of 0.

### 33.7.13 ADC Overrun Status Register

**Name:** ADC\_OVER

**Address:** 0x4003803C

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
OVRE15	OVRE14	OVRE13	OVRE12	OVRE11	OVRE10	OVRE9	OVRE8
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
OVRE7	OVRE6	OVRE5	OVRE4	OVRE3	OVRE2	OVRE1	OVRE0

- **OVRE<sub>x</sub>: Overrun Error x**

0 = No overrun error on the corresponding channel since the last read of ADC\_OVER.

1 = There has been an overrun error on the corresponding channel since the last read of ADC\_OVER.

### 33.7.14 ADC Extended Mode Register

**Name:** ADC\_EMR

**Address:** 0x40038040

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	TAG
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	
-	-	-	-	-	-	CMPALL	-	
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
CMPSEL				-	-	CMPPMODE		

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “ADC Write Protect Mode Register” on page 677.

- **CMPMODE: Comparison Mode**

Value	Name	Description
0	LOW	Generates an event when the converted data is lower than the low threshold of the window.
1	HIGH	Generates an event when the converted data is higher than the high threshold of the window.
2	IN	Generates an event when the converted data is in the comparison window.
3	OUT	Generates an event when the converted data is out of the comparison window.

- **CMPSEL: Comparison Selected Channel**

If CMPALL = 0: CMPSEL indicates which channel has to be compared.

If CMPALL = 1: No effect.

- **CMPALL: Compare All Channels**

0 = Only channel indicated in CMPSEL field is compared.

1 = All channels are compared.

- **TAG: TAG of ADC\_LDCR register**

0 = set CHNB to zero in ADC\_LDCR.

1 = append the channel number to the conversion result in ADC\_LDCR register.

### 33.7.15 ADC Compare Window Register

**Name:** ADC\_CWR

**Address:** 0x40038044

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-		HIGHTHRES		
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
				HIGHTHRES			
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-		LOWTHRES		
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
				LOWTHRES			

This register can only be written if the WPEN bit is cleared in “[ADC Write Protect Mode Register](#)” on page 677.

- **LOWTHRES: Low Threshold**

Low threshold associated to compare settings of ADC\_EMR register.

- **HIGHTHRES: High Threshold**

High threshold associated to compare settings of ADC\_EMR register.

### 33.7.16 ADC Channel Data Register

**Name:** ADC\_CDRx [x=0..15]

**Address:** 0x40038050

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	DATA
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
DATA							

- **DATA: Converted Data**

The analog-to-digital conversion data is placed into this register at the end of a conversion and remains until a new conversion is completed. The Convert Data Register (CDR) is only loaded if the corresponding analog channel is enabled.

### 33.7.17 ADC Write Protect Mode Register

**Name:** ADC\_WPMR

**Address:** 0x400380E4

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPEN

- **WPEN: Write Protect Enable**

0 = Disables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x414443 (“ADC” in ASCII).

1 = Enables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x414443 (“ADC” in ASCII).

Protects the registers:

[“ADC Mode Register” on page 661](#)

[“ADC Channel Sequence 1 Register” on page 663](#)

[“ADC Channel Sequence 2 Register” on page 664](#)

[“ADC Channel Enable Register” on page 665](#)

[“ADC Channel Disable Register” on page 666](#)

[“ADC Extended Mode Register” on page 674](#)

[“ADC Compare Window Register” on page 675](#)

- **WPKEY: Write Protect KEY**

Should be written at value 0x414443 (“ADC” in ASCII). Writing any other value in this field aborts the write operation of the WPEN bit. Always reads as 0.

**33.7.18 ADC Write Protect Status Register****Name:** ADC\_WPSR**Address:** 0x400380E8**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPVSRC							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPVSRC							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPVS

- **WPVS: Write Protect Violation Status**

0 = No Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last read of the ADC\_WPSR register.

1 = A Write Protect Violation has occurred since the last read of the ADC\_WPSR register. If this violation is an unauthorized attempt to write a protected register, the associated violation is reported into field WPVSRC.

- **WPVSRC: Write Protect Violation Source**

When WPVS is active, this field indicates the write-protected register (through address offset or code) in which a write access has been attempted.

Reading ADC\_WPSR automatically clears all fields.

## 34. Digital to Analog Converter Controller (DACC)

### 34.1 Description

The Digital-to-Analog Converter Controller (DACC) has one analog output, making it possible for the digital-to-analog conversion to drive one analog line.

The DACC supports 10-bit resolution and data to be converted are sent in a common register. External triggers, through the ext\_trig pins, or internal triggers are configurable.

The DACC Controller connects with a PDC channel. This feature reduces processor intervention.

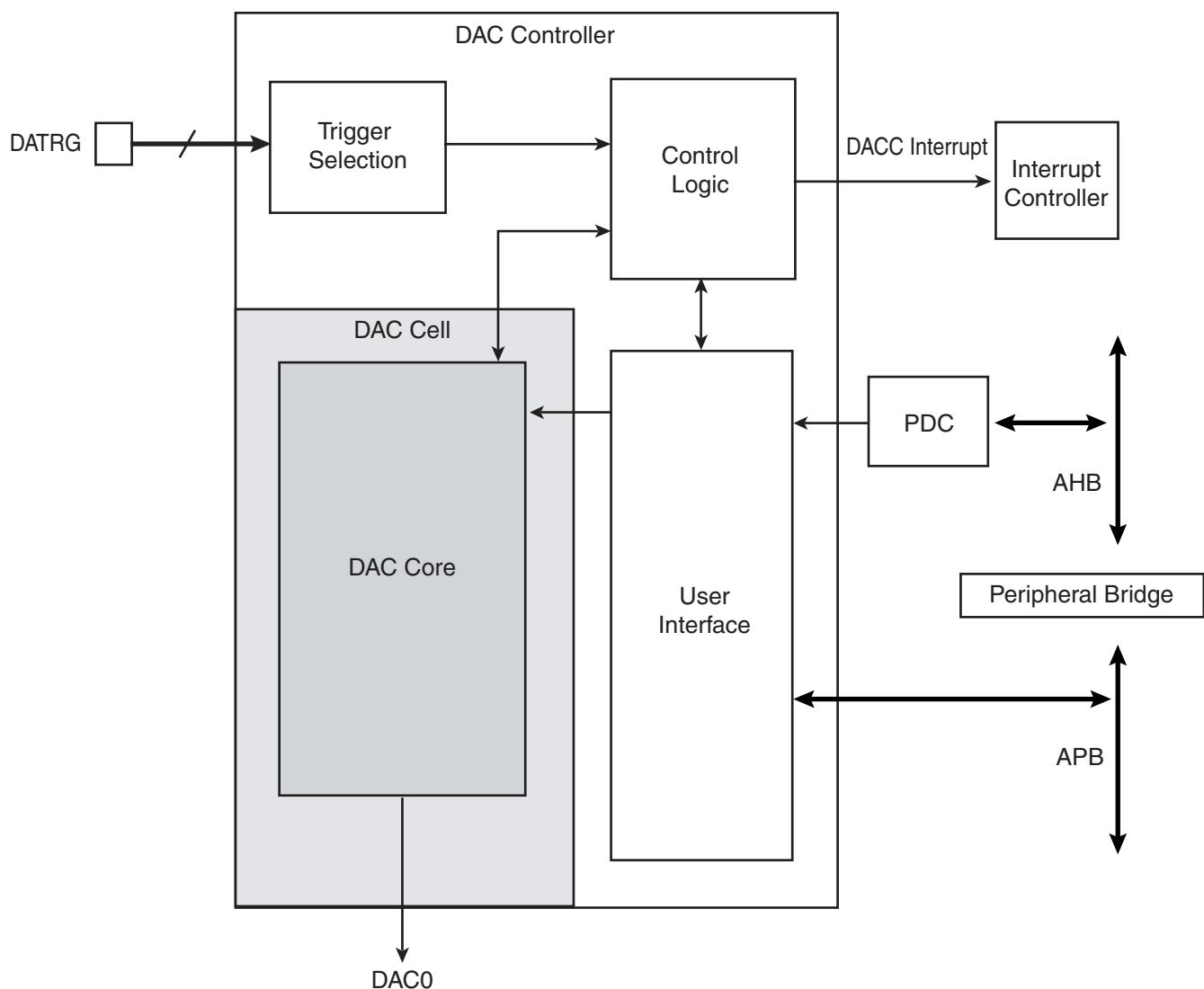
Finally, the user can configure DACC timings such as Startup Time and the Internal Trigger Period.

### 34.2 Embedded Characteristics

- 1 channel 10-bit DAC
- Up to 500 ksamples/s conversion rate
- Flexible conversion range
- Multiple trigger sources
- One PDC channel

### 34.3 Block Diagram

Figure 34-1. Digital-to-Analog Converter Controller Block Diagram



## 34.4 Signal Description

**Table 34-1.** DAC Pin Description

Pin Name	Description
DAC0	Analog output channel
DATRG	External triggers

## 34.5 Product Dependencies

### 34.5.1 Power Management

The DAC can be enabled and disabled through the DACEN bit of the [DACC Mode Register](#).

### 34.5.2 Interrupt Sources

The DACC interrupt line is connected on one of the internal sources of the Interrupt Controller. Using the DACC interrupt requires the Interrupt Controller to be programmed first.

**Table 34-2.** Peripheral IDs

Instance	ID
DACC	30

### 34.5.3 Conversion Performances

For performance and electrical characteristics of the DAC, see the product DC Characteristics section.

## 34.6 Functional Description

### 34.6.1 Digital-to-analog Conversion

The DAC uses the master clock (MCK) to perform conversions.

Once a conversion has started, the DAC will take a setup time to provide the analog result on the analog output.

Refer to the product electrical characteristics for more information.

### 34.6.2 Conversion Results

When a conversion is completed, the resulting analog value is available at the DAC channel output.

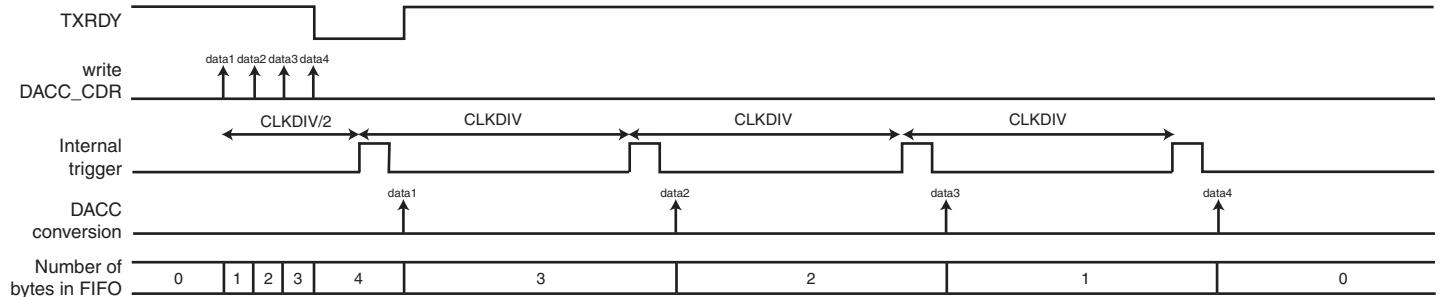
### 34.6.3 Conversion Triggers

In internal trigger mode, conversion starts as soon as the DACC is enabled, data is written in the [DACC Conversion Data Register](#) and an internal trigger event occurs (see [Figure 34-2](#)). The internal trigger frequency is configurable through the CLKDIV field of the [DACC Mode Register](#) and must not be above the maximum frequency allowed by the DAC.

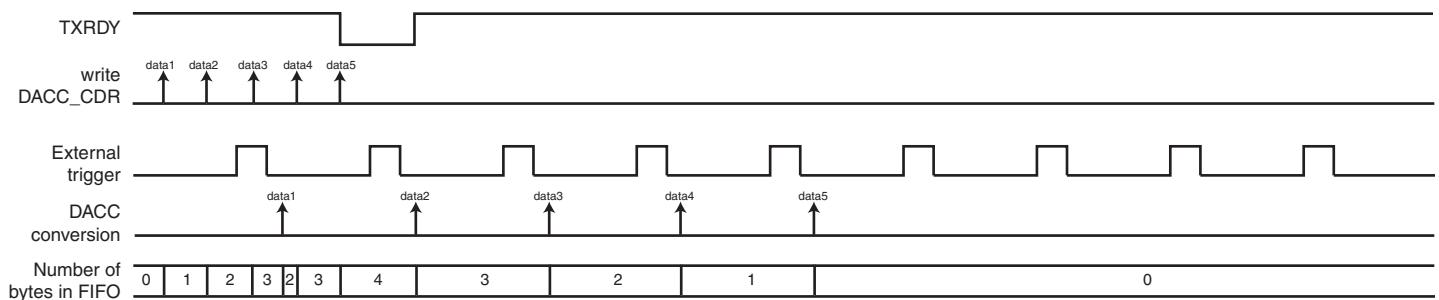
In external trigger mode, the conversion waits for a rising edge event on the selected trigger to begin (see [Figure 34-3](#)).

**Warning:** Disabling the external trigger mode will automatically set the DACC in internal trigger mode.

**Figure 34-2.** Internal trigger



**Figure 34-3.** External trigger



#### 34.6.4 Conversion FIFO

To provide flexibility and high efficiency, a 4 half-word FIFO is used to handle the data to be converted.

As long as the TXRDY flag in the [DACC Interrupt Status Register](#) is active the DAC Controller is ready to accept conversion requests by writing data in the [DACC Conversion Data Register](#) (DACC\_CDR). Data which cannot be converted immediately are stored in the DACC FIFO.

When the FIFO is full or the DACC is not ready to accept conversion requests, the TXRDY flag is inactive.

**Warning:** Writing in the DACC\_CDR register while TXRDY flag is inactive will corrupt FIFO data.

#### 34.6.5 Conversion Width

The WORD field of the [DACC Mode Register](#) allows the user to switch between half-word and word transfer.

In half-word transfer mode only one 10-bit data item is sampled (DACC\_MR[9:0]) per DACC\_CDR register write.

In word transfer mode each time the DACC\_CDR register is written 2 data items are sampled. First data item sampled for conversion will be DACC\_CDR[9:0] and the second DACC\_CDR[25:16].

#### 34.6.6 DAC Timings

The DAC startup time must be defined by the user in the STARTUP field of the [DACC Mode Register](#).

The DAC maximum clock frequency is 13 MHz, therefore the internal trigger period can be configured through the CLKDIV field of the [DACC Mode Register](#).

#### 34.6.7 Write Protection Registers

In order to bring security to the DACC, a write protection system has been implemented.

The write protection mode prevents the write of the [DACC Mode Register](#). When this mode is enabled and the protected register is written an error is generated in the [DACC Write Protect Status Register](#) and the register write request is canceled. When a write protection error occurs, the WPROTERR flag is set and the address of the corresponding canceled register write is available in the WPROTADRR field of the [DACC Write Protect Status Register](#).

Due to the nature of the write protection feature, enabling and disabling the write protection mode requires the use of a security code. Thus when enabling or disabling the write protection mode, the WPKEY field of the [DACC Write Protect Mode Register](#) must be filled with the “DAC” ASCII code (corresponding to 0x444143) otherwise the register write will be canceled.

## 34.7 Digital-to-Analog Converter Controller (DACC) User Interface

**Table 34-3.** Register Mapping

Offset	Register	Name	Access	Reset
0x00	Control Register	DACC_CR	Write-only	–
0x04	Mode Register	DACC_MR	Read-write	0x00000000
0x08	Conversion Data Register	DACC_CDR	Write-only	0x00000000
0x0C	Interrupt Enable Register	DACC_IER	Write-only	–
0x10	Interrupt Disable Register	DACC_IDR	Write-only	–
0x14	Interrupt Mask Register	DACC_IMR	Read-only	0x00000000
0x18	Interrupt Status Register	DACC_ISR	Read-only	0x00000000
0xE4	Write Protect Mode Register	DACC_WPMR	Read-write	0x00000000
0xE8	Write Protect Status Register	DACC_WPSR	Read-only	0x00000000
...	...	...	...	...
0xEC - 0xFC	Reserved	–	–	–

**34.7.1 DACC Control Register****Name:** DACC\_CR**Address:** 0x4003C000**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	SWRST

- **SWRST: Software Reset**

0 = No effect.

1 = Resets the DACC simulating a hardware reset.

### 34.7.2 DACC Mode Register

**Name:** DACC\_MR

**Address:** 0x4003C004

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
CLKDIV							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
CLKDIV							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
STARTUP							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	WORD	DACEN		TRGSEL		TRGEN

- **TRGEN: Trigger Enable**

TRGEN	Selected Mode
0	External trigger mode disabled. DACC in free running mode.
1	External trigger mode enabled.

- **TRGSEL: Trigger Selection**

Value	Name	Description
0	TRGSEL0	External trigger
1	TRGSEL1	TIO Output of the Timer Counter Channel 0
2	TRGSEL2	TIO Output of the Timer Counter Channel 1
3	TRGSEL3	TIO Output of the Timer Counter Channel 2
4	TRGSEL4	Reserved
5	TRGSEL5	Reserved
6	TRGSEL6	Reserved
7		Reserved

- **DACEN: DAC enable**

0 = DAC disabled.

1 = DAC enabled.

- **WORD: Word Transfer**

WORD	Selected Resolution
0	Half-Word transfer
1	Word Transfer

- **STARTUP: Startup Time Selection**

Startup Time = (STARTUP+1) \* Clock period

- **CLKDIV: DAC Clock Divider for Internal Trigger**

Trigger Period = CLKDIV \* Clock period

### 34.7.3 DACC Conversion Data Register

**Name:** DACC\_CDR

**Address:** 0x4003C008

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
DATA							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
DATA							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
DATA							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
DATA							

- **DATA: Data to Convert**

Data to convert. Can be one half-word or two half-words depending on WORD bit in DACC\_MR register.

#### 34.7.4 DACC Interrupt Enable Register

**Name:** DACC\_IER

**Address:** 0x4003C00C

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	TXBUFE	ENDTX	TXRDY

- **TXRDY: Transmission Ready Interrupt Enable**

Enables ready for transmission interrupt.

- **ENDTX: End of PDC Interrupt Enable**

- **TXBUFE: Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable**

Enables end of conversion IT.

### 34.7.5 DACC Interrupt Disable Register

**Name:** DACC\_IDR

**Address:** 0x4003C010

**Access:** Write-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	TXBUFE	ENDTX	TXRDY

- **TXRDY: Transmission Ready Interrupt Disable**

Disables ready for transmission interrupt.

- **ENDTX: End of PDC Interrupt Disable**

- **TXBUFE: Buffer Empty Interrupt Disable**

### 34.7.6 DACC Interrupt Mask Register

**Name:** DACC\_IMR

**Address:** 0x4003C014

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	TXBUFE	ENDTX	TXRDY

- **TXRDY:** Transmission Ready Interrupt Mask
- **ENDTX:** End of PDC Interrupt Mask
- **TXBUFE:** Buffer Empty Interrupt Mask

### 34.7.7 DACC Interrupt Status Register

**Name:** DACC\_ISR

**Address:** 0x4003C018

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	TXBUFE	ENDTX	TXRDY

- **TXRDY:** Transmission Ready Interrupt Flag
- **ENDTX:** End of PDC Interrupt Flag
- **TXBUFE:** Buffer Empty Interrupt Flag

### 34.7.8 DACC Write Protect Mode Register

**Name:** DACC\_WPMR

**Address:** 0x4003C0E4

**Access:** Read-write

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
WPKEY							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
WPKEY							
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPKEY							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	WPEN

- **WPEN: Write Protect Enable**

0 = Disables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x444143 (“DAC” in ASCII).

1 = Enables the Write Protect if WPKEY corresponds to 0x444143 (“DAC” in ASCII).

Protects the [DACC Mode Register](#).

- **WPKEY: Write Protect KEY**

This security code is needed to set/reset the WPROT bit value (see [Section 34.6.7 "Write Protection Registers"](#) for details).

Must be filled with “DAC” ASCII code.

### 34.7.9 DACC Write Protect Status Register

**Name:** DACC\_WPSR

**Address:** 0x4003C0E8

**Access:** Read-only

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
WPROTADDR							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	WPROTERR

- **WPROTERR: Write protection error**

Indicates a write protection error.

- **WPROTADDR: Write protection error address**

Indicates the address of the register write request which generated the error.

## 35. Electrical Characteristics

### 35.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

**Table 35-1.** Absolute Maximum Ratings\*

Operating Temperature (Industrial) .....	-40° C to + 85° C
Storage Temperature.....	-60° C to + 150° C
Voltage on Input Pins with Respect to Ground.....	-0.3V to + 4.0V
Maximum Operating Voltage (VDDCORE).....	2.0V
Maximum Operating Voltage (VDDIO).....	4.0V
Total DC Output Current on all I/O lines	
100-lead LQFP.....	150 mA
100-ball TFBGA.....	150 mA
64-lead LQFP.....	100 mA
48-lead LQFP.....	100 mA
64-pad QFN.....	100 mA
48-pad QFN.....	100 mA

\*NOTICE:

Stresses beyond those listed under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or other conditions beyond those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. **Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.**

## 35.2 DC Characteristics

The following characteristics are applicable to the operating temperature range:  $T_A = -40^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $85^{\circ}\text{C}$ , unless otherwise specified

**Table 35-2.** DC Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
$V_{DDCORE}$	DC Supply Core		1.62	1.8	1.95	V
$V_{VDDIO}$	DC Supply I/Os	(2) (3)	1.62	3.3	3.6	V
$V_{VDDPLL}$	PLL and Main Oscillator Supply		1.62		1.95	V
$V_{IL}$	Input Low-level Voltage	PA0-PA31, PB0-PB14, PC0-PC31	-0.3		$0.3 \times V_{VDDIO}$	V
$V_{IH}$	Input High-level Voltage	PA0-PA31, PB0-PB14, PC0-PC31	$0.7 \times V_{VDDIO}$		$V_{VDDIO} + 0.3\text{V}$	V
$V_{OH}$	Output High-level Voltage	PA0-PA31, PB0-PB14, PC0-PC31 $I_{OH} \sim 0$ $I_{OH} > 0$ (See $I_{OH}$ details below)			0.2 0.4	V
$V_{OL}$	Output Low-level Voltage	PA0-PA31, PB0-PB14, PC0-PC31 $I_{OH} \sim 0$ $I_{OH} > 0$ (See $I_{OL}$ details below)	$V_{VDDIO} - 0.2\text{V}$ $V_{VDDIO} - 0.4\text{V}$			V
$V_{Hys}$	Hysteresis Voltage	PA0-PA31, PB0-PB14, PC0-PC31 (Hysteresis mode enabled)	150		500	mV
		ERASE, TST, JTAGSEL	230		700	mV

**Table 35-2.** DC Characteristics (Continued)

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Unit s
$I_O$	$I_{OH}$ (or $I_{SOURCE}$ )	1.62V < VDDIO < 1.95V; $V_{OH} = V_{VDDIO} - 0.4$ - PA14 (SPCK), pins - PA0-PA3 - Other pins <sup>(1)</sup>			-6	mA
		3.0V < VDDIO < 3.6V; $V_{OH} = V_{VDDIO} - 0.4$ - PA14 (SPCK), pins - PA0-PA3 - Other pins <sup>(1)</sup>			-6	
		1.62V < VDDIO < 3.6V; $V_{OH} = V_{VDDIO} - 0.4$ - NRST			-2	
		Relaxed Mode: 3.0V < VDDIO < 3.6V; $V_{OH} = 2.2V$ - PA14 (SPCK), pins - PA0-PA3 - Other pins <sup>(1)</sup>			-14 -16 -8	
	$I_{OL}$ (or $I_{SINK}$ )	1.62V < VDDIO < 1.95V; $V_{OL} = 0.4V$ - PA14 (SPCK), pins - PA0-PA3 - Other pins <sup>(1)</sup>			8 8 4	mA
		3.0V < VDDIO < 3.6V; $V_{OL} = 0.4V$ - PA14 (SPCK), pins - PA0-PA3 - Other pins <sup>(1)</sup>			9 12 6	
		1.62V < VDDIO < 3.6V; $V_{OL} = 0.4V$ - NRST			2	
		Relaxed Mode: 3.0V < VDDIO < 3.6V; $V_{OL} = 0.6V$ - PA14 (SPCK), pins - PA0-PA3 - Other pins <sup>(1)</sup>			14 18 9	
$I_{IL}$	Input Low Leakage Current	No pull-up or pull-down; $V_{IN}=GND$ ; $V_{DDIO}$ Max. (Typ: $T_A = 25^\circ C$ , Max: $T_A = 85^\circ C$ )		5	30	nA
$I_{IH}$	Input High Leakage Current	No pull-up or pull-down; $V_{IN}=VDD$ ; $V_{DDIO}$ Max. (Typ: $T_A = 25^\circ C$ , Max: $T_A = 85^\circ C$ )		2	18	nA
$R_{PULLUP}$	Pull-up Resistor	PA0-PA31, PB0-PB14, PC0-PC31	50	100	175	kΩ
		NRST	50	100	175	kΩ
$R_{PULLDOWN}$	Pull-down Resistor	PA0-PA31, PB0-PB14, PC0-PC31 TST, JTAGSEL	50 10	100	175 20	kΩ
$R_{ODT}$	On-die Series Termination Resistor	PA4-PA31, PB0-PB14, PC0-PC31 PA0-PA3		36 18		Ω
$C_{IN}$	Input Capacitance	Digital Inputs			TBD	pF

- Note:
1. PA[4-13], PA[15-28], PB[0-14], PC[0-31]
  2. At power-up VDDIO needs to reach 0.6V before VDDIN reaches 1.0V
  3. VDDIO voltage needs to be equal or below to (VDDIN voltage +0.5V)



**Table 35-3.** 1.8V Voltage Regulator Characteristics

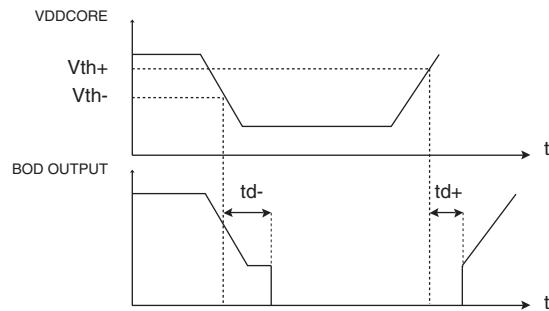
Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
$V_{VDDIN}$	DC Input Voltage Range	(3) (4)	1.8	3.3	3.6	V
$V_{VDDOUT}$	DC Output Voltage	Normal Mode Standby Mode		1.8 0		V
$V_{ACCURACY}$	Output Voltage Accuracy	$I_{Load} = 0.5 \text{ mA to } 60 \text{ mA}$	-3		3	%
$I_{LOAD}$	Maximum DC Output Current	$V_{VDDIN} > 2\text{V}$ $V_{VDDIN} \leq 2\text{V}$			60 40	mA
$D_{DROPOUT}$	Dropout Voltage	$V_{VDDIN} = 1.8\text{V}, I_{Load} = 40 \text{ mA}$			150	mV
$V_{LINE}$	Line Regulation	$V_{VDDIN}$ from 2.7V to 3.6V; $I_{Load}$ MAX		20	50	
$V_{LINE-TR}$	Transient Line regulation	$V_{VDDIN}$ from 2.7V to 3.6V; $tr = tf = 5\mu\text{s}$ ; $I_{Load}$ Max $CD_{OUT} = 1\mu\text{F}$		50	100	mV
$V_{LOAD}$	Load Regulation	$V_{VDDIN} \geq 2.2\text{V};$ $I_{Load} = 10\% \text{ to } 90\% \text{ MAX}$		20	50	
$V_{LOAD-TR}$	Transient Load Regulation	$V_{VDDIN} \geq 2.2\text{V};$ $I_{Load} = 10\% \text{ to } 90\% \text{ MAX}$ $tr = tf = 5 \mu\text{s}$ $CD_{OUT} = 1 \mu\text{F}$		50	100	mV
$I_Q$	Quiescent Current	Normal Mode; @ $I_{Load} = 0 \text{ mA}$ @ $I_{Load} = 60 \text{ mA}$ Standby Mode;		7 700	10 1200 1	µA
$CD_{IN}$	Input Decoupling Capacitor	Cf. External Capacitor Requirements (1)		10		µF
$CD_{OUT}$	Output Decoupling Capacitor	Cf. External Capacitor Requirements (2) ESR	0.75 0.1	1	10	µF Ohm
$T_{ON}$	Turn on Time	$CD_{OUT} = 1\mu\text{F}, V_{VDDOUT}$ reaches $V_{TH+}$ (core power brownout detector supply rising threshold)		100	200	µs
$T_{OFF}$	Turn off Time	$CD_{OUT} = 1\mu\text{F}$			40	ms

- Notes:
1. A 10µF or higher ceramic capacitor must be connected between VDDIN and the closest GND pin of the device. This large decoupling capacitor is mandatory to reduce startup current, improving transient response and noise rejection.
  2. To ensure stability, an external 1µF output capacitor,  $CD_{OUT}$  must be connected between the VDDOUT and the closest GND pin of the device. The ESR (Equivalent Series Resistance) of the capacitor must be in the range 0.1 to 10 ohms. Solid tantalum, and multilayer ceramic capacitors are all suitable as output capacitor. A 100nF bypass capacitor between VDDOUT and the closest GND pin of the device helps decreasing output noise and improves the load transient response.
  3. At power-up VDDIO needs to reach 0.6V before VDDIN reaches 1.0V
  4. VDDIO voltage needs to be equal or below to (VDDIN voltage +0.5V)

**Table 35-4.** Core Power Supply Brownout Detector Characteristics

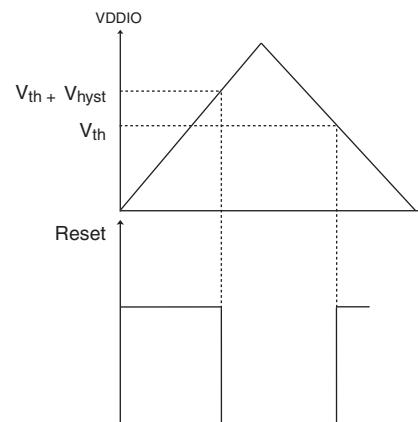
Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
$V_{TH-}$	Supply Falling Threshold <sup>(1)</sup>		1.52	1.55	1.58	V
$V_{HYST-}$	Hysteresis $V_{TH-}$			25	38	mV
$V_{TH+}$	Supply Rising Threshold		1.35	1.50	1.62	V
$V_{HYST+}$	Hysteresis $V_{TH+}$		100	170	250	mV
$I_{DDON}$	Current Consumption on VDDCORE	Brownout Detector enabled		18		$\mu$ A
$I_{DDOFF}$		Brownout Detector disabled			200	nA
$Td-$	$V_{TH-}$ detection propagation time	$VDDCORE = V_{TH+}$ to $(V_{TH-} - 100mV)$			200	ns
$T_{START}$	Startup Time	From disabled state to enabled state		100	200	$\mu$ s

Note: 1. The product is guaranteed to be functional at  $V_{TH-}$ .

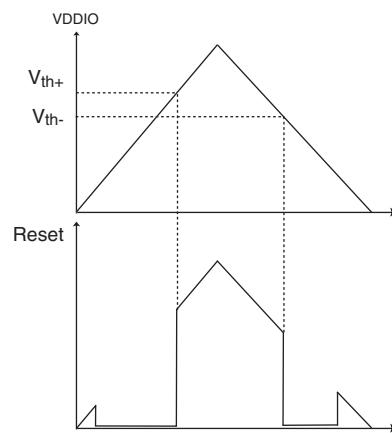
**Figure 35-1.** Core Brownout Output Waveform

**Table 35-5.** VDDIO Supply Monitor

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
$V_{TH}$	Supply Monitor Threshold	16 selectable steps of 100mV	1.9		3.4	V
$T_{ACCURACY}$	Threshold Level Accuracy		-1.5		+1.5	%
$V_{HYST}$	Hysteresis			20	30	mV
$I_{DDON}$	Current Consumption on VDDCORE	enabled		18	28	$\mu A$
$I_{DDOFF}$		disabled			1	
$T_{START}$	Startup Time	From disabled state to enabled state			140	$\mu s$

**Figure 35-2.** VDDIO Supply Monitor

**Table 35-6.** Zero-Power-on Reset Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
$V_{th+}$	Threshold voltage rising	At Startup	1.46	1.55	1.60	V
$V_{th-}$	Threshold voltage falling		1.36	1.45	1.54	V
$T_{res}$	Reset Time-out Period		40	90	150	$\mu s$

**Figure 35-3.** Zero-Power-on Reset Characteristics


**Table 35-7.** DC Flash Characteristics

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Conditions</b>	<b>Typ</b>	<b>Max</b>	<b>Units</b>
$I_{SB}$	Standby current	@25°C onto VDDCORE = 1.8V @85°C onto VDDCORE = 1.8V @25°C onto VDDCORE = 1.95V @85°C onto VDDCORE = 1.95V	3.2 6 4 6.5	4 8 4.8 9	$\mu A$ $\mu A$ $\mu A$ $\mu A$
$I_{CC}$	Active current	128-Bit Mode Read Access: Maximum Read Frequency onto VDDCORE = 1.8V @ 25 °C Maximum Read Frequency onto VDDCORE = 1.95V @ 25 °C  64-Bit Mode Read Access: Maximum Read Frequency onto VDDCORE = 1.8V @ 25 °C Maximum Read Frequency onto VDDCORE = 1.95V @ 25 °C  Write onto VDDCORE = 1.8V @ 25 °C Write onto VDDCORE = 1.95V @ 25 °C	19 25 TBD TBD	22.5 30 TBD TBD	mA mA mA mA
			7.5 5.5	9.5 6.0	mA mA

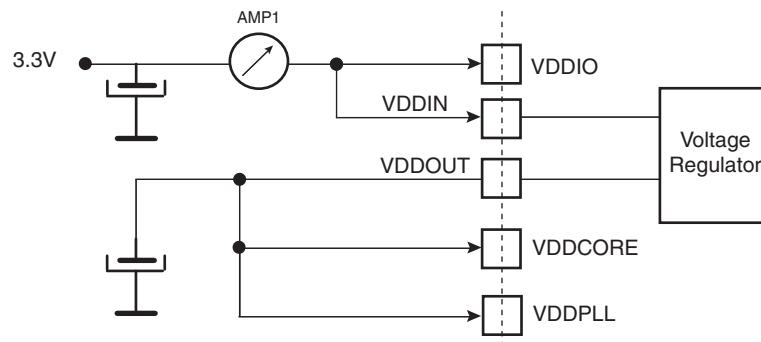
### 35.3 Power Consumption

- Power consumption of the device according to the different Low Power Mode Capabilities (Backup, Wait, Sleep) and Active Mode.
- Power consumption on power supply in different modes: Backup, Wait, Sleep and Active.
- Power consumption by peripheral: calculated as the difference in current measurement after having enabled then disabled the corresponding clock.

#### 35.3.1 Backup Mode Current Consumption

The Backup Mode configuration and measurements are defined as follow.

**Figure 35-4.** Measurement Setup



##### 35.3.1.1 Configuration A

- Supply Monitor on VDDIO is disabled
- RTT and RTC not used
- Embedded slow clock RC Oscillator used
- One WKUPx enabled
- Current measurement on AMP1 (See [Figure 35-4](#))

##### 35.3.1.2 Configuration B

- Supply Monitor on VDDIO is disabled
- RTT used
- One WKUPx enabled
- Current measurement on AMP1 (See [Figure 35-4](#))
- 32 kHz Crystal Oscillator used

**Table 35-8.** Power Consumption for Backup Mode (SAM3N4/2/1 MRL A)

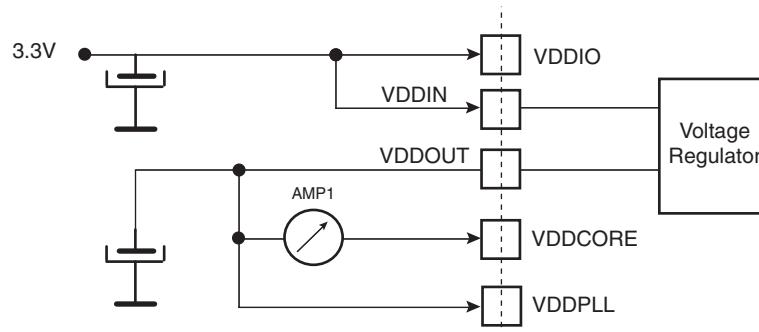
Conditions	Total Consumption (AMP1) Configuration A	Total Consumption (AMP1) Configuration B	Unit
VDDIO = 3.3V @25°C	2.85	3.25	µA
VDDIO = 3.0V @25°C	2.55	2.96	
VDDIO = 2.5V @25°C	2.1	2.50	
VDDIO = 1.8V @25°C	1.56	1.89	
VDDIO = 3.3V @85°C	TBD	TBD	µA
VDDIO = 3.0V @85°C	TBD	TBD	
VDDIO = 2.5V @85°C	TBD	TBD	
VDDIO = 1.8V @85°C	TBD	TBD	

**Table 35-9.** Power Consumption for Backup Mode (SAM3N1 MRL B and SAM3N0/00 MRLA)

Conditions	Total Consumption (AMP1) Configuration A	Total Consumption (AMP1) Configuration B	Unit
VDDIO = 3.3V @25°C	1.55	1.60	µA
VDDIO = 3.0V @25°C	1.40	1.45	
VDDIO = 2.5V @25°C	1.20	1.25	
VDDIO = 1.8V @25°C	1.20	1.25	
VDDIO = 3.3V @85°C	5.50	5.80	µA
VDDIO = 3.0V @85°C	5.25	5.50	
VDDIO = 2.5V @85°C	4.75	4.90	
VDDIO = 1.8V @85°C	4.45	4.60	

### 35.3.2 Sleep and Wait Mode Current Consumption

The Wait Mode and Sleep Mode configuration and measurements are defined below.

**Figure 35-5.** Measurement Setup for Sleep Mode

#### 35.3.2.1 Sleep Mode

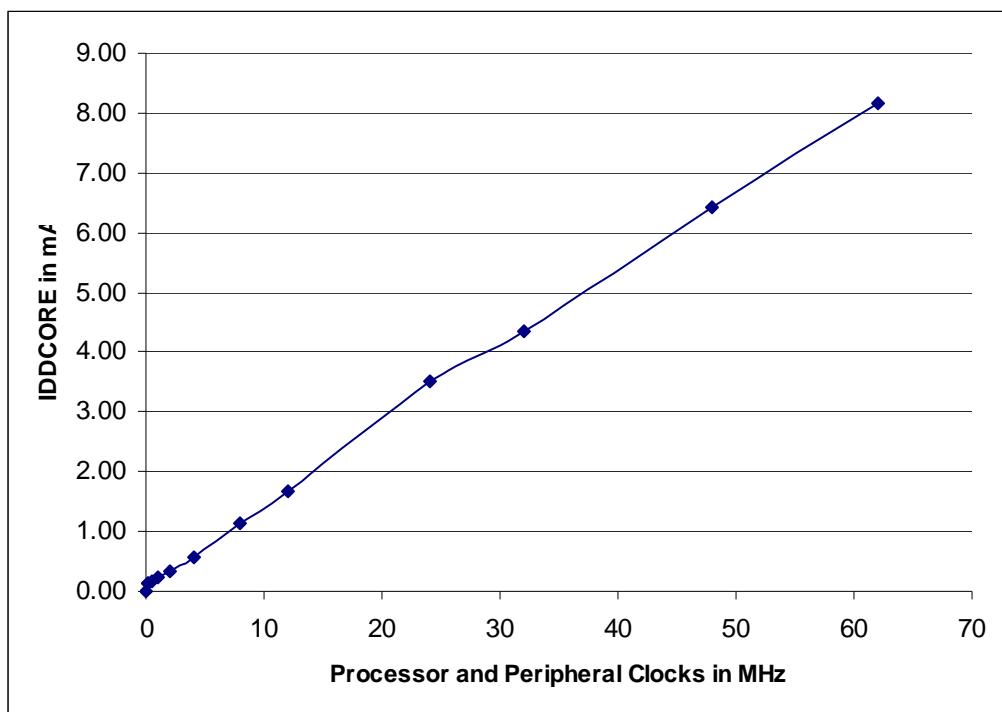
- Core Clock OFF
- Master Clock (MCK) running at various frequencies with PLL or the fast RC oscillator.
- Fast start-up through WKUP0-15 pins
- Current measurement as shown in figure [Figure 35-6](#)
- All peripheral clocks deactivated

Table 35-10 gives current consumption in typical conditions.

**Table 35-10.** Typical Current Consumption for Sleep Mode

Conditions	VDDCORE Consumption (AMP1)	Total Consumption (AMP2)	Unit
Figure 35-6 @25°C MCK = 48 MHz There is no activity on the I/Os of the device.	6.4	8.4	mA

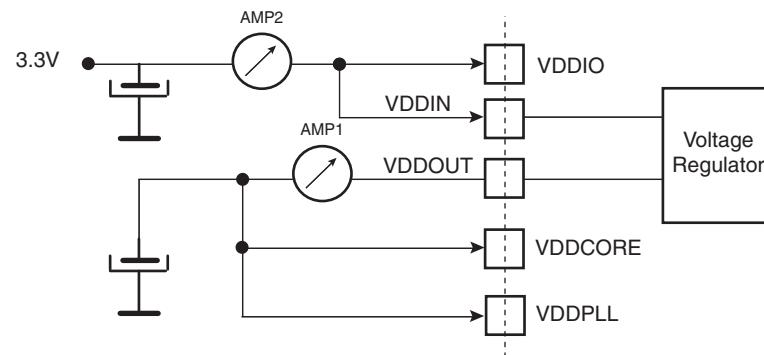
**Figure 35-6.** Current Consumption in Sleep Mode (AMP1) versus Master Clock ranges (Conditions from Table 35-10)



**Table 35-11.** Sleep mode Current consumption versus Master Clock (MCK) variation

Core Clock/MCK (MHz)	VDDCORE Consumption (AMP1)	Total Consumption (AMP2)	Unit
62	8.16	10.7	mA
48	6.4	8.4	
32	4.3	5.65	
24	3.5	5.5	
12	1.68	1.71	
8	1.13	1.16	
4	0.56	0.57	
2	0.33	0.35	
1	0.22	0.23	
0.5	0.16	0.17	
0.25	0.14	0.16	
0.125	0.12	0.13	
0.032	0.01	0.02	

### 35.3.2.2 Wait Mode

**Figure 35-7.** Measurement Setup for Wait Mode

- Core Clock and Master Clock Stopped
- Current measurement as shown in the above figure
- All Peripheral clocks deactivated

Table 35-12 gives current consumption in typical conditions.

**Table 35-12.** Typical Current Consumption in Wait Mode

Conditions	VDDOUT Consumption (AMP1)	Total Consumption (AMP2)	Unit
See <a href="#">Figure 35-7 on page 705</a> @25°C There is no activity on the I/Os of the device.	5.7	14.9	µA

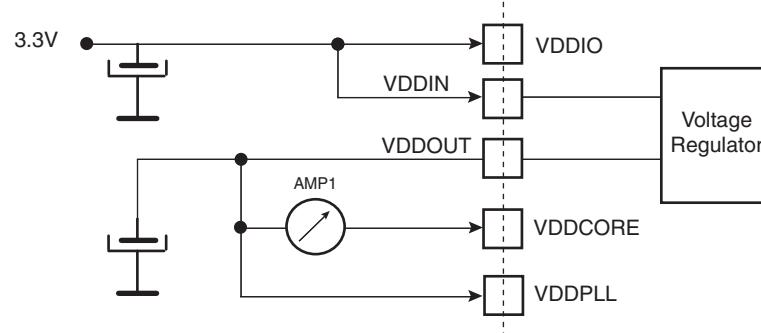
### 35.3.3 Active Mode Power Consumption

The Active Mode configuration and measurements are defined as follows:

- VDDIO = VDDIN = 3.3V
- VDDCORE = 1.8V (Internal Voltage regulator used) and 1.62V (external supply)
- TA = 25°C
- Recursive Fibonacci Algorithm or division operation running from Flash memory
- All Peripheral clocks are deactivated.
- Master Clock (MCK) running at various frequencies with PLL or the fast RC oscillator
- Current measurement on AMP1 (VDDCORE)

Note: 1. Recursive Fibonacci is a high computation test whereas division operation is a low computation test.

**Figure 35-8.** Active Mode Measurement Setup



## 35.3.3.1 Active Power Consumption with VDDCORE @ 1.8V

**Table 35-13.** Master Clock (MCK) and Core Clock variation (SAM3N4/2/1 MRL A)

Core Clock /MCK (MHz)	AMP1 (VDDOUT) Consumption				Unit
	Division		Fibonacci		
	128-bit Flash access	64-bit Flash access	128-bit Flash access	64-bit Flash access	
62	30	25.3	31.4	28.55	mA
48	24.45	20.6	26.2	23.15	
32	15.6	14.3	20	17.7	
24	11.4	10.5	15.6	15	
12	6.45	5.7	9.2	8.5	
8	4.9	4.2	7.1	6.4	
4	4.3	2.9	4.5	2.9	
2	2.2	1.5	2.4	1.7	
1	1.1	0.84	1.2	0.9	

**Table 35-14.** Master Clock (MCK) and Core Clock variation (SAM3N1 MRL B and SAM3N0/00 MRL B)

Core Clock /MCK (MHz)	AMP1 (VDDOUT) Consumption				Unit
	Division		Fibonacci		
	128-bit Flash access	64-bit Flash access	128-bit Flash access	64-bit Flash access	
62	18.5	17.7	21.28	23.4	mA
48	14.43	13.76	16.68	18.1	
32	9.87	9.32	11.26	12.26	
24	8.91	8.44	9.84	10.64	
12	3.34	3.07	3.74	4.17	
8	2.25	2.07	2.52	2.81	
4	1.07	0.98	1.19	1.32	
2	0.59	0.55	0.65	0.72	
1	0.35	0.33	0.38	0.41	
0.5	0.23	0.22	0.24	0.26	
0.25	0.17	0.16	0.18	0.18	
0.125	0.14	0.13	0.14	0.15	
0.032	0.013	0.012	0.014	0.015	

### 35.3.3.2 Active Power Consumption with VDDCORE @ 1.62V

**Table 35-15.** Master Clock (MCK) and Core Clock variation (SAM3N4/2/1 MRL A)

Core Clock / MCK (MHz)	AMP1 (VDDOUT) Consumption				Unit
	Division		Fibonacci		
	128-bit Flash access	64-bit Flash access	128-bit Flash access	64-bit Flash access	
62	25.7	22.6	27.05	25.2	mA
48	20.8	18	23.2	20.4	
32	14.1	12.5	17.2	15.75	
24	11.1	9.25	13.65	13.2	
12	5.6	5	7.9	7.36	
8	4.2	3.6	5.9	5.41	
4	3.55	2.4	3.6	5.5	
2	1.84	1.3	1.88	1.3	
1	1	0.72	1.2	0.72	

**Table 35-16.** Master Clock (MCK) and Core Clock variation (SAM3N1 MRL B and SAM3N0/00 MRL B)

Core Clock / MCK (MHz)	AMP1 (VDDOUT) Consumption				Unit
	Division		Fibonacci		
	128-bit Flash access	64-bit Flash access	128-bit Flash access	64-bit Flash access	
62	16.72	16.17	19.31	20.99	mA
48	12.97	12.38	14.95	16.14	
32	8.81	8.38	10.12	10.91	
24	8.02	7.69	8.96	9.59	
12	2.92	2.71	3.30	3.65	
8	1.96	1.82	2.22	2.45	
4	0.93	0.87	1.05	1.16	
2	0.52	0.48	0.58	0.63	
1	0.31	0.29	0.34	0.37	
0.5	0.21	0.20	0.22	0.23	
0.25	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.17	
0.125	0.13	0.12	0.13	0.13	
0.032	0.011	0.010	0.012	0.013	

### 35.3.4 Peripheral Power Consumption in Active Mode

**Table 35-17.** Power Consumption on  $V_{DDCORE}$ <sup>(1)</sup> (SAM3N4/2/1 MRL A)

Peripheral	Consumption (Typ)	Unit
PIO Controller A (PIOA)	10	$\mu A/MHz$
PIO Controller B (PIOB)	5.15	
PIO Controller C (PIOC)	9.8	
UART0 (PDC)	14	
UART1 (no PDC)	3.8	
USART0 (PDC)	21.2	
USART1 (no PDC)	8.2	
PWM	10.55	
TWI0 (PDC)	15.25	
TWI1 (no PDC)	4.6	
SPI	12.5	
TC0, TC3	9	
TC1, TC2, TC4, TC5	5	
ADC	17.6	
DACC	7.75	

Note: 1. Note:  $VDDIO = 3.3V$ ,  $V_{DDCORE} = 1.80V$ ,  $TA = 25^\circ C$

**Table 35-18.** Power Consumption on  $V_{DDCORE}$ <sup>(1)</sup> (SAM3N1 MRL B, SAM3N0/00 MRLA)

Peripheral	Consumption (Typ)	Unit
PIO Controller A (PIOA)	11	$\mu A/MHz$
PIO Controller B (PIOB)	6.78	
PIO Controller C (PIOC)	12.72	
UART0 (PDC)	8.9	
UART1 (no PDC)	3.02	
USART0 (PDC)	15.58	
USART1 (no PDC)	10.04	
PWM	8.10	
TWI0 (PDC)	9.54	
TWI1 (no PDC)	3.61	
SPI	8.17	
TC0, TC3	7.1	
TC1, TC2, TC4, TC5	4	
ADC	10.4	
DACC	4.54	

Note: 1. Note:  $VDDIO = 3.3V$ ,  $V_{DDCORE} = 1.80V$ ,  $TA = 25^\circ C$

## 35.4 Crystal Oscillators Characteristics

### 35.4.1 32 kHz RC Oscillator Characteristics

**Table 35-19.** 32 kHz RC Oscillator Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
	RC Oscillator Frequency		20	32	44	kHz
	Frequency Supply Dependency		-3		3	%/V
	Frequency Temperature Dependency	Over temperature range (-40°C/+85°C) versus 25°C	-11		11	%
Duty	Duty Cycle		45	50	55	%
T <sub>ON</sub>	Startup Time				100	μs
I <sub>DDON</sub>	Current Consumption	After Startup Time Temp. Range = -40°C to +85°C Typical Consumption at 2.2V supply and Temp = 25°C		540	870	nA

### 35.4.2 4/8/12 MHz RC Oscillators Characteristics

**Table 35-20.** 4/8/12 MHz RC Oscillators Characteristics

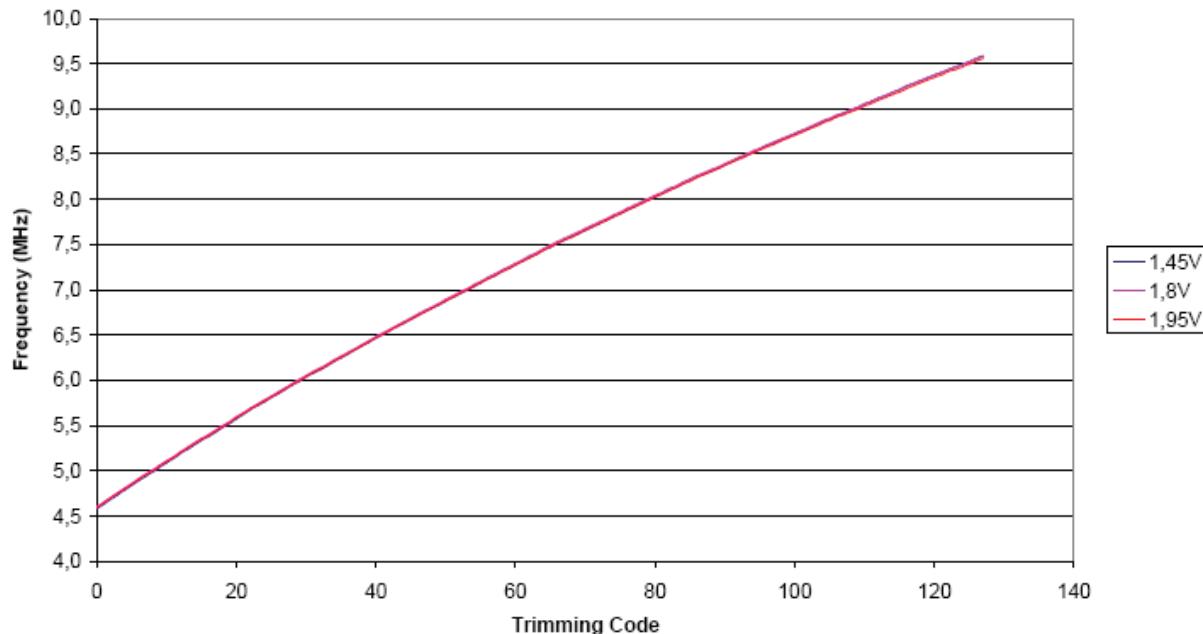
Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
F <sub>Range</sub>	RC Oscillator Frequency Range	(1)	4		12	MHz
ACC <sub>4</sub>	4 MHz Total Accuracy	-40°C < Temp < +85°C 4 MHz output selected (1)(2)			±35	%
ACC <sub>8</sub>	8 MHz Total Accuracy	-40°C < Temp < +85°C 8 MHz output selected (1)(3) -20°C < Temp < +85°C 8 MHz output selected (1)(3) 0°C < Temp < +70°C 8 MHz output selected (1)(3)			±3.5 ±2.5 ±2	%
ACC <sub>12</sub>	12 MHz Total Accuracy	-40°C < Temp < +85°C 12 MHz output selected (1)(3) -20°C < Temp < +85°C 12 MHz output selected (1)(3) 0°C < Temp < +70°C 12 MHz output selected (1)(3)			±3.5 ±2.7 ±2	%
	Frequency deviation versus trimming code	8 MHz 12 MHz		49.2 37.5		kHz/trimming code
Duty	Duty Cycle		45	50	55	%
T <sub>ON</sub>	Startup Time				10	μs
I <sub>DDON</sub>	Active Current Consumption	4MHz 8MHz 12MHz		80 105 145	120 160 210	μA

Notes: 1. Frequency range can be configured in the Supply Controller Registers

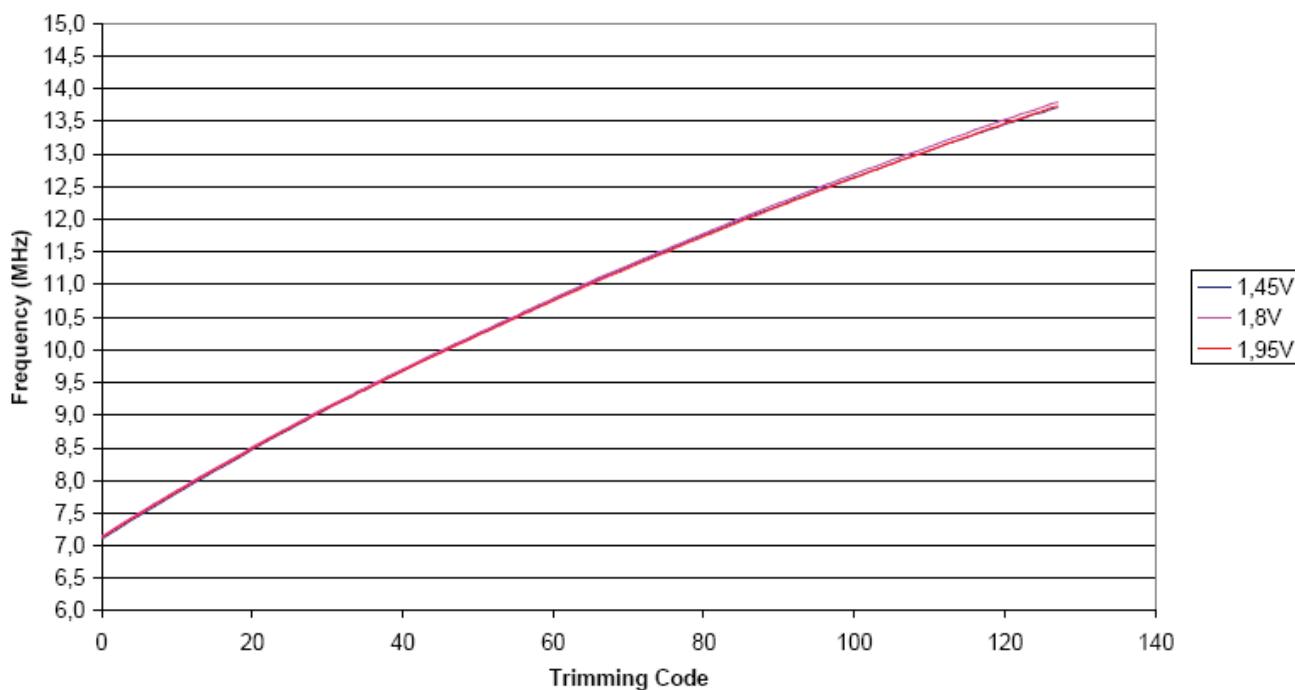
- 2. Not trimmed from factory
- 3. After Trimming from factory

The 4/8/12 MHz Fast RC oscillator is calibrated in production. This calibration can be read through the Get CALIB Bit command (see EEFC section) and the frequency can be trimmed by software through the PMC. [Figure 35-9](#) and [Figure 35-10](#) show the frequency versus trimming for 8 and 12 MHz.

**Figure 35-9.** RC 8 MHz trimming



**Figure 35-10.** RC 12 MHz trimming

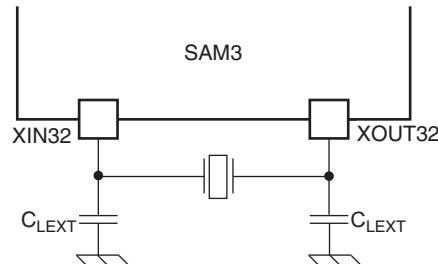


### 35.4.3 32.768 kHz Crystal Oscillator Characteristics

**Table 35-21.** 32.768 kHz Crystal Oscillator Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions		Min	Typ	Max	Unit
$F_{req}$	Operating Frequency	Normal mode with crystal				32.768	KHz
	Supply Ripple Voltage (on VDDIO)	Rms value, 10 KHz to 10 MHz				30	mV
	Duty Cycle			40	50	60	%
	Startup Time	$R_s < 50\text{K}\Omega$	$C_{crystal} = 12.5\text{pF}$			900	ms
		$R_s < 100\text{K}\Omega$ <sup>(1)</sup>	$C_{crystal} = 6\text{pF}$			300	
	Current consumption	$R_s < 50\text{K}\Omega$	$C_{crystal} = 12.5\text{pF}$			1200	nA
		$R_s < 100\text{K}\Omega$ <sup>(1)</sup>	$C_{crystal} = 6\text{pF}$			500	
$P_{ON}$	Drive level					0.1	$\mu\text{W}$
$R_f$	Internal resistor	between XIN32 and XOUT32			10		$\text{M}\Omega$
$C_{LEXT}$	Maximum external capacitor on XIN32 and XOUT32					20	$\text{pF}$
$C_{para}$	Internal Parasitic Capacitance			0.8	1	1.2	$\text{pF}$

Note: 1.  $R_s$  is the series resistor.



$$C_{LEXT} = 2 \times (C_{CRYSTAL} - C_{para} - C_{PCB})$$

Where  $C_{PCB}$  is the capacitance of the printed circuit board (PCB) track layout from the crystal to the SAM3 pin.

### 35.4.4 32.768 kHz Crystal Characteristics

**Table 35-22.** Crystal Characteristics

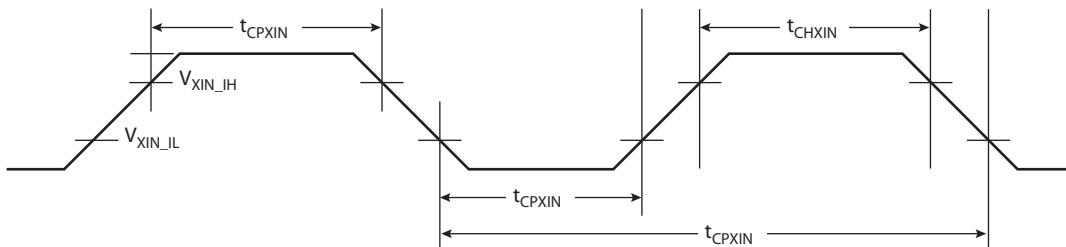
Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
ESR	Equivalent Series Resistor ( $R_s$ )	Crystal @ 32.768 KHz		50	100	$\text{K}\Omega$
$C_M$	Motional capacitance	Crystal @ 32.768 KHz	0.6		3	$\text{fF}$
$C_{SHUNT}$	Shunt capacitance	Crystal @ 32.768 KHz	0.6		2	$\text{pF}$

### 35.4.5 32.768 kHz XIN32 Clock Input Characteristics in Bypass Mode

**Table 35-23.** XIN32 Clock Electrical Characteristics (In Bypass Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Max	Units
$1/(t_{CPXIN32})$	XIN32 Clock Frequency	(1)		44	kHz
$t_{CPXIN32}$	XIN32 Clock Period	(1)	22		$\mu s$
$t_{CHXIN32}$	XIN32 Clock High Half-period	(1)	11		$\mu s$
$t_{CLXIN32}$	XIN32 Clock Low Half-period	(1)	11		$\mu s$
$C_{IN}$	XIN32 Input Capacitance			6	pF
$R_{IN}$	XIN32 Pull-down Resistor		3	5	$M\Omega$
$V_{XIN32\_IL}$	$V_{XIN32}$ Input Low-level Voltage		-0.3	$0.3 \times V_{DDIO}$	V
$V_{XIN32\_IH}$	$V_{XIN32}$ Input High-level Voltage		$0.7 \times V_{DDIO}$	$V_{DDIO}+0.3$	V

Note: 1. These characteristics apply only when the 32768 kHz XTAL Oscillator is in bypass mode (i.e., when OSCBYPASS: = 1 in SUPC\_MR and XTALSEL = 1 in the SUPC\_CR registers.



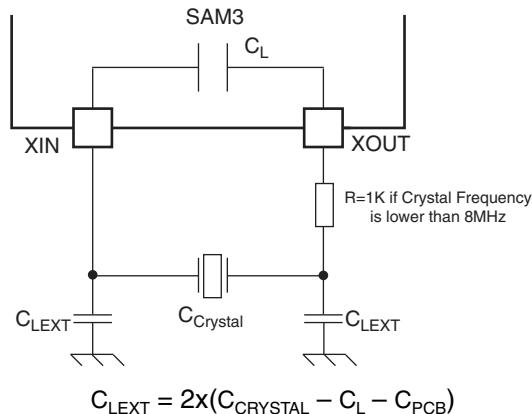
### 35.4.6 3 to 20 MHz Crystal Oscillator Characteristics

**Table 35-24.** 3 to 20 MHz Crystal Oscillator Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
$F_{req}$	Operating Frequency	Normal mode with crystal	3	16	20	MHz
$F_{req\_bypass}$	Operating Frequency In Bypass Mode	External Clock on XIN			50	MHz
	Supply Ripple Voltage (on VDDPLL)	Rms value, 10 KHz to 10 MHz			30	mV
	Duty Cycle		40	50	60	%
$T_{ON}$	Startup Time	3 MHz, $C_{SHUNT} = 3\text{pF}$ 8 MHz, $C_{SHUNT} = 7\text{pF}$ 12 to 16 MHz, $C_{SHUNT} = 7\text{pF}$ 20 MHz, $C_{SHUNT} = 7\text{pF}$			14.5 4 1.4 1	ms
$I_{DD\_ON}$	Current consumption	3 MHz <sup>(2)</sup> 8 MHz <sup>(3)</sup> 12 to 16 MHz <sup>(4)</sup> 20 MHz <sup>(5)</sup>		150 200 250 350	230 300 350 450	$\mu\text{A}$
$P_{ON}$	Drive level	3 MHz 8 MHz 12 MHz, 16 MHz, 20 MHz			15 30 50	$\mu\text{W}$
$R_f$	Internal resistor	between XIN and XOUT		1		$\text{M}\Omega$
$C_{LEXT}$	Maximum external capacitor on XIN and XOUT		12.5		17.5	pF
$C_L$	Internal Equivalent Load Capacitance	Integrated Load Capacitance (XIN and XOUT in series)	7.5	9.5	11.5	pF

Notes:

1.  $R_S$  is the series resistor
2.  $R_S = 100-200 \text{ Ohms}$ ;  $C_S = 2.0 - 2.5\text{pF}$ ;  $C_m = 2 - 1.5 \text{ fF}(\text{typ, worst case})$  using  $1 \text{ K}\Omega$  serial resistor on XOUT.
3.  $R_S = 50-100 \text{ Ohms}$ ;  $C_S = 2.0 - 2.5\text{pF}$ ;  $C_m = 4 - 3 \text{ fF}(\text{typ, worst case})$ .
4.  $R_S = 25-50 \text{ Ohms}$ ;  $C_S = 2.5 - 3.0\text{pF}$ ;  $C_m = 7 - 5 \text{ fF}$  (typ, worst case).
5.  $R_S = 20-50 \text{ Ohms}$ ;  $C_S = 3.2 - 4.0\text{pF}$ ;  $C_m = 10 - 8 \text{ fF}(\text{typ, worst case})$ .



Where  $C_{PCB}$  is the capacitance of the printed circuit board (PCB) track layout from the crystal to the SAM3 pin.

### 35.4.7 3 to 20 MHz Crystal Characteristics

**Table 35-25.** Crystal Characteristics

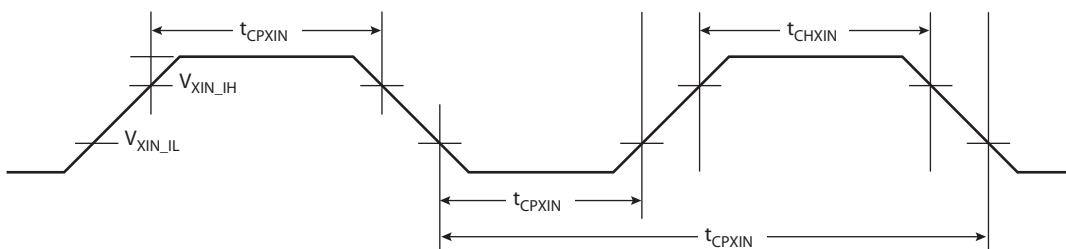
Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
ESR	Equivalent Series Resistor (Rs)	Fundamental @ 3MHz Fundamental @ 8MHz Fundamental @ 12MHz Fundamental @ 16MHz Fundamental @ 20MHz			200 100 80 80 50	Ω
C <sub>M</sub>	Motional capacitance				8	fF
C <sub>SHUNT</sub>	Shunt capacitance				7	pF

### 35.4.8 3 to 20 MHz XIN Clock Input Characteristics in Bypass Mode

**Table 35-26.** XIN Clock Electrical Characteristics (In Bypass Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
1/(t <sub>CPXIN</sub> )	XIN Clock Frequency	(1)			50	MHz
t <sub>CPXIN</sub>	XIN Clock Period	(1)	20			ns
t <sub>CHXIN</sub>	XIN Clock High Half-period	(1)	8			ns
t <sub>CLXIN</sub>	XIN Clock Low Half-period	(1)	8			ns
V <sub>XIN_IL</sub>	V <sub>XIN</sub> Input Low-level Voltage	(1)	-0.3		0.3 x V <sub>VDDIO</sub>	V
V <sub>XIN_IH</sub>	V <sub>XIN</sub> Input High-level Voltage	(1)	0.7 x V <sub>VDDIO</sub>		V <sub>VDDIO</sub> + 0.3	V

Note: 1. These characteristics apply only when the 3-20 MHz XTAL Oscillator is in bypass mode.



### 35.4.9 Crystal Oscillators Design Consideration Information

#### 35.4.9.1 Choosing a Crystal

When choosing a crystal for the 32768 Hz Slow Clock Oscillator or for the 3-20 MHz Oscillator, several parameters must be taken into account. Important parameters between crystal and SAM3N specifications are as follows:

- Load Capacitance
  - $C_{\text{crystal}}$  is the equivalent capacitor value the oscillator must “show” to the crystal in order to oscillate at the target frequency. The crystal must be chosen according to the internal load capacitance ( $C_L$ ) of the on-chip oscillator. Having a mismatch for the load capacitance will result in a frequency drift.
- Drive Level
  - Crystal drive level  $\geq$  Oscillator Drive Level. Having a crystal drive level number lower than the oscillator specification may damage the crystal.
- Equivalent Series Resistor (ESR)
  - Crystal ESR  $\leq$  Oscillator ESR Max. Having a crystal with ESR value higher than the oscillator may cause the oscillator to not start.
- Shunt Capacitance
  - Max. crystal Shunt capacitance  $\leq$  Oscillator Shunt Capacitance ( $C_{\text{SHUNT}}$ ). Having a crystal with ESR value higher than the oscillator may cause the oscillator to not start.

#### 35.4.9.2 Printed Circuit Board (PCB)

SAM3N Oscillators are low power oscillators requiring particular attention when designing PCB systems.

## 35.5 PLL Characteristics

**Table 35-27.** Supply Voltage Phase Lock Loop Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
VDDPLL	Supply Voltage Range		1.6	1.8	1.95	V
	Allowable Voltage Ripple	RMS Value 10 kHz to 10 MHz RMS Value > 10 MHz			30 10	mV

**Table 35-28.** PLL Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
$F_{IN}$	Input Frequency		3.5		20	MHz
$F_{OUT}$	Output Frequency		60		130	MHz
$I_{PLL}$	Current Consumption	Active mode @ 60 MHz @ 1.8V Active mode @ 96 MHz @ 1.8V Active mode @ 130 MHz @ 1.8V		1.2 2 2.5	1.7 2.5 3	mA
$T_{START}$	Settling Time				150	$\mu$ s

## 35.6 10-Bit ADC Characteristics

**Table 35-29.** Analog Power Supply Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
$V_{VDDIN}$	ADC Analog Supply		3.0		3.6	V
$I_{VDDIN}$	Active Current Consumption	on VDDIN		0.55	1	mA

**Table 35-30.** Channel Conversion Time and ADC Clock

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
ADC Clock Frequency	10-bit resolution mode			5	MHz
ADC Clock Frequency	8-bit resolution mode			8	MHz
Startup Time	Return from Idle Mode			20	$\mu$ s
Track and Hold Acquisition Time	See <a href="#">Section 35.6.0.3 “Track and Hold Time versus Source Output Impedance”</a> for more details	600			ns
Conversion Time	ADC Clock = 5 MHz			2	$\mu$ s
Conversion Time	ADC Clock = 8 MHz			1.25	$\mu$ s
Throughput Rate	ADC Clock = 5 MHz			384 <sup>(1)</sup>	kSPS
Throughput Rate	ADC Clock = 8 MHz			533 <sup>(2)</sup>	kSPS

Notes:

1. Corresponds to 13 clock cycles at 5 MHz: 3 clock cycles for track and hold acquisition time and 10 clock cycles for conversion.
2. Corresponds to 15 clock cycles at 8 MHz: 5 clock cycles for track and hold acquisition time and 10 clock cycles for conversion.

**Table 35-31.** External Voltage Reference Input

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
ADVREF Input Voltage Range		2.6		$V_{DDIN}$	V
ADVREF Input Voltage Range	8-bit resolution mode	2.5		$V_{DDIN}$	V
ADVREF Average Current	On 13 samples with ADC Clock = 5 MHz		200	250	$\mu$ A

**Table 35-32.** Transfer Characteristics

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Resolution			10		Bit
Integral Non-linearity				$\pm 2$	LSB
Differential Non-linearity	No missing code			$\pm 1$	LSB
Offset Error				$\pm 2$	LSB
Gain Error				$\pm 2$	LSB
Absolute Accuracy				$\pm 4$	LSB

**Table 35-33.** External Voltage Reference Input

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
ADVREF Input Voltage Range		2.6		$V_{DDIN}$	V
ADVREF Input Voltage Range	8-bit resolution mode	2.5		$V_{DDIN}$	V
ADVREF Average Current	On 13 samples with ADC Clock = 5 MHz		200	250	$\mu A$

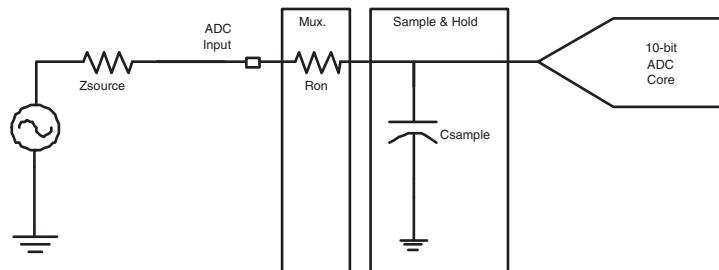
**Table 35-34.** Analog Inputs

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Input Voltage Range	0		$V_{ADVREF}$	
Input Leakage Current			$\pm 1$	$\mu A$
Input Capacitance	12	14		pF

Note: 1. Input Voltage range can be up to VDDIN without destruction or over-consumption.  
If  $VDDIO < V_{ADVREF}$  max input voltage is VDDIO.

### 35.6.0.3 Track and Hold Time versus Source Output Impedance

The following figure gives a simplified acquisition path.

**Figure 35-11.** Simplified Acquisition Path

The user can drive ADC input with impedance of Zsource up to:

- In 8-bit mode:  $TRACKTIM = 0.1 \times Zsource + 470$
- In 10-bit mode:  $TRACKTIM = 0.13 \times Zsource + 589$

with TRACKTIM (Track and Hold Time register) expressed in ns and Zsource expressed in ohms.

Note: Csample and Ron are taken into account in the formulas

### 35.6.0.4 ADC Application Information

For more information on data converter terminology, please refer to the application note:

Data Converter Terminology, Atmel lit° 6022.

[http://www.atmel.com/dyn/resources/prod\\_documents/doc6022.pdf](http://www.atmel.com/dyn/resources/prod_documents/doc6022.pdf)

## 35.7 10-Bit DAC Characteristics

**Table 35-35.** Analog Power Supply Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
$V_{VDDIN}$	Analog Supply		2.4		3.6	V
$I_{VDDIN}$	Active Current Consumption	On VDDIN On ADVREF		485 250	660 300	$\mu A$

**Table 35-36.** Channel Conversion Time and DAC Clock

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
$F_{DAC}$	Clock Frequency				500	kHz
$T_{START-UP}$	Startup time				5	$\mu s$
$T_{CONV}$	Conversion Time			1		$T_{CP\_DAC}$

External voltage reference for DAC is ADVREF. See the ADC voltage reference characteristics [Table 35-33 on page 719](#).

**Table 35-37.** Static Performance Characteristics

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Resolution			10		Bit
Integral Non-linearity (INL)	Voltage output range between 0V and ( $V_{ADVREF}=100$ mV).	3.0V < VDDIN < 3.6V	$\pm 1$	$\pm 2$	LSB
		2.4V < VDDIN < 3.6V	$\pm 1$	$\pm 3$	LSB
Differential Non-linearity (DNL)	Voltage output range between 0V and ( $V_{ADVREF}=100$ mV).	3.0V < VDDIN < 3.6V	$\pm 0.5$	-0.9/+1	LSB
		2.4V < VDDIN < 3.6V	$\pm 0.5$	-3/+2	LSB
Offset Error			1	5	mV
Gain Error			5	10	mV

**Table 35-38.** Analog Outputs

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Voltage Output Range		0		$V_{ADVREF}$	V
Settling/Setup Time	$R_{LOAD} = 5k\Omega$ , $0pF < C_{LOAD} < 50pF$ ,			2	$\mu s$
$R_{LOAD}$	Output Load Resistor	5			$k\Omega$
$C_{LOAD}$	Output Load Capacitor			50	pF

## 35.8 AC Characteristics

### 35.8.1 Master Clock Characteristics

**Table 35-39.** Master Clock Waveform Parameters

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Max	Units
1/(t <sub>CPMCK</sub> )	Master Clock Frequency	VDDCORE @ 1.62V		48	MHz
1/(t <sub>CPMCK</sub> )	Master Clock Frequency	VDDCORE @ 1.80V		62	MHz

### 35.8.2 I/O Characteristics

Criteria used to define the maximum frequency of the I/Os:

- output duty cycle (40%-60%)
- minimum output swing: 100 mV to **VDDIO** - 100 mV
- minimum output swing: 100 mV to **VDDIO** - 100 mV
- Addition of rising and falling time inferior to 75% of the period

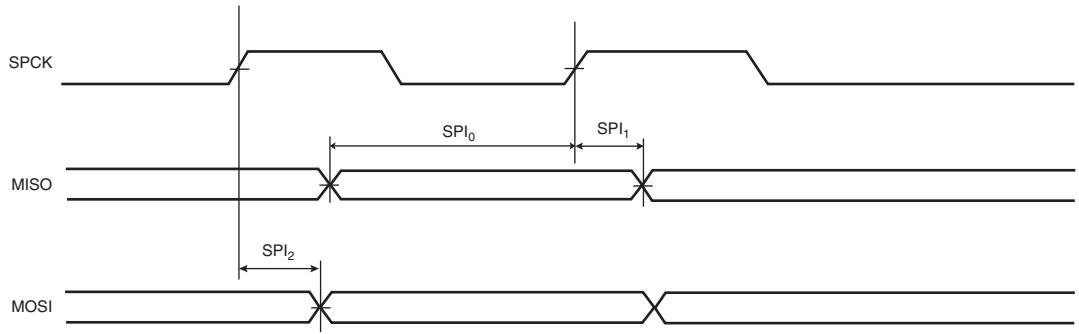
**Table 35-40.** I/O Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions		Min	Max	Units
FreqMax1	Pin Group 1 <sup>(1)</sup> Maximum output frequency	30 pF	V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 1.62V V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 3.0V		45 62	MHz
		45 pF	V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 1.62V V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 3.0V		34 45	
PulseminH <sub>1</sub>	Pin Group 1 <sup>(1)</sup> High Level Pulse Width	30 pF	V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 1.62V V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 3.0V	11 7.7		ns
		45 pF	V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 1.8V V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 3.0V	14.7 11		
PulseminL <sub>1</sub>	Pin Group 1 <sup>(1)</sup> Low Level Pulse Width	30 pF	V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 1.62V V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 3.0V	11 7.7		ns
		45 pF	V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 1.62V V <sub>DDIO</sub> = 3.0V	14.7 11		
FreqMax2	Pin Group 2 <sup>(2)</sup> Maximum output frequency		Load: 25 pF 1.62V < VDDIO < 3.6V		35	MHz
PulseminH <sub>2</sub>	Pin Group 2 <sup>(2)</sup> High Level Pulse Width		Load: 25pF 1.62V < VDDIO < 3.6V	14.5		ns
PulseminL <sub>2</sub>	Pin Group 2 <sup>(2)</sup> Low Level Pulse Width		Load: 25pF 1.62V < VDDIO < 3.6V	14.5		ns

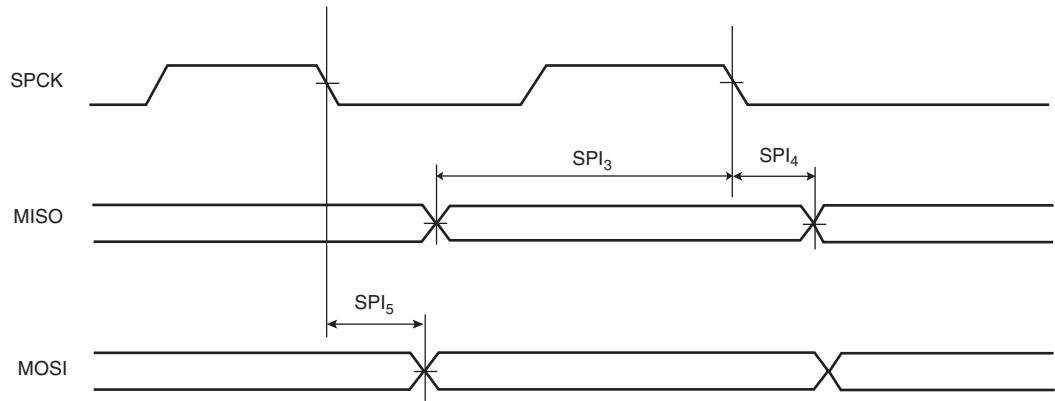
Notes: 1. Pin Group 1 = PA14  
       2. Pin Group 2 = PA[0-13], PA[15-31], PB[0-14], PC[0-31]

### 35.8.3 SPI Characteristics

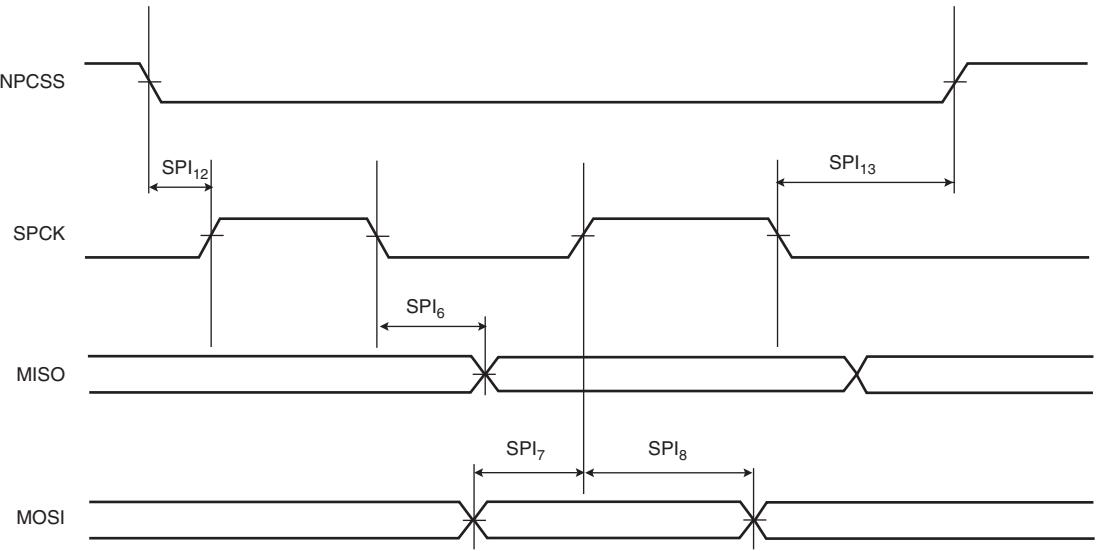
**Figure 35-12.** SPI Master Mode with (CPOL= NCPHA = 0) or (CPOL= NCPHA= 1)

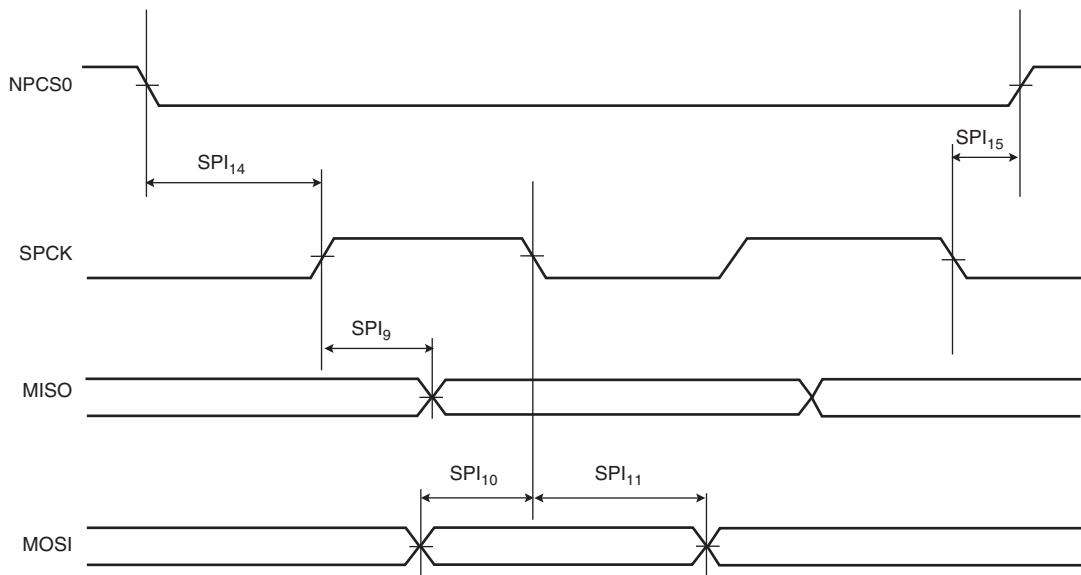


**Figure 35-13.** SPI Master Mode with (CPOL = 0 and NCPHA=1) or (CPOL=1 and NCPHA= 0)



**Figure 35-14.** SPI Slave Mode with (CPOL=0 and NCPHA=1) or (CPOL=1 and NCPHA=0)



**Figure 35-15.** SPI Slave Mode with (CPOL = NCPHA = 0) or (CPOL = NCPHA = 1)

### 35.8.3.1 Maximum SPI Frequency

The following formulas give maximum SPI frequency in Master read and write modes and in Slave read and write modes.

#### Master Write Mode

The SPI is only sending data to a slave device such as an LCD, for example. The limit is given by SPI<sub>2</sub> (or SPI<sub>5</sub>) timing. Since it gives a maximum frequency above the maximum pad speed (see [Section 35.8.2 “I/O Characteristics”](#)), the max SPI frequency is the one from the pad.

#### Master Read Mode

$$f_{SPCKMax} = \frac{1}{SPI_0(\text{or } SPI_3) + T_{valid}}$$

T<sub>valid</sub> is the slave time response to output data after deleting an SPCK edge. For Atmel SPI DataFlash (AT45DB642D), T<sub>valid</sub> (or T<sub>v</sub>) is 12 ns Max.

In the formula above, F<sub>SPCKMax</sub> = 38.0 MHz @ VDDIO = 3.3V.

#### Slave Read Mode

In slave mode, SPCK is the input clock for the SPI. The max SPCK frequency is given by setup and hold timings SPI<sub>7</sub>/SPI<sub>8</sub>(or SPI<sub>10</sub>/SPI<sub>11</sub>). Since this gives a frequency well above the pad limit, the limit in slave read mode is given by SPCK pad.

#### Slave Write Mode

$$f_{SPCKMax} = \frac{1}{2x(SPI_6(\text{or } SPI_9) + T_{setup})}$$

For 3.3V I/O domain and SPI6, F<sub>SPCKMax</sub> = 32 MHz. T<sub>setup</sub> is the setup time from the master before sampling data.

### 35.8.3.2 SPI Timings

**Table 35-41.** SPI Timings

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Max	Units
SPI <sub>0</sub>	MISO Setup time before SPCK rises (master)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	14.2		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	17		ns
SPI <sub>1</sub>	MISO Hold time after SPCK rises (master)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	0		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	0		ns
SPI <sub>2</sub>	SPCK rising to MOSI Delay (master)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	-2.7	2.6	ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	-3.6	3.4	ns
SPI <sub>3</sub>	MISO Setup time before SPCK falls (master)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	14.4		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	17		ns
SPI <sub>4</sub>	MISO Hold time after SPCK falls (master)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	0		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	0		ns
SPI <sub>5</sub>	SPCK falling to MOSI Delay (master)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	-2.4	2.8	ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	-3.4	3.6	ns
SPI <sub>6</sub>	SPCK falling to MISO Delay (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	4.4	15.4	ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	4.6	18.5	ns
SPI <sub>7</sub>	MOSI Setup time before SPCK rises (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	0		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	0		ns
SPI <sub>8</sub>	MOSI Hold time after SPCK rises (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	1.8		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	1.6		ns
SPI <sub>9</sub>	SPCK rising to MISO Delay (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	4.9	15.4	ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	5.2	18.3	ns
SPI <sub>10</sub>	MOSI Setup time before SPCK falls (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	0		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	0		ns
SPI <sub>11</sub>	MOSI Hold time after SPCK falls (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	1.9		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	2		ns
SPI <sub>12</sub>	NPCS setup to SPCK rising (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	6.3		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	6.4		ns
SPI <sub>13</sub>	NPCS hold after SPCK falling (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	0		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	0		ns
SPI <sub>14</sub>	NPCS setup to SPCK falling (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	6.4		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	6.4		ns
SPI <sub>15</sub>	NPCS hold after SPCK falling (slave)	3.3V domain <sup>(1)</sup>	0		ns
		1.8V domain <sup>(2)</sup>	0		ns

Notes: 1. 3.3V domain:  $V_{VDDIO}$  from 3.0V to 3.6V, maximum external capacitor = 30 pF.

2. 1.8V domain:  $V_{VDDIO}$  from 1.65V to 1.95V, maximum external capacitor = 30 pF.

Note that in SPI master mode the SAM3N does not sample the data (MISO) on the opposite edge where data clocks out (MOSI) but the same edge is used as shown in [Figure 35-12](#) and [Figure 35-13](#).

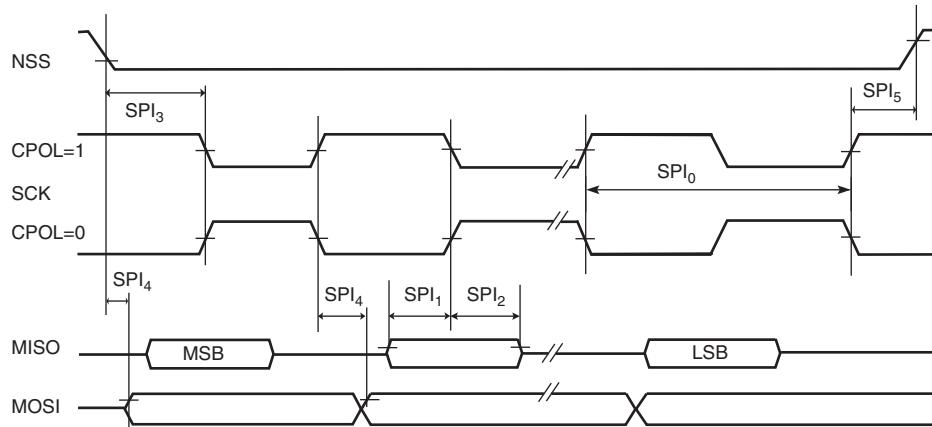
### 35.8.4 USART in SPI Mode Timings

Timings are given with the following conditions.

VDDIO = 1.62V and 3V

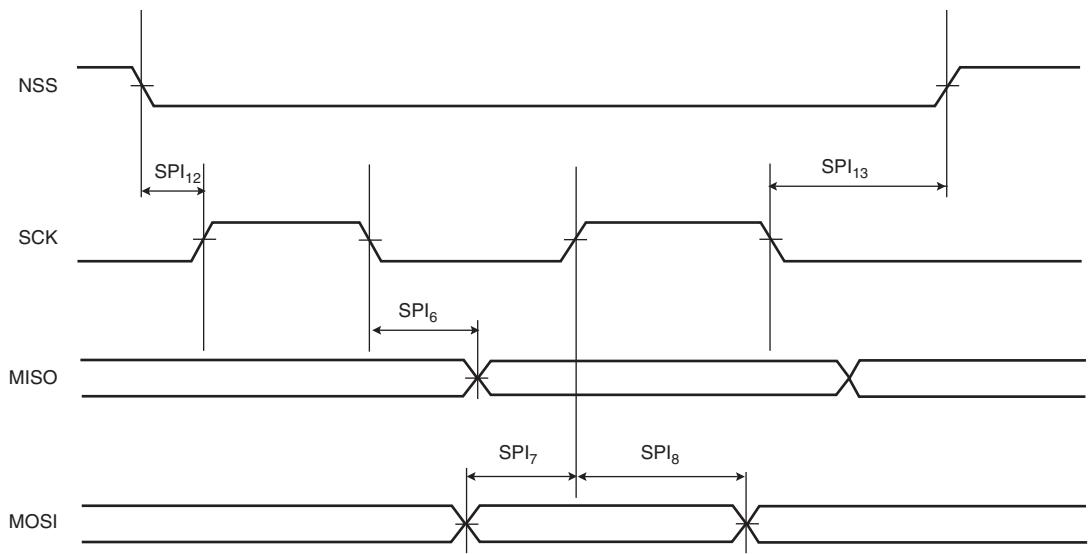
SCK/MISO/MOSI Load = 30 pF

**Figure 35-16. USART SPI Master Mode**



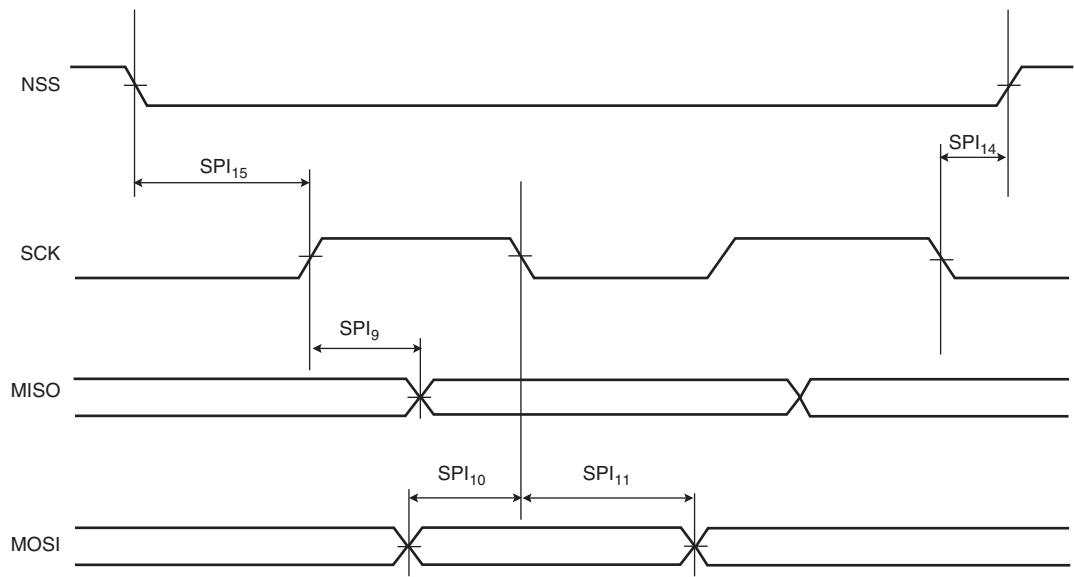
- the MOSI line is driven by the output pin TXD
- the MISO line drives the input pin RXD
- the SCK line is driven by the output pin SCK
- the NSS line is driven by the output pin RTS

**Figure 35-17. USART SPI Slave mode: (Mode 1 or 2)**



- the MOSI line drives the input pin RXD
- the MISO line is driven by the output pin TXD
- the SCK line drives the input pin SCK
- the NSS line drives the input pin CTS

**Figure 35-18. USART SPI Slave mode: (Mode 0 or 3)**



**Table 35-42. USART SPI Timings**

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min	Max	Units
<b>Master Mode</b>					
SPI <sub>0</sub>	t <sub>CPSCK</sub> Period	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	t <sub>CPMCK</sub> /6		ns
SPI <sub>1</sub>	Input Data Setup Time	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	0.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 2.6 0.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 2.4		ns
SPI <sub>2</sub>	Input Data Hold Time	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	1.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> -0.3 1.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> -0.3		ns
SPI <sub>3</sub>	Chip Select Active to Serial Clock	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	1.5 * t <sub>CPSCK</sub> - 0.9 1.5 * t <sub>CPSCK</sub> - 0.6		ns
SPI <sub>4</sub>	Output Data Setup Time	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	-6 -4.7	3.8 3.6	ns
SPI <sub>5</sub>	Serial Clock to Chip Select Inactive	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	1 *t <sub>CPSCK</sub> - 6 1 *t <sub>CPSCK</sub> - 4.6		ns
<b>Slave Mode</b>					
SPI <sub>6</sub>	t <sub>CPSCK</sub> falling to MISO	1.8V domain 3.3V domain	5.7 5.3	22.6 19.8	ns
SPI <sub>7</sub>	MOSI Setup time before t <sub>CPSCK</sub> rises	1.8V domain 3.3V domain	2 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 1.9 2 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 1.7		ns
SPI <sub>8</sub>	MOSI Hold time after t <sub>CPSCK</sub> rises	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	0 0		ns
SPI <sub>9</sub>	t <sub>CPSCK</sub> rising to MISO	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	5.9 5.6	22 19.4	ns

**Table 35-42.** USART SPI Timings (Continued)

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Conditions</b>	<b>Min</b>	<b>Max</b>	<b>Units</b>
SPI <sub>10</sub>	MOSI Setup time before t <sub>CPSCK</sub> falls	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	2 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 1.8 2 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 1.7		ns
SPI <sub>11</sub>	MOSI Hold time after t <sub>CPSCK</sub> falls	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	0.5 0.4		ns
SPI <sub>12</sub>	NPCS0 setup to t <sub>CPSCK</sub> rising	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	2.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> -0.26 2.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> -0.4		ns
SPI <sub>13</sub>	NPCS0 hold after t <sub>CPSCK</sub> falling	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	1.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 2.2 1.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 2		ns
SPI <sub>14</sub>	NPCS0 setup to t <sub>CPSCK</sub> falling	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	2.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> -0.4 2.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> -0.4		ns
SPI <sub>15</sub>	NPCS0 hold after t <sub>CPSCK</sub> rising	1.8v domain 3.3v domain	1.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 1.8 1.5 * t <sub>CPMCK</sub> + 1.7		ns

Notes: 1. 1.8V domain: VDDIO from 1.65V to 1.95V, maximum external capacitor = 25pF

2. 3.3V domain: VDDIO from 3.0V to 3.6V, maximum external capacitor = 25pF.

### 35.8.5 Two-wire Serial Interface Characteristics

Table 35-43 describes the requirements for devices connected to the Two-wire Serial Bus. For timing symbols refer to Figure 35-19.

**Table 35-43.** Two-wire Serial Bus Requirements

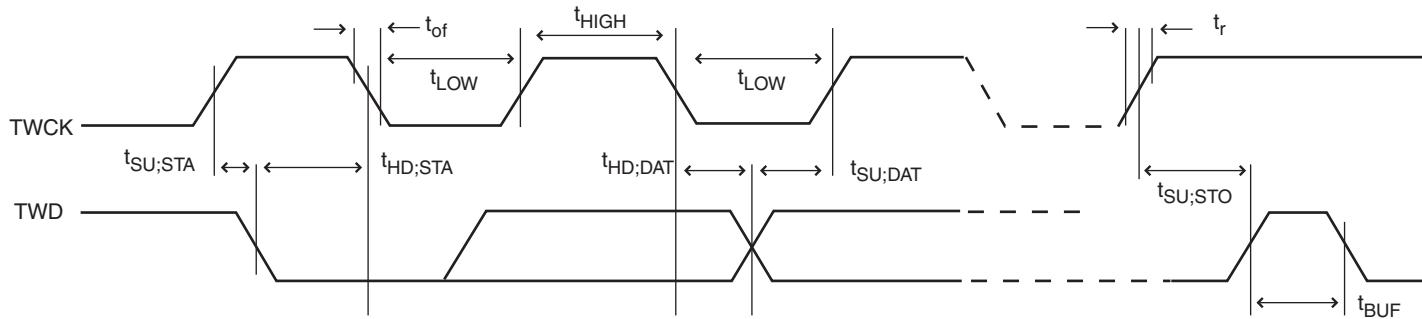
Symbol	Parameter	Condition	Min	Max	Units
$V_{IL}$	Input Low-voltage		-0.3	$0.3 V_{VDDIO}$	V
$V_{IH}$	Input High-voltage		$0.7 \times V_{VDDIO}$	$V_{CC} + 0.3$	V
$V_{hys}$	Hysteresis of Schmitt Trigger Inputs		0.150	—	V
$V_{OL}$	Output Low-voltage	3 mA sink current	-	0.4	V
$t_r$	Rise Time for both TWD and TWCK		$20 + 0.1C_b^{(1)(2)}$	300	ns
$t_{of}$	Output Fall Time from $V_{IHmin}$ to $V_{ILmax}$	$10 \text{ pF} < C_b < 400 \text{ pF}$ Figure 35-19	$20 + 0.1C_b^{(1)(2)}$	250	ns
$C_i^{(1)}$	Capacitance for each I/O Pin		—	10	pF
$f_{TWCK}$	TWCK Clock Frequency		0	400	kHz
$R_p$	Value of Pull-up resistor	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	$\frac{V_{VDDIO} - 0,4\text{V}}{3\text{mA}}$	$\frac{1000\text{ns}}{C_b}$	$\Omega$
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	$\frac{V_{VDDIO} - 0,4\text{V}}{3\text{mA}}$	$\frac{300\text{ns}}{C_b}$	$\Omega$
$t_{LOW}$	Low Period of the TWCK clock	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	(3)	—	μs
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	(3)	—	μs
$t_{HIGH}$	High period of the TWCK clock	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	(4)	—	μs
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	(4)	—	μs
$t_{HD;STA}$	Hold Time (repeated) START Condition	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{HIGH}$	—	μs
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{HIGH}$	—	μs
$t_{SU;STA}$	Set-up time for a repeated START condition	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{HIGH}$	—	μs
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{HIGH}$	—	μs
$t_{HD;DAT}$	Data hold time	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	0	$3 \times T_{CP\_MCK}^{(5)}$	μs
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	0	$3 \times T_{CP\_MCK}^{(5)}$	μs
$t_{SU;DAT}$	Data setup time	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{LOW} \cdot 3 \times T_{CP\_MCK}^{(5)}$	—	ns
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{LOW} \cdot 3 \times T_{CP\_MCK}^{(5)}$	—	ns
$t_{SU;STO}$	Setup time for STOP condition	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{HIGH}$	—	μs
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{HIGH}$	—	μs
$t_{HD;STA}$	Hold Time (repeated) START Condition	$f_{TWCK} \leq 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{HIGH}$	—	μs
		$f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$	$t_{HIGH}$	—	μs

- Note:
- Required only for  $f_{TWCK} > 100 \text{ kHz}$ .
  - $C_b$  = capacitance of one bus line in pF. Per I2C Standard,  $C_b$  Max = 400pF

3. The TWCK low Period is defined as follows:  $T_{low} = ((CLDIV \times 2^{CKDIV}) + 4) \times T_{MCK}$

4. The TWCK high period is defined as follows:  $T_{high} = ((CHDIV \times 2^{CKDIV}) + 4) \times T_{MCK}$

5.  $T_{CP\_MCK}$  = MCK Bus Period.

**Figure 35-19.** Two-wire Serial Bus Timing

### 35.8.6 Embedded Flash Characteristics

The maximum operating frequency is given in tables 35-44 and 35-45 below but is limited by the Embedded Flash access time when the processor is fetching code out of it. The tables 35-44 and 35-45 below give the device maximum operating frequency depending on the field FWS of the MC\_FMR register. This field defines the number of wait states required to access the Embedded Flash Memory

Note: The embedded flash is fully tested during production test, the flash contents is not set to a known state prior to shipment. Therefore, the flash contents should be erased prior to programming an application.

**Table 35-44.** Embedded Flash Wait State VDDCORE set at 1.65V

FWS	Read Operations	Maximum Operating Frequency (MHz)
0	1 cycle	21
1	2 cycles	32
2	3 cycles	48

**Table 35-45.** Embedded Flash Wait State VDDCORE set at 1.80V

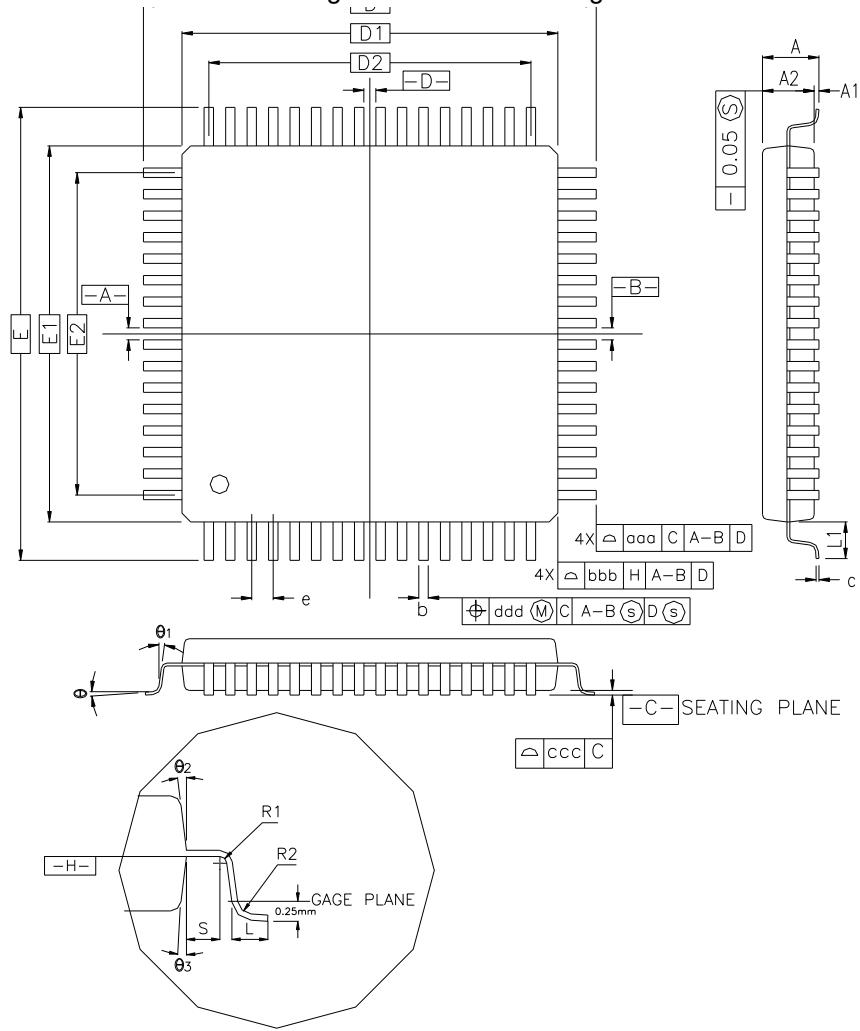
FWS	Read Operations	Maximum Operating Frequency (MHz)
0	1 cycle	24
1	2 cycles	42
2	3 cycles	62

**Table 35-46.** AC Flash Characteristics

Parameter	Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Program Cycle Time	per page including auto-erase			4.6	ms
	per page without auto-erase			2.3	ms
Full Chip Erase			10	11.5	ms
Data Retention	Not Powered or Powered	10			Years
Endurance	Write/Erase cycles @ 25°C Write/Erase cycles @ 85°C	10K	30K		cycles

## 36. Mechanical Characteristics

**Figure 36-1.** 100-lead LQFP Package Mechanical Drawing



COTROL DIMENSIONS ARE IN MILLIMETERS.

SYMBOL	MILLIMETER			INCH		
	MIN.	NOM.	MAX.	MIN.	NOM.	MAX.
A	—	—	1.60	—	—	0.063
A1	0.05	—	0.15	0.002	—	0.006
A2	1.35	1.40	1.45	0.053	0.055	0.057
D	16.00	BSC.	16.00	0.630	BSC.	0.630
D1	14.00	BSC.	14.00	0.551	BSC.	0.551
E	16.00	BSC.	16.00	0.630	BSC.	0.630
E1	14.00	BSC.	14.00	0.551	BSC.	0.551
R2	0.08	—	0.20	0.003	—	0.008
R1	0.08	—	—	0.003	—	—
$\theta$	0°	3.5°	7°	0°	3.5°	7°
$\theta_1$	0°	—	—	0°	—	—
$\theta_2$	11°	12°	13°	11°	12°	13°
$\theta_3$	11°	12°	13°	11°	12°	13°
c	0.09	—	0.20	0.004	—	0.008
L	0.45	0.60	0.75	0.018	0.024	0.030
L <sub>1</sub>	1.00	REF	—	0.039	REF	—
S	0.20	—	—	0.008	—	—
b	0.17	0.20	0.27	0.007	0.008	0.011
e	0.50	BSC.	—	0.020	BSC.	—
D2	—	12.00	—	—	0.472	—
E2	—	12.00	—	—	0.472	—
TOLERANCES OF FORM AND POSITION						
aaaa	—	0.20	—	—	0.008	—
bbbb	—	0.20	—	—	0.008	—
cccc	—	0.08	—	—	0.003	—
dddd	—	0.08	—	—	0.003	—

Note : 1. This drawing is for general information only. Refer to JEDEC Drawing MS-026 for additional information.

**Table 36-1.** Device and LQFP Package Maximum Weight

SAM3N4/2/1	800	mg
------------	-----	----

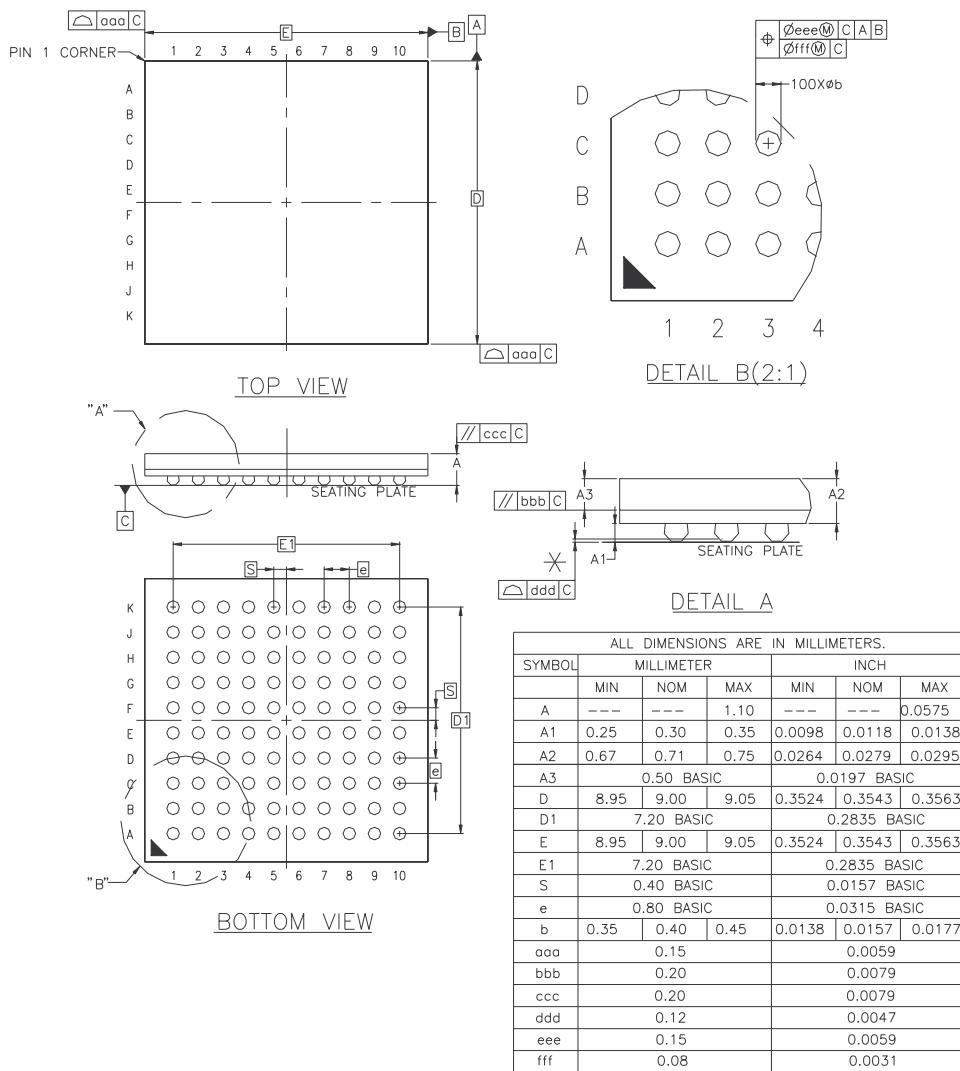
**Table 36-2.** Package Reference

JEDEC Drawing Reference	MS-026
JESD97 Classification	e3

**Table 36-3.** LQFP Package Characteristics

Moisture Sensitivity Level	3
----------------------------	---

This package respects the recommendations of the NEMI User Group.

**Figure 36-2.** 100-ball TFBGA Package Drawing**Table 36-4.** Soldering Information (Substrate Level)

Ball Land	TBD
Soldering Mask Opening	TBD

**Table 36-5.** Device Maximum Weight

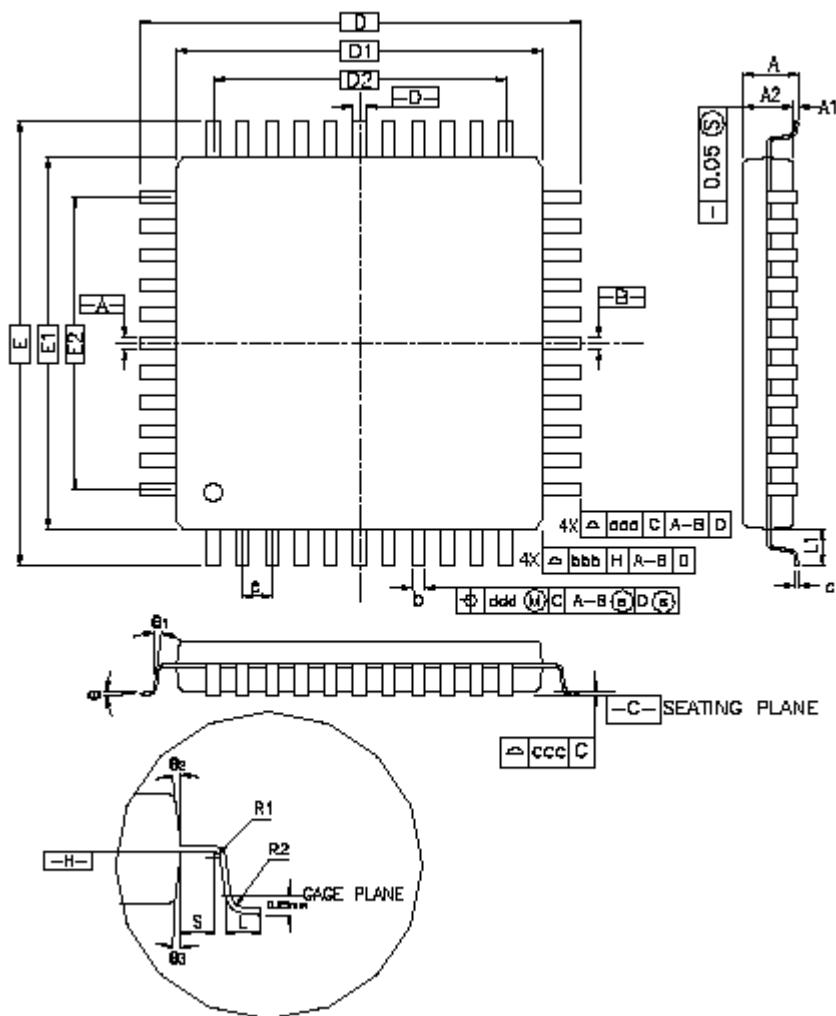
TBD	mg
-----	----

**Table 36-6.** 100-ball Package Characteristics

Moisture Sensitivity Level	3
----------------------------	---

**Table 36-7.** Package Reference

JEDEC Drawing Reference	TBD
JESD97 Classification	e1

**Figure 36-3.** 64- and 48-lead LQFP Package Drawing

**Table 36-8.** 48-lead LQFP Package Dimensions (in mm)

Symbol	Millimeter			Inch		
	Min	Nom	Max	Min	Nom	Max
A	—	—	1.60	—	—	0.063
A1	0.05	—	0.15	0.002	—	0.006
A2	1.35	1.40	1.45	0.053	0.055	0.057
D	9.00 BSC			0.354 BSC		
D1	7.00 BSC			0.276 BSC		
E	9.00 BSC			0.354 BSC		
E1	7.00 BSC			0.276 BSC		
R2	0.08	—	0.20	0.003	—	0.008
R1	0.08	—	—	0.003	—	—
q	0°	3.5°	7°	0°	3.5°	7°
θ <sub>1</sub>	0°	—	—	0°	—	—
θ <sub>2</sub>	11°	12°	13°	11°	12°	13°
θ <sub>3</sub>	11°	12°	13°	11°	12°	13°
c	0.09	—	0.20	0.004	—	0.008
L	0.45	0.60	0.75	0.018	0.024	0.030
L1	1.00 REF			0.039 REF		
S	0.20	—	—	0.008	—	—
b	0.17	0.20	0.27	0.007	0.008	0.011
e	0.50 BSC.			0.020 BSC.		
D2	5.50			0.217		
E2	5.50			0.217		
Tolerances of Form and Position						
aaa	0.20			0.008		
bbb	0.20			0.008		
ccc	0.08			0.003		
ddd	0.08			0.003		

**Table 36-9.** 64-lead LQFP Package Dimensions (in mm)

Symbol	Millimeter			Inch		
	Min	Nom	Max	Min	Nom	Max
A	—	—	1.60	—	—	0.063
A1	0.05	—	0.15	0.002	—	0.006
A2	1.35	1.40	1.45	0.053	0.055	0.057
D	12.00 BSC			0.472 BSC		
D1	10.00 BSC			0.383 BSC		
E	12.00 BSC			0.472 BSC		
E1	10.00 BSC			0.383 BSC		
R2	0.08	—	0.20	0.003	—	0.008
R1	0.08	—	—	0.003	—	—
q	0°	3.5°	7°	0°	3.5°	7°
θ <sub>1</sub>	0°	—	—	0°	—	—
θ <sub>2</sub>	11°	12°	13°	11°	12°	13°
θ <sub>3</sub>	11°	12°	13°	11°	12°	13°
c	0.09	—	0.20	0.004	—	0.008
L	0.45	0.60	0.75	0.018	0.024	0.030
L1	1.00 REF			0.039 REF		
S	0.20	—	—	0.008	—	—
b	0.17	0.20	0.27	0.007	0.008	0.011
e	0.50 BSC.			0.020 BSC.		
D2	7.50			0.285		
E2	7.50			0.285		
Tolerances of Form and Position						
aaa	0.20			0.008		
bbb	0.20			0.008		
ccc	0.08			0.003		
ddd	0.08			0.003		

**Table 36-10.** Device and LQFP Package Maximum Weight

SAM3N4/2/1	750	mg
------------	-----	----

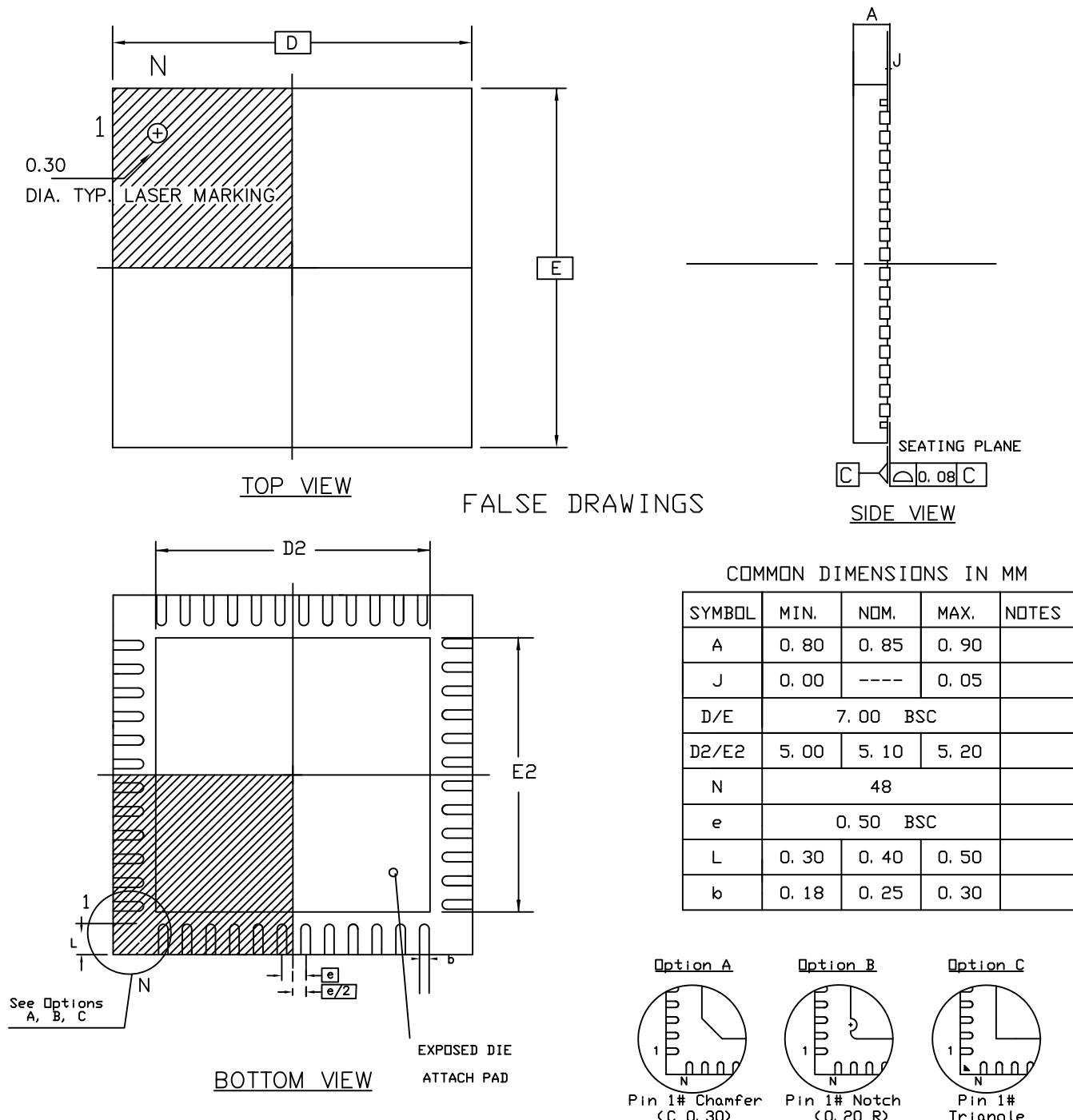
**Table 36-11.** LQFP Package Reference

JEDEC Drawing Reference	MS-026
JESD97 Classification	e3

**Table 36-12.** LQFP and QFN Package Characteristics

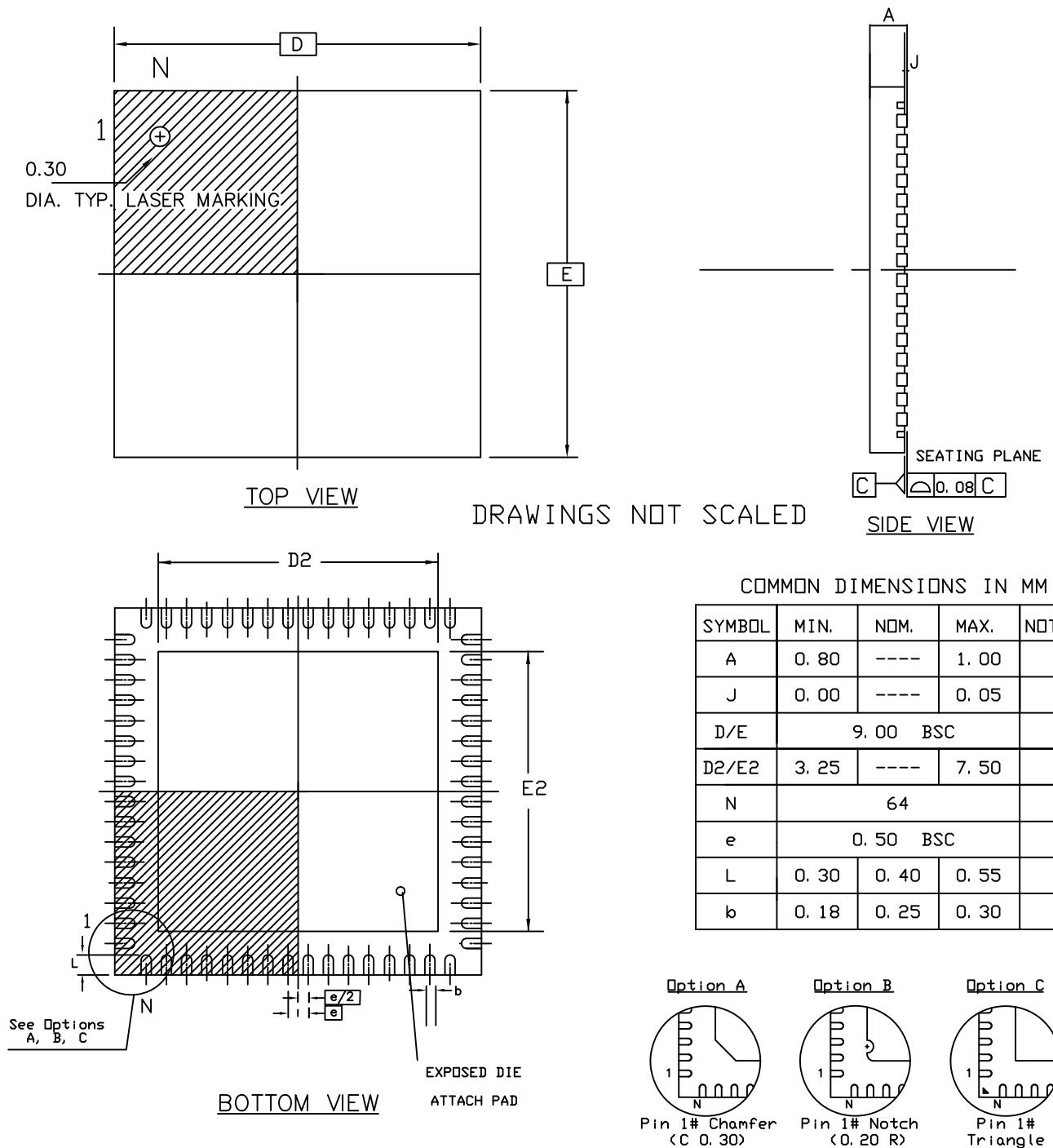
Moisture Sensitivity Level	3
----------------------------	---

This package respects the recommendations of the NEMI User Group.

**Figure 36-4.** 48-pad QFN Package

**Table 36-13.** 48-pad QFN Package Dimensions (in mm)

Symbol	Millimeter			Inch		
	Min	Nom	Max	Min	Nom	Max
A	—	—	090	—	—	0.035
A1	—	—	0.050	—	—	0.002
A2	—	0.65	0.70	—	0.026	0.028
A3	0.20 REF			0.008 REF		
b	0.18	0.20	0.23	0.007	0.008	0.009
D	7.00 bsc			0.276 bsc		
D2	5.45	5.60	5.75	0.215	0.220	0.226
E	7.00 bsc			0.276 bsc		
E2	5.45	5.60	5.75	0.215	0.220	0.226
L	0.35	0.40	0.45	0.014	0.016	0.018
e	0.50 bsc			0.020 bsc		
R	0.09	—	—	0.004	—	—
Tolerances of Form and Position						
aaa	0.10			0.004		
bbb	0.10			0.004		
ccc	0.05			0.002		

**Figure 36-5.** 64-pad QFN Package Drawing

**Table 36-14.** 64-pad QFN Package Dimensions (in mm)

Symbol	Millimeter			Inch		
	Min	Nom	Max	Min	Nom	Max
A	—	—	090	—	—	0.035
A1	—	—	0.05	—	—	0.001
A2	—	0.65	0.70	—	0.026	0.028
A3	0.20 REF			0.008 REF		
b	0.23	0.25	0.28	0.009	0.010	0.011
D	9.00 bsc			0.354 bsc		
D2	6.95	7.10	7.25	0.274	0.280	0.285
E	9.00 bsc			0.354 bsc		
E2	6.95	7.10	7.25	0.274	0.280	0.285
L	0.35	0.40	0.45	0.014	0.016	0.018
e	0.50 bsc			0.020 bsc		
R	0.125	—	—	0.0005	—	—
Tolerances of Form and Position						
aaa	0.10			0.004		
bbb	0.10			0.004		
ccc	0.05			0.002		

**Table 36-15.** Device and QFN Package Maximum Weight (Preliminary)

SAM3N4/2/1	280	mg
------------	-----	----

**Table 36-16.** QFN Package Reference

JEDEC Drawing Reference	MO-220
JESD97 Classification	e3

**Table 36-17.** QFN Package Characteristics

Moisture Sensitivity Level	3
----------------------------	---

This package respects the recommendations of the NEMI User Group.

## 36.1 Soldering Profile

Table 36-18 gives the recommended soldering profile from J-STD-020C.

**Table 36-18.** Soldering Profile

Profile Feature	Green Package
Average Ramp-up Rate (217°C to Peak)	3° C/sec. max.
Preheat Temperature 175°C ±25°C	180 sec. max.
Temperature Maintained Above 217°C	60 sec. to 150 sec.
Time within 5° C of Actual Peak Temperature	20 sec. to 40 sec.
Peak Temperature Range	260° C
Ramp-down Rate	6° C/sec. max.
Time 25° C to Peak Temperature	8 min. max.

Note: The package is certified to be backward compatible with Pb/Sn soldering profile.

A maximum of three reflow passes is allowed per component.

## 36.2 Packaging Resources

Land Pattern Definition.

Refer to the following IPC Standards:

- IPC-7351A and IPC-782 (*Generic Requirements for Surface Mount Design and Land Pattern Standards*) <http://landpatterns.ipc.org/default.asp>
- Atmel Green and RoHS Policy and Package Material Declaration Data Sheet  
<http://www.atmel.com/green/>

## 37. Ordering Information

**Table 37-1.**

Ordering Code	MRL	Flash (Kbytes)	Package	Package Type	Temperature Operating Range
ATSAM3N4CA-AU	A	256	LQFP100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N4CA-CU	A	256	TFBGA100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N4BA-AU	A	256	LQFP64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N4BA-MU	A	256	QFN64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N4AA-AU	A	256	LQFP48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N4AA-MU	A	256	QFN48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N2CA-AU	A	128	LQFP100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N2CA-CU	A	128	TFBGA100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N2BA-AU	A	128	LQFP64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N2BA-MU	A	128	QFN64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N2AA-AU	A	128	LQFP48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N2AA-MU	A	128	QFN48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1CA-AU	A	64	LQFP100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1CB-AU	B	64	LQFP100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1CA-CU	A	64	TFBGA100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1CB-CU	B	64	TFBGA100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1BA-AU	A	64	LQFP64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1BB-AU	B	64	LQFP64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1BA-MU	A	64	QFN 64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1BB-MU	B	64	QFN 64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C

**Table 37-1.**

<b>Ordering Code</b>	<b>MRL</b>	<b>Flash (Kbytes)</b>	<b>Package</b>	<b>Package Type</b>	<b>Temperature Operating Range</b>
ATSAM3N1AA-AU	A	64	LQFP48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1AB-AU	B	64	LQFP48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1AA-MU	A	64	QFN48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N1AB-MU	B	64	QFN48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N0CA-AU	A	32	LQFP100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N0CA-CU	A	32	TFBGA100	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N0BA-AU	A	32	LQFP64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N0BA-MU	A	32	QFN64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N0AA-AU	A	32	LQFP48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N0AA-MU	A	32	QFN48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N00BA-AU	A	16	LQFP64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N00BA-MU	A	16	QFN64	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N00AA-AU	A	16	LQFP48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C
ATSAM3N00AA-MU	A	16	QFN48	Green	Industrial -40°C to 85°C



742

**SAM3N**



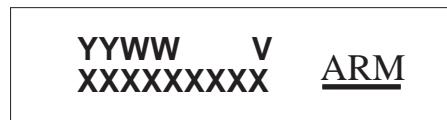
11011B-ATARM-21-Feb-12

## 38. SAM3N Series Errata

### 38.1 Marking

All devices are marked with the Atmel logo and the ordering code.

Additional marking may be in one of the following formats:



where

- "YY": manufactory year
- "WW": manufactory week
- "V": revision
- "XXXXXXXX": lot number

### 38.2 SAM3N4/2/1 Errata - Rev. A Parts

Refer to [Section 38.1 "Marking"](#).

Notes:

ATSAM3N4C Revision A chip ID is 0x29540960

ATSAM3N2C Revision A chip ID is 0x29590760

ATSAM3N1C Revision A chip ID is 0x29580560

ATSAM3N4B Revision A chip ID is 0x29440960

ATSAM3N2B Revision A chip ID is 0x29490760

ATSAM3N1B Revision A chip ID is 0x29480560

ATSAM3N4A Revision A chip ID is 0x29340960

ATSAM3N2A Revision A chip ID is 0x29390760

ATSAM3N1A Revision A chip ID is 0x29380560

## 38.3 Flash Memory

### 38.3.1 Flash: Flash Programming

When writing data into the Flash memory plane (either through the EEFC, using the IAP function or FFPI), the data may not be correctly written (i.e the data written is not the one expected).

#### Problem Fix/Workaround

Set the number of Wait States (WS) at 6 (FWS = 6) during the programming.

### 38.3.2 Flash: Fetching Error after Reading the Unique Identifier

After reading the Unique Identifier (or using the STUI/SPUI command), the processor may fetch wrong instructions. It depends on the code and on the region of the code.

#### Problem Fix/Workaround

In order to avoid this problem, follow the steps below:

- 1) Set bit 16 of EEFC Flash Mode Register to 1
- 2) Send the Start Read Unique Identifier command (STUI) by writing the Flash Command Register with the STUI command
- 3) Wait for the FRDY bit to fall
- 4) Read the Unique ID (and next bits if required)
- 5) Send the Stop Read Unique Identifier command (SPUI) by writing the Flash Command Register with the SPUI command
- 6) Wait for the FRDY bit to rise
- 7) Clear bit 16 of EEFC Flash Mode Register

Note: During the sequence, the software cannot run out of Flash (so it has to run out of SRAM).

## 38.4 SAM3N1 Errata - Rev. B Parts / SAM3N0/00 -Rev. A Parts

Refer to [Section 38.1 “Marking”](#).

Notes:

ATSAM3N1C Revision B chip ID is 0x29580561  
ATSAM3N1B Revision B chip ID is 0x29480561  
ATSAM3N1A Revision B chip ID is 0x29380561  
ATSAM3N0C Revision A chip ID is 0x295 80361  
ATSAM3N0B Revision A chip ID is 0x294 80361  
ATSAM3N0A Revision A chip ID is 0x293 80361  
ATSAM3N00B Revision A chip ID is 0x294 50261  
ATSAM3N00A Revision A chip ID is 0x293 50261

### 38.4.1 Flash: Fetching Error after Reading the Unique Identifier

After reading the Unique Identifier (or using the STUI/SPUI command), the processor may fetch wrong instructions. It depends on the code and on the region of the code.

#### Problem Fix/Workaround

In order to avoid this problem, follow the steps below:

- 1) Set bit 16 of EEFC Flash Mode Register to 1
- 2) Send the Start Read Unique Identifier command (STUI) by writing the Flash Command Register with the STUI command
- 3) Wait for the FRDY bit to fall
- 4) Read the Unique ID (and next bits if required)
- 5) Send the Stop Read Unique Identifier command (SPUI) by writing the Flash Command Register with the SPUI command
- 6) Wait for the FRDY bit to rise
- 7) Clear bit 16 of EEFC Flash Mode Register

Note: During the sequence, the software cannot run out of Flash (so it has to run out of SRAM).



746

**SAM3N**



11011B-ATARM-21-Feb-12

## Revision History

Doc. Rev. 11011B	Comments	Change Request Ref.
	<p><b>Overview:</b>            All mentions of 100-ball LFBGA changed into 100-ball TFBGA            Numerous updates  <a href="#">Section 7. "Product Mapping"</a>, Heading was 'Memories'. Changed to 'Product Mapping'            Several updates to clarify that only 1 USART has ISO7816 capability            Two typos corrected in chapter 12 and 32  <a href="#">Section 5. "Power Considerations"</a>: <a href="#">Figure 5-5 "Fast Start-Up Sources"</a>, Changed from Edge detection to Level detection. <a href="#">Section 24.10 "Fast Startup"</a>, Added 'SM' for Fast Startup detection  <a href="#">Section "Features"</a>, extended range for Flash (now from 16Kbytes) and SRAM (now from 4Kbytes)  <a href="#">Section 1.1 "Configuration Summary"</a>, table extended  <a href="#">Section 2. "SAM3N Block Diagram"</a>: <a href="#">Figure 2-1 "SAM3N 100-pin version Block Diagram"</a> and <a href="#">Figure 2-2 "SAM3N 64-pin version Block Diagram"</a> and <a href="#">Figure 2-3 "SAM3N 48-pin version Block Diagram"</a>, updated FLASH and SRAM boxes  <a href="#">Figure 3-1 "Signal Description List"</a>, added table note for 'Internal pull-up disabled' under "Comments" in 'ICE and JTAG' section            Whole doc.. Replaced 'SAM3N4/2/1' by 'SAM3N4/2/1/0/0'  <b>Section 7.2::</b>  <a href="#">Figure 7.2 "Embedded Memories"</a>, added SAM3N0 and SAM3N00 product information  <a href="#">Figure 7.2.3 "Embedded Flash"</a>, added SAM3N0 and SAM3N00 Flash bank information  <a href="#">Section 7.2.3.5 "Lock Regions"</a>, added lock bit information for SAM3N0 and SAM3N00  <a href="#">Section 4.1.4 "100-ball TFBGA Pinout"</a>, whole pinout table updated            Updated package dimensions in 'Features'  <a href="#">Section 35-2 "DC Characteristics"</a>, Pull-down Resistor values updated  <a href="#">Section 35-7 "DC Flash Characteristics"</a>, Max value for '25°C /VDDCORE = 1.95V' updated  <a href="#">Section 35-37 "Static Performance Characteristics"</a>, updated values for Integral and Differential Non-linearity parameters  <a href="#">Section 35-3 "1.8V Voltage Regulator Characteristics"</a>, updated values for 'Dropout Voltage'  <a href="#">Section 23.2 "Embedded Characteristics"</a>, changed sentence "Processor Clock (HCLK), must be switched off..."</p>	8044 7634 7685 7857 7913 7922 8106 rfo rfo 7201 7965 8189 8217
	<p><b>CHIPID:</b>  <a href="#">Section 25. "Chip Identifier (CHIPID)"</a>: <a href="#">Figure 25-1 "ATSAM3N Chip IDs Register"</a>, table updated with new chip names</p>	8106
	<p><b>Debug and Test Features:</b>  <a href="#">Section 11. "Debug and Test Features"</a>:  <a href="#">Section 11.5.7 "IEEE® 1149.1 JTAG Boundary Scan"</a>, Updated.  <a href="#">Section 11.4 "Debug and Test Pin Description"</a>: <a href="#">Figure 11-1 "Debug and Test Signal List"</a>, added table note for TDO/TRACESWO</p>	7489 8106

Doc. Rev. 11011B	Comments	Change Request Ref.
	<b>ELEC:</b> <a href="#">Section 35.2 "DC Characteristics":</a> PULLUP Pull-up Resistor NRST: New values added PULLDOWN Pull-down Resistor: Changed signal names and added one line for signal names PB10-PB11 <a href="#">Section 35. "Electrical Characteristics":</a> <a href="#">Table 35-19, "32 kHz RC Oscillator Characteristics,"</a> , changed parameter 'Frequency Temperature Dependency' <a href="#">Table 35-4, "Core Power Supply Brownout Detector Characteristics,"</a> , changed MAX value of VTH+ <a href="#">Section 35.8.6 "Embedded Flash Characteristics"</a> , added note regarding erasing Flash contents	8077 8174 8223
	<b>Errata:</b> <a href="#">Section 38. "SAM3N Series Errata":</a> Added section: <a href="#">Section 38.2 "SAM3N4/2/1 Errata - Rev. A Parts"</a> Added section: <a href="#">Section 38.4 "SAM3N1 Errata - Rev. B Parts / SAM3N0/00 -Rev. A Parts"</a> <a href="#">Section 38.2 "SAM3N4/2/1 Errata - Rev. A Parts"</a> and <a href="#">Section 38.4 "SAM3N1 Errata - Rev. B Parts / SAM3N0/00 -Rev. A Parts"</a> , Added errata 'Flash: Fetching Error after Reading the Unique Identifier'	8106 7978
	<b>FFPI:</b> <a href="#">Section 19-1 "Signal Description List"</a> , Text for 'Function' changed to 'Main Clock Input'	7851
	<b>Ordering Information:</b> <a href="#">Section 37. "Ordering Information": Table 37-1:</a> Updated and added ordering codes Corrected multiple instances of wrong Package types for 128 and 256Kbytes devices	8106 RFO
	<b>PMC:</b> <a href="#">Section 24.3 "Block Diagram"</a> , figure updated with 'PMC_PCKx' <a href="#">Section 24.10 "Fast Startup"</a> , SUPC_FSMR changed to PMC_FSMR and SUPC_FSPR changed to PMC_FSPR	7915 8010
	<b>USART:</b> <a href="#">Table 35-42, "USART SPI Timings,"</a> , Changed 'MCK' --> 'tCPMCK' and 'SCK' --> 'tCPSCK'	7651

Doc. Rev. 11011A	Comments	Change Request Ref.
	First Issue	

## Table of Contents

<b>Features .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 SAM3N Description .....</b>	<b>2</b>
1.1 Configuration Summary .....	3
<b>2 SAM3N Block Diagram .....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>3 Signal Description .....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>4 Package and Pinout .....</b>	<b>10</b>
4.1 SAM3N4/2/1/0/00C Package and Pinout .....	10
4.2 SAM3N4/2/1/0/00B Package and Pinout .....	13
4.3 SAM3N4/2/1/0/00A Package and Pinout .....	15
<b>5 Power Considerations .....</b>	<b>17</b>
5.1 Power Supplies .....	17
5.2 Voltage Regulator .....	17
5.3 Typical Powering Schematics .....	17
5.4 Active Mode .....	19
5.5 Low Power Modes .....	19
5.6 Wake-up Sources .....	22
5.7 Fast Start-Up .....	23
<b>6 Input/Output Lines .....</b>	<b>24</b>
6.1 General Purpose I/O Lines .....	24
6.2 System I/O Lines .....	24
6.3 Test Pin .....	26
6.4 NRST Pin .....	26
6.5 ERASE Pin .....	26
<b>7 Product Mapping .....</b>	<b>27</b>
7.1 Product Mapping .....	27
7.2 Embedded Memories .....	28
<b>8 System Controller .....</b>	<b>31</b>
8.1 System Controller and Peripheral Mapping .....	33
8.2 Power-on-Reset, Brownout and Supply Monitor .....	33
<b>9 Peripherals .....</b>	<b>34</b>
9.1 Peripheral Identifiers .....	34



9.2	APB/AHB Bridge .....	35
9.3	Peripheral Signal Multiplexing on I/O Lines .....	35
<b>10</b>	<b>ARM Cortex® M3 Processor .....</b>	<b>39</b>
10.1	About this section .....	39
10.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	39
10.3	About the Cortex-M3 processor and core peripherals .....	39
10.4	Programmers model .....	42
10.5	Memory model .....	55
10.6	Exception model .....	63
10.7	Fault handling .....	70
10.8	Power management .....	72
10.9	Instruction set summary .....	75
10.10	Intrinsic functions .....	78
10.11	About the instruction descriptions .....	79
10.12	Memory access instructions .....	87
10.13	General data processing instructions .....	103
10.14	Multiply and divide instructions .....	119
10.15	Saturating instructions .....	123
10.16	Bitfield instructions .....	125
10.17	Branch and control instructions .....	129
10.18	Miscellaneous instructions .....	137
10.19	About the Cortex-M3 peripherals .....	150
10.20	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller .....	151
10.21	System control block .....	164
10.22	System timer, SysTick .....	191
10.23	Glossary .....	196
<b>11</b>	<b>Debug and Test Features .....</b>	<b>201</b>
11.1	Description .....	201
11.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	201
11.3	Application Examples .....	202
11.4	Debug and Test Pin Description .....	203
11.5	Functional Description .....	204
<b>12</b>	<b>Reset Controller (RSTC) .....</b>	<b>209</b>
12.1	Description .....	209
12.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	209

12.3	Block Diagram .....	209
12.4	Functional Description .....	210
12.5	Reset Controller (RSTC) User Interface .....	217
<b>13</b>	<b>Real-time Timer (RTT) .....</b>	<b>221</b>
13.1	Description .....	221
13.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	221
13.3	Block Diagram .....	221
13.4	Functional Description .....	222
13.5	Real-time Timer (RTT) User Interface .....	224
<b>14</b>	<b>Real Time Clock (RTC) .....</b>	<b>229</b>
14.1	Description .....	229
14.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	229
14.3	Block Diagram .....	229
14.4	Product Dependencies .....	230
14.5	Functional Description .....	230
14.6	Real Time Clock (RTC) User Interface .....	233
<b>15</b>	<b>Watchdog Timer (WDT) .....</b>	<b>247</b>
15.1	Description .....	247
15.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	247
15.3	Block Diagram .....	247
15.4	Functional Description .....	248
15.5	Watchdog Timer (WDT) User Interface .....	250
<b>16</b>	<b>Supply Controller (SUPC) .....</b>	<b>255</b>
16.1	Description .....	255
16.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	255
16.3	Block Diagram .....	256
16.4	Supply Controller Functional Description .....	257
16.5	Supply Controller (SUPC) User Interface .....	265
<b>17</b>	<b>General Purpose Backup Registers (GPBR) .....</b>	<b>273</b>
17.1	Description .....	273
17.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	273
17.3	General Purpose Backup Registers (GPBR) User Interface .....	273
<b>18</b>	<b>Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) .....</b>	<b>275</b>
18.1	Description .....	275

18.2	Product Dependencies .....	275
18.3	Functional Description .....	275
18.4	Enhanced Embedded Flash Controller (EEFC) User Interface .....	286
<b>19</b>	<b>Fast Flash Programming Interface (FFPI) .....</b>	<b>291</b>
19.1	Description .....	291
19.2	Parallel Fast Flash Programming .....	291
<b>20</b>	<b>SAM3N Boot Program .....</b>	<b>303</b>
20.1	Description .....	303
20.2	Hardware and Software Constraints .....	303
20.3	Flow Diagram .....	303
20.4	Device Initialization .....	303
20.5	SAM-BA Monitor .....	304
<b>21</b>	<b>Bus Matrix (MATRIX) .....</b>	<b>307</b>
21.1	Description .....	307
21.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	307
21.3	Memory Mapping .....	308
21.4	Special Bus Granting Techniques .....	308
21.5	Arbitration .....	309
21.6	System I/O Configuration .....	311
21.7	Write Protect Registers .....	311
21.8	Bus Matrix (MATRIX) User Interface .....	312
<b>22</b>	<b>Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC) .....</b>	<b>319</b>
22.1	Description .....	319
22.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	319
22.3	Block Diagram .....	320
22.4	Functional Description .....	321
22.5	Peripheral DMA Controller (PDC) User Interface .....	324
<b>23</b>	<b>Clock Generator .....</b>	<b>333</b>
23.1	Description .....	333
23.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	333
23.3	Block Diagram .....	334
23.4	Slow Clock .....	335
23.5	Main Clock .....	336
23.6	Divider and PLL Block .....	340

<b>24 Power Management Controller (PMC) .....</b>	<b>341</b>
24.1 Description .....	341
24.2 Embedded Characteristics .....	341
24.3 Block Diagram .....	342
24.4 Master Clock Controller .....	342
24.5 Processor Clock Controller .....	343
24.6 SysTick Clock .....	343
24.7 Peripheral Clock Controller .....	343
24.8 Free Running Processor Clock .....	344
24.9 Programmable Clock Output Controller .....	344
24.10 Fast Startup .....	345
24.11 Clock Failure Detector .....	346
24.12 Programming Sequence .....	347
24.13 Clock Switching Details .....	350
24.14 Write Protection Registers .....	353
24.15 Power Management Controller (PMC) User Interface .....	354
<b>25 Chip Identifier (CHIPID) .....</b>	<b>377</b>
25.1 Description .....	377
25.2 Chip Identifier (CHIPID) User Interface .....	378
<b>26 Parallel Input/Output (PIO) Controller .....</b>	<b>385</b>
26.1 Description .....	385
26.2 Embedded Characteristics .....	385
26.3 Block Diagram .....	386
26.4 Product Dependencies .....	387
26.5 Functional Description .....	388
26.6 I/O Lines Programming Example .....	397
26.7 Parallel Input/Output Controller (PIO) User Interface .....	398
<b>27 Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) .....</b>	<b>429</b>
27.1 Description .....	429
27.2 Embedded Characteristics .....	429
27.3 Block Diagram .....	430
27.4 Application Block Diagram .....	430
27.5 Signal Description .....	431
27.6 Product Dependencies .....	431
27.7 Functional Description .....	432

27.8	Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) User Interface .....	447
<b>28</b>	<b>Two-wire Interface (TWI) .....</b>	<b>463</b>
28.1	Description .....	463
28.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	464
28.3	List of Abbreviations .....	464
28.4	Block Diagram .....	465
28.5	Application Block Diagram .....	465
28.6	Product Dependencies .....	466
28.7	Functional Description .....	467
28.8	Master Mode .....	468
28.9	Multi-master Mode .....	480
28.10	Slave Mode .....	483
28.11	Two-wire Interface (TWI) User Interface .....	491
<b>29</b>	<b>Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transceiver (UART) .....</b>	<b>505</b>
29.1	Description .....	505
29.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	505
29.3	Block Diagram .....	506
29.4	Product Dependencies .....	506
29.5	UART Operations .....	507
29.6	Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART) User Interface .....	513
<b>30</b>	<b>Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) 523</b>	
30.1	Description .....	523
30.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	523
30.3	Block Diagram .....	524
30.4	Application Block Diagram .....	525
30.5	I/O Lines Description .....	526
30.6	Product Dependencies .....	527
30.7	Functional Description .....	528
30.8	Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) User Interface	557
<b>31</b>	<b>Timer Counter (TC) .....</b>	<b>579</b>
31.1	Description .....	579
31.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	579
31.3	Block Diagram .....	581

31.4	Pin Name List .....	582
31.5	Product Dependencies .....	582
31.6	Functional Description .....	583
31.7	Timer Counter (TC) User Interface .....	603
<b>32</b>	<b>Pulse Width Modulation Controller (PWM) .....</b>	<b>627</b>
32.1	Description .....	627
32.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	627
32.3	Block Diagram .....	628
32.4	I/O Lines Description .....	628
32.5	Product Dependencies .....	628
32.6	Functional Description .....	630
32.7	Pulse Width Modulation Controller (PWM) User Interface .....	638
<b>33</b>	<b>Analog-to-digital Converter (ADC) .....</b>	<b>649</b>
33.1	Description .....	649
33.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	649
33.3	Block Diagram .....	650
33.4	Signal Description .....	650
33.5	Product Dependencies .....	651
33.6	Functional Description .....	652
33.7	Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) User Interface .....	659
<b>34</b>	<b>Digital to Analog Converter Controller (DACC) .....</b>	<b>679</b>
34.1	Description .....	679
34.2	Embedded Characteristics .....	679
34.3	Block Diagram .....	680
34.4	Signal Description .....	681
34.5	Product Dependencies .....	681
34.6	Functional Description .....	682
34.7	Digital-to-Analog Converter Controller (DACC) User Interface .....	684
<b>35</b>	<b>Electrical Characteristics .....</b>	<b>695</b>
35.1	Absolute Maximum Ratings .....	695
35.2	DC Characteristics .....	696
35.3	Power Consumption .....	702
35.4	Crystal Oscillators Characteristics .....	710
35.5	PLL Characteristics .....	717
35.6	10-Bit ADC Characteristics .....	718





35.7	10-Bit DAC Characteristics .....	720
35.8	AC Characteristics .....	721
<b>36</b>	<b>Mechanical Characteristics .....</b>	<b>730</b>
36.1	Soldering Profile .....	739
36.2	Packaging Resources .....	739
<b>37</b>	<b>Ordering Information .....</b>	<b>740</b>
<b>38</b>	<b>SAM3N Series Errata .....</b>	<b>743</b>
38.1	Marking .....	743
38.2	SAM3N4/2/1 Errata - Rev. A Parts .....	743
38.3	Flash Memory .....	744
38.4	SAM3N1 Errata - Rev. B Parts / SAM3N0/00 -Rev. A Parts .....	745
<b>Revision History.....</b>		<b>747</b>
<b>Table of Contents.....</b>		<b>i</b>



## Headquarters

**Atmel Corporation**  
2325 Orchard Parkway  
San Jose, CA 95131  
USA  
Tel: (+1) (408) 441-0311  
Fax: (+1) (408) 487-2600

## International

**Atmel Asia Limited**  
Unit 01-5 & 16, 19F  
BEA Tower, Millennium City 5  
418 Kwun Tong Road  
Kwun Tong, Kowloon  
HONG KONG  
Tel: (+852) 2245-6100  
Fax: (+852) 2722-1369

**Atmel Munich GmbH**  
Business Campus  
Parkring 4  
D-85748 Garching b. Munich  
GERMANY  
Tel: (+49) 89-31970-0  
Fax: (+49) 89-3194621

**Atmel Japan**  
9F, Tonetsu Shinkawa Bldg.  
1-24-8 Shinkawa  
Chuo-ku, Tokyo 104-0033  
JAPAN  
Tel: (81) 3-3523-3551  
Fax: (81) 3-3523-7581

## Product Contact

**Web Site**  
[www.atmel.com](http://www.atmel.com)  
[www.atmel.com/AT91SAM](http://www.atmel.com/AT91SAM)

**Technical Support**  
[AT91SAM Support](http://AT91SAM_Support)  
Atmel technical support

**Sales Contacts**  
[www.atmel.com/contacts/](http://www.atmel.com/contacts/)

**Literature Requests**  
[www.atmel.com/literature](http://www.atmel.com/literature)

**Disclaimer:** The information in this document is provided in connection with Atmel products. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property right is granted by this document or in connection with the sale of Atmel products. EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN ATMEL'S TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF SALE LOCATED ON ATMEL'S WEB SITE, ATMEL ASSUMES NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER AND DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY WARRANTY RELATING TO ITS PRODUCTS INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL ATMEL BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE, SPECIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, OR LOSS OF INFORMATION) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DOCUMENT, EVEN IF ATMEL HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Atmel makes no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this document and reserves the right to make changes to specifications and product descriptions at any time without notice. Atmel does not make any commitment to update the information contained herein. Unless specifically provided otherwise, Atmel products are not suitable for, and shall not be used in, automotive applications. Atmel's products are not intended, authorized, or warranted for use as components in applications intended to support or sustain life.



© 2011 Atmel Corporation. All rights reserved. Atmel®, Atmel logo and combinations thereof, DataFlash®, SAM-BA® and others are registered trademarks or trademarks of Atmel Corporation or its subsidiaries. ARM®, ARMPowered® logo, Cortex™, Thumb® -2 and others are registered trademarks or trademarks of ARM Ltd. Windows® and others are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and/or other countries. Other terms and product names may be trademarks of others.

